

The  
GREATEST BOOK  
EVER WRITTEN



S. Townsend Weaver





Class BS2095

Book .W33

Copyright No. \_\_\_\_\_

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.











Bible. N. T. English. 1915

# The Greatest Book Ever Written

The New Testament in Its  
Inspired Literary Form

*Authorized Version*

BY

THE REV. S. TOWNSEND WEAVER

*Author of*

"The University New Testament," Etc.



THE UNIVERSITY LITERATURE EXTENSION  
WASHINGTON, D. C.



BS 2095  
.W33

COPYRIGHT, 1915  
By S. TOWNSEND WEAVER  
All rights reserved



NATIONAL CAPITAL PRESS, INC.  
BOOK MANUFACTURERS  
WASHINGTON, D. C.

FEB -9 1915

~~\$~~ 2.50

© Cl. A 393589

no 1



9.2.2.17-2-17-  
The Greatest Book  
Ever Written





Dedicated

to the

Minister of the Historic Foundry Church  
Washington, D. C.

W. R. Wedderspoon, D.D.

Whose Gentleness Lends Greatness

To All Who Know Him





## INTRODUCTORY

---

The title to this volume is a personal tribute to the New Testament of our Lord Jesus Christ as the greatest of all books, and was suggested by the words of a well-known French writer who said of Matthew, that it is the most important, and of Luke, that it is the most beautiful, book ever written.

The twenty-seven inspired books of the New Testament depend in some degree for their influence upon the forms in which the gospels and epistles were written. It would seem that the literary models of some of these books were first created, and the message then written into them. The correct exposition of the narratives is impossible until the literary forms have been discovered. With the disappearance of the original manuscripts of the New Testament books were lost the models of some of the books, the sacred copyist preserving only the divine text.

The New Testament authors wrote with great enthusiasm as spiritual evangelists, and as ambitious men of letters, possessing rare gifts for literary craftsmanship, and valuable materials for the creation of original, powerful and beautiful literature. Among the first readers of the New Testament there must have been men and women of high station, among them Theophilus, probably a Roman gentleman of position, wealth and culture, to whom Luke dedicated his work. Such persons, it is well understood, would profit by the gospel presented in its most attractive literary dress.

The author of Matthew either found at hand or invented the model which he employed for the narration of his gospel, and Luke utilized it for the purpose of his gospel and history. It is a rare literary mechanism. It is a piece of literary invention of fine craftsmanship. It is interesting to examine as a whole and in its parts. It has never appeared in print before, and it is sure to be generally prized by men and women of literary taste for the originality and ingenuity it reveals.

The model of the first gospel may be seen to be a seven-fold design, finely proportioned, with prologue and epilogue of unique creation. There are summaries following the parts through the narratives of Matthew, Luke and Acts. The prologue presents Jesus ancestrally as prophet, king and priest (presbyter or elder), the three-fold character of the expected Messiah. In the first part the child of Mary is set forth with a seven-fold prophetic identification as the Messiah for whom the Jews were looking.

In the second part He appears in full prophetic character, in the third part in full priestly character, and in the fourth part in full kingly character, as the Messiah. In the last three parts He is shown in his ministry and work as prophetically anticipating his humiliation and glory at Jerusalem; secondly, as surrendering royally to His people; and, finally, as suffering death in priestly propitiation for the sins of the world and reappearing to his people in glorious triumph over the grave. The power of the epilogue is irresistible.

The author of Matthew may thus be seen working as an artist with a great theme, and with great materials, and with great gifts for writing the most important book ever written. And what is said of Matthew may be said in greater or less degree of the books of the entire New Testament. Their supremacy in the world of literature because of the wondrous story is acknowledged. It has been sought to exemplify herein the fact that they are also supreme in the world of letters because of their form. The New Testament should contribute more than all other literature of the treasures of culture, such as the regeneration that comes through association with great ideas, the enrichment that springs from their wisdom, and the refinement that breathes through their beauty and charm; and all these benefits in addition to the gracious redemption of the world.

S. TOWNSEND WEAVER.



# CONTENTS

## THE GOSPEL ACCORDING TO MATTHEW

### PROLOGUE

THE GENEALOGY OF JESUS CHRIST . . . . .	3
---	---

### PART ONE

#### THE PRIVATE LIFE OF JESUS CHRIST.

The Seven-Fold Identification of the Messiah.

§1. The Nativity.	
i. The Virgin Birth of Jesus . . . . .	5
ii. The Gentile Magi at Bethlehem . . . . .	5
iii. The Flight Into Egypt . . . . .	6
iv. The Holy Family in Galilee . . . . .	7
§2. The Manifestation of the Messiah.	
i. The Coming of John the Baptist . . . . .	7
ii. The Baptism of Jesus . . . . .	8
§3. The Great Temptation of Jesus.	
The Three-Fold Test of Christ . . . . .	8
§4. The Settlement of Jesus in Galilee	
The Residence at Capernaum by the Sea . . . . .	9

*The First Summary*

### PART TWO

#### THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN GALILEE.

The Prophetic Character of the Messiah.

§1. The Call of Jesus to Discipleship.	
The Response of Peter, Andrew, James and John . . . . .	11
§2. The Great Fame of Jesus in Syria.	
The Ministry of Teaching and Healing . . . . .	11
§3. The Great Sermon on the Mount.	
The Instruction for the Disciples . . . . .	11

*The Second Summary*

### PART THREE

#### THE MINISTRY IN GALILEE CONTINUED.

The Priestly Character of the Messiah.

§1. The Healing Ministry of Jesus.	
i. The Cleansing of a Leper . . . . .	21
ii. The Healing of a Centurion's Servant . . . . .	21
iii. The Healing of Peter's Wife's Mother . . . . .	22
iv. The Healing of the Multitude . . . . .	22

§2. The Departure of Jesus into Gadara.	
i. The Would-be Followers of Jesus . . . . .	22
ii. The Stilling of a Great Tempest . . . . .	22
iii. The Healing of the Gadarene Demoniacs . . . . .	23
§3. The Return of Jesus into Galilee.	
i. The Man Forgiven and Healed . . . . .	23
ii. The Call of Matthew the Publican . . . . .	23
iii. The Ruler's Daughter and the Infirm Woman . . . . .	24
iv. The Blind Man and the Demoniac . . . . .	25
§4. The Mission of the Twelve to the Jews.	
i. The Great Compassion of Jesus . . . . .	25
ii. The Healing Mission of the Twelve . . . . .	25
iii. The Organization of Apostles . . . . .	26
iv. The Commission of Jesus for the Twelve . . . . .	26

*The Third Summary*

PART FOUR

THE MINISTRY IN GALILEE CONTINUED.

The Kingly Character of the Messiah.

§1. The Messiahship of Jesus.	
i. The Inquiry of Jesus by John the Baptist. . . . .	29
ii. The Condemnation of the Cities . . . . .	30
iii. The Gracious Invitation . . . . .	31
§2. The Lordship of Jesus.	
i. The Lordship of the Sabbath . . . . .	31
ii. The True Lordship of Jesus . . . . .	32
iii. The Condemnation of Blasphemy . . . . .	32
iv. The True Subjects of the Kingdom. . . . .	34
§3. The Seven Parables of the Kingdom	
i. The Parable of the Sower . . . . .	35
ii. The Tares of the Field . . . . .	36
iii. The Parable of the Mustard Seed . . . . .	37
iv. The Parable of the Leaven . . . . .	37
§4. The Seven Parables Concluded.	
i. The Seven-Fold Exposition of the Tares. . . . .	38
ii. The Hidden Treasure. . . . .	38
iii. The Pearl of Great Price . . . . .	39
iv. The Parable of the Fishing Net . . . . .	39

*The Fourth Summary*

PART FIVE

THE MINISTRY IN GALILEE CONCLUDED.

The Prophetic Anticipation of the End.

§1. The Rejection of Jesus at Nazareth.	
i. The Unbelief of the People . . . . .	41
ii. The Fear of Herod the Tetrarch . . . . .	41
iii. The Retirement to the Desert . . . . .	42
iv. The Appearance of Jesus on the Sea . . . . .	42



§2. The Tradition of the Elders.	
i. The Controversy with the Authorities . . . . .	43
ii. The Retirement to Tyre and Sidon . . . . .	44
iii. The Return to the Sea of Galilee . . . . .	45
iv. The Danger of the Jewish Parties . . . . .	45
§3. The True Glory of Jesus Christ.	
i. The Great Confession of Peter . . . . .	46
ii. The Beginning of the Passion Forecasts . . . . .	47
iii. The Transfiguration of Jesus . . . . .	48
iv. The Healing of an Epileptic Boy . . . . .	49
§4. The Close of the Ministry in Galilee.	
i. The Forecast Again of the Passion . . . . .	49
ii. The Provision for the Tribute . . . . .	49
iii. The Question of Rank in the Kingdom . . . . .	50
iv. The Instruction in Forgiveness . . . . .	51

*The Fifth Summary*

PART SIX

THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN JERUSALEM.

The Kingly Surrender to the Holy City.

§1. The Sojourn Beyond the Jordan.	
i. The Question of Divorce . . . . .	53
ii. The Subjects of the Kingdom of Heaven . . . . .	53
iii. The Question of the Rich Young Man . . . . .	54
§2. The Approach of Jesus to Jerusalem.	
i. The Forecast Again of the Crucifixion . . . . .	55
ii. The Mother of Zebedee's Children . . . . .	56
iii. The Healing of Two Blind Men . . . . .	57
§3. The Triumphal Entry Into Jerusalem.	
i. The Reception of Christ . . . . .	57
ii. The Cleansing of the Temple . . . . .	58
iii. The Cursing of the Fig Tree . . . . .	58
iv. The Authority of Christ . . . . .	58
§4. The Controversies with the Rulers	
i. The Plot of the Pharisees . . . . .	61
ii. The Indictment of the Pharisees . . . . .	62
iii. The Forecast of the Fall of the Temple . . . . .	65
iv. The Great Discourse on Last Things . . . . .	65

*The Sixth Summary*

PART SEVEN

THE CRUCIFIXION AND RESURRECTION.

The Priestly Propitiation and Triumph.

§1. The Approaching Passover Feast.	
i. The Action of the Sanhedrin . . . . .	71
ii. The Anointing of Jesus at Bethany . . . . .	71
iii. The Conspiracy of Judas Iscariot . . . . .	71

§2. The Observance of the Passover Feast.	
i. The Preparation for the Feast . . . . .	72
ii. The Disclosure of the Betrayal . . . . .	72
iii. The Institution of the Holy Communion . . . . .	72
iv. The Forecast of Peter's Denial . . . . .	73
§3. The Arrest and Trial of Jesus.	
i. The Agony in the Garden of Gethsemane . . . . .	73
ii. The Betrayal and Arrest of Jesus . . . . .	74
iii. The Trial Before the Sanhedrin . . . . .	74
iv. The Trial Before the Roman Governor . . . . .	75
§4. The Crucifixion and Resurrection.	
i. The Mocking of Jesus by the Soldiers . . . . .	77
ii. The Crucifixion of Jesus at Golgotha . . . . .	77
iii. The Burial of Jesus . . . . .	78
iv. The Resurrection of Jesus . . . . .	79

### EPILOGUE

THE GREAT COMMISSION.	
The Seven-Fold Apostolic Commission . . . . .	80
<i>The Closing Summary</i>	

## THE GOSPEL ACCORDING TO MARK

### THE GOSPEL OF JESUS CHRIST THE SON OF GOD.

The Beginning of the Gospel.	
The Manifestation of the Messiah . . . . .	83
The Ministry of Jesus in Galilee . . . . .	84
The Preaching Tour through Galilee . . . . .	85
The Criticism of the Jewish Authorities . . . . .	86
The Fame of Jesus throughout Syria . . . . .	88
The Organization of the Apostles . . . . .	88
The Scribes from Jerusalem in Galilee . . . . .	88
The Departure into Gadara . . . . .	91
The Return into Galilee . . . . .	92
The Ministry through Galilee . . . . .	93
The Retirement of Jesus Across the Lake . . . . .	95
The Tradition of the Elders of the Jews . . . . .	97
The Northern Retirement into Phoenicia . . . . .	98
The Retreat into Decapolis . . . . .	100
The Secret Arrival in Galilee . . . . .	103
The Journey from Capernaum to Jerusalem . . . . .	104
The Ministry of Jesus in Jerusalem . . . . .	107
The Controversy with the Rulers . . . . .	108
The Last Words with the Disciples . . . . .	111
The Crucifixion of Jesus . . . . .	114
The Resurrection of Jesus . . . . .	120



## THE GOSPEL ACCORDING TO LUKE

### THE PREFACE

#### THE MANIFOLD GOSPEL OF JESUS CHRIST.

The Dedication to Theophilus.

The Design of the Author of the Gospel . . . . 125

### PART ONE

#### THE PRIVATE LIFE OF JESUS CHRIST.

##### §1. The Annunciation.

i. The Promise of God to Zacharias . . . . . 127

ii. The Annunciation to Mary . . . . . 128

iii. The Visit of Mary to Elizabeth . . . . . 130

##### §2. The Birth of John the Baptist.

The Circumcision and Name . . . . . 131

##### §3. The Nativity.

i. The Birth of Jesus at Bethlehem . . . . . 132

ii. The Angel and the Shepherds . . . . . 133

iii. The Circumcision and Presentation . . . . . 134

iv. The Visit of Jesus to Jerusalem . . . . . 135

##### §4. The Manifestation of Jesus Christ.

i. The Coming of John the Baptist . . . . . 136

ii. The Voice of God from Heaven . . . . . 138

iii. The Genealogy of Jesus . . . . . 138

iv. The Great Temptation of Jesus . . . . . 140

*Thw First Summary*

### PART TWO

#### THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN GALILEE.

##### §1. The Public Appearance of Jesus Christ.

i. The Announcement at Nazareth . . . . . 143

ii. The Ministry of Jesus through Galilee . . . . . 144

iii. The Healing of a Paralytic . . . . . 146

iv. The Call of Levi the Publican . . . . . 146

##### §2. The Lordship of Jesus.

The Opposition of the Pharisees . . . . . 147

##### §3. The Organization of Apostles.

i. The Choice of the Twelve . . . . . 148

ii. The Following Multitudes . . . . . 148

iii. The Great Sermon in the Plain . . . . . 148

*The Second Summary*

### PART THREE

#### THE MINISTRY IN GALILEE CONCLUDED.

##### §1. The Authority of Jesus Christ.

i. The Healing of the Servant of a Centurion . . . 151

ii. The Raising of a Widow's Son . . . . . 151

iii. The Inquiry of John the Baptist . . . . . 152

iv. The Witness of Jesus to John . . . . . 153

§2. The Recognition of Jesus Christ.	
i. The Anointing in a Pharisee's House . . . . .	153
ii. The Preaching Tour of Galilee . . . . .	154
iii. The Parable of the Sower . . . . .	154
iv. The True Kindred of Jesus . . . . .	155
§3. The Great Power of Jesus Christ.	
i. The Stilling of the Storm on the Lake . . . . .	155
ii. The Sojourn of Jesus in Gadara . . . . .	156
iii. The Return of Jesus into Galilee . . . . .	157
iv. The Mission of the Twelve Apostles . . . . .	158
§4. The Glory of Jesus Christ.	
i. The Great Confession of Simon Peter . . . . .	159
ii. The Transfiguration of Jesus Christ . . . . .	160
iii. The Healing of the Demoniac . . . . .	160
iv. The Forecast of the Crucifixion . . . . .	161

*The Third Summary*

PART FOUR

THE GREAT JOURNEY TO JERUSALEM.

§1. The Coming of the Kingdom of God.	
i. The Rejection by the Samaritans . . . . .	163
ii. The Would-be Followers of Jesus . . . . .	163
iii. The Mission of the Seventy . . . . .	164
iv. The Home of Mary and Martha . . . . .	166
§2. The Prayer for the Kingdom of God .	
i. The Instruction of the Disciples . . . . .	166
ii. The Encouragement to Prayer . . . . .	167
iii. The Blasphemy of the Pharisees . . . . .	168
iv. The Praise of a Woman . . . . .	169
§3. The Judgment of the Kingdom of God.	
i. The Present Evil Generation . . . . .	169
ii. The Condemnation of the Pharisees . . . . .	170
iii. The Warning against Phariseeism . . . . .	171
iv. The Discourse on Worldly-Mindedness . . . . .	172
§4. The Nature of the Judgment.	
i. The Call to Repentance . . . . .	175
ii. The Parable of the Fig Tree . . . . .	176
iii. The Healing of an Infirm Woman . . . . .	176
iv. The Extension of the Kingdom . . . . .	177

*The Fourth Summary*

PART FIVE

THE JOURNEY TO JERUSALEM CONCLUDED.

§1. The Glory of the Kingdom of God.	
i. The Question Concerning the Saved . . . . .	179
ii. The Threat of Herod the Tetrarch . . . . .	179
iii. The Visit with a Chief Pharisee . . . . .	180
iv. The Cost of Discipleship . . . . .	181

§2. The Great Rejoicing in Heaven.	
The Lost and Found . . . . .	182
§3. The Great Reward of the Kingdom.	
i. The Parable of the Unjust Steward . . . . .	184
ii. The Reply to the Pharisees. . . . .	184
iii. The Woe of Offences . . . . .	185
iv. The Greatness of Faith . . . . .	186
§4. The Judgment to Come.	
i. The Cleansing of the Ten Lepers . . . . .	186
ii. The Kingdom of God in the Midst . . . . .	187
iii. The True Members of the Kingdom . . . . .	188
iv. The Approach to Jerusalem . . . . .	190

*The Fifth Summary*

PART SIX

THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN JERUSALEM.

§1. The Triumphal Entry of Jesus.	
i. The Royal Reception by the City . . . . .	193
ii. The Lamentation of Jesus . . . . .	194
iii. The Cleansing of the Temple . . . . .	194
iv. The Plot to Destroy Jesus . . . . .	194
§2. The Controversy with the Rulers.	
i. The Challenge of Authority . . . . .	195
ii. The Rejection of Jesus. . . . .	195
iii. The Plot to Ensnare Jesus . . . . .	195
iv. The Condemnation of the Scribes . . . . .	197
§3. The Gospel of Giving.	
The Gift of a Widow into the Treasury . . . . .	197
§4. The Great Discourse on Last Things.	
i. The Fall of Jerusalem and Return of Jesus . . . . .	198

*The Sixth Summary*

PART SEVEN

THE CRUCIFIXION AND RESURRECTION OF JESUS.

§1. The Observance of the Passover.	
i. The Approaching Feast . . . . .	201
ii. The Preparation for the Feast . . . . .	201
iii. The Observance of the Feast . . . . .	201
iv. The Situation after the Feast . . . . .	202
§2. The Betrayal and Arrest of Jesus.	
i. The Agony in the Garden . . . . .	203
ii. The Betrayal and Arrest of Jesus . . . . .	203
iii. The Denial of Simon Peter . . . . .	204
iv. The Mocking of Jesus . . . . .	204



§3. The Trial and Crucifixion of Jesus.	
i. The Condemnation of Jesus . . . . .	204
ii. The Way to Calvary . . . . .	206
iii. The Crucifixion of Jesus . . . . .	206
iv. The Burial of Jesus Near the City. . . . .	208
§4. The Resurrection and Ascension of Jesus.	
i. The Announcement of the Resurrection . . . . .	208
ii. The Appearance of Jesus at Emmaus . . . . .	209
iii. The Appearance of Jesus to the Apostles . . . . .	210
iv. The Ascension of Jesus . . . . .	210

*The Closing Summary*

---

## THE GOSPEL ACCORDING TO JOHN

### PROLOGUE

THE WORD THAT WAS GOD IN THE BEGINNING . . . . .	213
--	-----

### PART ONE

#### JESUS THE PROPHET OF GOD.

§1. The Testimony of John the Baptist. . . . .	215
§2. The Marriage at Cana in Galilee . . . . .	217
§3. The Cleansing of the Temple . . . . .	217
§4. The Interview with Nicodemus . . . . .	218
§5. The Witness of John to Jesus . . . . .	219
§6. The Ministry in Samaria . . . . .	220
§7. The Healing of the Nobleman's Son . . . . .	222

### PART TWO

#### JESUS THE KING OF ISRAEL.

§1. The Healing of the Man at the Pool . . . . .	223
§2. The Feeding of the Five Thousand . . . . .	225
§3. The Feast of Tabernacles . . . . .	228
§4. The Healing of the Man Born Blind . . . . .	234
§5. The Parable of the Good Shepherd . . . . .	235
§6. The Raising of Lazarus . . . . .	237
§7. The Triumphal Entry Into Jerusalem. . . . .	240

### PART THREE

#### JESUS THE HIGH PRIEST OF THE PEOPLE.

§1. The Last Supper with the Apostles . . . . .	245
§2. The Promise of the Holy Spirit . . . . .	246
§3. The Parable of the Vine . . . . .	248
§4. The Prayer of Intercession . . . . .	252
§5. The Betrayal and Condemnation . . . . .	254
§6. The Crucifixion of Jesus. . . . .	257
§7. The Resurrection of Jesus . . . . .	259

### EPILOGUE

THE CONCLUSION OF THE GOSPEL . . . . .	263
--	-----

## THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES

## PART ONE

## THE COMING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT.

- §1. The Introduction.
  - i. The Life and Work of Jesus . . . . . 267
  - ii. The Great Commission to the Apostles . . . . . 267
  - iii. The Waiting Apostles in Jerusalem . . . . . 268
- §2. The Organization of Apostles.
  - The Choice of Matthias . . . . . 268
- §3. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit.
  - i. The Fulfilment of the Father's Promise. . . . . 269
  - ii. The Impression upon the City . . . . . 269
  - iii. The Address of the Apostle Peter . . . . . 269
  - iv. The Great Awakening in Jerusalem . . . . . 271
- §4. The New Life of the Disciples.
  - The Church after Pentecost . . . . . 272

*The First Summary*

## PART TWO

## THE MINISTRY IN JERUSALEM.

- §1. The Apostles at the Temple.
  - i. The Lame Man at the Beautiful Gate . . . . . 273
  - ii. The Address of Peter to the People . . . . . 273
  - iii. The Apostles before the Sanhedrin . . . . . 275
  - iv. The Return to the Disciples . . . . . 276
- §2. The Social Life of the Church.
  - i. The Unity of the Disciples . . . . . 277
  - ii. The Faithfulness of Barnabas. . . . . 277
  - iii. The Unfaithfulness of Ananias and Sapphira . . . . . 277
- §3. The Influence of the Apostles.
  - i. The Popularity of the Twelve . . . . . 278
  - ii. The Arrest of the Twelve Apostles . . . . . 278
  - iii. The Trial before the Sanhedrin . . . . . 278
  - iv. The Acquittal of the Apostles. . . . . 279
- §4. The Choice of the Seven.
  - The Provision for the Benevolence . . . . . 280

*The Second Summary*

## PART THREE

## THE MINISTRY IN PALESTINE.

- §1. The Dispersion from Jerusalem.
  - i. The Arrest of Stephen . . . . . 281
  - ii. The Trial of Stephen . . . . . 281
  - iii. The Execution of Stephen . . . . . 285
  - iv. The Great Persecution in Jerusalem . . . . . 285

§2. The Ministry in Samaria.	
i. The Ministry of Philip the Evangelist . . . . .	286
ii. The Baptism of Simon Magus . . . . .	286
iii. The Mission of Peter and John . . . . .	286
iv. The Blasphemy of Simon Magus . . . . .	286
§3. The Conversion of an Ethiopian.	
The Call of the Holy Spirit to Philip . . . . .	287
§4. The Conversion of Saul of Tarsus.	
i. The Persecution at Damascus . . . . .	288
ii. The Ministry of Ananias to Saul . . . . .	288
iii. The Preaching of Christ by Saul . . . . .	289
iv. The Plot of the Jews against Saul . . . . .	289

*The Third Summary*

## PART FOUR

### THE GOSPEL FOR THE GENTILES.

§1. The Tour of Peter through Palestine.	
i. The Ministry at Lydda and Sharon . . . . .	291
ii. The Call of Peter to Joppa . . . . .	291
§2. The Gentile Pentecost at Cæsarea.	
i. The Vision of Cornelius . . . . .	292
ii. The Vision of Peter at Joppa . . . . .	292
iii. The Ministry of Peter at Cæsarea . . . . .	293
iv. The Action of the Church at Jerusalem . . . . .	294
§3. The Gentile Church at Antioch.	
i. The Founding of the Church . . . . .	295
ii. The Mission of Barnabas from Jerusalem . . . . .	296
iii. The Coming of Paul to Antioch . . . . .	296
iv. The Famine Mission to Jerusalem . . . . .	296
§4. The Persecution of Herod Agrippa I.	
i. The Death of the Apostle James . . . . .	297
ii. The Assault upon Peter . . . . .	297
iii. The Death of the Jailors . . . . .	298
iv. The Blasphemy and Death of the King . . . . .	298

*The Fourth Summary*

## PART FIVE

### THE FIRST GENTILE CHURCHES.

§1. The Ministry of Paul through Cyprus.	
i. The Call of Barnabas and Paul at Antioch . . . . .	299
ii. The Conversion of the Proconsul . . . . .	299
§2. The Ministry of Paul in Galatia.	
i. The Church at Antioch of Pisidia . . . . .	300
ii. The Church at Iconium . . . . .	303
iii. The Church at Lystra . . . . .	303
iv. The Church at Derbe . . . . .	304



§3. The Gentile Council at Jerusalem.	
i. The Controversy at Antioch . . . . .	304
ii. The Council at Jerusalem . . . . .	305
iii. The Action of the Council . . . . .	306
iv. The Delivery of the Decrees . . . . .	307
§4. The Visit to the Galatian Churches.	
The Second Missionary Journey . . . . .	307

*The Fifth Summary*

PART SIX

THE CHURCHES IN MACEDONIA, GREECE AND ASIA.

§1. The Call of Paul into Macedonia.	
The Divine Guidance toward Troas . . . . .	309
§2. The Ministry of Paul in Macedonia.	
i. The Church at Philippi . . . . .	309
ii. The Conversion of the Jailor . . . . .	310
iii. The Church at Thessalonica . . . . .	311
iv. The Church at Berea . . . . .	312
§3. The Ministry of Paul in Greece.	
i. The Apostle at Athens . . . . .	312
ii. The Church at Corinth . . . . .	313
iii. The Apostle before the Proconsul . . . . .	314
iv. The Return to Antioch in Syria . . . . .	314
§4. The Ministry of Paul in Asia.	
i. The Beginning of the Third Journey . . . . .	315
ii. The Ministry of Apollos at Ephesus . . . . .	315
iii. The Arrival of Paul at Ephesus . . . . .	315
iv. The Evangelization of Asia . . . . .	316

*The Sixth Summary*

PART SEVEN

THE MINISTRY OF PAUL AT ROME.

§1. The Journey via Corinth to Jerusalem.	
i. The Plan of Paul to Visit Rome . . . . .	317
ii. The Pagan Riot at Ephesus . . . . .	317
iii. The Journey into Greece and Return . . . . .	318
iv. The Journey from Miletus to Jerusalem . . . . .	321
§2. The Persecution of Paul by the Jews.	
i. The Report of Paul to the Church . . . . .	322
ii. The Seizure of Paul in the Temple . . . . .	322
iii. The Address from the Castle Steps . . . . .	323
iv. The Hearing before the Sanhedrin . . . . .	325
§3. The Transfer of Paul to Cæsarea.	
i. The Vision of Paul in the Castle . . . . .	326
ii. The Transfer to the Roman Governor . . . . .	326
iii. The Trial before Governor Felix . . . . .	328
iv. The Appeal of Paul to Cæsar . . . . .	330

- §4. The Transfer of Paul to Rome.  
 i. The Voyage via Asia to Crete . . . . . 334  
 ii. The Shipwreck on the Island of Melita . . . . . 334  
 iii. The Arrival of Paul at Rome . . . . . 337  
 iv. The Prison Ministry of Paul at Rome . . . . . 337

*The Closing Summary*

## THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION.

- The Gospel of Christ for the Romans . . . . . 341

### PART TWO

#### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE ROMANS.

- I. The Theology of Salvation: Justification by Faith.  
 The Preamble . . . . . 343  
 §1. The Revelation of the Wrath of God.  
 i. The Condemnation of the Gentiles . . . . . 343  
 ii. The Condemnation of the Jews . . . . . 344  
 iii. The Condemnation of All Men . . . . . 346  
 §2. The Revelation of the Righteousness of God.  
 i. The Great Fact of Human Redemption . . . . . 347  
 ii. The Covenant with Abraham . . . . . 347  
 iii. The Justification of Man by Faith . . . . . 349  
 iv. The Mediation of Jesus Christ . . . . . 349  
 II. The Theology of the Christian Life: Sanctification  
 by the Holy Spirit.  
 i. The Christian Life Defined . . . . . 350  
 ii. The Christian Life Analyzed . . . . . 352  
 iii. The Christian Life Realized . . . . . 352  
 iv. The Christian Life Glorified . . . . . 353  
 III. The Theology of History: The Purpose of God  
 through Israel.  
 i. The Introduction . . . . . 355  
 ii. The Past and the Promise of God . . . . . 355  
 iii. The Present and the Place of Israel . . . . . 357  
 iv. The Future and the Rejection of Israel . . . . . 358

*The Seven-Fold Doxology*

### PART THREE

#### THE EXHORTATION FOR THE ROMANS.

- §1. The Christian in Society.  
 i. The Daily Christian Life . . . . . 361  
 ii. The Christian in the State . . . . . 363  
 iii. The Summary . . . . . 363

- §2. The Christian in the Church.  
 i. The Relation of the Strong and Weak . . . . . 364  
 ii. The Relation of Jew and Gentile . . . . . 365

*The Benediction*

PART FOUR

THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

- The Apostle and the Romans.  
 i. The Ministry of Paul . . . . . 367  
 ii. The Salutations and Benediction . . . . . 368

THE FIRST EPISTLE TO THE CORINTHIANS

PART ONE

THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

- The Commendation of the Corinthians . . . . . 373

PART TWO

THE INSTRUCTION CONCERNING REPORTS.

- §1. The Report of Divisions in the Church.  
 i. The Party Spirit and the Gospel . . . . . 375  
 ii. The Party Spirit and the Church . . . . . 377  
 iii. The Party Spirit and the Minister . . . . . 378  
 §2. The Report of Immorality in the Church.  
 i. The Lust in the Congregation . . . . . 380  
 ii. The Litigation of the Corinthians . . . . . 381  
 iii. The Higher Spiritual Law . . . . . 381

PART THREE

THE INSTRUCTION IN REPLY TO INQUIRIES.

- §1. The Inquiry Concerning Marriage.  
 i. The Importance of Marriage . . . . . 383  
 ii. The Gospel of Marriage . . . . . 383  
 iii. The Care of Virgins . . . . . 384  
 §2. The Inquiry Concerning Sacrificial Meats.  
 i. The Apostle's Instruction . . . . . 385  
 ii. The Apostle's Exhortation . . . . . 388  
 §3. The Inquiry Concerning Public Worship.  
 i. The Place of Men and Women in the Church . . . 389  
 ii. The Observance of the Communion . . . . . 390  
 iii. The Gifts of the Holy Spirit . . . . . 391  
 iv. The Glory of All Gifts . . . . . 392  
 v. The Ministry of Prophecy . . . . . 394  
 §4. The Inquiry Concerning the Resurrection.  
 i. The Doctrine of the Resurrection . . . . . 396  
 ii. The Nature of the Resurrection . . . . . 397



## PART FOUR

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

- The Apostle's Plans, Exhortations and Salutations.
- i. The Collection for the Saints . . . . . 399
  - ii. The Plan of Paul to Visit Corinth . . . . . 399
  - iii. The Plans of Timothy and Apollos . . . . . 399
  - iv. The Closing Exhortation . . . . . 400
  - v. The Salutation and Benediction . . . . . 400

## THE SECOND EPISTLE TO THE CORINTHIANS

## PART ONE

## THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

- The Comfort of the Gospel . . . . . 403

## PART TWO

## THE INSTRUCTION CONCERNING THE CHURCH.

- §1. The Apostle and the Corinthians.  
The Relations of Paul with the Church . . . . 405
- §2. The Apostleship of Paul.  
i. The Office of an Apostle . . . . . 406  
ii. The Sufferings of an Apostle . . . . . 408  
iii. The Life of an Apostle . . . . . 409
- §3. The Appeal to the Corinthians.  
The Plea of a Great Heart . . . . . 410
- §4. The Completion of the Reconciliation.  
The Mission of Titus to Corinth . . . . . 411

## PART THREE

## THE INSTRUCTION CONCERNING THE COLLECTION.

- The Collection for the Poor at Jerusalem.  
The Gospel of Giving and Receiving . . . . . 413

## PART FOUR

## THE INSTRUCTION CONCERNING THE MINISTRY OF PAUL.

- The Great Apology of Paul.  
The Apostle's Defence of His Ministry . . . . 416

## PART FIVE

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

- The Warnings, Salutations and Benediction.
- i. The Warnings of the Apostle . . . . . 421
  - ii. The Salutations and Benediction . . . . . 422

## THE EPISTLE TO THE GALATIANS

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Divine Apostleship of Paul . . . . . 425

### PART TWO

#### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE GALATIANS.

##### §1. The Authority of Paul as an Apostle.

i. The Divine Call to the Ministry . . . . . 427

ii. The Agreement with the Apostles . . . . . 428

##### §2. The Doctrine of Salvation by Faith.

The Gospel in the Covenant and Law . . . . . 429

##### §3. The Decline of the Galatian Churches.

The Influence of Judaizing Missionaries . . . . . 431

### PART THREE

#### THE EXHORTATION FOR THE GALATIANS.

##### The Freedom and Responsibility of the Gospel.

i. The Liberty that is in Christ . . . . . 433

ii. The Duties of the Church . . . . . 434

### PART FOUR

#### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Glory of Paul in the Cross . . . . . 435

## THE EPISTLE TO THE EPHESIANS

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Great Saviour of the World . . . . . 439

### PART TWO

#### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE EPHESIANS.

##### The Salvation of the Gentiles.

i. The Doctrine of Salvation by Faith . . . . . 441

ii. The Doctrine of Sanctification by the Spirit . . . . . 442

### PART THREE

#### THE EXHORTATION FOR THE EPHESIANS.

##### The Gracious Appeal of Paul.

i. The Appeal to the Body of Believers . . . . . 445

ii. The Appeal to the Various Classes . . . . . 447

iii. The Appeal to the Church as an Army. . . . . 448

## PART FOUR

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Situation of Paul at Rome . . . . . 451

---

## THE EPISTLE TO THE PHILIPPIANS

## PART ONE

## THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Great Love of Paul for the Philippians. . . 455

## PART TWO

## THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE PHILIPPIANS.

## The Humble Mind of Christ.

i. The Ministry of Paul in Rome . . . . . 457

ii. The Missionary Plans for Philippi. . . . . 459

## PART THREE

## THE EXHORTATION FOR THE PHILIPPIANS.

## The Humble Mind of the Apostle.

i. The Loss and Gain in Christ . . . . . 461

ii. The Life and Work of the Church. . . . . 462

## PART FOUR

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Personal Word of Paul. . . . . 463

---

## THE EPISTLE TO THE COLOSSIANS

## PART ONE

## THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Report of Epaphras . . . . . 467

## PART TWO

## THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE COLOSSIANS.

## The Doctrine of Christ.

i. The Pre-eminence of Jesus Christ . . . . . 469

ii. The Ministry of Paul . . . . . 469

## PART THREE

## THE EXHORTATION FOR THE COLOSSIANS.

## The Life in Christ.

i. The Doctrinal Circumspection . . . . . 471

ii. The Moral Circumspection . . . . . 472

iii. The Social Circumspection . . . . . 473

iv. The Concluding Exhortation . . . . . 473



PART FOUR

THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Situation of Paul at Rome . . . . . 475

THE FIRST EPISTLE TO THE THESSALONIANS

PART ONE

THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Faith of the Thessalonians . . . . . 479

PART TWO

THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE THESSALONIANS.

§1. The Anxiety of Paul for the Thessalonians.

i. The Personal Relations with the Church . . . . 481

ii. The Social Life of the Church . . . . . 483

§2. The Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

The Manner and Time of Jesus' Return . . . . 483

PART THREE

THE EXHORTATION FOR THE THESSALONIANS.

The Duties of the Thessalonians.

The Care of the Church . . . . . 485

PART FOUR

THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Apostle's Closing Word . . . . . 487

THE SECOND EPISTLE TO THE THESSALONIANS

PART ONE

THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Apostle and the Thessalonians . . . . . 491

PART TWO

THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE THESSALONIANS.

The Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

The Conditions of Jesus' Return . . . . . 493

PART THREE

THE EXHORTATION FOR THE THESSALONIANS.

The Social Life of the Church.

The Circumspection Concerning Evil-Doers . . 495

## PART FOUR

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Peace of God.

The Salutation and Benediction. . . . . 497

---

THE FIRST EPISTLE TO TIMOTHY

## PART ONE

## THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Mission of Timothy at Ephesus.

The Salutation and Thanksgiving . . . . . 501

## PART TWO

## THE INSTRUCTION AND EXHORTATION FOR TIMOTHY.

## §1. The Message of Paul for the Church.

i. The Apostle's Charge . . . . . 503

ii. The Directions for the Congregation. . . . . 503

## §2. The Message of Paul for Timothy.

i. The Church and the Times . . . . . 505

ii. The Duty of Timothy as a Minister . . . . . 505

iii. The Duty of Timothy Toward Riches . . . . . 505

## PART THREE

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Duty of the Hour.

The Closing Exhortation and Benediction . . . 509

---

THE SECOND EPISTLE TO TIMOTHY

## PART ONE

## THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Desire of Paul for Timothy.

The Salutation and Thanksgiving . . . . . 513

## PART TWO

## THE EXHORTATION FOR TIMOTHY.

The Ministry of Timothy at Ephesus.

i. The Duty of Timothy in Society . . . . . 515

ii. The Duty of Timothy in the Church . . . . . 516

## PART THREE

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Last Words of Paul.

The Personal Messages of Paul . . . . . 519

## THE EPISTLE TO TITUS

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Manifestation of the Word . . . . . 523

### PART TWO

#### THE INSTRUCTION FOR TITUS.

##### The Ministry in Crete.

i. The Appointment of Ministers in Crete . . . . . 525

ii. The Character of Believers . . . . . 525

### PART THREE

#### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Call of Titus to Nicopolis . . . . . 527

## THE EPISTLE TO PHILEMON

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Faith and Love of Philemon . . . . . 531

### PART TWO

#### THE PLEA FOR ONESIMUS.

##### The Appeal to Philemon.

The Apostle's Guarantee for Onesimus . . . . . 533

### PART THREE

#### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Confidence of Paul in Philemon . . . . . 535

## THE EPISTLE TO THE HEBREWS

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

##### The Revelation of the Son of God.

i. The Greatness of the Son . . . . . 539

ii. The Pre-eminence of the Son . . . . . 539

### PART TWO

#### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE HEBREWS.

##### The New Priesthood and Sanctuary.

i. The High Priesthood of Jesus . . . . . 543

ii. The Nature of Jesus' High Priesthood . . . . . 545

iii. The High Priesthood of Melchizedek . . . . . 547

iv. The Better Covenant and Sanctuary . . . . . 549



## PART THREE

## THE EXHORTATION FOR THE HEBREWS.

## The Great Duty of the Hour.

- i. The Perils of Apostasy from the Faith . . . . . 555
- ii. The Manifold Triumphs of Faith . . . . . 556
- iii. The Great Importance of Faithfulness . . . . . 560
- iv. The Glory of the New Dispensation . . . . . 561

## PART FOUR

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

## The Admonitions, Salutations and Benediction.

- i. The Seven-Fold Concluding Admonition . . . . . 563
  - ii. The Benediction and Salutation . . . . . 564
- 

## THE EPISTLE OF JAMES

## PART ONE

## THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

## The Greeting of James.

- The Scattered Disciples in Palestine . . . . . 567

## PART TWO

## THE INSTRUCTION OF JAMES.

## The Meaning of the Present Life.

- i. The Law of Temptation . . . . . 569
- ii. The Law of the Word of God . . . . . 570
- iii. The Law of Love . . . . . 570
- iv. The Law of Faith . . . . . 571
- v. The Law of Humility . . . . . 571
- vi. The Law of Wisdom . . . . . 572
- vii. The Law of Salvation . . . . . 573

## PART THREE

## THE EXHORTATION OF JAMES.

## The Judgment to Come.

- The Wisdom of the Religious Life . . . . . 575

## PART FOUR

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

## The Duty Toward the Erring.

- The Salvation from Death . . . . . 577

## THE FIRST EPISTLE OF PETER

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Jewish Believers in Asia Minor . . . . . 581

### PART TWO

#### THE INSTRUCTION OF PETER.

##### The Greatness of Christianity.

- i. The Greatness of the Christian Salvation. . . . . 583
- ii. The Greatness of the Christian Life . . . . . 583
- iii. The Greatness of the Christian Church . . . . . 584

### PART THREE

#### THE EXHORTATION OF PETER.

##### The Church of Christ in the World.

- i. The Brotherhood of Believers. . . . . 587
- ii. The Christian Character and Conduct . . . . . 588
- iii. The Martyrdom for the Faith . . . . . 590
- iv. The Duties of the Church . . . . . 590

### PART FOUR

#### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Apostle's Closing Word . . . . . 593

## THE SECOND EPISTLE OF PETER

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

##### The Fellow-Believers in Christ.

The Entrance into the Kingdom of Christ . . . . . 597

### PART TWO

#### THE INSTRUCTION OF PETER.

##### The Eye-Witnesses to His Majesty.

The Ministry of the Church . . . . . 599

### PART THREE

#### THE EXHORTATION OF PETER.

##### The True Time of Last Things.

The Second Coming of Jesus Christ . . . . . 603

### PART FOUR

#### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

##### The Preparation for the Second Coming.

The Apostle's Closing Exhortation . . . . . 605

## THE FIRST EPISTLE OF JOHN

## PROLOGUE

## THE MANIFESTATION OF THE SPIRITUAL.

The Life of Christ.

The Testimony of Eye-Witnesses . . . . . 609

## PART ONE

## THE ETHICAL AND THE SPIRITUAL.

The Reality of the Christian Life.

The Salvation from Sin Unto Righteousness . . 611

## PART TWO

## THE RELATION OF THE ETHICAL AND THE SPIRITUAL.

The Sign of the Christian Life.

The Wonderful Love of God . . . . . 615

## PART THREE

## THE ONENESS OF THE ETHICAL AND THE SPIRITUAL.

The Supremacy of the Christian Life.

The Complete Assurance of Love . . . . . 617

## EPILOGUE

## THE SUPREMACY OF THE SPIRITUAL.

The Christian Triumph.

The Life in Jesus Christ . . . . . 619

---

THE SECOND EPISTLE OF JOHN

## PART ONE

## THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Elect Lady in Christ.

The Truth in Christ . . . . . 623

## PART TWO

## THE APOSTLE'S MESSAGE.

The Doctrine of Christ.

The True and the False in Christ . . . . . 625

## PART THREE

## THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Messages of John.

The Apostle's Plans . . . . . 627



## THE THIRD EPISTLE OF JOHN

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Walk in the Truth.

The Salutation and Thanksgiving . . . . . 631

### PART TWO

#### THE INSTRUCTION AND EXHORTATION OF JOHN.

The Commendations and Warnings.

i. The Commendation of Gaius . . . . . 633

ii. The Warning Against Diotrephes . . . . . 633

### PART THREE

#### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Messages of John . . . . . 635

## THE EPISTLE OF JUDE

### PART ONE

#### THE INTRODUCTION TO THE EPISTLE.

The Greeting of Jude.

The Called, Beloved and Kept . . . . . 639

### PART TWO

#### THE INSTRUCTION OF JUDE.

The Enemies of the Faith of Christ.

The Defense of the True Faith . . . . . 641

### PART THREE

#### THE EXHORTATION OF JUDE.

The Words of the Apostles.

The Importance of Circumspection . . . . . 643

### PART FOUR

#### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE.

The Only Wise God our Saviour.

The Great Intercessor . . . . . 645

## THE REVELATION OF JOHN

### PROLOGUE

#### THE MESSAGES FOR THE SEVEN CHURCHES.

- §1. The Introduction.  
The Superscription and Salutation . . . . . 649
- §2. The Great Revelation to John.  
The Vision of the Son of Man . . . . . 650
- §3. The Messages for the Churches.
  - i. The Message for the Church in Ephesus . . . . . 651
  - ii. The Message for the Church in Smyrna . . . . . 651
  - iii. The Message for the Church in Pergamos . . . . . 652
  - iv. The Message for the Church in Thyatira . . . . . 652
  - v. The Message for the Church in Sardis . . . . . 653
  - vi. The Message for the Church in Philadelphia . . . . . 653
  - vii. The Message for the Church in Laodicea . . . . . 654

### PART ONE

#### THE HEAVENLY VISION OF JOHN.

- The Lamb of God and the Sealed Book.
  - i. The Vision of the Throne . . . . . 655
  - ii. The Vision of the Sealed Book . . . . . 656
  - iii. The Vision of the Lamb of God . . . . . 656
  - iv. The Vision of the Multitude . . . . . 657

### PART TWO

#### THE VISION OF THE POWERS OF JUDGMENT.

- The Opening of the Sealed Book.
  - i. The Seal of Conquest . . . . . 659
  - ii. The Seal of War . . . . . 659
  - iii. The Seal of Famine . . . . . 659
  - iv. The Seal of Death . . . . . 659
  - v. The Seal of Judgment . . . . . 660
  - vi. The Seal of Wrath . . . . . 660
  - vii. The Seal of Silence . . . . . 661

### PART THREE

#### THE VISION OF THE JUDGMENT OF GOD.

- The Vision of the Seven Trumpets.
  - i. The Judgment on the Earth . . . . . 663
  - ii. The Judgment on the Sea . . . . . 663
  - iii. The Judgment on the Rivers and Fountains . . . . . 663
  - iv. The Judgment on the Sun and Stars . . . . . 663
  - v. The Judgment from Beneath . . . . . 664
  - vi. The Judgment from Babylon . . . . . 664
  - vii. The Kingdom of Our Lord . . . . . 667

PART FOUR

THE VISION OF THE KINGDOM OF OUR LORD.

The Triumph over the Dragon.	
i. The Vision of the Woman and the Dragon . . .	669
ii. The Victory over the Dragon . . . . .	669
iii. The Persecution of the Dragon . . . . .	670
iv. The Dragon and the Beast . . . . .	670
v. The Prophet of the Beast . . . . .	671
vi. The Triumph of the Lamb . . . . .	671
vii. The Judgment of the Lamb . . . . .	673

PART FIVE

THE VISION OF THE WRATH OF GOD.

Prologue. The Vision of the Vials . . . . .	675
i. The Vision of the First Vial . . . . .	675
ii. The Vision of the Second Vial . . . . .	675
iii. The Vision of the Third Vial . . . . .	675
iv. The Vision of the Fourth Vial . . . . .	676
v. The Vision of the Fifth Vial . . . . .	676
vi. The Vision of the Sixth Vial . . . . .	676
vii. The Vision of the Seventh Vial . . . . .	677
Epilogue. The Fall of Babylon the Great . . . . .	677

PART SIX

THE VISION OF THE WORD OF GOD.

The Lord our God, the Almighty, Reigneth.	
i. The Raiment of the Word of God . . . . .	683
ii. The Call of the Birds . . . . .	684
iii. The Capture of the Beast . . . . .	684
iv. The Binding of Satan . . . . .	684
v. The First Resurrection . . . . .	685
vi. The War of the Nations . . . . .	685
vii. The Last Judgment . . . . .	685

PART SEVEN

THE VISION OF THE HOLY CITY.

The New Heaven and Earth.	
i. The New Creation . . . . .	687
ii. The Vision of the New Jerusalem . . . . .	688

EPILOGUE

THE COMING OF THE LORD JESUS.

The Conclusion of the Revelation.	
The Last Words of the Vision . . . . .	691

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*





The Gospel  
According to Matthew





# Prologue:

## THE GENEALOGY OF JESUS CHRIST<sup>1</sup>

### THE HEBREW LINEAGE

#### THE DESCENT OF JESUS FROM ABRAHAM

##### The Three-Fold Messianic Ancestry

The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

\*

#### THE DESCENT FROM ABRAHAM TO DAVID

##### The Prophetic Ancestry of Jesus

- 2 Abraham begat Isaac;  
And Isaac begat Jacob;  
And Jacob begat Judah and his brethren;
- 3 And Judah begat Perez and Zerah of Tamar;  
And Pharez begat Esrom;  
And Esrom begat Aram;
- 4 And Aram begat Aminadab;  
And Aminadab begat Nahshon;  
And Nahshon begat Salmon;
- 5 And Salmon begat Boaz of Rahab;  
And Boaz begat Obed of Ruth;  
And Obed begat Jesse;
- 6 And Jesse begat David the king.

\* \*

#### THE DESCENT FROM DAVID TO THE CAPTIVITY

##### The Kingly Ancestry of Jesus

And David the king begat Solomon of her *that had been the wife* of Uriah;

- 7 And Solomon begat Rehoboam;  
And Rehoboam begat Abijah;  
And Abijah begat Asa;
- 8 And Asa begat Jehoshaphat;  
And Jehoshaphat begat Joram;  
And Joram begat Uzziah;

---

<sup>1</sup> The Gospel according to Matthew was written, very probably, about the time of the Fall of Jerusalem—A. D. 70—some think before, some after, and addressed to Jewish believers; a brilliant presentation of the Messiahship and Messianic Kingdom of Jesus as Prophet, Priest and King, and said to be “the most important book ever written.”

- 9 And Uziah begat Jotham;  
 And Jotham begat Ahaz;  
 And Ahaz begat Hezekiah;  
 10 And Hezekiah begat Manasseh;  
 And Manasseh begat Amon;  
 And Amon begat Josiah;  
 11 And Josiah begat Jechoniah and his brethren;  
 about the time they were carried away to Babylon.

\* \* \*

**THE DESCENT FROM THE CAPTIVITY TO CHRIST****The Priestly Ancestry of Jesus**

- 12 And after they were brought to Babylon,  
 Jechoniah begat Salathiel;  
 And Salathiel begat Zerubbabel;  
 13 And Zerubbabel begat Abiud;  
 And Abiud begat Eliakim;  
 And Eliakim begat Azor;  
 14 And Azor begat Sadoc;  
 And Sadoc begat Achim;  
 And Achim begat Eliud;  
 15 And Eliud begat Eleazar;  
 And Eleazar begat Matthan;  
 And Matthan begat Jacob;  
 16 And Jacob begat Joseph, the husband of Mary,  
 of whom was born Jesus, who was called Christ.

\*

17 So all the generations from Abraham to David *are* fourteen generations; and from David until the carrying away into Babylon *are* fourteen generations; and from the carrying away into Babylon unto Christ *are* fourteen generations.

## Part One

# THE PRIVATE LIFE OF JESUS CHRIST<sup>1</sup>

---

### §1. THE NATIVITY

#### I. THE VIRGIN BIRTH OF JESUS CHRIST

##### The First Fulfilment of Prophecy

Now the birth of Jesus Christ was on this wise: When as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Spirit. 19 Then Joseph her husband, being a just *man*, and not willing to make her a public example, was minded to put her away privily. 20 But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, "Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit. 21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins." 22 Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled that was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying:

\* \* \*

23 "Behold, a virgin shall be with child,  
And shall bring forth a son,  
And they shall call his name IMMANUEL;"<sup>2</sup>

\*

which, being interpreted is, God with us. 24 Then Joseph being raised from his sleep, did as the angel of the Lord had bidden him, and took unto him his wife: 25 and knew her not till she had brought forth her firstborn son: and he called his name Jesus.

---

#### II. THE GENTILE MAGI AT BETHLEHEM

##### The Second Fulfilment of Prophecy

2:1 Now when Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judæa in the days of Herod the king, behold, there came wise men from the east to Jerusalem, 2 saying, "Where is he that is born king of the Jews? for we have seen his star in the east, and are come to wor-

---

<sup>1</sup> The seven-fold prophetic identification of Jesus as the promised Messiah.  
<sup>2</sup> Isa. 7:14.

ship him." 3 When Herod the king had heard *these things*, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him. 4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born. 5 And they said unto him, "In Bethlehem of Judæa." For thus it is written through the prophet:

\* \* \*

6 "And thou Bethlehem, *in* the land of Judah,  
Art not the least among the princes of Judah:  
For out of thee shall come a Governor,  
That shall rule my people Israel."<sup>1</sup>

\*

7 Then Herod, when he had privily called the wise men, enquired of them diligently what time the star appeared. 8 And he sent them to Bethlehem, and said, "Go and search diligently for the young child; and when you have found *him*, bring me word again, that I may come and worship him also." 9 When they had heard the king, they departed; and, lo, the star, which they saw in the east, went before them, till it came and stood over where the young child was. 10 When they saw the star, they rejoiced with exceeding great joy. 11 And when they were come into the house, they saw the young child with Mary his mother, and fell down, and worshipped him: and when they had opened their treasures, they presented unto him gifts; gold, and frankincense, and myrrh. 12 And being warned of God in a dream that they should not return to Herod, they departed into their own country another way.

### III. THE FLIGHT FROM HEROD INTO EGYPT

#### a. The Third Fulfilment of Prophecy

13 And when they were departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared to Joseph in a dream, saying, "Arise and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be thou there until I bring thee word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him." 14 When he arose, he took the young child and his mother by night, and departed into Egypt: 15 and was there until the death of Herod: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, "Out of Egypt have I called my son."<sup>2</sup>

#### b. The Fourth Fulfilment of Prophecy

16 Then Herod, when he saw that he was mocked by the wise men, was exceeding wroth, and sent forth, and slew all the children that were in Bethlehem, and in all the borders thereof, from two

<sup>1</sup> Mic. 5:2.

<sup>2</sup> Hos. 11:1.



years old and under, according to the time which he had diligently enquired of the wise men. 17 Then was fulfilled that which was spoken by Jeremiah the prophet, saying:

\* \* \*

18 "In Ramah was there a voice heard,  
Lamentation, and weeping, and great mourning,  
Rachel weeping *for* her children,  
And would not be comforted,  
Because they are not."<sup>1</sup>

#### IV. THE HOME OF THE HOLY FAMILY IN GALILEE

##### The Fifth Fulfilment of Prophecy

19 But when Herod was dead, behold, an angel of the Lord appeareth in a dream to Joseph in Egypt, 20 saying, "Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and go into the land of Israel: for they are dead that sought the young child's life." 21 And he arose, and took the young child and his mother, and came into the land of Israel. 22 But when he heard that Archelaus did reign in Judæa in the room of his father Herod, he was afraid to go thither: notwithstanding, being warned of God in a dream, he turned aside into the parts of Galilee: 23 and he came and dwelt in a city called Nazareth: that it might be fulfilled that was spoken by the prophets, "He shall be called a Nazarene."<sup>2</sup>

#### §2. THE MANIFESTATION OF THE MESSIAH

##### I. THE COMING OF JOHN THE BAPTIST

##### The Sixth Fulfilment of Prophecy

3:1 In those days came John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judæa, 2 and saying, "Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand." 3 For this is he that was spoken of by the prophet Isaiah, saying:

\* \* \*

"The voice of one crying in the wilderness,  
Prepare ye the way of the Lord,  
Make his paths straight."<sup>3</sup>

\*

4 And the same John had his raiment of camel's hair, and a leathern girdle about his loins; and his meat was locusts and wild honey. 5 Then went out to him Jerusalem, and all Judæa, and all the region round about Jordan, 6 and were baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins. 7 But when he saw many of the

<sup>1</sup> Jer. 31:15.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. 11:1.

<sup>3</sup> Isa. 40:3.

Pharisees and Sadducees come to his baptism, he said unto them, "O generation of vipers, who hath warned you to flee from the wrath to come? 8 Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance: 9 and think not to say within yourselves, We have Abraham as *our* father: for I say unto you that God is able of these stones to raise up children unto Abraham. 10 And now also the axe is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. 11 I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance: but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit, and *with* fire: 12 whose fan *is* in his hand, and he will thoroughly purge his floor, and gather his wheat into the garner; but he will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire."

## II. THE BAPTISM OF JESUS BY JOHN

### The Three Persons of the Trinity

13 Then cometh Jesus from Galilee to the Jordan unto John, to be baptized of him. 14 But John forbade him, saying, "I have need to be baptized of thee, and comest thou to me?" 15 And Jesus answering said unto him, "Suffer *it to be so* now: for thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness." Then he suffered him. 16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him: 17 and lo a voice from heaven, saying, "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased."

## §3. THE GREAT TEMPTATION OF JESUS

### THE THREE-FOLD TEST OF CHRIST

#### The Ministry of Angels to Jesus

4:1 Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil.

#### a The Temptation of Jesus as Prophet

2 And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward hungry. 3 And when the tempter came to him, he said, "If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread." 4 But he answered and said, "It is written, 'Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.'"<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Deut. 8:3.

**b The Temptation of Jesus as High Priest**

5 Then the devil taketh him up into the holy city, and setteth him on a pinnacle of the temple, 6 and saith unto him, "If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written,

\* \* \*

'He shall give his angels charge concerning thee,  
And in *their* hands shall they bear thee up,  
Lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone.'"<sup>1</sup>

\*

7 Jesus saith unto him, "It is written, 'Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God.'"<sup>2</sup>

---

**c The Temptation of Jesus as King**

8 Again the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and showeth him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them; 9 and saith unto him, "All these things will I give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me." 10 Then saith Jesus unto him, "Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, 'Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.'"<sup>3</sup>

\*

11 Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

---

**§4. THE SETTLEMENT OF JESUS IN GALILEE****THE RESIDENCE AT CAPERNAUM BY THE SEA****The Seventh Fulfilment of Prophecy**

12 Now when Jesus had heard that John was cast into prison, he departed into Galilee: 13 and leaving Nazareth, he came and dwelt in Capernaum, which is upon the seacoast, in the borders of Zebulun and Naphtali: 14 that it might be fulfilled that was spoken by Isaiah the prophet, saying:

\* \* \*

15 "The land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali,  
By the way of the sea, beyond the Jordan,  
Galilee of the Gentiles;

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 91:11f.

<sup>2</sup> Deut. 6:16.

<sup>3</sup> Deut. 6:13.

- 16 The people that sat in darkness  
Saw great light;  
And to them that sat in the region and  
shadow of death  
Light is sprung up."
- 

### **The First Summary**

- 17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, "Repent:  
for the kingdom of heaven is at hand."



## Part Two

### THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN GALILEE<sup>1</sup>

---

#### §1. THE CALL OF JESUS TO DISCIPLESHIP

##### THE RESPONSE OF PETER, ANDREW, JAMES AND JOHN

###### The Following Galilæan Fishers of Men

And Jesus, walking by the sea of Galilee, saw two brothers, Simon called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea: for they were fishers. 19 And he saith unto them, "Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men." 20 And they straightway left their nets, and followed him. 21 And going on from thence he saw two other brothers, James *the son* of Zebedee, and John his brother, in a ship with Zebedee their father, mending their nets; and he called them. 22 And they immediately left the ship and their father, and followed him.

---

#### §2. THE GREAT FAME OF JESUS IN SYRIA

##### THE MINISTRY OF TEACHING AND HEALING

###### The Following Multitudes

23 And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people. 24 And his fame went throughout all Syria: and they brought unto him all sick people that were taken with divers diseases and torments, and those that were possessed with devils, and those that were epileptic, and those that had the palsy; and he healed them. 25 And there followed him great multitudes of people from Galilee, and *from* Decapolis, and *from* Jerusalem, and *from* Judæa, and *from* beyond the Jordan.

---

#### §3. THE GREAT SERMON ON THE MOUNT

##### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE DISCIPLES

###### The First Seven-Fold Discourse

5:1 And seeing the multitudes, he went up into a mountain:

---

<sup>1</sup> The ministry of Jesus Christ as prophet.

and when he was set, his disciples came unto him: 2 and he opened his mouth, and taught them, saying:

---

i. The Seven-Fold Beatitude

3 "Blessed *are* the poor in spirit:  
For theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

\* \* \*

4 Blessed *are* they that mourn:  
For they shall be comforted.

\*

5 Blessed *are* the meek:  
For they shall inherit the earth.

\*

6 Blessed *are* they that do hunger and  
thirst after righteousness:  
For they shall be filled.

\*

7 Blessed *are* the merciful:  
For they shall obtain mercy.

\*

8 Blessed *are* the pure in heart:  
For they shall see God.

\*

9 Blessed *are* the peacemakers:  
For they shall be called the children of  
God.

\*

10 Blessed *are* they that are persecuted for  
righteousness' sake:  
For theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

\* \* \*

11 Blessed are you, when *men* shall revile you,  
and persecute *you*, and shall say all manner of evil  
against you falsely, for my sake. 12 Rejoice, and  
be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven:  
for so persecuted they the prophets that were before  
you.

---

ii. The Salt of the Earth

13 You are the salt of the earth: but if the salt  
have lost its savor, wherewith shall it be salted? it  
is thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out,  
and to be trodden under foot of men.

Chapter 5:2-13

### iii. The Light of the World

14 You are the light of the world: A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid. 15 Neither do men light a candle, and put it under a bushel, but on a candlestick; and it giveth light unto all that are in the house. 16 Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

### iv. The Fulfilment of the Law and Prophets

17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil.

\* \* \*

18 For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled. 19 Whosoever shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven; but whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

\*

20 For I say unto you, that except your righteousness shall exceed *the righteousness* of the scribes and Pharisees, you shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

\* \*

21 You have heard that it was said by them of old time, 'Thou shalt not kill; and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment.'<sup>1</sup> 22 but I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment; and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca! shall be in danger of the council; but whosoever shall say, Thou fool! shall be in danger of hell fire. 23 Therefore if thou bring thy gift to the altar, and there rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee, 24 leave there thy gift before the altar, and go thy way; first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come and offer thy gift. 25 Agree with thine adversary quickly, while thou art in the way with him; lest at any time the adversary deliver thee to the judge, and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and thou be cast into prison. 26 Verily I say unto

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 20:13.

you, Thou shalt by no means come out thence, till thou hast paid the uttermost farthing.

\* \* \*

27 You have heard that it was said by them of old time, 'Thou shalt not commit adultery:'<sup>1</sup> 28 but I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery with her already in his heart. 29 And if thy right hand offend thee, pluck it out, and cast *it* from thee; for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not *that* thy whole body shall be cast into hell. 30 And if thy right hand offend thee, cut it off and cast *it* from thee; for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not *that* thy whole body shall be cast into hell.

\*\* \*\*

31 It hath been said, 'Whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement:'<sup>2</sup> 32 but I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, save for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery: and whosoever shall marry her that is divorced committeth adultery.

\* \* \* \*

33 Again, you have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, 'Thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shall perform unto the Lord thine oaths:'<sup>3</sup> 34 but I say unto you, Swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne; 35 nor by the earth, for it is his footstool; neither by Jerusalem, for it is the city of the great king. 36 Neither shall thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair white or black. 37 But let your communications be, Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever is more than these cometh of evil.

\*\* \* \* \*

38 You have heard that it hath been said, 'An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth:'<sup>4</sup> 39 but I say unto you, That you resist not evil; but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also. 40 And if any man will sue thee at the law, and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloke also. 41 And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain. 42 Give to

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 20:14.

<sup>2</sup> Deut. 24:1 f.

<sup>3</sup> Deut. 23:21.

<sup>4</sup> Lev. 24:19 f.



him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee, turn thou not away.

\*\*\* \* \*\*\*

43 You have heard that it hath been said, 'Thou shalt love thy neighbor, and hate thine enemy:'<sup>1</sup> 44 but I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them that despitefully use you, and persecute you; 45 that you may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust. 46 For if you love them that love you, what reward have you? do not even the publicans the same? 47 And if you salute your brethren only, what do ye more *than others*? do not even the publicans so? 48 Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

#### v. The Doing of Righteousness

6:1 Take heed that you do not your righteousness before men to be seen of them; otherwise you have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

\*

2 Wherefore when thou doest *thine* alms, do not sound a trumpet before thee as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward. 3 But when thou doest alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth; 4 that thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret shall reward thee openly.

\* \*

5 And when thou prayest, thou shalt not be as the hypocrites *are*; for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. 6 But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret shall reward thee openly. 7 But when you pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen *do*: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. 8 Be not ye therefore

<sup>1</sup> Lev. 19:18.

like unto them: for your Father knoweth what things you have need of before you ask him. 9 After this manner therefore pray ye:<sup>1</sup>

\* \* \*

Our Father who art in heaven,

\*

Hallowed be thy name.

\*

10 Thy kingdom come.

\*

Thy will be done in earth as *it is* in heaven.

\*

11 Give us this day our daily bread.

\*

12 And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

\*

13 And lead us not into temptation,

\*

But deliver us from evil:

\*

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen.

\* \* \*

14 For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you; 15 but if you forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

\* \* \*

16 Moreover when you fast, be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance: for they disfigure their faces, that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward. 17 But thou when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face; 18 that thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

#### vi. The Sayings Against Worldly-Mindedness

19 Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and where

---

<sup>1</sup> The seven-fold prayer begins with an invocation; contains seven petitions, and closes with a doxology.

thieves break through and steal; 20 but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

\*

21 For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

\* \*

22 The light of the body is the eye; if therefore thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light. 23 But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If therefore the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

\* \* \*

24 No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. You cannot serve God and mammon.

\* \* \* \*

25 Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what you shall eat, or what you shall drink; nor yet for your body, what you shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

\* \* \* \* \*

26 Behold the fowls of the air: for they sow not, neither do they reap, nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are you not much better than they?

\* \* \* \* \*

27 Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

\* \* \* \* \*

28 And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin; 29 and yet I say unto you that even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these. 30 Wherefore, if God so clothed the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, *shall he* not much more *clothe* you, O ye of little faith?

\*

31 Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed? 32 (For after all these things



do the Gentiles seek;) for your heavenly Father knoweth that you have need of all these things. 33 But seek ye first the kingdom of heaven, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you. 34 Take therefore no thought for the morrow; for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof.

#### vii. The Exhortation Against Criticism

7:1 Judge not, that you be not judged. 2 For with what judgment you judge, you shall be judged; and with what measure you mete, it shall be measured to you again. \*

3 And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, and considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye? 4 Or how wilt thou say to thy brother, Let me pull out the mote out of thine eye; and, behold, a beam is in thine own eye? 5 Thou hypocrite; first cast out the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast out the mote out of thy brother's eye.

\* \*

6 Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn and rend you. \* \* \*

7 Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and you shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you: 8 for every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened. \*\* \*

9 Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will he give him a stone? 10 or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent? 11 If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him? 12 Therefore all things whatsoever you would that men do to you, do ye even so to them: for this is the law and the prophets.

\*\* \* \*\*

13 Enter ye in at the strait gate: For wide is the gate, and broad is the way, that leadeth to destruc-

Chapter 6:33-7:13



tion, and many there be that go in thereat; 14 because strait *is* the gate, and narrow *is* the way, that leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

\*\* \*\* \*

15 Beware of false prophets, that come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. 16 You shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? 17 Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit. 18 A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither *can* a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit. 19 Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. 20 Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them.

\*\*\* \* \*\*\*

21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven. 22 Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works? 23 And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, you that work iniquity.

\*

24 Therefore whosoever heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock: 25 and the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not: for it was grounded upon a rock. 26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand: 27 and the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell: and great was the fall of it."

---

### **The Second Summary**

28 And it came to pass, that when Jesus had ended these sayings, the people were astonished at his doctrine: 29 for he taught them as *one* having authority, and not as the scribes.



## Part Three

### THE MINISTRY IN GALILEE CONTINUED<sup>1</sup>

---

#### §1. THE HEALING MINISTRY OF JESUS

##### I. THE CLEANSING OF A LEPER

###### The Leper's Request and Faith in Jesus

And when he was come down from the mountain, great multitudes followed him. 2 And, behold, there came a leper and worshipped him, saying, "Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean." 3 And Jesus put forth *his* hand, and touched him, saying, "I will: be thou clean." And immediately his leprosy was cleansed. 4 And Jesus said unto him, "See that thou tell no man; but go thy way, show thyself to the priest, and offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony unto them."<sup>2</sup>

---

##### II. THE HEALING OF A CENTURION'S SERVANT

###### The Great Faith of a Gentile Soldier

5 And when Jesus had entered into Capernaum, there came unto him a centurion, beseeching him, 6 and saying, "Lord, my servant lieth at home, sick of the palsy, grievously tormented." 7 And Jesus saith unto him, "I will come and heal him." 8 The centurion answered and said, "Lord, I am not worthy that thou shouldst come under my roof; but speak the word only, and my servant shall be healed. 9 For I am a man under authority, having soldiers under me: and I say to this *man*, 'Go,' and he goeth; and to another 'Come,' and he cometh; and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he doeth *it*." 10 And when Jesus heard *it* he marvelled, and said to them that followed, "Verily, I say unto you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel. 11 And I say unto you, that many shall come from the east and west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven. 12 But the children of the kingdom shall be cast out into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth." 13 And Jesus said unto the centurion, "Go thy way; as thou hast believed, so be it unto thee." And his servant was healed in the selfsame hour.

---

<sup>1</sup> The ministry of Jesus Christ as high priest.

<sup>2</sup> Lev. 14:1f.

## III. THE HEALING OF PETER'S WIFE'S MOTHER

## The Home of Simon Peter at Capernaum

14 And when Jesus was come into Peter's house, he saw his wife's mother laid, and sick of a fever. 15 And he touched her hand, and the fever left her: and she arose, and ministered unto them.

## IV. THE HEALING OF THE MULTITUDE

The First Fulfilment of Prophecy<sup>1</sup>

16 When even was come, they brought unto him many that were possessed with devils: and he cast out the spirits with *his* word, and he healed all that were sick, 17 that it might be fulfilled that was spoken by Isaiah the prophet, saying, "Himself took our infirmities, and bare *our* sicknesses."<sup>2</sup>

## §2. THE DEPARTURE OF JESUS INTO GADARA

## I. THE WOULD-BE FOLLOWERS OF JESUS

## The Great Cost of Discipleship

18 Now when Jesus saw the great multitudes about him, he gave commandment to depart unto the other side. 19 And a certain scribe came, and said unto him, "Master, I will follow thee whithersoever thou goest." 20 And Jesus saith unto him, "The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air *have* nests, but the Son of man hath not where to lay *his* head." 21 And another of his disciples said unto him, "Lord, suffer me first to go and bury my father." 22 But Jesus said unto him, "Follow me: and let the dead bury their dead."

## II. THE STILLING OF A GREAT TEMPEST

## The Obedience of the Winds and Sea

23 And when he had entered into a ship, his disciples followed him. 24 And behold there arose a great tempest in the sea, insomuch that the ship was covered with the waves: but he was asleep. 25 And his disciples came to *him*, and awoke him, saying, "Lord, save us: we perish." 26 And he saith unto them, "Why are you fearful, O ye of little faith?" Then he arose, and rebuked the winds and the sea; and there was a great calm. 27 But the men marvelled, saying, "What manner of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?"

<sup>1</sup> There are seven fulfilments of prophecy in the public life of Jesus.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. 53:4.



### III. THE HEALING OF THE GADARENE DEMONIACS

#### The Rejection of Jesus in Gadara

28 And when he was come to the other side into the country of the Gergesenes, there met him two possessed with devils, coming out of the tombs, exceeding fierce, so that no man might pass by that way. 29 And, behold, they cried out, saying, "What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God? art thou come hither to torment us before the time?" 30 And there was a good way off from them a herd of many swine feeding. 31 So the devils besought him, saying, "If thou cast us out, suffer us to go away into the herd of swine." 32 And he said unto them, "Go." And when they were come out, they went into the herd of swine: and, behold, the whole herd of swine ran violently down a steep place into the sea, and perished in the waters. 33 And they that kept them fled, and went their ways into the city, and told every thing, and what was befallen the possessed of the devils. 34 And, behold, the whole city came out to meet Jesus: and when they saw him, they besought *him* that he would depart out of their coasts.

### §3. THE RETURN OF JESUS INTO GALILEE

#### I. THE MAN FORGIVEN AND HEALED

##### The Charge of Blasphemy

9:1 And he entered into a ship, and passed over, and came into his own city. 2 And, behold, they brought to him a man sick of the palsy, lying on a bed: and Jesus seeing their faith, said unto the sick of the palsy, "Son, be of good cheer: thy sins be forgiven thee." 3 And, behold, certain of the scribes said within themselves, "This *man* blasphemeth." 4 And Jesus knowing their thoughts said, "Wherefore think ye evil in your hearts? 5 For which is easier, to say, '*Thy* sins be forgiven thee;' or to say, Arise and walk? 6 But that you may know that the Son of man hath power on earth to forgive sins (then saith he to the sick of the palsy), Arise, take up thy bed, and go unto thine house." 7 And he arose and departed to his house. 8 But when the multitudes saw *it*, they marvelled, and glorified God, who had given such power unto men.

#### II. THE CALL OF MATTHEW THE PUBLICAN

##### a. The Obedience of Matthew

9 And as Jesus passed forth from thence, he saw a man named Matthew, sitting at the receipt of customs: and he saith unto him, "Follow me." And he arose, and followed him.

*Chapter 8:28-9:9*

### b. The Feast of Matthew for Jesus

10 And it came to pass, as Jesus sat at meat in the house, behold, many publicans and sinners came and sat down with him and his disciples. 11 And when the Pharisees saw *it*, they said unto the disciples, "Why eatest your master with publicans and sinners?" 12 But when Jesus heard *that*, he said unto them, "They that are whole need not a physician, but they that are sick." 13 But go ye and learn what *that* meaneth, 'I will have mercy, and not sacrifice;' for I am not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."

---

### c. The Meaning of Matthew's Feast

14 Then came to him the disciples of John, saying, "Why do we and the Pharisees fast oft, but thy disciples fast not?" 15 And Jesus said unto them, "Can the children of the bridechamber mourn, as long as the bridegroom is with them? but the day will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, and then shall they fast. 16 No man putteth a piece of new cloth unto an old garment, for that which is put in to fill it up taketh from the garment, and the rent is made worse. 17 Neither do men put new wine in old bottles: else the bottles break, and the new wine runneth out, and the bottles perish: but they put new wine into new bottles, and both are preserved."

---

## III. THE RULER'S DAUGHTER AND THE INFIRM WOMAN

### The Widespread Fame of Jesus in Syria

18 While he spoke these things unto them, behold, there came a certain ruler, and worshipped him, saying, "My daughter is even now dead: but come and lay thy hand upon her, and she shall live." 19 And Jesus arose, and followed him, and *so did* his disciples. 20 And, behold, a woman, who was diseased with an issue of blood twelve years, came behind *him*, and touched the hem of his garment: 21 for she said within herself, "If I may but touch his garment, I shall be whole." 22 But Jesus turned himself about, and when he saw her, he said, "Daughter, be of good cheer; thy faith hath made thee whole." And the woman was made whole from that hour. 23 And when Jesus came into the ruler's house, and saw the minstrels and the people making a noise, 24 he said unto them, "Give place: for the maid is not dead, but sleepeth." And they laughed him to scorn. 25 But when the people were put forth, he went in and took her by the

Chapter 9:10-25

hand, and the maid arose. 26 And the fame hereof went abroad in all that land.

---

#### IV. THE BLIND MEN AND THE DEMONIAK

##### a. The Healing of Two Blind Men

27 And when Jesus departed thence, two blind men followed him, crying, and saying, "*Thou* son of David, have mercy on us." 28 And when he was come into the house, the blind men came to him: and Jesus said unto them, "Believe ye that I am able to do this?" They said unto him, "Yea, Lord." 29 Then touched he their eyes, saying, "According to your faith be it unto you." 30 And their eyes were opened; and Jesus straitly charged them, saying, "See *that* no man know it." 31 But they, when they had departed, spread abroad his fame in all that country.

---

##### b. The Healing of the Dumb Demoniac

32 As they went out, behold they brought to him a dumb man, possessed with a devil. 33 And when the devil was cast out, the dumb spoke: and the multitude marvelled, saying, "It was never so seen in Israel." 34 But the Pharisees said, "He casteth out devils through the prince of devils."

---

### §4. THE MISSION OF THE TWELVE TO THE JEWS

#### I. THE GREAT COMPASSION OF JESUS

##### The Ministry Through Galilee

35 And Jesus went about all the cities and villages, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every sickness and every disease among the people. 36 But when he saw the multitudes, he was moved with compassion on them, because they fainted, and were scattered abroad, as sheep having no shepherd. 37 Then saith he unto the disciples, "The harvest truly *is* plenteous, but the labourers *are* few; 38 pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he will send forth labourers into his harvest."

---

#### II. THE HEALING MISSION OF THE TWELVE

##### The Great Power of the Apostles

10:1 And when he had called unto *him* his twelve disciples, he gave them power *against* unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease.

*Chapter 9:26-10:1*

## III. THE ORGANIZATION OF APOSTLES

## The Names of the Twelve

2 Now the names of the twelve apostles are these: The first, Simon, who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother; James *the son* of Zebedee, and John his brother; 3 Philip and Bartholomew; Thomas, and Matthew the publican; James *the son* of Alphæus, and Lebbaeus, whose surname was Thaddæus; 4 Simon the Canaanite, and Judas Iscariot [who also betrayed him].

## IV. THE COMMISSION OF JESUS TO THE TWELVE

## The Second Seven-Fold Discourse

5 These twelve Jesus sent forth, and commanded them, saying:

\* \* \*

“Go not into the way of the Gentiles, and into *any* city of the Samaritans enter ye not: 6 but go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

\*

7 And as you go, preach, saying, The kingdom of heaven is at hand.

\*

8 Heal the sick,

\*

Cleanse the lepers,

\*

Raise the dead,

\*

Cast out devils:

\*

Freely you have received, freely give.

\* \*

9 Provide neither gold,<sup>1</sup> nor silver, nor brass in your purses, 10 nor scrip for *your* journey, neither two coats, nor shoes, nor yet staves: for the workman is worthy of his meat.

\* \* \*

11 And into whatsoever town or city you shall enter, inquire who in it is worthy; and there abide till you go thence. 12 And when you come into a house, salute it. 13 And if the house be worthy, let your peace come upon it: but if it be not worthy, let your peace return to you. 14 And whosoever shall

<sup>1</sup> The seven-fold command against care.



not receive you, nor hear your words, when you depart out of that house or city, shake off the dust of your feet. 15 Verily I say unto you, it shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah in the day of judgment, than for that city.

\*\* \*\*

16 Behold, I send you forth as sheep in the midst of wolves; be ye therefore wise as serpents and harmless as doves. 17 But beware of men: for they will deliver you up to the councils, and they will scourge you in their synagogues; 18 and you shall be brought before the governors and kings for my sake, for a testimony against them and the Gentiles. 19 But when they deliver you up, take no thought how or what you shall speak; for it shall be given you in that same hour what you shall speak. 20 For it is not you that speak, but the spirit of your Father that speaketh in you. 21 And the brother shall deliver up the brother to death, and the father the child; and the children shall rise up against *their* parents, and cause them to be put to death. 22 And you shall be hated of all *men* for my name's sake: but he that endureth to the end shall be saved. 23 But when they persecute you in this city, flee ye unto another: for verily I say unto you, you shall not have gone over the cities of Israel, till the Son of man be come.

\*\* \* \*\*

24 The disciple is not above *his* master, nor the servant above his lord. 25 It is enough for the disciple that he be as his master, and the servant as his lord. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebub, how much more *shall they call* them of his household? 26 Fear them not therefore: for there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; and hid, that shall not be known. 27 What I tell you in darkness, that speak ye in light: and what you hear in the ear, that preach ye upon the house-tops.

\*\* \* \* \*

28 And fear not them that kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell. 29 Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing? and one of them shall not fall on the ground without your Father. 30 But the very hairs of your head are all

numbered. 31 Fear not therefore, you are of more value than many sparrows.

\*\*\* \* \*\*\*

32 Whosoever therefore shall confess me before men, him will I confess before my Father who is in heaven. 33 But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father who is in heaven.

\*

34 Think not that I am come to send peace on the earth: I came not to send peace, but a sword. 35 For I came to set a man at variance against his father, and the daughter against her mother, and the daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law. 36 And a man's foes *shall be* they of his own household.

\*

37 He that loveth father and mother more than me, is not worthy of me; and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me.

\*

38 And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me.

\*

39 He that findeth his life shall lose it; and he that loseth his life for my sake shall find it.

\*

40 He that receiveth you receiveth me; and he that receiveth me, receiveth him that sent me.

\*

41 He that receiveth a prophet in the name of a prophet shall receive a prophet's reward; and he that receiveth a righteous man in the name of a righteous man shall receive a righteous man's reward.

\*

42 And whosoever shall give to drink unto one of these little ones a cup of cold *water* in the name of a disciple, verily I say unto you, he shall in no wise lose his reward."

---

### The Third Summary

11:1 And it came to pass, that when Jesus had made an end of commanding his twelve disciples, he departed thence to teach and to preach in their cities.

## Part Four

### THE MINISTRY IN GALILEE CONTINUED <sup>1</sup>

---

#### §1. THE MESSIAHSHIP OF JESUS

##### I. THE INQUIRY OF JESUS BY JOHN THE BAPTIST

###### a. The Seven-Fold Response of Jesus

Now when John had heard in the prison the works of Christ, he sent two of his disciples, <sup>3</sup> and said unto him, "Art thou he that should come, or do we look for another?" <sup>4</sup> Jesus answered and said unto them:

\* \* \*

"Go and show John again those things which you do hear and see:

\*

5 The blind receive their sight,

\*

And the lame walk,

\*

The lepers are cleansed,

\*

And the deaf hear,

\*

The dead are raised up,

\*

And the poor have the gospel preached to them.

\*

6 And blessed is *he*, whosoever shall not be offended in me."

---

###### b. The Witness of Jesus Concerning John

7 And as they departed, Jesus began to say unto the multitude concerning John: "What went you out into the wilder-

---

<sup>1</sup> The ministry of Jesus Christ as King of Israel.

ness to see? A reed shaken with the wind? 8 But what went you out to see? A man clothed in soft raiment? Behold, they that wear soft *clothing* are in king's houses. 9 But what went you out to see? A prophet? Yea, I say unto you, and more than a prophet. 10 For this is *he* of whom it is written:

\* \* \*

'Behold, I send my messenger before thy face,  
Who shall prepare thy way before thee.'<sup>1</sup>

\*

11 Verily I say unto you, Among them that are born of women there hath not risen a greater than John the Baptist: notwithstanding he that is least in the kingdom of heaven is greater than he. 12 And from the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of heaven suffereth violence, and the violent take it by force. 13 For all the prophets and the law prophesied until John. 14 And if you will receive *it*, this is Elijah who was to come. 15 He that hath ears to hear let him hear. 16 But whereunto shall I liken this generation? It is like unto children sitting in the markets, and calling unto their fellows, 17 and saying, 'We have piped unto you, and you have not danced; we have mourned unto you, and you have not lamented.' 18 For John came neither eating nor drinking, and they say, 'He hath a devil.' 19 The Son of man came eating and drinking, and they say, 'Behold a man gluttonous, and a winebibber, a friend of publicans and sinners.' But wisdom is justified of her children."

## II. THE CONDEMNATION OF THE CITIES

### The Seven-Fold Saying of Jesus

20 Then began he to upbraid the cities wherein most of his mighty works were done, because they repented not: 21 "Woe unto thee, Chorazin! Woe unto thee, Bethsaida! for if the mighty works, that were done in you, had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. 22 But I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment, than for you. 23 And thou, Capernaum, that art exalted unto heaven, shall be brought down to hell: for if the mighty works, that have been done in thee, had been done in Sodom, it would have remained until this day. 24 But I say unto you, That it shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment than for thee."

<sup>1</sup> Mal. 3:1.



### III. THE GRACIOUS INVITATION OF CHRIST

#### The Seven-Fold Saying of Jesus

25 At that time Jesus answered and said:

\* \* \*

"I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes. 26 Even so, Father: for so it seemeth good in thy sight.

\*

27 All things are delivered unto me of my Father:

\*

And no man knoweth the Son, but the Father:

\*

Neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and *he* to whomsoever the Son will reveal *him*.

\*

28 Come unto me, all *ye* that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

\*

29 Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart; and you shall find rest unto your souls.

\*

30 For my yoke *is* easy, and my burden is light."

---

## §2. THE LORDSHIP OF JESUS CHRIST

### I. THE LORDSHIP OF THE SABBATH

#### a. The Disciples Plucking Corn

12:1 At that time Jesus went on the sabbath day through the corn; and his disciples were hungry, and began to pluck the ears of corn, and to eat. 2 But when the Pharisees saw *it*, they said unto him "Behold, thy disciples do that which it is not lawful to do on the sabbath day." 3 But he said unto them, "Have you not read what David did, when he was hungry, and they that were with him: 4 how he entered into the house of God, and did eat the shewbread, which it was not lawful for him to eat, neither for them that were with him, but only for the priests? 5 Or have you not read in the law, how that on the sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the sabbath, and are blameless? 6 But I say unto you, That in this place is *one* greater than the temple. 7 But if you had known what *this*

*Chapter 11:25-12:7*

meaneth, 'I will have mercy, and not sacrifice,' you would not have condemned the guiltless. 8 For the Son of man is lord even of the sabbath day."

**b. The Withered Hand Restored on the Sabbath**

9 And when he had departed thence, he went into their synagogue: 10 and, behold, there was a man who had *his* hand withered. And they asked him, saying, "Is it lawful to heal on the sabbath days?" that they might accuse him. 11 And he said unto them, "What man shall there be among you, that shall have one sheep, and if it fall into a pit on the sabbath day, will he not lay hold on it, and lift *it* out? 12 How much then is a man better than a sheep? Wherefore it is lawful to do well on the sabbath days." 13 Then saith he to the man, "Stretch forth thy hand." And he stretched it forth; and it was restored whole, like as the other. 14 Then the Pharisees went out, and held a council against him, how they might destroy him.

**II. THE TRUE LORDSHIP OF JESUS**

**The Second Fulfilment of Prophecy**

15 But when Jesus knew *it*, he withdrew himself from thence, and great multitudes followed him, and he healed them all; 16 and charged them that they should not make him known; 17 that it might be fulfilled that was spoken by Isaiah the prophet, saying:

\* \* \*

- 18 "Behold my servant, whom I have chosen;  
My beloved, in whom my soul is well pleased:  
I will put my Spirit upon him,  
And he shall show judgment to the Gentiles.  
19 He shall not strive, nor cry;  
Neither shall any man hear his voice in the  
streets.  
20 A bruised reed shall he not break,  
And smoking flax shall he not quench,  
Till he send forth judgment unto victory.  
21 And in his name shall the Gentiles trust."<sup>1</sup>

**III. THE CONDEMNATION OF BLASPHEMY<sup>2</sup>**

**The Third Seven-Fold Discourse**

22 Then was brought unto him one possessed with a devil, blind, and dumb: and he healed him, insomuch that the blind and

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 42:1f.

<sup>2</sup>The lordship of Jesus over evil. Lange, Matthew: ad loc.

dumb both spoke and saw. 23 And all the people were amazed, and said, "Is not this the son of David?" 24 But when the Pharisees heard *it*, they said, "This *fellow* doth not cast out devils, but by Beelzebub the prince of devils." 25 And Jesus knew their thoughts, and said unto them:

\*

"Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation; and every city or house divided against itself shall not stand: 26 and if Satan cast out Satan, he is divided against himself; how shall then his kingdom stand? 27 And if I by Beelzebub cast out devils, by whom do your children cast *them* out? therefore they shall be your judges. 28 But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come upon you. 29 Or else how can one enter into a strong man's house, and spoil his goods, except he first bind the strong man? and then he will spoil his house.

\* \*

30 He that is not with me is against me; and he that gathereth not with me scattereth abroad.

\* \* \*

31 Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy *against* the *Holy* Spirit shall not be forgiven unto men. 32 And whosoever speaketh a word against the Son of man, it shall be forgiven him; but whosoever speaketh against the Holy Spirit, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this world, neither in the world to come.<sup>1</sup>

\*\* \*\*

33 Either make the tree good, and his fruit good; or else make the tree corrupt, and its fruit corrupt: for the tree is known by *his* fruits. 34 O generation of vipers, how can you, being evil, speak good things? for out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh. 35 A good man out of the good treasure of the heart bringeth forth good things: and an evil man out of the evil treasure bringeth forth evil things. 36 But I say unto you, That every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give an account thereof in the day of judgment. 37 For by thy words thou

---

<sup>1</sup> The unpardonable sin.

shalt be justified, and by thy words thou shalt be condemned.

\*

38 Then certain of the scribes and Pharisees answered, saying, "Master, we would see a sign from thee." 39 But he answered and said unto them:

\* \* \* \* \*

"An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall be no sign given to it, but the sign of the prophet Jonah: 40 for as Jonah was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the herth.

\* \* \* \* \*

41 The men of Nineveh shall rise in judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: because they repented at the preaching of Jonah; and, behold, a greater than Jonah *is* here. 42 The Queen of the south shall rise up in the judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: for she came from the uttermost parts of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and, behold, a greater than Solomon *is* here.

\* \* \* \* \*

43 When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none. 44 Then he saith, 'I will return into my house from whence I came out;' and when he is come, he findeth *it* empty, swept, and garnished. 45 Then goeth he, and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter in and dwell there: and the last state of that man is worse than the first. Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation."

---

#### IV. THE TRUE SUBJECTS OF THE KINGDOM

##### The Messianic Kindred of Jesus

46 While he yet talked to the people, behold, *his* mother and his brothers stood without, desiring to speak with him. 47 Then one said to him, "Behold, thy mother and thy brothers stand without, desiring to speak with thee." 48 But he answered and said unto him that told him, "Who is my mother? and who are my brothers?" 49 And he stretched forth his hand toward his disciples, and said, "Behold my mother and my brothers. 50 For whosoever shall do the will of my Father who is in heaven, the same is my brother, and sister, and mother."

*Chapter 12:38-50*



### §3. THE SEVEN PARABLES OF THE KINGDOM<sup>1</sup>

#### I. THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER

##### a. The First Parable

13:1 The same day went Jesus out of the house, and sat by the sea side. 2 And great multitudes were gathered together unto him, so that he went into a ship and sat; and the whole multitude stood on the shore. 3 And he spoke many things unto them in parables, saying:

\* \* \*

"Behold, a sower went forth to sow; 4 and when he sowed, some *seeds* fell by the way side, and the fowls came and devoured them up: 5 some fell upon stony places, where they had not much earth: and forthwith they sprang up, because they had no deepness of earth: 6 and when the sun was up, they were scorched; and because they had no root, they withered away. 7 And some fell among thorns; and the thorns sprang up, and choked them: 8 but others fell into good ground, and brought forth fruit, some an hundredfold, some sixtyfold, some thirtyfold. 9 Who hath ears to hear, let him hear."

##### b. The Significance of Parables

10 And the disciples came, and said unto him, "Why speakest thou unto them in parables?" 11 He answered and said unto them:

\*

"Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given. 12 For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath. 13 Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand. 14 And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Isaiah, who saith:

\* \* \*

'By hearing you shall hear, and shall not understand;

And seeing you shall see, and shall not perceive;

15 For this people's heart is waxed gross,

<sup>1</sup> The fourth seven-fold discourse.

And *their* ears are dull of hearing,  
 And their eyes they have closed;  
 Lest at any time they should see with  
     *their* eyes,  
 And hear with *their* ears,  
 And should understand with *their* heart,  
 And should be converted,  
 And I should heal them.<sup>1</sup>

\*

16 But blessed *are* your eyes, for they see; and your ears, for they hear. 17 For verily I say unto you, that many prophets and righteous *men* have desired to see *those things* that you see, and have not seen *them*; and to hear *those things* that you hear, and have not heard *them*."

### c. The Exposition of the Sower

18 "Hear ye then the parable of the sower: 19 When any one heareth the word of the kingdom, and understandeth *it* not, then cometh the wicked *one*, and catcheth away that which was sown in his heart. This is he that receiveth seed by the way side. 20 But he that received the seed into stony places, the same is he that heareth the word, and anon with joy receiveth it; 21 yet hath he no root in himself, but endureth for a while: for when tribulation or persecution ariseth because of the word, by and by he is offended. 22 He also that received seed among the thorns is he that heareth the word; and the care of this world, and the deceitfulness of riches choke the word, and he becometh unfruitful. 23 But he that received seed into the good ground is he that heareth the word, and understandeth *it*; who also beareth fruit, and bringeth forth, some an hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty."

## II. THE TARES OF THE FIELD

### The Second Parable

24 Another parable put he forth unto them, saying:

\* \* \*

"The kingdom of heaven is likened unto a man who sowed good seed in his field: 25 but while men slept his enemy came and sowed tares among the

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 6:9f.

wheat, and went his way. 26 But when the blade was sprung up, and brought forth fruit, then appeared the tares also. 27 So the servants of the householder came and said unto him. 'Sir, didst not thou sow good seed in thy field? from whence then hath it tares?' 28 He said unto them, 'An enemy hath done this? The servants said unto him, 'Wilt thou then that we go and gather them up?' 29 But he said, 'Nay: lest while you gather up the tares, you root up also the wheat with them. 30 Let both grow together until the harvest: and in the time of the harvest I will say to the reapers, Gather ye together first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them: but gather the wheat into my barn.'

### III. THE PARABLE OF THE MUSTARD SEED

#### The Third Parable

31 Another parable put he forth unto them, saying:

\* \* \*

"The kingdom of heaven is like to a grain of mustard seed, which a man took, and sowed in his field: 32 which indeed is the least of all seeds: but when it is grown, it is the greatest among herbs, and becometh a tree, so that the birds of the air come and lodge in the branches thereof."

### IV. THE PARABLE OF THE LEAVEN

#### The Fourth Parable

33 Another parable spoke he unto them:

\* \* \*

"The kingdom of heaven is like unto leaven, which a woman took, and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened."

### RÉSUMÉ

#### The Third Fulfilment of Prophecy

34 All these things spoke Jesus unto the multitude in parables; and without a parable spoke he not unto them: 35 that it might be fulfilled that was spoken by the prophet, saying:

\* \* \*

"I will open my mouth in parables:  
I will utter things that have been kept secret  
from the foundation of the world."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 78:2.

## §4. THE SEVEN PARABLES CONCLUDED

## I. THE EXPOSITION OF THE TARES

*The Seven-Fold Saying of Jesus*

36 Then Jesus sent the multitude away, and went into the house: and his disciples came unto him, saying: "Declare unto us the parable of the tares of the field." 37 He answered and said unto them:

\* \* \*

"He that soweth the good seed is the Son of man;

\*

38 The field is the world;

\*

The good seed are the children of the kingdom;

\*

But the tares are the children of the wicked one;

\*

39 The enemy that sowed them is the devil;

\*

The harvest is the end of the world;

\*

And the reapers are the angels.

\*

40 As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire, so shall it be in the end of this world. 41 The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them that do iniquity; 42 and shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth. 43 Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Who hath ears to hear, let him hear."

## II. THE HIDDEN TREASURE

*The Fifth Parable*

44 "Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto treasure hid in a field; the which when a man hath found, he hideth, and for joy thereof goeth and selleth all that he hath, and buyeth that field."

*Chapter 13:36-44*



---

### III. THE PEARL OF GREAT PRICE

#### The Sixth Parable

45 "Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a merchantman, seeking goodly pearls: 46 who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it."

---

### IV. THE PARABLE OF THE FISHING NET

#### The Seventh Parable

47 "Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a net that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind: 48 which, when it was full, they drew to shore and sat down, and gathered the good into vessels, but cast the bad away. 49 So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth and sever the wicked from the just, 50 and shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth."

---

### EPILOGUE

#### The Things New and Old

51 Jesus saith unto them, "Have you understood all these things?" They say unto him, "Yea, Lord." 52 Then said he unto them, "Therefore every scribe *that is* instructed unto the kingdom of heaven is like unto a man *who is* a householder, who bringeth forth out of his treasure *things* new and old."

---

### The Fourth Summary

53 And it came to pass, *that* when Jesus had finished these parables, he departed thence.



## Part Five

### THE MINISTRY IN GALILEE CONCLUDED<sup>1</sup>

---

#### §1. THE REJECTION OF JESUS AT NAZARETH

##### I. THE UNBELIEF OF THE PEOPLE

###### The Seven-Fold Inquiry Concerning Jesus Christ

And when he came into his own country, he taught them in their synagogue, insomuch that they were astonished, and said:

\* \* \*

“Whence hath this *man* this wisdom;

\*

And these mighty works?

\*

55 Is not this the carpenter's son?

\*

Is not his mother called Mary?

\*

And his brothers, James, and Joseph, and Simeon, and Judas?

\*

56 And his sisters, are they not all with us?

\*

Whence then hath this *man* all these things?”

\*

57 And they were offended in him. But Jesus said unto them, “A prophet is not without honour, save in his own country, and in his own house?” 58 And he did not many mighty works there because of their unbelief.

---

#### II. THE FEAR OF HEROD THE TETRARCH

##### The Martyrdom of John the Baptist

14:1 At that time Herod the tetrarch heard of the fame of Jesus, 2 and said to his servants, “This is John the Baptist;

---

<sup>1</sup>The prophetic anticipations of the Passion.

he is risen from the dead; and therefore mighty works do show forth themselves in him." 3 [For Herod had laid hold on John, and bound him, and put *him* in prison for Herodias' sake, his brother Phillip's wife. 4 For John said unto him, "It is not lawful for thee to have her." 5 And when he would have put him to death, he feared the multitude, because they counted him as a prophet. 6 But when Herod's birthday was kept, the daughter of Herodias danced before them, and pleased Herod. 7 Whereupon he promised with an oath to give her whatsoever she would ask. 8 And she, being before instructed by her mother, said, "Give me here John the Baptist's head in a charger." 9 And the king was sorry: nevertheless for the oath's sake, and them that sat with him at meat, he commanded *it* to be given *her*. 10 And he sent, and beheaded John in the prison. 11 And his head was brought in a charger, and given to the damsel: and she brought *it* to her mother. 12 And his disciples came, and took up the body and buried it, and went and told Jesus].

---

### III. THE RETIREMENT TO THE DESERT

#### The Feeding of the Five Thousand

13 When Jesus heard of it, he departed thence by ship into a desert place apart: and when the people had heard *thereof*, they followed him on foot out of the cities. 14 And Jesus went forth, and saw a great multitude, and was moved with compassion toward them, and healed their sick. 15 And when it was evening, his disciples came to him, saying, "This is a desert place, and the time is now past; send the multitude away, that they may go into the villages, and buy themselves victuals." 16 But Jesus said unto them, "They need not depart; give ye them to eat." 17 And they said unto him, "We have here but five loaves and two fishes." 18 He said, "Bring them hither to me." 19 And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the grass, and took the five loaves, and the two fishes, and looking up to heaven, he blessed, and brake, and gave the loaves to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude. 20 And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the fragments that remained twelve baskets full. 21 And they that had eaten were about five thousand men, beside women and children.

---

### IV. THE APPEARANCE OF JESUS ON THE SEA

#### The Confession of the Son of God

22 And straightway Jesus constrained his disciples to get into a ship, and go before him unto the other side, while he sent the multitudes away. 23 And when he had sent the multitudes

*Chapter 14:3-23*



away, he went up into a mountain apart to pray: and when the evening was come he was there alone. 24 But the ship was now in the midst of the sea, tossed with waves: for the wind was contrary. 25 And in the fourth watch<sup>1</sup> of the night Jesus went unto them, walking on the sea. 26 And when the disciples saw him walking on the sea, they were troubled, saying, "It is a spirit;" and they cried out for fear. 27 But straightway Jesus spoke unto them, saying, "Be of good cheer; it is I; be not afraid." 28 And Peter answered him and said, "Lord, if it be thou, bid me come unto thee on the water." 29 And he said, "Come." And when Peter had come down out of the ship, he walked on the water, to go to Jesus. 30 But when he saw the winds boisterous, he was afraid; and beginning to sink, he cried, saying, "Lord, save me." 31 And immediately Jesus stretched forth *his* hand, and caught him, and said unto him, "O thou of little faith, wherefore didst thou doubt?" 32 And when they were come into the ship, the wind ceased. 33 Then they that were in the ship came and worshipped him, saying, "Of a truth thou art the Son of God." 34 And when they were gone over, they came into the land of Geneseret. 35 And when the men of that place had knowledge of him, they sent out into all that country round about, and brought unto him all that were diseased; 36 and besought him that they might only touch the hem of his garment: and as many as touched were made perfectly whole.

## §2. THE TRADITION OF THE ELDERS

### I. THE CONTROVERSY WITH THE AUTHORITIES

#### a. The Reply of Jesus to the Jews

15:1 Then came to Jesus scribes and Pharisees, who were of Jerusalem, saying, 2 "Why do thy disciples transgress the tradition of the elders? for they wash not their hands when they eat bread." 3 But he answered and said unto them, "Why do you also transgress the commandment of God by your traditions? 4 For God commanded, saying, 'Honour thy father and mother;' <sup>2</sup> and, 'He that curseth father or mother, let him die the death.' <sup>3</sup> 5 But you say, 'Whosoever shall say to *his* father or *his* mother, *It is a gift*, by whatsoever thou mightest be profited by me; 6 and honour not his father or his mother, *he shall be free*.' Thus have you made the commandment of God of none effect by your tradition. 7 *You hypocrites*, well did Isaiah prophesy of you, saying:

\* \* \*

8 'This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth,

<sup>1</sup> Between 3 and 6 o'clock a. m.

<sup>2</sup> Ex. 20:12.

<sup>3</sup> Ex. 21:17.

And honoureth me with *their* lips;  
But their heart is far from me.  
9 But in vain they do worship me,  
Teaching *for* doctrines the commandments  
of men.”<sup>1</sup>

---

**b. The Exposition for the Multitudes**

10 And he called the multitude, and said unto them, “Hear, and understand: 11 Not that which goeth into the mouth defileth a man, but that which cometh out of the mouth, this defileth a man.”

---

**c. The Offence for the Pharisees**

12 Then came his disciples, and said unto him, “Knowest thou that the Pharisees were offended, after they heard this saying?”  
13 But he answered and said, “Every plant, which my heavenly Father hath not planted, shall be rooted up. 14 Let them alone: they are blind leaders of the blind. And if the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch.”

---

**d. The Seven-Fold Defilement of Man**

15 Then answered Peter and said unto him, “Declare unto us this parable.” 16 And Jesus said, “Are you also yet without understanding? 17 Do not you yet understand, that whatsoever entereth in at the mouth goeth into the belly, and is cast out into the draught? 18 But those things that proceed out of the mouth come forth from the heart; and they defile the man. 19 For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies: 20 these are *the things* that defile a man; but to eat with unwashed hands defileth not a man.”

---

**II. THE RETIREMENT TO TYRE AND SIDON**

**The Healing of a Demoniac Girl**

21 Then Jesus went thence, and departed into the coasts of Tyre and Sidon. 22 And behold, a woman of Canaan came out of the same coasts, and cried unto him, saying, “Have mercy on me, O Lord, *thou* Son of David; my daughter is grievously vexed with a devil.” 23 But he answered her not a word. And his disciples came and besought him, saying, “Send her away; for

---

<sup>1</sup> Is. 29:13.

she crieth after us." 24 But he answered and said, "I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel." 25 Then came she and worshipped him, saying, "Lord, help me." 26 But he answered and said, "It is not meet to take the children's bread, and cast *it* to dogs." 27 And she said, "Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs that fall from their master's table." 28 Then Jesus answered and said unto her, "O woman, great *is* thy faith: be it unto thee even as thou wilt." And her daughter was made whole from that very hour.

---

### III. THE RETURN TO THE SEA OF GALILEE

#### a. The Healing of the Multitudes

29 And Jesus departed from thence, and came nigh unto the sea of Galilee; and went up into a mountain, and sat down there. 30 And great multitudes came unto him, having with them *those that were* lame, blind, dumb, maimed, and many others, and cast them down at Jesus' feet; and he healed them: 31 insomuch that the multitudes wondered, when they saw the dumb speak, the maimed to be whole, the lame to walk, and the blind to see: and they glorified the God of Israel.

---

#### b. The Feeding of the Four Thousand

32 Then Jesus called his disciples *unto him*, and said, "I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days, and have nothing to eat: and I will not send them away fasting, lest they faint in the way." 33 And his disciples say unto him, "Whence should we have so much bread in the wilderness, as to fill so great a multitude?" 34 And Jesus saith unto them, "How many loaves have you?" And they said, "Seven, and a few little fishes." 35 And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the ground. 36 And he took the seven loaves and the fishes, and gave thanks, and brake *them*, and gave to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude. 37 And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the broken meat of that was left seven baskets full. 38 And they that did eat were four thousand men, beside women and children. 39 And he sent away the multitude, and took ship, and came into the coasts of Magdala.

---

### IV. THE DANGER OF THE JEWISH PARTIES

#### a. The Request for a Sign from Heaven

16:1 The Pharisees also with the Sadducees came, and tempting desired him that he would show them a sign from heaven. 2 He

*Chapter 15:24-16:2*



answered and said unto them, "When it is evening, you say, '*It will be fair weather: for the sky is red.*' 3 And in the morning, '*It will be foul weather to-day; for the sky is red and lowering.*' O *you* hypocrites, you can discern the face of the sky; but can you not *discern* the signs of the times? 4 A wicked and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall be no sign given unto it, but the sign of the prophet Jonah." And he left them and departed.

---

#### b. The Leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees

5 And when his disciples were come to the other side, they had forgotten to take bread. 6 Then said Jesus unto them, "Take heed and beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and of the Sadducees." 7 And they reasoned among themselves, saying, "*It is because we have taken no bread,*" 8 *which*, when Jesus perceived, he said unto them, "O ye of little faith, why reason ye among yourselves, because you have brought no bread? 9 Do you not yet understand, neither remember the five loaves of the five thousand, and how many baskets you took up? 10 neither the seven loaves of the four thousand, and how many baskets you took up? 11 How is it that you do not understand that I spoke *it* not to you concerning bread, that you should beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and of the Sadducees?" 12 Then understood they how that he bade *them* not beware of the leaven of bread, but of the doctrine of the Pharisees and Sadducees.

---

### §3. THE TRUE GLORY OF JESUS CHRIST

#### I. THE GREAT CONFESSION OF PETER

##### The Seven-Fold Saying of Jesus

13 When Jesus came into the borders of Cæsarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, saying, "Who do men say that I the Son of man am?" 14 And they said, "Some *say that thou art* John the Baptist: some, Elijah; and others, Jeremiah, or one of the prophets." 15 He saith unto them, "But who say ye that I am?" 16 And Peter answered and said, "Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God." 17 And Jesus answered and said unto him:

\* \* \*

"Blessed art thou, Simon, son of John: for flesh and blood hath not revealed *it* unto thee, but my Father who is heaven.

Chapter 16:3-1



18 And I say unto thee, That thou art Peter,

\*

And upon this rock I will build my church;

\*

And the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

\*

19 And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven:

\*

And whatsoever thou shalt bind<sup>1</sup> on earth shall be bound in heaven:

\*

And whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."

\*

20 Then charged he his disciples that they should tell no man that he was Jesus the Christ.

---

## II. THE BEGINNING OF THE PASSION FORECASTS

### The Seven-Fold Saying of Jesus

21 From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day. 22 Then Peter took him, and began to rebuke him, saying, "Be it far from thee, Lord: this shall not be unto thee." 23 But he turned, and said unto Peter, "Get thee behind me, Satan; thou art an offence unto me: for thou savourest not the things that be of God, but those that be of men." 24 Then said Jesus unto his disciples:

\* \* \*

"If any *man* will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me.

\*

25 For whosoever will save his life shall lose it:

\*

And whosoever will lose his life for my sake shall find it.

\*

26 For what is a man profited, if he shall gain the

---

<sup>1</sup> "Bind and loose: A Rabbinical phrase for prohibit and permit."

whole world, and lose his own soul? or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul?

\*

27 For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels;

\*

And then shall he reward every man according to his works.

\*

28 Verily I say unto you, There are some standing here, who shall not taste of death, till they shall see the Son of man coming in his kingdom."

---

### III. THE TRANSFIGURATION OF JESUS

#### a. The Witnessing Apostles and the Voice from Heaven

17:1 And after six days Jesus taketh Peter, James and John his brother, and bringeth them up into a high mountain apart, 2 and was transfigured before them: and his face did shine as the sun, and his raiment was white as the light. 3 And behold there appeared unto them Moses and Elijah talking with him. 4 Then answered Peter, and said unto Jesus, "Lord, it is good for us to be here: if thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah." 5 While he yet spoke, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them; and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said: "This is my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased: hear ye him." 6 And when the disciples heard *it* they fell on their face, and were sore afraid. 7 And Jesus came and touched them, and said, "Arise, and be not afraid." 8 And when they had lifted up their eyes, they saw no man, save Jesus only.

---

#### b. The Silence Until the Resurrection

9 And as they came down from the mountain, Jesus charged them, saying, "Tell the vision to no man, until the Son of man be risen from the dead." 10 And his disciples asked him, saying, "Why then say the scribes that Elijah must first come?" 11 And Jesus answered and said unto them, "Elijah truly shall first come, and restore all things. 12 But I say unto you, that Elijah is come already, and they knew him not, but have done unto him whatsoever they would. Likewise also shall the Son of man suffer of them." 13 Then the disciples understood that he spoke unto them of John the Baptist.

*Chapter 16:27-17:13*

**IV. THE HEALING OF AN EPILEPTIC BOY****a. The Father's Request of Jesus**

14 And when they were come to the multitude, there came to him a *certain* man, kneeling down to him, and saying, 15 "Lord, have mercy on my son: for he is epileptic, and suffereth grievously: for oftentimes he falleth into the fire, and oft into the water. 16 And I brought him to thy disciples, and they could not cure him." 17 Then answered Jesus and said, "O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him hither to me." 18 And Jesus rebuked the devil; and he departed out of him; and the child was cured from that very hour.

---

**b. The Disciples' Unbelief Rebuked**

19 Then came the disciples to Jesus apart, and said, "Why could we not cast him out?" 20 And Jesus said unto them, "Because of your unbelief: for verily I say unto you, If you have faith as a grain of mustard seed, you shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place; and it shall remove; and nothing shall be impossible unto you. 21 Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting."

---

**§4. THE CLOSE OF THE MINISTRY IN GALILEE****I. THE FORECAST AGAIN OF THE PASSION****The Great Sorrow of the Disciples**

22 And while they abode in Galilee, Jesus said unto them, "The Son of man shall be betrayed into the hands of men: 23 and they shall kill him, and the third day he shall be raised again." And they were exceeding sorry.

---

**II. THE PROVISION FOR THE TRIBUTE****The Coin in the Fish's Mouth**

24 And when they were come to Capernaum, they that received the tribute *money* came to Peter, and said, "Doth not your Master pay tribute? 25 He saith, "Yea." And when he was come into the house, Jesus prevented<sup>1</sup> him, saying, "What thinkest thou, Simon, of whom do the kings of the earth take custom or tribute? of their own children, or of strangers?" 26 Peter saith unto him, "Of strangers." Jesus saith unto him, "Then are the children free. 27 Notwithstanding, lest we should

---

<sup>1</sup> Anticipated.

offend them, go thou to the sea, and cast a hook, and take up the fish that first cometh up; and when thou hast opened his mouth, thou shalt find a piece of money; that take and give unto them for me and thee."

### III. THE QUESTION OF RANK IN THE KINGDOM

#### The Fifth Seven-Fold Discourse

18:1 At the same time came the disciples unto Jesus, saying, "Who is greatest in the kingdom of heaven?" 2 And Jesus called a little child unto him, and set him in the midst of them, 3 and said:

\*

"Verily I say unto you, Except you be converted, and become as little children, you shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven. 4 Whosoever therefore shall humble himself as this little child, the same is greatest in the kingdom of heaven. 5 And whoso shall receive one such little one in my name receiveth me. 6 But whoso shall offend one of these little ones that believe in me, it were better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and *that* he were drowned in the depth of the sea.

\* \*

7 Woe unto the world because of offences! for it must needs be that offences come; but woe to that man by whom the offence cometh!

\* \* \*

8 Wherefore if thy hand or thy foot offend thee, cut them off, and cast *them* from thee: it is better for thee to enter into life half or maimed, rather than having two hands or two feet to be cast into everlasting fire. 9 And if thine eye offend thee, pluck it out, and cast it from thee: it is better for thee to enter into life with one eye, rather than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire.

\*\* \*\*

10 Take heed that you despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father who is in heaven.

\*\*\* \*\*

11 For the Son of man is come to save that which was lost.

\*\* \* \* \*

12 How think you? if a man have a hundred sheep, and one of them be gone astray, doth he not leave



the ninety and nine, and go into the mountains, and seek that which is gone astray? 13 And if it so be that he find it, verily I say unto you, he rejoiceth more over that *sheep* than over the ninety and nine that went not astray. 14 Even so it is not the will of your Father who is in heaven, that one of these little ones should perish.

\*\*\* \* \*\*\*

15 Moreover if thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone: if he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother.

\*

16 But if he will not hear *thee*, *then* take with thee one or two more that in the mouth of one or two witnesses every word may be established.

\*

17 And if he shall neglect to hear them, tell *it* unto the church:

\*

But if he neglect to hear the church, let him be unto thee as a heathen man and a publican.

\*

18 Verily I say unto you, whatsoever you shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever you shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

\*

19 Again I say unto you, That if two of you shall agree on earth as touching any thing that they shall ask, it shall be done for them of my Father who is in heaven.

\*

20 For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them."

---

#### IV. THE INSTRUCTION IN FORGIVENESS

##### The Parable of the Unmerciful Servant

21 Then came Peter to him, and said, "Lord, how oft shall my brother sin against me, and I forgive him? till seven times?" 22 Jesus saith unto him, "I say not unto thee, 'Until seven times:' but, Until seventy times seven. 23 Therefore is the kingdom of heaven likened unto a certain king, who would take account of

Chapter 18:13-23

his servants. 24 And when he had begun to reckon, one was brought unto him who owed him ten thousand talents. 25 But forasmuch as he had not wherewith to pay, his lord commanded him to be sold, and his wife, and his children, and all that he had, and payment to be made. 26 The servant therefore fell down, and worshipped him, saying, 'Lord, have patience with me, and I will pay thee all.' 27 Then the lord of that servant was moved with compassion, and loosed him, and forgave him the debt. 28 But the same servant went out, and found one of his fellow-servants, who owed him a hundred pence: and he laid hands on him, and took *him* by the throat, saying, 'Pay me that thou owest.' 29 And his fellow-servant fell down at his feet, and besought him, saying, 'Have patience with me, and I will pay thee all.' 30 And he would not: but went and cast him into prison, till he should pay the debt. 31 So when his fellow-servants saw what was done, they were very sorry, and came and told unto their lord all that was done. 32 Then his lord, after that he had called him, said unto him, 'O thou wicked servant, I forgave thee all that debt, because thou desirest me: 33 shouldest not thou also have had compassion on thy fellow-servant, even as I had pity on thee?' 34 And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him. 35 So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if you from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses."

---

### The Fifth Summary

19:1 And it came to pass, *that* when Jesus had finished these sayings, he departed from Galilee, and came into the borders of Judæa beyond the Jordan; 2 and great multitudes followed him; and he healed them there.

## Part Six

# THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN JERUSALEM<sup>1</sup>

---

### §1. THE SOJOURN BEYOND THE JORDAN

#### I. THE QUESTION OF DIVORCE

##### The Importance of the Marriage Relation

And the Pharisees came unto him, tempting him, and saying unto him, "Is it lawful for a man to put away his wife for every cause?" 4 And he answered and said unto them, "Have you not read that he that made *them* at the beginning made them male and female?" 5 and said, "For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they twain shall be one flesh. 6 Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let no man put asunder." 7 They say unto him, "Why did Moses then command to give a writing of divorcement, and to put her away?" 8 He saith unto them, "Moses because of the hardness of your hearts suffered you to put away your wives: but from the beginning it was not so. 9 And I say unto you, Whosoever shall put away his wife, except *it be* for fornication, and shall marry another, committeth adultery: and whoso marrieth her that is put away doth commit adultery." 10 His disciples say unto him, "If the case of a man be so with *his* wife, it is not good to marry." 11 But he said unto them, "All *men* cannot receive this saying, save *they* to whom it is given. 12 For there are some eunuchs, who were so from *their* birth; and there are some eunuchs who were made so by men; and there are eunuchs who have made themselves eunuchs for the kingdom of heaven's sake. He that is able to receive *it*, let him receive it."

---

#### II. THE SUBJECTS OF THE KINGDOM OF HEAVEN

##### The Blessing of Jesus upon the Children

13 Then were brought unto him little children, that he should put *his* hands on them, and pray: and the disciples rebuked them. 14 But Jesus said, "Suffer little children, and forbid them not,

---

<sup>1</sup> The kingly surrender of Jesus as the Messiah.

to come unto me: for of such is the kingdom of heaven." 15  
And he laid his hands on them, and departed thence.

### III. THE QUESTION OF THE RICH YOUNG MAN

#### The Great Refusal to Follow Jesus

16 And, behold, one came and said unto him, "Good Master, what good thing shall I do, that I may have eternal life?" 17 And he said unto him, "Why callest thou me good? *there is none good but one, that is, God*: but if thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments." 18 He saith unto him, "Which?" Jesus said:

\* \* \*

"Thou shalt do no murder,  
Thou shalt not commit adultery,  
Thou shalt not steal,  
Thou shalt not bear false witness,  
19 Honour thy father and thy mother; and  
Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself."<sup>1</sup>

\*

20 The young man saith unto him, "All these things have I kept from my youth up: what lack I yet?" 21 Jesus said unto him, "If thou wilt be perfect, go *and* sell that thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven: and come *and* follow me." 22 But when the young man heard that saying, he went away sorrowful: for he had great possessions.

#### b. The Rich and the Kingdom of Heaven

23 Then said Jesus unto his disciples, "Verily I say unto you, that a rich man shall hardly enter into the kingdom of heaven. 24 And again I say unto you, It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God." 25 When his disciples heard it, they were exceedingly amazed, saying, "Who then can be saved?" 26 But Jesus beheld *them*, and said unto them, "With men this is impossible; but with God all things are possible."

#### c. The Seven-Fold Renunciation and Reward

27 Then answered Peter and said unto him, "Behold, we have forsaken all, and followed thee; what shall we have therefore?" 28 And Jesus said unto them, "Verily I say unto you, that you that have followed me, in the regeneration when the Son of man shall sit on the throne of his glory, you also shall sit upon twelve

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 20:12f.



thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel. 29 And every one that hath forsaken houses, or brothers, or sisters, or father, or mother, or children, or lands, for my name's sake, shall receive a hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life."

#### d. The First and Last in the Kingdom<sup>1</sup>

30 "But many *that are* first shall be last; and the last *shall be* first. 20:1 For the kingdom of heaven is like unto a man *that is* a householder, who went out early in the morning to hire labourers in his vineyard. 2 And when he had agreed with the labourers for a penny a day, he sent them into his vineyard. 3 And he went out about the third hour, and saw others standing idle in the marketplace, 4 and said unto them: 'Go ye also into the vineyard, and whatsoever is right I will give you.' And they went their way. 5 And again he went out about the sixth and ninth hours, and did likewise. 6 And about the eleventh hour he went out, and found others standing idle, and said unto them, 'Why stand ye here all the day idle?' 7 They said unto him, 'Because no man hath hired us.' He saith unto them, 'Go ye also into the vineyard; and whatsoever is right, *that* shall you receive.' 8 So when even was come, the lord of the vineyard saith unto his steward, 'Call the labourers, and give them *their* hire, beginning from the last unto the first.' 9 And when they came that *were hired* about the eleventh hour, they received every man a penny. 10 But when the first came, they supposed that they should have received more; and they likewise received every man a penny. 11 And when they had received it, they murmured against the good man of the house, 12 saying, 'These last have wrought *but* one hour, and thou hast made them equal unto us, that have borne the burden and heat of the day.' 13 But he answered one of them, and said, 'Friend, I do thee no wrong: did not thou agree with me for a penny? 14 Take that which is thine, and go thy way: I will give unto this last man even as unto thee. 15 Is it not lawful for me to do what I will with my own? Is thine eye evil because I am good?' 16 So the last shall be first, and the first last: for many are called, but few chosen."

## §2. THE APPROACH OF JESUS TO JERUSALEM

### I. THE FORECAST AGAIN OF THE CRUCIFIXION

#### The Seven-Fold Passion Foretold

17 And Jesus going up to Jerusalem took the twelve disciples apart in the way, and said unto them:

<sup>1</sup> The Parable of the Labourers.

\* \* \*

18 "Behold, we go up to Jerusalem;

\*

And the Son of man shall be betrayed unto the chief priests and unto the scribes,

\*

And they shall condemn him to death,

\*

19 And shall deliver him to the Gentiles to mock,

\*

And to scourge,

\*

And to crucify *him*:

\*

And the third day he shall rise again."

## II. THE MOTHER OF ZEBEDEE'S CHILDREN

### a. The Request for James and John

20 Then came to him the mother of Zebedee's children with her sons, worshipping *him*, and desiring a certain thing of him. 21 And he said unto her, "What wilt thou?" She said unto him, "Grant that these my two sons may sit, the one on thy right hand, and the other on the left, in thy kingdom. 22 But Jesus answered and said, "You know not what you ask. Are you able to drink of the cup that I shall drink of, and to be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with?" They said unto him, "We are able." 23 And he saith unto them, "You shall indeed drink of my cup, and be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with: but to sit on my right hand, and on my left, is not mine to give, but *it shall be given to them* for whom it is prepared of my Father."

### b. The Indignation of the Ten Disciples

24 And when the ten heard *it*, they were moved with indignation against the two brothers. 25 But Jesus called them *unto him*, and said, "You know that the princes of the Gentiles exercise dominion over them, and they that are great exercise authority upon them. 26 But it shall not be so among you: but whosoever will be great among you, let him be your minister; 27 and whosoever will be chief among you, let him be your servant: 28 even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many."

Chapter 20:18-28

## III. THE HEALING OF TWO BLIND MEN

## The Recognition of the Son of David

29 And as they departed from Jericho, a great multitude followed him. 30 And, behold, two blind men sitting by the way side, when they heard that Jesus passed by, cried out, saying, "Have mercy on us, O Lord, *thou* son of David." 31 And the multitude rebuked them, because they should hold their peace: but they cried the more, saying, "Have mercy on us, O Lord, *thou* son of David." 32 And Jesus stood still, and called them, and said, "What will ye that I should do unto you?" 33 They say unto him, "Lord, that our eyes may be opened." 34 So Jesus had compassion *on them*, and touched their eyes: and immediately their eyes received sight, and they followed him.

## §3. THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY INTO JERUSALEM

## I. THE MESSIANIC RECEPTION OF JESUS

## The Fourth Fulfilment of Prophecy

21:1 And when they drew nigh unto Jerusalem, and were come to Bethphage, unto the mount of Olives, then sent Jesus two disciples, 2 saying unto them, "Go into the village over against you and straightway you shall find an ass tied, and a colt with her: loose *them*, and bring *them* unto me. 3 And if any *man* say aught unto you, you shall say, "The Lord hath need of them; and straightway he will send them." 4 All this was done, that it might be fulfilled that was spoken by the prophet, saying:

\* \* \*

5 "Tell ye the daughter of Zion,  
Behold, thy King cometh unto thee,  
Meek, and sitting upon an ass,  
And a colt the foal of an ass."<sup>1</sup>

\*

6 And the disciples went, and did as Jesus commanded them, 7 and brought the ass, and the colt, and put on them their clothes, and they set *him* thereon. 8 And a great multitude spread their garments in the way; others cut down branches from the trees, and strewed *them* in the way. 9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying:

\* \* \*

"Hosanna to the son of David:  
Blessed is he that cometh in the name  
of the Lord;  
Hosanna in the highest."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Zech. 9:9.<sup>2</sup> Ps. 118:25f.

10 And when he was come into Jerusalem, all the city was moved, saying, "Who is this?" 11 And the multitude said, "This is Jesus the prophet of Nazareth of Galilee."

---

## II. THE CLEANSING OF THE TEMPLE OF GOD

### The House of Prayer a Den of Thieves

12 And Jesus went into the temple of God; and cast out all them that sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the tables of the money changers, and the seats of them that sold doves, 13 and said unto them, "It is written, 'My house shall be called a house of prayer;'<sup>1</sup> but you make it a den of thieves." 14 And the blind and the lame came to him in the temple; and he healed them. 15 And when the chief priests and scribes saw the wonderful things that he did, and the children crying in the temple, and saying, "Hosanna to the son of David," they were sore displeased, 16 and said unto him, "Hearest thou what these say?" And Jesus saith unto them, "Yea; have you never read, 'Out of the mouths of babes and sucklings thou hast perfected praise?'" 17 And he left them and went out of the city unto Bethany; and he lodged there.

---

## III. THE CURSING OF THE FIG TREE

### The Greatness of Faith and Prayer

18 Now in the morning, as he returned into the city, he hungered. 19 And when he saw a fig tree in the way, he came to it, and found nothing thereon, but leaves only, and said unto it, "Let no fruit grow on thee henceforward for ever." And presently the fig tree withered away. 20 And when the disciples saw it they marvelled, saying, "How soon is the fig tree withered away!" 21 Jesus answered and said unto them, "Verily I say unto you, If you have faith, and doubt not, you shall not only do this *that is done* to the fig tree, but also if you shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea, it shall be done. 22 And all things, whatsoever you shall ask in prayer, believing, you shall receive."

---

## IV. THE AUTHORITY OF JESUS CHRIST

### a. The Inquiry of the Sanhedrin

23 And when he was come into the temple, the chief priests and the elders of the people came unto him as he was teaching and said, "By what authority doest thou these things? and who

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 8:2.



gave thee this authority?" 24 And Jesus answered and said unto them, "I will also ask you one thing, which if you tell me, I in like wise will tell you by what authority I do these things. 25 The baptism of John, whence was it? from heaven, or of men?" And they reasoned with themselves, saying, "If we shall say, From heaven, he will say unto us, Why did you not then believe him? 26 But if we shall say, of men; we fear the people; for all hold John as a prophet." 27 And they answered Jesus, and said, "We cannot tell." And he said unto them, "Neither tell I you by what authority I do these things."

---

#### b. The Parable of the Two Sons

28 "But what think you? A *certain* man had two sons; and he came to the first, and said, 'Son, go work to day in my vineyard.' 29 He answered and said, 'I will not:' but afterward he repented, and went. 30 And he came to the second, and said likewise. And he answered and said, 'I *go*, sir:' and went not. 31 Which of the twain did the will of *his* father?" They say unto him, "The first." Jesus saith unto them, "Verily I say unto you, That the publicans and the harlots go into the kingdom of God before you. 32 For John came unto you in the way of righteousness, and you believed him not: but the publicans and the harlots believed him: and you, when you had seen *it*, repented not afterward, that you might believe him."

---

#### c. The Parable of the Wicked Husbandmen

33 "Hear another parable: There was a certain householder, who planted a vineyard and hedged it round about, and digged a winepress in it, and built a tower, and let it out to husbandmen, and went into a far country. 34 And when the time of the fruit drew near, he sent his servants to the husbandmen, that they might receive the fruits of it. 35 And the husbandmen took his servants, and beat one, and killed another, and stoned another. 36 Again, he sent other servants more than the first: and they did unto them likewise. 37 But last of all he sent unto them his son, saying, 'They will reverence my son.' 38 But when the husbandmen saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir: come, let us kill him, and let us seize on his inheritance.' 39 And they caught him, and cast *him* out of the vineyard, and slew *him*. 40 When the lord therefore of the vineyard cometh what will he do unto these husbandmen?" 41 They say unto him, "He will miserably destroy these wicked men, and will let out *his* vineyard unto other husbandmen, who

shall render him the fruits in their season." 42 Jesus said unto them, "Did you never read in the scriptures:

\* \* \*

"The stone which the builders rejected,  
The same is become the head of the corner;  
This is the Lord's doing,  
And it is marvellous in our eyes."<sup>1</sup>

\*

43 Therefore say I unto you, The kingdom of God shall be taken away from you, and given to the nation bringing forth the fruits thereof. 44 And whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken: but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder." 45 And when the chief priests and Pharisees had heard his parables, they perceived that he spoke of them. 46 But when they sought to lay hands on him, they feared the multitude, because they took him for a prophet.

#### d. The Parable of the Marriage Feast

22:1 And Jesus answered and spoke unto them again by parables, and said: 2 "The kingdom of heaven is like unto a certain king, who made a marriage feast for his son, 3 and sent forth his servants to call them that were bidden to the wedding: and they would not come. 4 Again, he sent forth other servants, saying, 'Tell them that are bidden, Behold, I have prepared my dinner: my oxen and *my* fatlings *are* killed, and all things *are* ready: come unto the marriage feast.' 5 But they made light of *it*, and went their ways, one to his farm, another to his merchandise: 6 and the remnant took his servants, and treated *them* spitefully, and slew *them*. 7 But when the king heard *thereof*, he was wroth: and he sent forth his armies, and destroyed those murderers, and burned up their city. 8 Then saith he to his servants, 'The wedding is ready, but they that were bidden were not worthy. 9 Go ye therefore into the highways, and as many as you shall find, bid to the marriage.' 10 So those servants went out into the highways, and gathered together all, as many as they found, both bad and good: and the wedding was furnished with guests. 11 And when the king came in to see the guests, he saw there a man that had not on a wedding garment: 12 and he saith unto him, 'Friend, how camest thou in hither not having a wedding garment?' And he was speechless. 13 Then said the king to his servants, 'Bind him hand and foot, and take him away, and cast *him* into outer darkness: there shall

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 118:22f.

be weeping and gnashing of teeth.' 14 For many are called, but few *are* chosen."

---

#### §4. THE CONTROVERSY WITH THE RULERS

##### I. THE PLOT OF THE PHARISEES

###### a. The Question of the Pharisees and Herodians

15 Then went the Pharisees, and took counsel how they might entangle him in *his* talk. 16 And they sent out unto him their disciples with the Herodians, saying, "Master, we know that thou art true, and teachest the way of God in truth, neither carest thou for any man: for thou regardest not the person of men. 17 Tell us therefore, what thinkest thou? Is it lawful to give tribute unto Cæsar, or not?" 18 But Jesus perceived their wickedness, and said, "Why tempt ye me, *ye* hypocrites? 19 Show me the tribute money." And they brought unto him a penny. 20 And he saith unto them, "Whose *is* this image and superscription?" 21 They say unto him, "Cæsar's." Then saith he unto them, "Render therefore unto Cæsar the things that are Cæsar's; and unto God the things that are God's." 22 When they heard *these words*, they marvelled, and left him, and went their way.

---

###### b. The Question of the Sadducees

23 The same day came to him the Sadducees, who say that there is no resurrection, and asked him, 24 saying, "Master, Moses said, 'If a man die, having no children, his brother shall marry his wife, and raised up seed unto his brother.'<sup>1</sup> 25 Now there were with us seven brothers: and the first, when he had married a wife, deceased, and, having no issue, left his wife unto his brother: 26 likewise the second also, and the third, unto the seventh. 27 And last of all the woman died also. 28 Therefore in the resurrection whose wife shall she be of the seven? for they all had her." 29 Jesus answered and said unto them, "You do err, not knowing the scriptures, nor the power of God. 30 For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven. 31 But as touching the resurrection of the dead, have you not read that which was spoken unto you by God, saying, 32 'I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob?'<sup>2</sup> God is not the God of the dead, but of the living." 33 And when the multitude heard this, they were astonished at this doctrine.

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 38:8.

<sup>2</sup> Ex. 3:6.



## c. The Question of a Lawyer

34 But when the Pharisees heard that he had put the Sadducees to silence, they were gathered together. 35 Then one of them, *who was* a lawyer, asked *him a question*, tempting him, and saying, 36 "Master, which *is* the great commandment in the law?" 37 Jesus said unto him, 'Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind.'<sup>1</sup> 38 This is the first and great commandment. 39 And the second *is* like unto it, 'Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself.'<sup>2</sup> 40 On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets."

## d. The Counter Question of Jesus

41 While the Pharisees were gathered together, Jesus asked them, 42 saying, "What think ye of Christ? whose son is he?" They say unto him, "*The Son of David.*" 43 He saith unto them, "How then doth David in the Spirit call him Lord, saying.

\* \* \*

44 'The Lord said unto my Lord,  
Sit thou on my right hand,  
Till I make thine enemies thy footstool?'<sup>3</sup>

\*

45 If David therefore called him Lord, how is he his son?" 46 And no man was able to answer him a word, neither durst any *man* from that day forth ask him any more *questions*.

## II. THE GREAT INDICTMENT OF THE PHARISEES

## The Sixth Seven-Fold Discourse

23:1 Then spoke Jesus to the multitude, and to his disciples,  
2 saying:

## Prologue

"The scribes and the Pharisees sit in Moses' seat: 3 all therefore whatsoever they bid you observe, *that* observe and do; but do not ye after their works: for they say, and do not. 4 For they bind heavy burdens and grievous to be borne, and lay *them* on men's shoulders; but they *themselves* will not move them with one of their fingers. 5 But all their works they do for to be seen of men.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Deut. 6:5.<sup>2</sup> Lev. 19:18.<sup>3</sup> Ps. 110:1.<sup>4</sup> The seven-fold vanity of the scribes and Pharisees.



They make broad their phylacteries, and enlarge the borders of their garments, 6 and love the uppermost rooms at the feasts, and the chief seats in the synagogues, 7 and greetings in the markets, and to be called of men, 'Rabbi, Rabbi.' 8 But be not ye called Rabbi: for one is your Master, even Christ; and all ye are brethren. 9 And call no *man* father upon the earth: for one is your Father, who is in heaven. 10 Neither be ye called masters: for one is your Master, even Christ. 11 But he that is greatest among you shall be your servant. 12 And whosoever shall exalt himself shall be abased; and he that shall humble himself shall be exalted.

\*

13 But woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you shut up the kingdom of heaven against men: for you neither go in *yourselves*, neither suffer ye them that are entering to go in.

\* \*

14 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you devour widow's houses, and for a pretence make loud prayer: therefore you shall receive the greater damnation.

\* \* \*

15 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you compass sea and land to make one proselyte, and when he is made, you make him two-fold more the child of hell than yourselves. 16 Woe unto you, ye blind guides, who say, 'Whosoever shall swear by the temple, it is nothing; but whosoever shall swear by the gold of the temple, he is a debtor!' 17 Ye fools and blind: for which is greater, the gold, or the temple that sanctifieth the gold? 18 And, 'Whosoever shall swear by the altar, it is nothing; but whosoever sweareth by the gift that is upon it, he is guilty.' 19 Ye fools and blind: for which is greater, the gift, or the altar that sanctifieth the gift? 20 Whoso therefore shall swear by the altar, sweareth by it and by all things thereon. 21 And whoso shall swear by the temple, sweareth by it, and by him that dwelleth therein. 22 And he that shall swear by heaven, sweareth by the throne of God, and by him that sitteth thereon.

\* \* \* \*

23 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you pay tithe of mint and anise and cummin, and have omitted the weightier *matters* of the law, judgment, mercy and faith: these ought you to have done, and not to leave the other undone. 24 *Ye* blind guides, who strain at a gnat, and swallow a camel.

\* \* \* \*

25 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you make clean the outside of the cup and of the platter, but within they are full of extortion and excess. 26 Thou blind Pharisee, cleanse first that *which is* within the cup and platter, that the outside of them may be clean also.

\* \* \* \*

27 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you are like unto whited sepulchres, which indeed appear beautiful outward, but are within full of dead men's bones, and of all uncleanness. 28 Even so you also outwardly appear righteous unto men, but within you are full of hypocrisy and iniquity.

\* \* \* \*

29 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because you build the tombs of the prophets, and garnish the sepulchres of the righteous, 30 and say, 'If we had been in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partakers with them in the blood of the prophets.' 31 Wherefore you are witnesses unto yourselves, that you are the children of them that killed the prophets. 32 Fill ye up then the measure of your fathers. 33 *Ye* serpents, *ye* generation of vipers, how can you escape the damnation of hell. 34 Wherefore, behold, I send unto you prophets, and wise men, and scribes: and *some* of them you shall kill and crucify; and *some* of them shall you scourge in your synagogues, and persecute *them* from city to city: 35 that upon you may come all the righteous blood shed upon the earth, from the blood of righteous Abel unto the blood of Zacharias the son of Barachias, whom you slew between the temple and the altar. 36 Verily I say unto you, All these things shall come upon this generation.

## Epilogue

37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, *thou* that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and you would not! 38 Behold, your house is left unto you desolate. 39 For I say unto you, You shall not see me henceforth, till you shall say,

\* \* \*

'Blessed is he that cometh in the name  
of the Lord.'"<sup>1</sup>

---

### III. THE DESTRUCTION OF THE TEMPLE

#### The Reply of Jesus to the Disciples

24:1 And Jesus went out, and departed from the temple: and his disciples came to *him* for to show him the buildings of the temple. 2 And Jesus said unto them, "See ye not all these things? Verily I say unto you, There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down."<sup>2</sup>

---

### IV. THE GREAT DISCOURSE ON LAST THINGS

#### The Seventh Seven-Fold Discourse

3 And as he sat on the mount of Olives, the disciples came unto him privately, saying, "Tell us, when shall these things be? and what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world?" 4 And Jesus answered and said unto them:

#### Prologue

"Take heed that no man deceive you. 5 For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ, and shall deceive many. 6 And you shall hear of wars and rumors of wars: see that you are not troubled; for all *these things* must come to pass, but the end is not yet. 7 For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, pestilences, and earthquakes, in divers places. 8 All these *are* the beginning of sorrow. 9 Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted, and shall kill you: and you shall be hated

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 118:26.

<sup>2</sup> Jerusalem fell under Titus Sept. 4, A. D. 70.

of all nations for my name's sake. 10 And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another. 11 And many false prophets shall arise, and shall deceive many. 12 And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. 13 But he that shall endure to the end, the same shall be saved. 14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

\*

15 When you therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place (whoso readeth let him understand), 16 then let them that are in Judæa flee into the mountains: 17 let him that is on the housetop not come down to take anything out of his house: 18 neither let him that is in the field return back to take his clothes. 19 And woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give such in those days! 20 But pray ye that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the sabbath day: 21 for then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. 22 And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened.

\* \*

23 Then if any man shall say unto you, Lo, here *is* Christ, or, there; believe *it* not. 24 For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if *it were* possible, they shall deceive the very elect. 25 Behold, I have told you before. 26 Wherefore if they shall say unto you, Behold, he is in the desert, go not forth: behold, *he is* in the secret chambers; believe *it* not. 27 For as the lightning cometh out of the east, and shineth even unto the west; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. 28 For wheresoever the carcase is, there will the eagles be gathered together.

\* \* \*

29 Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from

*Chapter 24:10-29*



heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken: 30 and then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. 31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

\*\* \*\*

32 Now learn a parable of the fig tree: When his branch is yet tender, and putteth forth leaves, you know that summer *is* nigh: 33 so likewise you, when you shall see all these things, know that it is near, even at the doors. 34 Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass, till all these things are fulfilled. 35 Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away. 36 But of that day and hour knoweth no *man*, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.

\*\* \* \*\*

37 But as the days of Noah *were*, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. 38 For as in the days that were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark, 39 and knew not until the flood came, and took them all away; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. 40 Then shall two be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left. 41 Two *women* shall be grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken, and the other left. 42 Watch therefore: for you know not what hour your Lord doth come. 43 But know this, that if the good man of the house had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have suffered his house to be broken up. 44 Therefore be ye also ready: for in such an hour as you think not the Son of man cometh. 45 Who then is a faithful and wise servant, whom his lord hath made ruler over his household, to give them meat in due season? 46 Blessed *is* that servant, whom his lord when he cometh shall find so doing. 47 Verily I say unto you, that he shall make him ruler over all his goods. 48 But if that evil servant shall say in his heart, My lord delayeth his coming, 49 and shall begin to

smite his fellowservants, and to eat and drink with the drunken, 50 the lord of that servant shall come in a day when he looketh not for *him*, and in an hour when he is not aware of, 51 and shall cut him asunder, and appoint *him* his portion with the hypocrites: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

\* \* \* \* \*

25:1 Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins,<sup>1</sup> who took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom. 2 And five of them were wise, and five *were* foolish. 3 They that *were* foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them: 4 But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps. 5 While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept. 6 And at midnight there was a cry made, 'Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him.' 7 Then all those virgins arose, and trimmed their lamps. 8 And the foolish said unto the wise, 'Give us of your oil: for our lamps are gone out.' 9 But the wise answered, saying, 'Not so; lest there be not enough for us and you; but go ye rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves.' 10 And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage. And the door was shut. 11 Afterwards came also the other virgins, saying, 'Lord, Lord, open to us.' 12 But he answered and said, 'Verily I say unto you, I know you not.' 13 Watch therefore, for you know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh.

\* \* \* \* \*

14 For *the kingdom of heaven is* as a man travelling into a far country,<sup>2</sup> who called his own servants, and delivered unto them his goods. 15 And unto one he gave five talents, to another two, and to another one; to every man according to his several ability; and straightway took his journey. 16 Then he that had received the five talents went and traded with the same, and made *them* other five talents. 17 And likewise he that *had received* two, he also gained other two. 18 But he that had received one went and digged in the earth, and hid his lord's money. 19 After a long time the lord of those servants cometh, and reckoneth with them.

---

<sup>1</sup> The parable of the Ten Virgins.

<sup>2</sup> The parable of the Talents.

20 And so he that had received five talents came and brought other five talents, saying, 'Lord, thou deliveredst unto me five talents; behold, I have gained beside them five talents more.' 21 His lord said unto him, 'Well done, *thou* good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord.' 22 He also that had received two talents came and said, 'Lord, thou deliveredst unto me two talents: behold, I have gained two other talents beside them.' 23 His lord said unto him, 'Well done, good and faithful servant; thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord.' 24 Then he that had received the one talent came and said, 'Lord, I knew thee, that thou art a hard man, reaping where thou hast not sown, and gathering where thou hast not strawed: 25 and I was afraid, and went and hid thy talent in the earth: lo, *there* thou hast *that which is thine*.' 26 His lord answered and said unto him, '*Thou* wicked and slothful servant, thou knewest that I reap where I sowed not, and gather where I have not strawed: 27 thou oughtest therefore to have put my money to the exchangers, and *then* at my coming I should have received my own with usury.' 28 Take therefore the talent from him, and give *it* unto him that hath ten talents. 29 For unto every one that hath shall be given, and he shall have abundance: but from him that hath not shall be taken away even that which he hath. 30 And cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.'

#### Epilogue

31 When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory.

\*

32 And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth *his* sheep from the goats: 33 and he shall set the sheep on the right hand, and the goats on the left.

\*

34 Then shall the king say<sup>1</sup> unto them on his

---

<sup>1</sup> The seven-fold reward and penalty.

right hand: Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world: 35 for I was hungry, and you gave me meat; I was thirsty, and you gave me drink; I was a stranger, and you took me in; 36 naked, and you clothed me; I was sick, and you visited me; I was in prison, and you came unto me.

\*

37 Then shall the righteous answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee hungry, and fed *thee*? or thirsty, and gave *thee* drink? 38 when saw we thee a stranger, and took *thee* in? or naked, and clothed *thee*? 39 or when saw we thee sick, or in prison, and came unto thee? 40 And the king shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as you have done *it* unto one of the least of these my brethren, you have done *it* unto me.

\*

41 Then shall he say unto them on the left hand: Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels; 42 for I was hungry, and you gave me no meat; I was thirsty, and you gave me no drink; 43 I was a stranger, and you took me not in; naked, and you clothed me not; sick, and in prison, and you visited me not.

\*

44 Then shall they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee an hungered, or athirst, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister unto thee? 45 Then shall he answer them, saying, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as you did *it* not unto one of the least of these, you did *it* not unto me.

\*

46 And these shall go away into everlasting punishment; but the righteous into life eternal.

---

### The Sixth Summary

26:1 And it came to pass, when Jesus had finished all these sayings, he said unto his disciples, 2 "You know that after two days is *the feast of the passover*, and the Son of man is betrayed to be crucified.



## Part Seven

# THE CRUCIFIXION<sup>1</sup> AND RESURRECTION

---

### §1. THE APPROACHING PASSOVER FEAST

#### I. THE ACTION OF THE SANHEDRIN

##### The Death-Plot Against Jesus

Then assembled together the chief priests, and the scribes, and the elders of the people, unto the palace of the high priest, who was called Caiaphas, 4 and consulted that they might take him by subtilty, and kill *him*. 5 But they said, "Not on the feast day, lest there be an uproar among the people."

---

#### II. THE ANOINTING OF JESUS AT BETHANY

##### The Box of Precious Ointment

6 Now when Jesus was in Bethany, in the house of Simon the leper, 7 there came unto him a woman having an alabaster box of very precious ointment, and poured it on his head as he sat *at meat*. 8 But when his disciples saw *it*, they were indignant, saying, "To what purpose *is* this waste? 9 For this ointment might have been sold for much, and given to the poor." 10 When Jesus understood *it*, he said unto them, "Why trouble ye the woman? for she hath wrought a good work upon me. 11 For you have the poor always with you; but me you have not always. 12 For in that she hath poured this ointment on my body, she did *it* for my burial. 13 Verily I say unto you, Wheresoever this gospel shall be preached in the whole world, *there* shall also this, that this woman hath done, be told for a memorial of her."

---

#### III. THE CONSPIRACY OF JUDAS ISCARIOT

##### The Covenant for Thirty Pieces of Silver

14 Then one of the twelve, called Judas Iscariot, went unto the chief priests, 15 and said *unto them*, "What will you give

---

<sup>1</sup> The priestly sacrifice of the Messiah for the sins of the world.

me, and I will deliver him unto you?" And they covenanted with him for thirty pieces of silver. 16 And from that time he sought opportunity to betray him.

---

## §2. THE OBSERVANCE OF THE PASSOVER FEAST

### I. THE PREPARATION OF THE DISCIPLES

#### The Appointed House in Jerusalem

17 Now on the first *day* of the *feast* of unleavened bread the disciples came to Jesus saying unto him, "Where wilt thou that we prepare for thee to eat the passover?" 18 And he said, "Go into the city to such a man, and say unto him, The Master saith, My time is at hand; I will keep the passover at thy house with my disciples." 19 And the disciples did as Jesus appointed them; and they made ready the passover.

---

### II. THE DISCLOSURE OF THE BETRAYAL

#### The Exposure of Judas Iscariot

20 Now when the even was come, he sat down with the twelve. 21 And as they did eat, he said, "Verily I say unto you, that one of you shall betray me." 22 And they were exceeding sorrowful, and began every one of them to say unto him, "Lord, is it I?" 23 And he answered and said, "He that dippeth *his* hand with me in the dish, the same shall betray me. 24 The Son of man goeth as it is written of him; but woe unto that man by whom the Son of man is betrayed! It had been good for that man if he had not been born." 25 Then Judas, who betrayed him, answered and said, "Master, is it I?" He said unto him, "Thou hast said."

---

### III. THE INSTITUTION OF THE HOLY COMMUNION

#### The Blood Shed for the Remission of Sins

26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed *it*, and brake *it*, and gave *it* to the disciples, and said, "Take, eat; this is my body." 27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave *it* to them, saying, "Drink ye all of it; 28 for this is my blood of the New Testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins. 29 But I say unto you, I will not drink henceforth of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom." 30 And when they had sung a hymn, they went out into the mount of Olives.

*Chapter 26:16-30*

## IV. THE FORECAST OF PETER'S DENIAL

## The Appointment to Meet Jesus after the Resurrection

31 Then said Jesus unto them, "All ye shall be offended because of me this night: for it is written:

\* \* \*

'I will smite the shepherd,  
And the sheep of the flock shall be  
scattered abroad.'<sup>1</sup>

\*

32 But after I am risen again, I will go before you into Galilee."  
33 Peter answered and said unto him, "Though all *men* shall be offended because of thee, *yet* will I never be offended." 34 Jesus said unto him, "Verily I say unto thee, that this night, before the cock crow, thou shalt deny me thrice." 35 Peter said unto him, "Though I should die with thee, yet will I not deny thee." Likewise also said all the disciples.

## §3. THE ARREST AND TRIAL OF JESUS

## I. THE AGONY IN THE GARDEN OF GETHSEMANE

## The Weariness of the Disciples in the Garden

36 Then cometh Jesus with them unto a place called Gethsemane, and saith unto the disciples, "Sit ye here, while I go and pray yonder." 37 And he took with him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, and began to be sorrowful and very heavy. 38 Then saith he unto them, "My soul is exceeding sorrowful, even unto death: tarry ye here, and watch with me." 39 And he went a little farther, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, "O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt." 40 And he cometh unto the disciples, and findeth them asleep, and saith unto Peter, "What, could you not watch with me one hour? 41 Watch and pray, that you enter not into temptation: the spirit indeed *is* willing, but the flesh *is* weak." 42 He went away again the second time, and prayed, saying, "O my Father, if this cup may not pass away from me, except I drink it, thy will be done." 43 And he came and found them asleep again: for their eyes were heavy. 44 And he left them, and went away again, and prayed the third time, saying the same words. 45 Then cometh he to his disciples, and saith unto them, "Sleep on now, and take *your* rest: behold, the hour is at hand, and the Son of man is betrayed into the hands of sinners. 46 Rise, let us be going: behold, he is at hand that doth betray me."

<sup>1</sup> Zech. 13:7.

## II. THE BETRAYAL AND ARREST OF JESUS

## The Fifth Fulfilment of Prophecy

47 And while he yet spoke, lo, Judas, one of the twelve, came, and with him a great multitude with swords and staves, from the chief priests and the elders of the people. 48 Now he that betrayed him gave them a sign, saying, "Whomsoever I shall kiss, the same is he: hold him fast." 49 And forthwith he came to Jesus, and said, "Hail, Master;" and kissed him. 50 And Jesus said unto him, "Friend, wherefore art thou come?" Then came they, and laid hands on Jesus, and took him. 51 And, behold, one of them that was with Jesus stretched out *his* hand, and drew his sword, and struck a servant of the high priest's, and smote off his ear. 52 Then said Jesus unto him, "Put up again thy sword into its place: for all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword. 53 Thinkest thou that I can not now pray my Father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels? 54 But how then shall the scriptures be fulfilled, that thus it must be?" 55 In that same hour said Jesus to the multitudes, "Are you come out as against a thief with swords and staves to take me? I sat daily teaching with you in the temple, and you laid no hand on me." 56 But all this was done, that the scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled. Then all the disciples forsook him and fled.

---

## III. THE TRIAL OF JESUS BY THE SANHEDRIN

## a. The Sentence of Jesus to Death

57 And they that laid hands on Jesus led *him* away to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and the elders were assembled. 58 But Peter followed him afar unto the high priest's palace, and went in, and sat with the servants, to see the end. 59 Now the chief priests, and elders, and all the council, sought false witness against Jesus, to put him to death; 60 but found none: yea, though many false witnesses came, *yet* found they none. At the last came two false witnesses, 61 and said, "This *fellow* said, "I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days." 62 And the high priest arose, and said unto him, "Answerest thou nothing? what *is it that* these witness against thee?" 63 But Jesus held his peace. And the high priest answered, and said unto him, "I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us whether thou be the Christ, the Son of God." 64 Jesus saith unto him, "Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall you see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven."

Chapter 26:47-64



65 Then the high priest rent his clothes, saying, "He hath spoken blasphemy; what further need have we of witnesses? behold now you have heard his blasphemy. 66 What think ye?" They answered and said, "He is worthy of death." 67 Then did they spit in his face, and buffeted him; and others smote *him* with the palms of their hands, 68 saying, "Prophecy unto us, thou Christ, Who is he that smote thee?"

---

#### b. The Unfaithfulness and Sorrow of Peter

69 Now Peter sat without in the palace: and a damsel came unto him, saying, "Thou also wast with Jesus of Galilee." 70 But he denied before *them* all, saying, "I know not what thou sayest." 71 And when he was gone out into the porch, another *maid* saw him, and said unto them that were there, "This *fellow* was also with Jesus of Nazareth." 72 And again he denied with an oath, "I do not know the man." 73 And after a while came unto *him* they that stood by, and said to Peter, "Surely thou also art one of them; for thy speech betrayeth thee." 74 Then began he to curse and to swear, saying, "I know not the man." And immediately the cock crew. 75 And Peter remembered the word of Jesus, who said unto him, "Before the cock crow, thou shalt deny me thrice." And he went out and wept bitterly.

---

### IV. THE TRIAL BEFORE THE ROMAN COURT

#### a. The Transfer of Jesus to the Governor

27:1 When the morning was come, all the chief priests and elders of the people took counsel against Jesus to put him to death: 2 and when they had bound him, they led *him* away, and delivered him to Pontius Pilate the governor.<sup>1</sup>

---

#### b. The Remorse and Suicide of Judas

3 Then Judas, who had betrayed him, when he saw that he was condemned, repented himself, and brought again the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders, 4 saying, "I have sinned in that I have betrayed the innocent blood." And they said, "What *is that* to us? see thou *to that*." 5 And he cast down the pieces of silver in the temple, and departed, and went and hanged himself. 6 And the chief priests took the silver pieces, and said, "It is not lawful to put them into the treasury, because it is the price of blood." 7 And they took counsel, and bought

<sup>1</sup> The Roman Governor of Judæa.

with them the potter's field, to bury strangers in. 8 Wherefore that field was called, "The field of blood," unto this day. 9 Then was fulfilled<sup>1</sup> that which was spoken by Jeremiah the prophet, saying:

\* \* \*

"And they took the thirty pieces of silver,  
The price of him that was valued,  
Whom they of the children of Israel did value;  
10 And gave them for the potter's field,  
As the Lord appointed me."<sup>2</sup>

#### c. The Approval of the Roman Governor

11 And Jesus stood before the governor: and the governor asked him, saying, "Art thou the king of the Jews?" And Jesus said unto him, "Thou sayest." 12 And when he was accused by the chief priests and elders, he answered nothing. 13 Then said Pilate unto him, "Hearest thou not how many things they witness against thee?" 14 And he answered them to never a word; insomuch that the governor marveled greatly. 15 Now at *that* feast the governor was wont to release unto the people a prisoner, whom they would. 16 And they had then a notable prisoner, called Barabbas. 17 Therefore when they were gathered together, Pilate said unto them, "Whom will ye that I release unto you? Barabbas or Jesus who is called Christ?" 18 For he knew that for envy they had delivered him. 19 When he was set down on the judgment seat, his wife sent unto him, saying, "Have thou nothing to do with that just man: for I have suffered many things this day in a dream because of him." 20 But the chief priests and elders persuaded the multitude that they should ask for Barabbas, and destroy Jesus. 21 The governor answered and said unto them, "Which of the twain will you that I release unto you?" They said, "Barabbas." 22 Pilate saith unto them, "What shall I do then with Jesus who is called Christ?" *They* all say unto him, "Let him be crucified." 23 And the governor said, "Why, what evil hath he done?" But they cried out the more, saying, "Let him be crucified." 24 When Pilate saw that he prevailed nothing, but *that* rather a tumult was made, he took water, and washed *his* hands before the multitude, saying, "I am innocent of the blood of this just person: see ye *to it*." 25 Then answered all the people, and said, "His blood *be* on us, and on our children." 26 Then released he Barabbas unto them: and when he had scourged Jesus, he delivered *him* to be crucified.

<sup>1</sup> The Sixth Fulfilment of Prophecy.

<sup>2</sup> Zech. 11:12f.

## §4. THE CRUCIFIXION AND RESURRECTION

### I. THE MOCKING OF JESUS BY THE SOLDIERS

#### The Way from the Prætorium to Golgotha

27 Then the soldiers of the governor took Jesus into the common hall, and gathered unto him the whole band of *soldiers*. 28 And they stripped him, and put on him a scarlet robe. 29 And when they had platted a crown of thorns, they put *it* upon his head, and a reed in his right hand: and they bowed the knee before him, and mocked him, saying, "Hail, King of the Jews!" 30 And they spit upon him, and took the reed, and smote him on the head. 31 And after they had mocked him, they took the robe off of him, and put his own raiment on him, and led him away to crucify *him*. 32 And as they came out, they found a man of Cyrene,<sup>1</sup> Simon by name: him they compelled to bear his cross.

### II. THE CRUCIFIXION OF JESUS AT GOLGOTHA

#### a. The Seventh Fulfilment of Prophecy

33 And when they were come unto a place called Golgotha,<sup>2</sup> that is to say, The place of a skull, 34 they gave him vinegar to drink mingled with gall: and when he had tasted *thereof*, he would not drink. 35 And they crucified him, and parted his garments, casting lots: that it might be fulfilled that was spoken by the prophet:

\* \* \*

"They parted my garments among them,  
And upon my vesture did they cast lots."<sup>3</sup>

\*

36 And sitting down they watched him there; 37 and set up over his head his accusation<sup>4</sup> written, "THIS IS JESUS THE KING OF THE JEWS." 38 Then were there two thieves crucified with him, one on the right hand, and another on the left. 39 And they that passed by reviled him, wagging their heads, 40 and saying, "Thou that destroyest the temple, and buildest *it* in three days, save thyself. If thou be the Son of God, come down from the cross." 41 Likewise also the chief priests, mocking *him*, with the scribes and elders, said, 42 "He saved others; himself he cannot save. If he be the king of Israel, let him come down from the cross and we will believe him. 43 He trusted in God; let him deliver him, now if he will have him:

<sup>1</sup> Cyrene—in Africa.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin equivalent of Golgotha is Calvary.

<sup>3</sup> Ps. 22:18.

<sup>4</sup> The charge under which Pilate permitted Jesus to be found guilty and crucified.



for he said, 'I am the Son of God.' " 44 The thieves also that were crucified with him, cast the same in his teeth.

---

#### b. The Death of Jesus on the Cross

45 Now from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land until the ninth hour, 46 And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, "Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?" (that is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?) 47 Some of them that stood there, when they heard *that*, said, "This *man* calleth for Elijah." 48 And straightway one of them ran, and took a sponge, and filled *it* with vinegar, and put *it* on a reed, and gave him to drink. 49 The rest said, "Let be, let us see whether Elijah will come to save him?" 50 And Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost. 51 And, behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom; and the earth did quake, and the rocks rent; 52 and the graves were opened; and many bodies of the saints that slept arose, 53 and came out of their graves after his resurrection, and went into the holy city, and appeared unto many. 54 Now when the centurion, and they that were with him, watching Jesus, saw the earthquake, and those things that were done, they feared greatly, saying, "Truly this was the Son of God." 55 And many women were there beholding afar off, who followed Jesus from Galilee, ministering unto him: 56 among whom were Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James and Joseph and the mother of Zebedee's children.

---

### III. THE BURIAL OF JESUS

#### a. The New Tomb of Joseph of Arimathæa

57 When the even was come, there came a rich man of Arimathea, named Joseph, who also himself was Jesus' disciple: 58 he went to Pilate and begged the body of Jesus. Then Pilate commanded the body to be delivered. 59 And when Joseph had taken the body, he wrapped it in a clean linen cloth, 60 and laid it in his own new tomb, which he had hewn out in the rock: and he rolled a great stone to the door of the sepulchre, and departed. 61 And there was Mary Magdalene, and the other Mary, sitting over against the sepulchre.

---

#### b. The Seal and Guard for the Tomb

62 Now the next day, that followed the day of the preparation, the chief priests and the Pharisees came together unto Pilate, 63 saying, "Sir, we remember that that deceiver said, while he

*Chapter 27:44-63*



was yet alive, 'After three days I will rise again.' 64 Command therefore that the sepulchre be made sure until the third day, lest his disciples come by night, and steal him away, and say unto the people, He is risen from the dead: so the last error shall be worse than the first." 65 Pilate said unto them, "You have a watch: go your way, make it as sure as you can." 66 So they went, and made the sepulchre sure, sealing the stone, and setting a watch.

#### IV. THE RESURRECTION OF JESUS

##### a. The Announcement to the Women at the Sepulchre

28:1 In the end of the sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first *day* of the week, came Mary Magdalene and the other Mary to see the sepulchre. 2 And behold there was a great earthquake: for the angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it. 3 His countenance was like lightning, and his raiment white as snow: 4 and for fear of him the keepers did shake, and became as dead *men*. 5 And the angel answered and said unto the women, "Fear not ye: for I know that you seek Jesus, who was crucified. 6 He is not here: for he is risen, as he said. Come, see the place where the Lord lay. 7 And go quickly, and tell his disciples that he is risen from the dead; and, behold, he goeth before you into Galilee; there shall you see him: lo, I have told you." 8 And they departed quickly from the sepulchre with fear and great joy; and did run to bring his disciples word.

##### b. The Meeting of Jesus with the Women

9 And as they went to tell his disciples, behold, Jesus met them, saying, "All hail!" And they came and held him by the feet, and worshipped him. 10 Then said Jesus unto them, "Be not afraid: go tell my brethren that they go into Galilee, and there shall they see me."

##### c. The Chief Priests and the Watch

11 Now when they were going, behold, some of the watch came into the city, and showed unto the chief priests all the things that were done. 12 And when they were assembled with the elders and had taken counsel, they gave large money unto the soldiers, 13 saying, "Say ye, his disciples came by night and stole him *away* while ye slept. 14 And if this come to the governor's ears, we will persuade him, and secure you." 15 So they took the money, and did as they were taught: and this saying is commonly reported among the Jews until this day.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> About A. D. 70, forty years after the death of Jesus.

## Epilogue

---

### THE MEETING WITH JESUS IN GALILEE THE SEVEN-FOLD COMMISSION FOR THE APOSTLES The Gospel of Christ for the Nations of the World

---

#### The Closing Summary

16 Then the eleven disciples went away into Galilee, into a mountain where Jesus had appointed them. 17 And when they saw him, they worshipped him: but some doubted. 18 And Jesus came and spoke unto them, saying:

\* \* \*

“All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

\*

19 Go ye therefore and teach all nations,

\*

Baptizing them in the name of the Father,

\*

And of the Son,

\*

And of the Holy Spirit:

\*

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you:

\*

And lo, I am with you always, *even* unto the end of the world. Amen.”

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*

The Gospel  
According to Mark





# A Chronicle<sup>1</sup>

## THE GOSPEL OF JESUS CHRIST THE SON OF GOD

---

### THE BEGINNING OF THE GOSPEL THE MANIFESTATION OF THE MESSIAH

#### The Preaching of John the Baptist

The beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

2 As it is written in the prophets,

\* \* \*

"Behold, I send my messenger before thy face,  
Who shall prepare thy way before thee.

3 The voice of one crying in the wilderness,  
Prepare ye the way of the Lord,  
Make his paths straight,"<sup>2</sup>

\*

4 John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins. 5 And there went out unto him all the land of Judæa, and they of Jerusalem, and were all baptized of him in the river Jordan, confessing their sins. 6 And John was clothed with camel's hair, and with a girdle of a skin about his loins; and he did eat locusts and wild honey; 7 and preached, saying, "There cometh one mightier than I after me, the latchet of whose shoes I am not worthy to stoop down and unloose. 8 I indeed have baptized you with water; but he shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit."

---

#### The Appearance and Baptism of Jesus

9 And it came to pass in those days, that Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee, and was baptized of John in Jordan. 10 And straightway coming up out of the water, he saw the heavens opened, and the Spirit like a dove descending upon him: 11 and there came a voice from heaven, *saying*, "Thou art my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased."

---

<sup>1</sup> Written at Rome, A. D., about 65-70, by John Mark of Jerusalem, the interpreter of Peter: a simple chronicle of the glad tidings, written, says Papias, from recollections of Peter's preaching.

<sup>2</sup> Mal. 3:1.

### **The Great Temptation of Jesus**

12 And immediately the Spirit driveth him into the wilderness. 13 And he was there in the wilderness forty days, tempted of Satan; and was with the wild beasts; and the angels ministered unto him.

---

### **THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN GALILEE**

#### **The Public Announcement of the Kingdom of God**

14 Now after that John was put in prison, Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God, 15 and saying, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel."

---

#### **The Call of the Four Disciples**

16 Now as he walked by the sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and Andrew his brother casting a net into the sea: for they were fishers. 17 And Jesus said unto them, "Come ye after me, and I will make you to become fishers of men. 18 And straightway they forsook their nets, and followed him. 19 And when he had gone a little farther thence, he saw James the *son* of Zebedee, and John his brother, who also were in the ship mending their nets. 20 And straightway he called them: and they left their father Zebedee in the ship with the hired servants, and went after him.

---

#### **The Ministry in the Synagogue**

21 And they went into Capernaum; and straightway on the sabbath day he entered into the synagogue, and taught. 22 And they were astonished at his doctrine; for he taught them as one that had authority, and not as the scribes.

\*

23 And there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, 24 saying, "Let *us* alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God." 25 And Jesus rebuked him, saying, "Hold thy peace, and come out of him." 26 And when the unclean spirit had torn him, and cried with a loud voice, he came out of him.

\*

27 And they were all amazed, insomuch that they questioned among themselves, saying, "What thing is this? what new doc-

*Chapter 1:12-27*

trine is this? for with authority commandeth he even the unclean spirits, and they do obey him." 28 And his fame spread abroad throughout all the region round about Galilee.

---

#### **The Healing of Simon's Wife's Mother**

29 And forthwith, when they were come out of the synagogue, they entered into the house of Simon and Andrew, with James and John. 30 But Simon's wife's mother lay sick of a fever, and anon they tell him of her. 31 And he came and took her by the hand, and lifted her up; and immediately the fever left her, and she ministered unto them.

---

#### **The Healing of the Multitude**

32 And at even, when the sun did set, they brought unto him all that were diseased, and them that were possessed with devils. 33 And all the city was gathered together at the door. 34 And he healed many that were sick of divers diseases, and cast out many devils; and suffered not the devils to speak, because they knew him.

---

### **THE PREACHING TOUR THROUGH GALILEE**

#### **The Place of Prayer and the Disciples**

35 And in the morning, rising up a great while before day, he went out, and departed into a solitary place, and there prayed. 36 And Simon and they that were with him followed after him. 37 And when they had found him, they said unto him, "All *men* seek for thee." 38 And he said unto them, "Let us go into the next towns, that I may preach there also: for therefore came I forth." 39 And he preached in their synagogues throughout all Galilee, and cast out devils.

---

#### **The Healing of a Leper**

40 And there came a leper to him, beseeching him, and kneeling down to him, and saying unto him, "If thou wilt, thou canst make me clean." 41 And Jesus, moved with compassion, put forth *his* hand, and touched him, and saith unto him, "I will; be thou clean." 42 And as soon as he had spoken, immediately the leprosy departed from him, and he was cleansed. 43 And he straitly charged him, and forthwith sent him away; 44 and saith unto him, "See thou say nothing to any man: but go thy way, show thyself to the priest, and offer for thy cleansing those things

*Chapter 1:28-44*

that Moses commanded, for a testimony unto them. 45 But he went out, and began to publish it much, and to blaze abroad the matter, insomuch that Jesus could no more openly enter into the city, but was without in desert places: and they came to him from every quarter.

---

### THE CRITICISM OF THE JEWISH AUTHORITIES

#### The Palsied Man Forgiven and Healed

2:1 And again he entered into Capernaum after *some* days; and it was noised that he was in the house. 2 And straightway many were gathered together, insomuch that there was no room to receive *them*, no, not so much as about the door: and he preached the word unto them.

\*

3 And they come unto him, bringing one sick of the palsy, who was borne of four. 4 And when they could not come nigh unto him for the press, they uncovered the roof where he was: and when they had broken *it* up, they let down the bed wherein the sick of the palsy lay. 5 When Jesus saw their faith, he said unto the sick of the palsy, "Son, thy sins be forgiven thee." 6 But there were certain of the scribes sitting there, and reasoning in their hearts, 7 "Why doth this *man* thus speak blasphemies? who can forgive sins but God only?" 8 And immediately when Jesus perceived in his spirit that they so reasoned within themselves, he said unto them, "Why reason ye these things in your hearts? 9 Which is it easier to say to the sick of the palsy, '*Thy* sins be forgiven thee;' or to say, Arise, and take up thy bed, and walk? 10 But that you may know that the Son of man hath power on earth to forgive sins (he saith to the sick of the palsy), 11 I say unto thee, Arise, and take up thy bed, and go thy way into thy house." 12 And immediately he arose, took up the bed, and went forth before them all; insomuch that they were all amazed, and glorified God, saying, "We never saw it on this fashion."

---

#### The Call of Levi the Publican

13 And he went forth again by the sea side; and all the multitude resorted unto him, and he taught them.

\*

14 And as he passed by, he saw Levi the *son* of Alphæus sitting at the receipt of custom, and said unto him, "Follow me." And he arose and followed him.

\*

15 And it came to pass, that, as Jesus sat at meat in his house, many publicans and sinners sat also together with Jesus and his

*Chapter 1:45-2:15*



disciples: for there were many, and they followed him. 16 And when the scribes and Pharisees saw him eat with publicans and sinners, they said unto his disciples, "How is it that he eateth and drinketh with publicans and sinners?" 17 When Jesus heard *it*, he saith unto them, "They that are whole have no need of the physician, but they that are sick: I came not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."

\*

18 And the disciples of John and of the Pharisees used to fast: and they come and say unto him, "Why do the disciples of John and of the Pharisees fast, but thy disciples fast not?" 19 And Jesus said unto them, "Can the children of the bridechamber fast, while the bridegroom is with them? as long as they have the bridegroom with them, they cannot fast. 20 But the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, and then shall they fast in those days. 21 No man also seweth a piece of new cloth on an old garment: else the new piece that filleth it up taketh away from the old, and the rent is made worse. 22 And no man putteth new wine into old bottles: else the new wine doth burst the bottles, and the wine is spilled, and the bottles will be marred: but new wine must be put into new bottles."

---

#### **The Plucking of Corn on the Sabbath**

23 And it came to pass, that he went through the corn fields on the sabbath day; and his disciples began, as they went, to pluck the ears of corn. 24 And the Pharisees said unto him, "Behold, why do they on the sabbath day that which is not lawful?" 25 And he said unto them, "Have you never read what David did, when he had need, and was hungry, he, and they that were with him? 26 how he went into the house of God in the days of Abiathar the high priest, and did eat the shewbread, which is not lawful to eat, but for the priests, and gave also to them that were with him?" 27 And he said unto them, "The sabbath was made for man, and not man for the sabbath: 28 therefore the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath."

---

#### **The Healing of a Man with a Withered Hand**

3:1 And he entered again into the synagogue; and there was a man there that had a withered hand. 2 And they watched him whether he would heal him on the sabbath day; that they might accuse him. 3 And he saith unto the man that had the withered hand, "Stand forth." 4 And he saith unto them, "Is it lawful to do good on the sabbath days, or to do evil? to save life, or to kill?" But they held their peace. 5 And when he had looked

*Chapter 2:16-3:5*

round about on them with anger, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, he saith unto the man, "Stretch forth thine hand." And he stretched *it* out: and his hand was restored whole as the other.

\*

6 And the Pharisees went forth, and straightway took counsel with the Herodians against him, how they might destroy him.

---

### THE FAME OF JESUS THROUGHOUT SYRIA

#### The Recognition of the Christ

7 But Jesus withdrew himself with his disciples to the sea: and a great multitude from Galilee followed him, and from Judæa, 8 and from Jerusalem, and from Idumæa, and *from* beyond Jordan; and they about Tyre and Sidon, a great multitude, when they had heard what great things he did, came unto him. 9 And he spoke to his disciples, that a small ship should wait on him because of the multitude, lest they should throng him. 10 For he had healed many; insomuch that they pressed upon him for to touch him, as many as had plagues. 11 And unclean spirits, when they saw him, fell down before him, and cried, saying, "Thou art the Son of God." 12 And he straitly charged them that they should not make him known.

---

### THE ORGANIZATION OF THE BODY OF APOSTLES

#### The Call and Ordination of the Twelve

13 And he goeth up into a mountain, and calleth *unto him* whom he would: and they came unto him. 14 And he ordained twelve, that they should be with him, and that he might send them forth to preach, 15 and to have power to heal sicknesses, and to cast out devils: 16 and Simon he surnamed Peter; 17 and James the *son* of Zebedee, and John the brother of James; and he surnamed them Boanerges, that is, The sons of thunder: 18 and Andrew, and Philip, and Bartholomew, and Matthew, and Thomas, and James the *son* of Alphæus, and Thaddæus, and Simon the Canaanite, 19 And Judas Iscariot [who also betrayed him].

---

### THE SCRIBES FROM JERUSALEM IN GALILEE

#### The Interference of Jesus Friends

And they went into a house. 20 And the multitude cometh together again, so that they could not so much as eat bread. 21

*Chapter 3:6-21*

and when his friends heard of it, they went out to lay hold on him: for they said, "He is beside himself."

### The Sin Against the Holy Spirit

22 And the scribes that came down from Jerusalem said, "He hath Beelzebub, and by the prince of the devils casteth he out devils." 23 And he called them *unto him*, and said unto them in parables, "How can Satan cast out Satan? 24 And if a kingdom be divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand. 25 And if a house be divided against itself, that house cannot stand. 26 And if Satan rise up against himself, and be divided, he cannot stand, but hath an end. 27 No man can enter into a strong man's house, and spoil his goods, except he will first bind the strong man; and then he will spoil his house. 28 Verily I say unto you, All sins shall be forgiven unto the sons of men, and blasphemies wherewith soever they shall blaspheme: 29 but he that shall blaspheme against the Holy Spirit hath never forgiveness, but is in danger of eternal damnation." 30 because they said, "He hath an unclean spirit."

### The True Kindred of Jesus

31 There came then his brothers and his mother, and, standing without, sent unto him, calling him. 32 And the multitude sat about him, and they said unto him, "Behold thy mother and thy brothers without seek for thee." 33 And he answered them, saying, "Who is my mother, or my brothers?" 34 And he looked round about on them that sat about him, and said, "Behold my mother and my brothers! 35 For whosoever shall do the will of God, the same is my brother, and my sister, and mother."

### The Teaching of Jesus by Parables

4:1 And he began again to teach by the sea side: and there was gathered unto him a great multitude, so that he entered into a ship, and sat in the sea; and the whole multitude was by the sea on the land.

\*

2 And he taught them many things by parables, and said unto them in his doctrine, 3 "Hearken: Behold, there went out a sower to sow; 4 and it came to pass, as he sowed, some fell by the way side, and the fowls of the air came and devoured it up. 5 And some fell on stony ground, where it had not much

*Chapter 3:22-4:5*



earth; and immediately it sprang up, because it had no depth of earth: 6 but when the sun was up, it was scorched; and because it had no root, it withered away. 7 And some fell among thorns, and the thorns grew up, and choked it, and it yielded no fruit. 8 And other fell on good ground, and did yield fruit that sprang up and increased; and brought forth, some thirty, and some sixty, and some a hundred." 9 And he said unto them, "He that hath ears to hear, let him hear."

\*

10 And when he was alone, they that were about him with the twelve asked of him the parable. 11 And he said unto them, "Unto you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God: but unto them that are without, all *these* things are done in parables: 12 that seeing they may see, and not perceive; and hearing, they may hear, and not understand; lest at any time they should be converted, and *their* sins should be forgiven them." 13 And he said unto them, "Know you not this parable? and how then will you know all parables? 14 The sower soweth the word. 15 And these are they by the way side, where the word is sown; but when they have heard, Satan cometh immediately, and taketh away the word that was sown in their hearts. 16 And these are they likewise that are sown on stony ground; who, when they have heard the word, immediately receive it with gladness; 17 and have no root in themselves, and so endure but for a time: afterward, when affliction or persecution ariseth for the word's sake, immediately they are offended. 18 And these are they that are sown among thorns; such as hear the word, 19 and the cares of this world, and the deceitfulness of riches, and the lusts of other things entering in, choke the word, and it becometh unfruitful. 20 And these are they that are sown on good ground; such as hear the word, and receive *it*, and bring forth fruit, some thirtyfold, some sixty, and some a hundred."

\*

21 And he said unto them, "Is a candle brought to be put under a bushel, or under a bed? and not to be set on a candlestick? 22 For there is nothing hid, that shall not be manifested; neither was any thing kept secret, but that it should come abroad. 23 If any man have ears to hear, let him hear." 24 And he said unto them, "Take heed what you hear: with what measure you mete, it shall be measured to you: and unto you that hear shall more be given. 25 For he that hath, to him shall be given: and he that hath not, from him shall be taken even that which he hath."

\*

26 And he said, "So is the kingdom of God, as if a man should cast seed into the ground; 27 and should sleep, and rise night

*Chapter 4:6-27*



and day, and the seed should spring and grow up, he knoweth not how. 28 For the earth bringeth forth fruit of herself; first the blade, then the ear, after that the full corn in the ear. 29 But when the fruit is brought forth, immediately he putteth in the sickle, because the harvest is come."

\*

30 And he said, "Whereunto shall we liken the kingdom of God? or with what comparison shall we compare it? 31 *It is* like a grain of mustard seed, which, when it is sown in the earth, is less than all the seeds that are in the earth: 32 but when it is sown, it groweth up, and becometh greater than all herbs, and shooteth out great branches; so that the fowls of the air may lodge under the shadow of it."

\*

33 And with many such parables spoke he the word unto them, as they were able to hear *it*. 34 But without a parable spoke he not unto them: and when they were alone, he expounded all things to his disciples.

---

#### THE DEPARTURE INTO GADARA

##### The Stilling of the Storm on the Sea of Galilee

35 And the same day, when the even was come, he saith unto them, "Let us pass over unto the other side." 36 And when they had sent away the multitude, they took him even as he was in the ship. And there were also with him other little ships. 37 And there arose a great storm of wind, and the waves beat into the ship, so that it was now full. 38 And he was in the hinder part of the ship, asleep on a pillow: and they awake him, and say unto him, "Master, carest thou not that we perish?" 39 And he arose, and rebuked the wind, and said unto the sea, "Peace, be still." And the wind ceased, and there was a great calm. 40 And he said unto them, "Why are you so fearful? how is it that you have no faith?" 41 And they feared exceedingly, and said one to another, "What manner of man is this, that even the wind and the sea obey him?"

---

#### The Ministry to the Gadarenes

5:1 And they came over unto the other side of the sea, into the country of the Gadarenes. 2 And when he was come out of the ship, immediately there met him out of the tombs a man with an unclean spirit, 3 who had *his* dwelling among the tombs; and no man could bind him, no, not with chains: 4 because that he had been often bound with fetters and chains,

*Chapter 4:28-5:4*

and the chains had been plucked asunder by him, and the fetters broken in pieces: neither could any *man* tame him. 5 And always night and day, he was in the mountains, and in the tombs, crying, and cutting himself with stones. 6 But when he saw Jesus afar off, he ran and worshipped him, 7 and cried with a loud voice, and said, "What have I to do with thee, Jesus, *thou* Son of the most high God? I adjure thee by God that thou torment me not." 8 For he said unto him, "Come out of the man, *thou* unclean spirit." 9 And he asked him, "What is thy name?" And he answered, saying, "My name *is* Legion: for we are many." 10 And he besought him much that he would not send them away out of the country. 11 Now there was nigh unto the mountains a great herd of swine feeding. 12 And all the devils besought him, saying, "Send us into the swine, that we may enter into them." 13 And forthwith Jesus gave them leave. And the unclean spirits went out, and entered into the swine: and the herd ran violently down a steep place into the sea [they were about two thousand]; and were choked in the sea. 14 And they that fed the swine fled, and told *it* in the city, and in the country. And they went out to see what it was that was done. 15 And they come to Jesus, and see him that was possessed with the devil, and had the legion, sitting, and clothed, and in his right mind: and they were afraid. 16 And they that saw *it* told them how it befell to him that was possessed with the devil, and *also* concerning the swine. 17 And they began to pray him to depart out of their coasts. 18 And when he was come into the ship, he that had been possessed with the devil prayed him that he might be with him. 19 Howbeit Jesus suffered him not, but saith unto him, "Go home to thy friends, and tell them how great things the Lord hath done for thee, and hath had compassion on thee." 20 And he departed, and began to publish in Decapolis how great things Jesus had done for him: and all *men* did marvel.

### THE RETURN INTO GALILEE

#### The Ruler's Daughter and the Infirm Woman

21 And when Jesus was passed over again by ship unto the other side, many people gathered unto him: and he was nigh unto the sea.

\*

22 And, behold, there cometh one of the rulers of the synagogue, Jairus by name; and when he saw him, he fell at his feet, 23 and besought him greatly, saying, "My little daughter lieth at the point of death: *I pray thee*, come and lay thy hands on her, that she may be healed; and she shall live." 24 And Jesus

*Chapter 5:5-24*

went with him; and many people followed him, and thronged him.

\*

25 And a certain woman, who had an issue of blood twelve years, 26 and had suffered many things of many physicians, and had spent all that she had, and was nothing bettered, but rather grew worse, 27 when she had heard of Jesus, came in the press behind, and touched his garment. 28 For she said, "If I may touch but his clothes, I shall be whole." 29 And straightway the fountain of her blood was dried up; and she felt in *her* body that she was healed of that plague. 30 And Jesus immediately knowing in himself that virtue had gone out of him, turned himself about in the press, and said, "Who touched my clothes?" 31 And his disciples said unto him, "Thou seest the multitude thronging thee, and sayest thou, 'Who touched me?'" 32 And he looked round about to see her that had done this thing. 33 But the woman fearing and trembling, knowing what was done in her, came and fell down before him, and told him all the truth. 34 And he said unto her, "Daughter, thy faith hath made thee whole; go in peace, and be whole of thy plague."

\*

35 While he yet spoke, there came from the ruler of the synagogue's *house certain* that said, "Thy daughter is dead: why troublest thou the Master any further?" 36 As soon as Jesus heard the word that was spoken, he saith unto the ruler of the synagogue, "Be not afraid, only believe." 37 And he suffered no man to follow him, save Peter, and James, and John the brother of James. 38 And he cometh to the house of the ruler of the synagogue, and seeth the tumult, and them that wept and wailed greatly. 39 And when he was come in, he saith unto them, "Why make ye this ado, and weep? the damsel is not dead, but sleepeth." 40 And they laughed him to scorn. But when he had put them all out, he taketh the father and the mother of the damsel, and them that were with him, and entered in where the damsel was lying. 41 And he took the damsel by the hand, and said unto her, "Talitha cumi;" which is, being interpreted, Damsel, I say unto thee, arise. 42 And straightway the damsel arose, and walked; for she was *of the age* of twelve years. And they were astonished with a great astonishment. 43 And he charged them straitly that no man should know it; and commanded that something should be given her to eat.

---

## THE MINISTRY THROUGH GALILEE

### The Rejection at Nazareth

6:1 And he went out from thence, and came into his own country; and his disciples follow him. 2 And when the sab-

*Chapter 5:25-6:2*



bath day was come, he began to teach in the synagogue: and many hearing *him* were astonished, saying, "From whence hath this *man* these things? and what wisdom is this that is given unto him, that even such mighty works are wrought by his hands? 3 Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary, the brother of James, and Joses, and of Juda, and Simon? and are not his sisters here with us?" And they were offended at him. 4 But Jesus said unto them, "A prophet is not without honour, but in his own country, and among his own kin, and in his own house." 5 And he could there do no mighty work, save that he laid his hands upon a few sick folk, and healed *them*. 6 And he marvelled because of their unbelief.

---

#### The Mission of the Apostles

And he went round about the villages, teaching. 7 And he called *unto him* the twelve, and began to send them forth by two and two; and gave them power over unclean spirits; 8 and commanded them that they should take nothing for *their* journey, save a staff only; no scrip, no bread, no money in *their* purse: 9 but *be* shod with sandals; and not put on two coats. 10 And he said unto them, "In what place soever you enter into a house, there abide until you depart from that place. 11 And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear you, when you depart thence, shake off the dust under your feet for a testimony against them. Verily I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for Sodom and Gomorrha in the day of judgment than for that city." 12 And they went out, and preached that men should repent. 13 And they cast out many devils, and anointed with oil many that were sick, and healed *them*.

---

#### The Alarm of King Herod

14 And king Herod heard *of him* [for his name was spread abroad]: and he said, That John the Baptist was risen from the dead, and therefore mighty works do show forth themselves in him. 15 Others said, That it is Elijah. And others said, That it is a prophet, or as one of the prophets. 16 But when Herod heard *thereof*, he said, "It is John, whom I beheaded; he is risen from the dead."

\*

17 For Herod himself had sent forth and laid hold upon John, and bound him in prison for Herodias' sake, his brother Philip's wife: for he had married her. 18 For John had said unto Herod, "It is not lawful for thee to have thy brother's wife." 19 Therefore Herodias had a quarrel against him, and would have killed

*Chapter 6:3-19*



him; but she could not: 20 for Herod feared John, knowing that he was a just and holy man, and observed him; and when he heard him, he did many things, and heard him gladly.

\*

21 And when a convenient day was come, Herod on his birthday made a supper to his lords, high captains, and chief *estates* of Galilee; 22 and when the daughter of the said Herodias came in, and danced, and pleased Herod and them that sat with him, the king said unto the damsel, "Ask of me whatsoever thou wilt, and I will give *it* thee." 23 And he sware unto her, "Whatsoever thou shalt ask of me, I will give *it* thee, unto the half of my kingdom." 24 And she went forth, and said unto her mother, "What shall I ask?" And she said, "The head of John the Baptist." 25 And she came in straightway with haste unto the king, and asked, saying, "I will that thou give me by and by in a charger the head of John the Baptist." 26 And the king was exceeding sorry; *yet* for his oath's sake, and for their sakes that sat with him, he would not reject her. 27 And immediately the king sent an executioner, and commanded his head to be brought: and he went and beheaded him in prison, 28 and brought his head in a charger, and gave it to the damsel: and the damsel gave it to her mother.

\*

29 And when his disciples heard *of it*, they came and took up his corpse, and laid it in a tomb.

---

### THE RETIREMENT OF JESUS ACROSS THE LAKE

#### The Feeding of the Five Thousand

30 And the apostles gathered themselves together unto Jesus, and told him all things, both what they had done, and what they had taught. 31 And he said unto them, "Come ye yourselves apart into a desert place, and rest awhile:" for there were many coming and going, and they had no leisure so much as to eat. 32 And they departed into a desert place by ship privately. 33 And the people saw them departing, and many knew him, and ran afoot thither out of all cities, and outwent them and came together unto him. 34 And Jesus, when he came out, saw much people, and was moved with compassion toward them, because they were as sheep not having a shepherd: and he began to teach them many things.

\*

35 And when the day was now far spent, his disciples came unto him, and said, "This is a desert place, and now the time is far passed: 36 send them away, that they may go into the

*Chapter 6:20-36*

country round about, and into the villages, and buy themselves bread: for they have nothing to eat." 37 He answered and said unto them, "Give ye them to eat." And they say unto him, "Shall we go and buy two hundred pennyworth of bread, and give them to eat?" 38 He saith unto them, "How many loaves have you? go and see." And when they knew, they say, "Five, and two fishes." 39 And he commanded them to make all sit down by companies upon the green grass. 40 And they sat down in ranks, by hundreds, and by fifties. 41 And when he had taken the five loaves and the two fishes, he looked up to heaven, and blessed, and broke the loaves, and gave *them* to his disciples to set before them; and the two fishes divided he among them all. 42 And they did all eat, and were filled. 43 And they took up twelve baskets full of the fragments, and of the fishes. 44 And they that did eat of the loaves were about five thousand men.

---

#### The Walking of Jesus on the Water

45 And straightway he constrained his disciples to get into the ship, and go to the other side before unto Bethsaida, while he sent away the people. 46 And when he had sent them away, he departed into a mountain to pray.

\*

47 And when even was come, the ship was in the midst of the sea, and he alone on the land. 48 And he saw them toiling in rowing; for the wind was contrary unto them: and about the fourth watch of the night he cometh unto them, walking upon the sea, and would have passed by them. 49 But when they saw him walking upon the sea, they supposed it had been a spirit, and cried out: 50 for they all saw him, and were troubled. And immediately he talked with them, and saith unto them, "Be of good cheer: it is I; be not afraid." 51 And he went up unto them into the ship; and the wind ceased: and they were sore amazed in themselves beyond measure, and wondered. 52 For they considered not *the miracle* of the loaves: for their heart was hardened.

\*

53 And when they had passed over, they came into the land of Gennesaret, and drew to the shore. 54 And when they were come out of the ship, straightway they knew him, 55 and ran through that whole region round about, and began to carry about in beds those that were sick, where they heard he was. 56 And whithersoever he entered, into villages, or cities, or country, they laid the sick in the streets, and besought him that they might touch if it were but the border of his garment: and as many as touched him were made whole.

THE TRADITION OF THE ELDERS

The Pharisees and Scribes from Jerusalem

7:1 Then came together unto him the Pharisees, and certain of the scribes, who came from Jerusalem. 2 And when they saw some of his disciples eat bread with defiled, that is to say, with unwashed hands, they found fault. 3 For the Pharisees, and all the Jews, except they wash *their* hands oft, eat not, holding the tradition of the elders. 4 And *when they come* from the market, except they wash, they eat not. And many other things there are, that they have received to hold, *as* the washing of cups, and pots, brazen vessels, and of tables. 5 Then the Pharisees and scribes asked him, "Why walk not thy disciples according to the tradition of the elders, but eat bread with unwashed hands?" 6 He answered and said unto them, "Well hath Isaiah prophesied of you hypocrites, as it is written:

\* \* \*

"This people honoureth me with *their* lips,  
But their heart is far from me.

7 Howbeit in vain do they worship me,  
Teaching *for* doctrines the commandments  
of men."<sup>1</sup>

\*

8 For laying aside the commandments of God, you hold the tradition of men, *as* the washing of pots and cups: and many other such like things you do." 9 And he said unto them, "Full well you reject the commandment of God, that you may keep your own tradition. 10 For Moses said, 'Honour thy father and thy mother;' and, 'Whoso curseth father or mother, let him die the death:'<sup>2</sup> 11 but you say, 'If a man shall say to his father or mother, *It is* Corban, that is to say, a gift, by whatsoever thou mightest be profited by me; *he shall be free*. 12 And you suffer him no more to do aught for his father or his mother; 13 making the word of God of none effect through your tradition, which you have delivered: and many such like things you do."

\*

14 And when he had called all the people *unto him*, he said unto them, "Hearken unto me, every one *of you*, and understand. 15 There is nothing from without a man, that entering into him can defile him: but the things which come out of him, those are they that defile the man. 16 If any man have ears to hear, let him hear."

\*

17 And when he was entered into the house from the people, his disciples asked him concerning the parable. 18 And he

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 29:13.    <sup>2</sup> Ex. 20:12.



saith unto them, "Are you so without understanding also? Do you not perceive, that whatsoever thing from without entereth into the man, *it* cannot defile him; 19 because it entereth not into his heart, but into the stomach, and goeth out into the draught," purging all meats? 20 And he said, "That which cometh out of the man, that defileth the man. 21 For from within, out of the heart of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornications, murders, 22 thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, lasciviousness, an evil eye, blasphemy, pride, foolishness: 23 all these things come from within, and defile the man."

---

### THE NORTHERN RETIREMENT INTO PHœNICIA

#### The Daughter of a Syrophœnician Woman

24 And from thence he arose, and went into the borders of Tyre and Sidon, and entered into a house, and would have no man know it: but he could not be hid.

\*

25 For a *certain* woman, whose young daughter had an unclean spirit, heard of him, and came and fell at his feet. 26 The woman was a Greek, a Syrophœnician by nation; and she besought him that he would cast forth the devil out of her daughter. 27 But Jesus said unto her, "Let the children first be filled; for it is not meet to take the children's bread and cast *it* unto the dogs." 28 And she answered and said unto him, "Yes, Lord: yet the dogs under the table eat of the children's crumbs." 29 And he said unto her, "For this saying go thy way; the devil is gone out of thy daughter." 30 And when she was come to her house, she found the devil gone out, and her daughter laid upon the bed.

---

### THE RETURN THROUGH DECAPOLIS TO THE SEA

#### The Healing of a Deaf and Dumb Man

31 And again, departing from the coasts of Tyre and Sidon, he came unto the sea of Galilee, through the midst of the coasts of Decapolis.

\*

32 And they bring unto him one that was deaf, and had an impediment in his speech; and they beseech him to put his hand upon him. 33 And he took him aside from the multitude, and put his fingers into his ears, and he spit, and touched his tongue; 34 and looking up to heaven, he sighed, and saith unto him, "Ephphatha!" [that is, Be opened]. 35 And straightway his

*Chapter 7:19-35*



ears were opened, and the string of his tongue was loosed, and he spoke plain. 36 And he charged them that they should tell no man: but the more he charged them, so much the more a great deal they published *it*; 37 and were beyond measure astonished, saying, "He hath done all things well: he maketh both the deaf to hear, and the dumb to speak."

---

#### The Feeding of the Four Thousand

8:1 In those days, the multitude being very great, and having nothing to eat, Jesus called his disciples *unto him*, and saith unto them, 2 "I have compassion on the multitude, because they have now been with me three days, and have nothing to eat: 3 and if I send them away fasting to their own houses, they will faint by the way: for divers of them came from far." 4 And his disciples answered him, "From whence can a man satisfy these *men* with bread here in the wilderness?" 5 And he asked them, "How many loaves have you?" And they said, "Seven." 6 And he commanded the people to sit down on the ground: and he took the seven loaves, and gave thanks, and brake, and gave to his disciples to set before *them*; and they did set *them* before the people. 7 And they had a few small fishes: and he blessed, and commanded to set them also before *them*. 8 So they did eat, and were filled: and they took up of the broken *meat* that was left seven baskets. 9 And they that had eaten were about four thousand: and he sent them away.

---

#### The Request for a Sign from Heaven

10 And straightway he entered into a ship with his disciples, and came into the parts of Dalmanutha.

\*

11 And the Pharisees came forth, and began to question with him, seeking of him a sign from heaven, tempting him. 12 And he sighed deeply in his spirit, and saith, "Why doth this generation seek after a sign? Verily I say unto you, There shall no sign be given unto this generation." 13 And he left them, and entering into the ship again departed to the other side.

\*

14 Now *the disciples* had forgotten to take bread, neither had they in the ship with them more than one loaf. 15 And he charged them, saying, "Take heed, beware of the leaven of the Pharisees, and of the leaven of Herod." 16 And they reasoned

*Chapter 7:36-8:16*

among themselves, saying, "*It is* because we have no bread." 17 And when Jesus knew *it*, he saith unto them, "Why reason ye, because you have no bread? perceive you not yet, neither understand? have you your heart yet hardened?" 18 Having eyes, see you not? and having ears, hear you not? and do you not remember? 19 When I broke the five loaves among five thousand, how many baskets full of fragments took ye up?" They say unto him, "Twelve." 20 "And when the seven among four thousand, how many baskets full of fragments took ye up?" And they said, "Seven." 21 And he said unto them, "How is it that you do not understand?"

---

#### THE RETIREMENT INTO DECAPOLIS

##### The Blind Man of Bethsaida

22 And he cometh to Bethsaida; and they bring a blind man unto him, and besought him to touch him. 23 And he took the blind man by the hand, and led him out of the town; and when he had spit on his eyes, and put his hands upon him, he asked him if he saw aught. 24 And he looked up, and said, "I see men as trees, walking." 25 After that he put *his* hands again upon his eyes, and made him look up: and he was restored, and saw every man clearly. 26 And he sent him away to his house, saying, "Neither go into the town, nor tell *it* to any in the town."

---

#### The Great Confession at Cæsarea Philippi

27 And Jesus went out, and his disciples, into the towns of Cæsarea Philippi: and by the way he asked his disciples, saying unto them, "Who do men say that I am?" 28 And they answered, "John the Baptist:" but some say, "Elijah;" and others, "One of the prophets." 29 And he saith unto them, "But who say ye that I am?" And Peter answereth and saith unto him, "Thou art the Christ." 30 And he charged them that they should tell no man of him.

---

#### The Forecast of the Passion

31 And he began to teach them, that the Son of man must suffer many things, and be rejected of the elders, and of the chief priests, and scribes, and be killed, and after three days rise again. 32 And he spoke that saying openly. And Peter took him, and began to rebuke him. 33 But when he had turned about and looked on his disciples, he rebuked Peter, saying, "Get thee behind me, Satan: for thou savourest not the things that are of God, but the things that are of men."

*Chapter 8:17-33*

The Cost of Discipleship

34 And when he had called the people *unto him* with his disciples also, he said unto them:

\* \* \*

“Whosoever will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me.

\*

35 For whosoever will save his life shall lose it;

\*

And whosoever shall lose his life for my sake and the gospel's, the same shall save it.

\*

36 For what shall it profit a man, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul?

\*

37 Or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul?

\*

38 Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation, of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels.”

\*

9:1 And he said unto them, “Verily I say unto you, that there are some of them that stand here, that shall not taste of death, till they have seen the kingdom of God come with power.”

---

The Transfiguration of Jesus

2 And after six days Jesus taketh *with him* Peter, and James and John, and leadeth them up into a high mountain apart by themselves: and he was transfigured before them. 3 And his raiment became shining, exceeding white as snow; so as no fuller on earth can whiten them. 4 And there appeared unto them Elijah with Moses; and they were talking with Jesus. 5 And Peter answered and said to Jesus, “Master, it is good for us to be here: let us make three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah.” 6 For he knew not what to say; for they were sore afraid. 7 And there was a cloud that overshadowed them: and a voice came out of the cloud, saying, “This is my beloved Son: hear him.” 8 And suddenly, when they had looked round about, they saw no man any more, save Jesus only with themselves. 9 And as they came down from the mountain, he charged them that they should tell no man what things they

Chapter 8:34-9:9



had seen, till the Son of man were risen from the dead. 10 And they kept that saying with themselves, questioning one with another what the rising from the dead should mean.

\*

11 And they asked him, saying, "Why say the scribes that Elijah must first come?" 12 And he answered and told them, "Elijah verily cometh first, and restoreth all things; and how it is written of the Son of man, that he must suffer many things, and be set at nought. 13 But I say unto you, That Elijah is indeed come, and they have done unto him whatsoever they would, as it is written of him."

#### The Healing of a Demoniac Boy

14 And when he came to *his* disciples, he saw a great multitude about them, and the scribes questioning with them. 15 And straightway all the people, when they beheld him, were greatly amazed, and running to *him* saluted him. 16 And he asked the scribes, "What question ye with them?" 17 And one of the multitude answered and said, "Master, I have brought unto thee my son, who hath a dumb spirit; 18 and wheresoever he taketh him, he teareth him; and he foameth, and gnasheth with his teeth, and pineth away: and I spoke to thy disciples that they should cast him out; and they could not." 19 He answereth him, and saith, "O faithless generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him to me." 20 And they brought him unto him: and when he saw him, straightway the spirit tare him; and he fell on the ground, and wallowed foaming. 21 And he asked his father, "How long ago is it since this came unto him?" And he said, "Of a child. 22 And oftentimes it hath cast him into the fire, and into the waters, to destroy him: but if thou canst do anything, have compassion on us, and help us." 23 Jesus said unto him, "If thou canst believe, all things *are* possible to him that believeth." 24 And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, "Lord, I believe; help thou my unbelief." 25 When Jesus saw that the people came running together, he rebuked the foul spirit, saying unto him, "*Thou* dumb and deaf spirit, I charge thee, come out of him, and enter no more into him." 26 And *the spirit* cried, and rent him sore, and came out of him: and he was as one dead; insomuch that many said, "He is dead." 27 But Jesus took him by the hand and lifted him up; and he arose. 28 And when he was come into the house, his disciples asked him privately, "Why could not we cast him out?" 29 And he said unto them, "This kind can come forth by nothing, but by prayer and fasting."

Chapter 9:10-29



---

THE SECRET ARRIVAL IN GALILEE

## The Forecast Again of the Betrayal and Passion

30 And they departed thence, and passed through Galilee; and he would not that any man should know *it*. 31 For he taught his disciples, and said unto them, "The Son of man is delivered into the hands of men, and they shall kill him; and after that he is killed, he shall rise the third day." 32 But they understood not that saying, and were afraid to ask him.

---

## The Question of Rank in the Kingdom

33 And he came to Capernaum: and being in the house he asked them, "What is it that you disputed among yourselves by the way?" 34 But they held their peace: for by the way they had disputed among themselves who *should be* the greatest. 35 And he sat down, and called the twelve, and said unto them, "If any man desire to be first, *the same* shall be last of all, and servant of all." 36 And he took a child, and set him in the midst of them: and when he had taken him in his arms, he said unto them, 37 "Whosoever shall receive one of such children in my name, receiveth me: and whosoever shall receive me, receiveth not me, but him that sent me."

---

## The Friends and Enemies of Jesus

38 And John answered him, saying, "Master, we saw one casting out devils in thy name, and he followeth not us: and we forbade him, because he followeth not us." 39 But Jesus said, "Forbid him not: for there is no man that shall do a miracle in my name, that can lightly speak evil of me. 40 For he that is not against us is on our part. 41 For whosoever shall give you a cup of water to drink in my name, because you belong to Christ, verily I say unto you, he shall not lose his reward. 42 And whosoever shall offend one of these little ones that believe in me, it is better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and he were cast into the sea. 43 And if thy hand offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter into life maimed, than having two hands to go into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: 44 where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. 45 And if thy foot offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter halt into life, than having two feet to be cast into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: 46 where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. 47 And if thine eye offend thee, pluck it out: it is better for thee to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye,

Chapter 9:30-47

than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire: 48 where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. 49 For every one shall be salted with fire, and every sacrifice shall be salted with salt. 50 Salt is good: but if the salt have lost his saltness, wherewith shall we season it? Have salt in yourselves, and have peace one with another."

---

### THE JOURNEY FROM CAPERNAUM TO JERUSALEM

#### The Sojourn of Jesus Beyond the Jordan

10:1 And he arose from thence, and cometh into the coasts of Judæa by the farther side of the Jordan: and the people resort unto him again; and, as he was wont, he taught them again.

---

#### The Address on Marriage and Divorce

2 And the Pharisees came to him, and asked him, "Is it lawful for a man to put away *his* wife?" tempting him. 3 And he answered and said unto them, "What did Moses command you?" 4 And they said, "Moses suffered us to write a bill of divorcement, and to put *her* away." 5 And Jesus answered and said unto them, "For the hardness of your heart he wrote you this precept. 6 But from the beginning of the creation God made them male and female. 7 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and cleave to his wife; 8 and they twain shall be one flesh; so then they are no more twain, but one flesh. 9 What therefore God hath joined together, let no man put asunder."

\*

10 And in the house his disciples asked him again of the same matter. 11 And he saith unto them, "Whosoever shall put away his wife, and marry another, committeth adultery against her. 12 And if a woman shall put away her husband, and be married to another, she committeth adultery."

---

#### The Little Children and the Kingdom

13 And they brought young children to him, that he should touch them: and *his* disciples rebuked those that brought *them*. 14 But when Jesus saw *it*, he was much displeased, and said unto them, "Suffer the little children to come unto me, and forbid them not: for of such is the kingdom of God. 15 Verily I say unto you, Whosoever shall not receive the kingdom of God as a little child, he shall not enter therein." 16 And he took them up in his arms, put *his* hands upon them, and blessed them.

Chapter 9:48-10:16

**The Rich Young Man and the Kingdom**

17 And when he was gone forth in the way, there came one running, and kneeled to him, and asked him, "Good Master, what shall I do that I may inherit eternal life?" 18 And Jesus said unto him, "Why callest thou me good? *there is none good but one, that is God.* 19 Thou knowest the commandments, 'Do not commit adultery, Do not kill, Do not steal, Do not bear false witness, Defraud not, Honour thy father and mother.'" <sup>1</sup> 20 And he answered and said unto him, "Master, all these have I observed from my youth." 21 Then Jesus beholding him loved him, and said unto him, "One thing thou lackest: go thy way, sell whatsoever thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven: and come, take up thy cross, and follow me." 22 And he was sad at that saying, and went away grieved: for he had great possessions.

\*

23 And Jesus looked round about, and said unto his disciples, "How hardly shall they that have riches enter into the kingdom of God!" 24 And the disciples were astonished at his words. But Jesus answereth again, and saith unto them, "Children, how hard is it for them that trust in riches to enter into the kingdom of God! 25 It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God." 26 And they were astonished out of measure, saying among themselves, "Who then can be saved?" 27 And Jesus looking upon them saith, "With men *it is impossible*, but not with God: for with God all things are possible."

\*

28 Then began Peter to say unto him, "Lo, we have left all, and have followed thee." 29 And Jesus answered and said, "Verily I say unto you, There is no man that has left house, or brothers, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my sake, and the gospel's, 30 but he shall receive an hundredfold now in this time, houses, and brothers and sisters, and mothers, and children, and lands, with persecutions; and in the world to come eternal life. 31 But many *that are* first shall be last; and the last first."

---

**The Forecast of the Crucifixion and Resurrection**

32 And they were in the way going up to Jerusalem; and Jesus went before them: and they were amazed; and as they followed, they were afraid. And he took again the twelve, and began

---

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 20:12f



to tell them what things should happen unto him, 33 *saying*, "Behold, we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of man shall be delivered unto the chief priests, and unto the scribes; and they shall condemn him to death, and shall deliver him to the Gentiles: 34 and they shall mock him, and shall scourge him, and shall spit upon him, and shall kill him: and the third day he shall rise again."

---

#### The Ambition of James and John

35 And James and John, the sons of Zebedee, come unto him, saying, "Master, we would that thou shouldest do for us whatsoever we shall desire." 36 And he said unto them, "What would ye that I should do for you?" 37 They said unto him, "Grant unto us that we may sit, one on thy right hand, and the other on thy left hand, in thy glory." 38 But Jesus said unto them, "You know not what you ask: can you drink of the cup that I drink of? and be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with?" 39 And they said unto him, "We can." And Jesus said unto them, "You shall indeed drink of the cup that I drink of; and with the baptism that I am baptized withal shall you be baptized: 40 but to sit on my right hand and on my left hand is not mine to give; but *it shall be given to them* for whom it is prepared."

\*

41 And when the ten heard *it*, they began to be much displeased with James and John. 42 But Jesus called them *to him*, and saith unto them, "You know that they that are accounted to rule over the Gentiles exercise lordship over them; and their great ones exercise authority upon them. 43 But it shall not be so among you: but whosoever will be great among you, shall be your minister: 44 and whosoever of you will be the chiefest, shall be servant of all. 45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many."

---

#### The Healing of Bartimæus at Jericho

46 And they came to Jericho: and as he went out of Jericho with his disciples and a great number of people, blind Bartimæus, the son of Timæus, sat by the highway side begging. 47 And when he heard that it was Jesus of Nazareth, he began to cry out, and say, "Jesus, *thou* son of David, have mercy on me." 48 And many charged him that he should hold his peace: but he cried a great deal more, "Thou Son of David, have mercy

*Chapter 10:33-48*



on me." 49 And Jesus stood still, and commanded him to be called. And they call the blind man, saying unto him, "Be of good comfort, rise; he calleth thee." 50 And he, casting away his garment, rose, and came to Jesus. 51 And Jesus answered and said unto him, "What wilt thou that I should do unto thee?" The blind man said unto him, "Lord, that I might receive my sight." 52 And Jesus said unto him, "Go thy way; thy faith hath made thee whole." And immediately he received his sight, and followed Jesus in the way.

## THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN JERUSALEM

### The Triumphal Entry into the City

11:1 And when they came nigh to Jerusalem, unto Bethphage and Bethany, at the mount of Olives, he sendeth forth two of his disciples, 2 and saith unto them, "Go your way into the village over against you: and as soon as you have entered into it, you shall find a colt tied, whereon never man sat; loose him, and bring *him*. 3 And if any man say unto you, Why do ye this? say ye that the Lord hath need of him; and straightway he will send him hither." 4 And they went their way, and found the colt tied by the door without in a place where two ways met; and they loose him. 5 And certain of them that stood there said unto them, "What do ye, loosing the colt?" 6 And they said unto them even as Jesus had commanded: and they let them go. 7 And they brought the colt to Jesus, and cast their garments on him; and he sat upon him. 8 And many spread their garments in the way: and others cut down branches off the trees, and strawed *them* in the way. 9 And they that went before, and they that followed, cried, saying:

\* \* \*

"Hosanna!

Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord:

10 Blessed *be* the kingdom of our father David,

That cometh in the name of the Lord:

Hosanna in the highest!"<sup>1</sup>

\*

11 And Jesus entered into Jerusalem, and into the temple: and when he had looked round about upon all things, and now the eventide was come, he went out unto Bethany with the twelve.

### The Visit from Bethany to the Temple

12 And on the morrow, when they were come from Bethany, he was hungry; 13 and seeing a fig tree afar off having

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 118:26.

leaves, he came, if haply he might find any thing thereon: and when he came to it, he found nothing but leaves; for the time of figs was not *yet*. 14 And Jesus spoke and said unto it, "No man eat fruit of thee hereafter for ever." And his disciples heard *it*.

---

#### The Cleansing of the Temple

15 And they come to Jerusalem: and Jesus went into the temple, and began to cast out them that sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the tables of the moneychangers, and the seats of them that sold doves; 16 and would not suffer that any man should carry any vessel through the temple. 17 And he taught, saying unto them, "Is it not written, 'My house shall be called of all nations the house of prayer?'"<sup>1</sup> but you have made it a den of thieves." 18 And the scribes and chief priests heard *it*, and sought how they might destroy him: for they feared him, because all the people were astonished at his doctrine. 19 And when even was come, he went out of the city.

---

#### The Greatness of Faith in God

20 And in the morning, as they passed by, they saw the fig tree dried up from the roots. 21 And Peter calling to remembrance saith unto him, "Master, behold the fig tree which thou cursedst is withered away." 22 And Jesus answering saith unto them, "Have faith in God. 23 For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things that he saith shall come to pass, he shall have whatsoever he saith. 24 Therefore I say unto you, Whatsoever things you desire, when you pray, believe that you receive *them*, and you shall have *them*. 25 And when you stand praying, forgive, if you have aught against any: that your Father also who is in heaven may forgive you your trespasses. 26 But if you do not forgive, neither will your Father who is in heaven forgive your trespasses."

---

#### THE CONTROVERSY WITH THE RULERS

##### The Questioning of Jesus' Authority

27 And they come again to Jerusalem: and as he was walking in the temple, there come to him the chief priests, and the scribes, and the elders, 28 and say unto him, "By what authority doest thou these things? and who gave thee this authority to do these things?" 29 And Jesus answered and said unto them,

---

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 56:7.

"I will also ask you one question, and answer me, and I will tell you by what authority I do these things: 30 The baptism of John, was *it* from heaven, or of men? answer me." 31 And they reasoned with themselves, saying, "If we shall say, From heaven; he will say, Why then did you not believe him? 32 But if we shall say, Of men"—they feared the people: for all *men* counted John, that he was a prophet indeed. 33 And they answered and said unto Jesus, "We cannot tell." And Jesus answering saith unto them, "Neither do I tell you by what authority I do these things."

#### The Parable of the Wicked Husbandmen

12:1 And he began to speak unto them by parables. "A *certain* man planted a vineyard, and set a hedge about *it*, and digged a *place* for the winefat, and built a tower, and let it out to husbandmen, and went into a far country. 2 And at the season he sent to the husbandmen a servant, that he might receive from the husbandmen of the fruit of the vineyard. 3 And they caught *him*, and beat him, and sent *him* away empty. 4 And again he sent unto them another servant; and at him they cast stones, and wounded *him* in the head, and sent *him* away shamefully handled. 5 And again he sent another; and him they killed, and many others; beating, some, and killing some. 6 Having yet therefore one son, his well beloved, he sent him also last unto them, saying, 'They will reverence my son.' 7 But those husbandmen said among themselves, 'This is the heir; come, let us kill him, and the inheritance shall be ours.' 8 And they took him, and killed *him*, and cast *him* out of the vineyard. 9 What shall therefore the lord of the vineyard do? he will come and destroy the husbandmen, and will give the vineyard unto others. 10 And have you not read this scripture:

\* \* \*

'The stone which the builders rejected  
Is become the head of the corner:

11 This was the Lord's doing,  
And it is marvellous in our eyes?"<sup>1</sup>

\*

12 And they sought to lay hold on him, but feared the people: for they knew that he had spoken the parable against them: and they left him and went their way.

#### The Question of the Roman Tribute

13 And they sent unto him certain of the Pharisees and of the Herodians, to catch him in *his* words. 14 And when they

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 118:22.



were come, they say unto him, "Master, we know that thou art true, and carest for no man; for thou regardest not the person of men, but teachest the way of God in truth: Is it lawful to give tribute to Cæsar, or not? 15 Shall we give, or shall we not give?" But he, knowing their hypocrisy, said unto them, "Why tempt ye me? bring me a penny, that I may see *it*." 16 And they brought *it*. And he saith unto them "Whose *is* this image and superscription?" and they said unto him, "Cæsar's." 17 And Jesus answering said unto them, "Render to Cæsar the things that are Cæsar's, and to God the things that are God's." And they marvelled at him.

#### The Question of the Resurrection

18 Then come unto him the Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection; and they asked him, saying, 19 "Master, Moses wrote unto us, 'If a man's brother die, and leave *his* wife *behind him*, and leave no children, that his brother should take his wife, and raise up seed unto his brother.'<sup>1</sup> 20 Now there were seven brothers: and the first took a wife, and dying left no seed. 21 And the second took her, and died; neither left he any seed: and the third likewise. 22 And the seven had her, and left no seed: last of all the woman died also. 23 In the resurrection therefore, when they shall rise, whose wife shall she be of them? for seven had her as wife." 24 And Jesus answering said unto them, "Do you not therefore err, because you know not the scriptures, neither the power of God? 25 For when they shall rise from the dead, they neither marry, nor are given in marriage: but are as the angels that are in heaven. 26 And as touching the dead, that they rise: have you not read in the book of Moses, how in the bush God spoke unto him, saying, 'I *am* the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob?'<sup>2</sup> 27 He is not the God of the dead, but the God of the living: you therefore do greatly err."

#### The Question of the Commandments

28 And one of the scribes came, and having heard them reasoning together, and perceiving that he had answered them well, asked him, "Which is the first commandment of all?" 29 And Jesus answered him, "The first of all the commandments *is*, 'Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord; 30 and thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength:'<sup>3</sup> this

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 38:8.

<sup>2</sup> Ex. 3:6.

<sup>3</sup> Deut. 6:4f.



is the first commandment. 31 And the second *is* like unto it, *namely* this, 'Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself.'<sup>1</sup> There is no other commandment greater than these." 32 And the scribe said unto him, "Well, Master, thou hast said the truth: for there is one God; and there is no other but he: 33 and to love him with all the heart, and with all the understanding, and with all the soul, and with all the strength, and to love *his* neighbor as himself, is more than all whole burnt offerings and sacrifices." 34 And when Jesus saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him, "Thou art not far from the kingdom of God."

---

#### The Question Concerning the Son of David

35 And Jesus answered and said, while he taught in the temple, "How say the scribes that Christ is the Son of David? 36 For David himself said by the Holy Spirit:

\* \* \*

'The Lord said to my Lord,  
Sit thou on my right hand,  
Till I make thine enemies thy footstool.'<sup>2</sup>

\*

37 David therefore himself calleth him Lord; and whence is he *then* his son?" And the common people heard him gladly.

---

#### THE LAST WORDS WITH THE DISCIPLES

##### The Condemnation of the Scribes

38 And he said unto them in his doctrine, "Beware of the scribes, who love to go in long clothing, and *love* salutations in the marketplaces, 39 and the chief seats in the synagogues, and the uppermost rooms at feasts: 40 Who devour widows' houses, and for a pretence make long prayers: these shall receive greater damnation."

---

##### The Poor Widow's Two Mites

41 And Jesus sat over against the treasury, and beheld how the people cast money into the treasury: and many that were rich cast in much. 42 And there came a certain poor widow, and she threw in two mites, which make a farthing. 43 And he called *unto him* his disciples, and saith unto them, "Verily I say unto you, That this poor widow hath cast more in, than all they

---

<sup>1</sup> Lev. 19:18.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 110:1.

that have cast into the treasury: 44 for all *they* did cast in of their abundance; but she of her want did cast in all that she had, *even* all her living."

#### The Great Address on Last Things

13:1 And as he went out of the temple, one of his disciples saith unto him, "Master, see what manner of stones, and what buildings *are here!*" 2 And Jesus answering said unto him, "Seest thou these great buildings? there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down."<sup>1</sup> 3 And as he sat upon the mount of Olives over against the temple, Peter and James and John and Andrew asked him privately, 4 "Tell us, when shall these things be? and what *shall be* the sign when all these things shall be fulfilled?" 5 And Jesus answering them began to say:

\* \* \*

"Take heed lest any *man* deceive you: 6 for many shall come in my name, saying, I am *Christ*; and shall deceive many.

\*

7 And when you shall hear of wars and rumours of wars, be ye not troubled: for *such things* must needs be; but the end *shall not be* yet. 8 For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be earthquakes in divers places, and there shall be famines and troubles: these *are* the beginnings of sorrows.

\*

9 But take heed to yourselves: for they shall deliver you up to councils; and in the synagogues you shall be beaten: and you shall be brought before rulers and kings for my sake, for a testimony against them. 10 And the gospel must first be published among all nations. 11 But when they shall lead *you*, and deliver you up, take no thought beforehand what you shall speak, neither do ye premeditate: but whatsoever shall be given you in that hour, that speak ye: for it is not you that speak, but the Holy Spirit. 12 Now the brother shall betray the brother to death, and the father the son; and children shall rise up against *their* parents, and shall cause them to be put to death. 13 And you shall

<sup>1</sup> Jerusalem fell under the Romans A. D. 70.

be hated of all *men* for my name's sake; but he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.

\*

14 But when you shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, standing where it ought not [let him that readeth understand], then let them that are in Judæa flee to the mountains: 15 and let him that is on the housetop not go down into the house, neither enter *therein*, to take any thing out of his house: 16 and let him that is in the field not turn back again to take up his garment. 17 But woe to them that are with child, and to them that give such in those days! 18 And pray ye that your flight be not in the winter. 19 For *in* those days there shall be affliction, such as was not from the beginning of the creation which God created until this time, neither shall be. 20 And except the Lord had shortened those days, no flesh should be saved: but for the elect's sake, whom he hath chosen, he hath shortened the days. 21 And then if any man shall say to you, Lo, here *is* Christ; or, Lo, *he is* there: believe *him* not; 22 for false Christs and false prophets shall rise, and shall show signs and wonders, to seduce, if *it were* possible, even the elect. 23 But take heed: behold, I have foretold you all things.

\*

24 But in those days, after that tribulation, the sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, 25 and the stars of heaven shall fall, and the powers that are in heaven shall be shaken. 26 And then shall they see the Son of man coming in the clouds with great power and glory. 27 And then shall he send his angels, and shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of heaven.

\*

28 Now learn a parable of the fig tree: When her branch is yet tender, and putteth forth leaves, you know that summer is near: 29 so you in like manner, when you shall see these things come to pass, know that it is nigh, *even* at the doors. 30 Verily I say unto you, that this generation shall not pass, till all these things be done. 31 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away. 32 But of that day and *that* hour knoweth no man,

no, not the angels that are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father. 33 Take ye heed, watch and pray: for you know not when the time is. 34 *For the Son of man is* as a man taking a far journey, who left his house, and gave authority to his servants, and to every man his work, and commanded the porter to watch. 35 Watch ye therefore: for you know not when the master of the house cometh, at even, or at midnight, or at the cockcrowing, or in the morning: 36 lest coming suddenly he find you sleeping. 37 And what I say unto you, I say unto all, Watch."

---

### THE CRUCIFIXION AND RESURRECTION OF JESUS

#### The Plot of the Jewish Rulers Against Jesus

14:1 After two days was *the feast of* the passover, and of unleavened bread: and the chief priests and the scribes sought how they might take him by craft, and put him to death. 2 But they said, "Not on the feast *day*, lest there be an uproar of the people."

---

#### The Anointing of Jesus at Bethany

3 And being in Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he sat at meat, there came a woman having an alabaster box of ointment of spikenard very precious; and she brake the box, and poured *it* on his head. 4 And there were some that had indignation within themselves, and said, "Why was this waste of the ointment made? 5 for it might have been sold for more than three hundred pence, and have been given to the poor." And they murmured against her. 6 And Jesus said, "Let her alone; why trouble ye her? she hath wrought a good work on me. 7 For you have the poor with you always, and whensoever you will you may do them good: but me you have not always. 8 She hath done what she could: she is come beforehand to anoint my body to the burying. 9 Verily I say unto you, wheresoever this gospel shall be preached throughout the whole world, *this* also that she hath done shall be spoken of for a memorial of her."

---

#### The Conspiracy of Judas Iscariot

10 And Judas Iscariot, one of the twelve, went unto the chief priests, to betray him unto them. 11 And when they heard *it*, they were glad, and promised to give him money. And he sought how he might conveniently betray him.

*Chapter 13:33–14:11*



---

**The Preparation for the Passover**

12 And the first day of unleavened bread, when they killed the passover, his disciples said unto him, "Where wilt thou that we go and prepare that thou mayest eat the passover?" 13 And he sendeth forth two of his disciples, and saith unto them, "Go ye into the city, and there shall meet you a man bearing a pitcher of water: follow him. 14 And wheresoever he shall go in, say ye to the good man of the house, The Master saith, Where is the guestchamber, where I shall eat the passover with my disciples? 15 And he will show you a large upper room furnished *and* prepared: there make ready for us." 16 And his disciples went forth, and came into the city, and found as he had said unto them: and they made ready the passover.

---

**The Forecast of the Betrayal**

17 And in the evening he cometh with the twelve. 18 And as they sat and did eat, Jesus said, "Verily I say unto you, One of you that eateth with me shall betray me." 19 And they began to be sorrowful, and to say unto him one by one, "*Is it I?*" and another *said*, "*Is it I?*" 20 And he answered and said unto them, "*It is* one of the twelve, that dippeth with me in the dish. 21 The Son of man indeed goeth, as it is written of him: but woe to that man by whom the Son of man is betrayed! good were it for that man if he had never been born."

---

**The Institution of the Holy Communion**

22 And as they did eat, Jesus took bread, and blessed, and brake *it*, and gave to them, and said, "Take, eat: this is my body." 23 And he took the cup, and when he had given thanks, he gave *it* to them: and they all drank of it. 24 And he said unto them, "This is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many. 25 Verily I say unto you, I will drink no more of the fruit of the vine, until that day that I drink it new in the kingdom of God."

---

**The Forecast of the Passion and Peter's Denial**

26 And when they had sung a hymn, they went out into the mount of Olives. 27 And Jesus saith unto them, "All of you shall be offended because of me this night: for it is written, 'I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered.' 28 But after that I am risen, I will go before you into Galilee." 29 But Peter said unto him, "Although all shall be offended,

*Chapter 14:12-29*

yet *will* not I." 30 And Jesus saith unto him, "Verily I say unto thee, That this day, *even* in this night, before the cock crow twice, thou shalt deny me thrice." 31 But he spoke the more vehemently, "If I should die with thee, I will not deny thee in any wise." Likewise also said they all.

---

#### The Agony in the Garden of Gethsemane

32 And they came to a place which was named Gethsemane: and he saith to his disciples, "Sit ye here, while I shall pray." 33 And he taketh with him Peter and James and John, and began to be sore amazed, and to be very heavy; 34 and saith unto them, "My soul is exceeding sorrowful unto death: tarry ye here and watch." 35 And he went forward a little and fell on the ground, and prayed that, if it were possible, the hour might pass from him. 36 And he said, "Abba, Father, all things *are* possible unto thee; take away this cup from me: nevertheless not what I will, but what thou wilt." 37 And he cometh, and findeth them sleeping, and saith unto Peter, "Simon, sleepest thou? couldest not thou watch one hour? 38 Watch ye, and pray, lest you enter into temptation. The spirit truly *is* ready, but the flesh *is* weak." 39 And again he went away, and prayed, and spoke the same words. 40 And when he returned, he found them asleep again (for their eyes were heavy), neither knew they what to answer him. 41 And he cometh the third time, and saith unto them, "Sleep on now, and take *your* rest: it is enough the hour is come; behold, the Son of man is betrayed into the hands of sinners. 42 Rise up, let us go; lo, he that betrayeth me is at hand."

---

#### The Betrayal and Arrest of Jesus

43 And immediately, while he yet spoke, cometh Judas, one of the twelve, and with him a great multitude with swords and staves, from the chief priests and the scribes and the elders. 44 And he that betrayed him had given them a token, saying, "Whomsoever I shall kiss, that same is he; take him, and lead *him* away safely." 45 And as soon as he was come, he goeth straightway to him, and saith, "Master, Master;" and kissed him. 46 And they laid their hands on him, and took him. 47 And one of them that stood by drew a sword, and smote a servant of the high priests, and cut off his ear. 48 And Jesus answered and said unto them, "Are you come out, as against a thief, with swords and *with* staves to take me? 49 I was daily with you in the temple teaching, and you took me not: but the scriptures must be fulfilled." 50 And they all forsook him and fled.

Chapter 14:30-50

---

The Escape of a Young Man

51 And there followed him a certain young man, having a linen cloth cast about *his* naked *body*; and the young men laid hold on him: 52 and he left the linen cloth, and fled from them naked.

---

---

The Condemnation by the Sanhedrin

53 And they led Jesus away to the high priest: and with him were assembled all the chief priests and the elders and the scribes. 54 And Peter followed him afar off, even into the palace of the high priest: and he sat with the servants, and warmed himself at the fire. 55 And the chief priests and all the council sought for witness against Jesus to put him to death; and found none. 56 For many bare false witness against him, but their witness agreed not together. 57 And there arose certain, and bare false witness against him, saying, 58 "We heard him say, 'I will destroy this temple that is made with hands, and within three days I will build another made without hands.'" 59 But neither so did their witness agree together. 60 And the high priest stood up in the midst and asked Jesus, saying, "Answerest thou nothing? what *is it that* these witness against thee?" 61 But he held his peace, and answered nothing. Again the high priest asked him, and said unto him, "Art thou the Christ, the Son of the Blessed?" 62 And Jesus said, "I am: and you shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven." 63 Then the high priest rent his clothes, and saith, "What need we any further witnesses? 64 You have heard the blasphemy: what think ye?" And they all condemned him to be guilty of death.

---

---

The Mocking of Jesus

65 And some began to spit on him, and to cover his face, and to buffet him, and to say unto him, "Prophesy:" and the servants did strike him with the palms of their hands.

---

---

The Denial of Jesus by Peter

66 And as Peter was beneath in the palace, there cometh one of the maids of the high priest: 67 and when she saw Peter warming himself, she looked upon him, and said, "And thou also wast with Jesus of Nazareth." 68 But he denied, saying, "I know not, neither understand I what thou sayest." And he went out into the porch; and the cock crew. 69 And a maid saw him again, and began to say to them that stood by, "This is *one of*

Chapter 14:51-69



them." 70 And he denied it again. And a little after, they that stood by said again to Peter, "Surely thou art *one* of them: for thou art a Galilæan, and thy speech agreeth *thereto*." 71 But he began to curse and to swear, *saying*, "I know not this man of whom you speak." 72 And the second time the cock crew. And Peter called to mind the word that Jesus said unto him, "Before the cock crow twice, thou shalt deny me thrice." And when he thought thereon, he wept.

---

#### The Hearing Before Pilate the Governor

15:1 And straightway in the morning the chief priests held a consultation with the elders and scribes and the whole council, and bound Jesus, and carried *him* away, and delivered *him* to Pilate. 2 And Pilate asked him, "Art thou the King of the Jews?" And he answering said unto him, "Thou sayest *it*." 3 And the chief priests accused him of many things; but he answered nothing. 4 And Pilate asked him again, *saying*, "Answerest thou nothing? behold how many things they witness against thee." 5 But Jesus yet answered nothing; so that Pilate marvelled.

\*

6 Now at *that* feast he released unto them one prisoner, whomsoever they desired. 7 And there was *one* named Barabbas, *who lay* bound with them that had made insurrection with him, who had committed murder in the insurrection. 8 And the multitude crying aloud began to desire *him* to do as he had ever done unto them. 9 But Pilate answered them, *saying*, "Will you that I release unto you the King of the Jews?" 10 For he knew that the chief priests had delivered him for envy. 11 But the chief priests moved the people, that he should rather release Barabbas unto them. 12 And Pilate answered and said again unto them, "What will you then that I shall do *unto him* whom you call the King of the Jews?" 13 And they cried out again, "Crucify him." 14 Then Pilate said unto them, "Why, what evil hath he done?" And they cried out the more exceedingly, "Crucify him." 15 And *so* Pilate, willing to content the people, released Barabbas unto them, and delivered Jesus, when he had scourged *him*, to be crucified.

\*

16 And the soldiers led him away into the hall, called the Prætorium; and they called together the whole band. 17 And they clothed him with purple, and platted a crown of thorns, and put it about his *head*, 18 and began to salute him, "Hail, King of the Jews!" 19 And they smote him on the head with a

*Chapter 14:70-15:19*



reed, and did spit upon him, and bowing *their* knees worshipped him. 20 And when they had mocked him, they took off the purple from him, and put his own clothes on him, and led him out to crucify him.

---

#### The Crucifixion of Jesus at Golgotha

21 And they compel one Simon a Cyrenian, who passed by, coming out of the country, the father of Alexander and Rufus, to bear his cross. 22 And they bring him unto the place of Golgotha [which is, being interpreted, The place of a skull]. 23 And they gave him to drink wine mingled with myrrh: but he received *it* not.

\*

24 And when they had crucified him, they parted his garments, casting lots upon them, what every man should take.

\*

25 And it was the third hour, and they crucified him.

\*

26 And the superscription of his accusation was written over:

\* \* \*

"THE KING OF THE JEWS."

\*

27 And with him they crucify two thieves; the one on his right hand, and the other on his left. 28 And the scripture was fulfilled, which saith, "And he was numbered with the transgressors."<sup>1</sup>

\*

29 And they that passed by railed on him, wagging their heads, and saying, "Ah, thou that destroyest the temple, and buildest *it* in three days, 30 save thyself and come down from the cross."

\*

31 Likewise also the chief priests mocking said among themselves with the scribes, "He saved others; himself he cannot save. 32 Let Christ the King of Israel descend now from the cross, that we may see and believe."

\*

And they that were crucified with him reviled him.

---

#### The Death of Jesus on the Cross

33 And when the sixth hour was come, there was darkness over the whole land until the ninth hour. 34 And at the ninth

---

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 53:12.

hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, "Eloi, Eloi lama sabachthani?" [which is, being interpreted, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?]. 35 And some of them that stood by, when they heard *it*, said, "Behold, he calleth Elijah." 36 And one ran and filled a sponge full of vinegar, and put *it* on a reed, and gave him to drink, saying, "Let alone; let us see whether Elijah will come to take him down?" 37 And Jesus cried with a loud voice, and gave up the ghost.

\*

38 And the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom.

\*

39 And when the centurion, who stood over against him, saw that he so cried out, and gave up the ghost, he said, "Truly this man was the Son of God."

\*

40 There were also women looking on afar off: among whom was Mary Magdalene, and Mary the Mother of James the less and of Joses, and Salome 41 [who also, when he was in Galilee, followed him, and ministered unto him]; and many other women who came up with him unto Jerusalem.

---

#### The Burial of Jesus Near Jerusalem

42 And now when the even was come, because it was the preparation, that is, the day before the sabbath, 43 Joseph of Arimathæa, an honourable counsellor, who also waited for the kingdom of God, came, and went in boldly unto Pilate, and craved the body of Jesus. 44 And Pilate marvelled if he were already dead: and calling *unto him* the centurion, he asked him whether he had been any while dead. 45 And when he knew *it* of the centurion, he gave the body to Joseph. 46 And he bought fine linen, and took him down, and wrapped him in the linen, and laid him in a sepulchre that was hewn out of a rock, and rolled a stone unto the door of the sepulchre. 47 And Mary Magdalene and Mary *the mother* of Joses beheld where he was laid.

---

#### THE RESURRECTION OF JESUS

##### The Discovery of the Women

16:1 And when the sabbath was past, Mary Magdalene, and Mary the *mother* of James, and Salome, had bought sweet spices, that they might come and anoint him. 2 And very early in the morning the first *day* of the week, they came unto the sepulchre at the rising of the sun. 3 And they said among themselves, "Who shall roll us away the stone from the door of the sepulchre?"

*Chapter 15:35-16:3*

4 And when they looked, they saw that the stone was rolled away: for it was very great. 5 And entering into the sepulchre, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, clothed in a long white garment; and they were affrighted. 6 And he saith unto them, "Be not affrighted: You seek Jesus of Nazareth, who was crucified: he is risen; he is not here: behold the place where they laid him. 7 But go your way, tell his disciples and Peter that he goeth before you into Galilee: there shall you see him, as he said unto you." 8 And they went out quickly, and fled from the sepulchre; for they trembled and were amazed: neither said they anything to any *man*; for they were afraid.

---

The Appearances and Ascension of Jesus

9 Now when *Jesus* was risen early the first *day* of the week, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, out of whom he had cast seven devils. 10 And she went and told them that had been with him, as they mourned and wept. 11 And they, when they had heard that he was alive, and had been seen of her, believed not.

\*

12 After that he appeared in another form unto two of them, as they walked, and went into the country. 13 And they went and told *it* unto the residue: neither believed they them.

\*

14 Afterward he appeared unto the eleven as they sat at meat, and upbraided them with their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they believed not them that had seen him after he was risen. 15 And he said unto them, "Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature. 16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned. 17 And these signs shall follow them that believe: In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with tongues; 18 they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover."

\*

19 So then after the Lord had spoken unto them, he was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God.

\*

20 And they went forth, and preached every where, the Lord working with *them*, and confirming the word with signs following. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*





The Gospel  
According to Luke



## The Preface

# THE MANIFOLD GOSPEL OF JESUS CHRIST THE BELOVED SON OF GOD

---

### THE DEDICATION TO THEOPHILUS

#### THE DESIGN OF THE AUTHOR OF THE GOSPEL

##### The Sources of the Gospel Record

Forasmuch as many have taken in hand to set forth in order a declaration of those things that are most surely believed among us, <sup>2</sup> even as they delivered them unto us, who from the beginning were eyewitnesses and ministers of the word, <sup>3</sup> it seemed good to me also, having had perfect understanding of all things from the very first, to write<sup>2</sup> unto thee in order, Most Excellent Theophilus,<sup>2</sup> <sup>4</sup> that thou mightest know the certainty of those things, wherein thou hast been instructed.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Gospel According to Luke was written for the Gentiles, as Matthew was for the Jews. It has been said to be "the most beautiful book ever written." Luke in a general way uses the literary model upon which Matthew was written. He wrote his gospel and history very probably in the early part of the fourth quarter of the first century.

<sup>2</sup> Theophilus: Probably a distinguished Roman citizen.

*Chapter 1:1-4*





## Part One

# THE PRIVATE LIFE OF JESUS CHRIST

---

### §1. THE ANNUNCIATION

#### I. THE PROMISE OF GOD TO ZACHARIAS

##### a. The Parents of John the Baptist

There was in the days of Herod,<sup>1</sup> the king of Judæa, a certain priest name Zacharias, of the course of Abia: and his wife *was* of the daughters of Aaron, and her name *was* Elizabeth. 6 And they were both righteous before God, walking in all the commandments and ordinances of the Lord blameless. 7 And they had no child, because that Elizabeth was barren, and they both were *now* well stricken in years.

---

##### b. The Vision of Zacharias in the Temple

8 And it came to pass, that while he executed the priest's office before God in the order of his course, 9 according to the custom of the priest's office, his lot was to burn incense when he went into the temple of the Lord. 10 And the whole multitude of the people were without praying at the time of incense. 11 And there appeared unto him an angel of the Lord, standing on the right side of the altar of incense. 12 And when Zacharias saw *him*, he was troubled, and fear fell upon him. 13 But the angel said unto him:

\* \* \*

- "Fear not, Zacharias: for thy prayer is heard,  
And thy wife Elizabeth shall bear thee a son,  
And thou shall call his name John.<sup>2</sup>  
14 And thou shalt have joy and gladness;  
And many shall rejoice at his birth.  
15 For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord,  
And shall drink neither wine nor strong drink;  
And he shall be filled with the Holy Spirit,  
Even from his birth.

---

<sup>1</sup> Herod the Great reigned B. C. 37-4.

<sup>2</sup> John: *i. e.*, The Grace of God.

- 16 And many of the children of Israel shall be turned  
to the Lord their God.  
17 And he shall go before him in the spirit and  
power of Elijah,  
To turn the hearts of the fathers to the children,  
And the disobedient to the wisdom of the just;  
To make ready a people prepared for the Lord."

\*

- 18 And Zacharias said unto the angel, "Whereby shall I know  
this? for I am an old man, and my wife well stricken in years."  
19 And the angel answered and said unto him:

\* \* \*

- "I am Gabriel,<sup>1</sup> who stand in the presence  
of God;  
And am sent to speak unto thee,  
And to show thee these glad tidings.  
20 And, behold, thou shalt be dumb,  
And not able to speak,  
Until the day that these things shall  
be performed,  
Because thou believest not my words,  
Which shall be fulfilled in their season."

\*

21 And the people waited for Zacharias, and marvelled that he  
tarried so long in the temple. 22 And when he came out, he  
could not speak unto them: and they perceived that he had seen  
a vision in the temple: for he beckoned unto them, and remained  
speechless. 23 And it came to pass, that, as soon as the days of  
his ministration were accomplished, he departed to his own house.

---

#### c. The Retirement of Elizabeth

- 24 And after these days his wife Elizabeth conceived, and hid  
herself five months, saying:

\* \* \*

- 25 "Thus hath the Lord dealt with me,  
In the days wherein he looked on *me*,  
To take away my reproach among men."

---

## II. THE ANNUNCIATION TO MARY

### The Birth of Jesus Christ is Promised by the Angel

- 26 And in the sixth month, the angel Gabriel was sent from  
God unto a city of Galilee, named Nazareth, 27 to a virgin

---

<sup>1</sup> Michael, the angel of judgment; Gabriel the angel of mercy.

espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David; and the virgin's name was Mary. 28 And the angel came in unto her, and said:

\* \* \*

"Hail, *thou that art* highly favoured,  
The Lord *is* with thee:  
Blessed *art* thou among women!"

\*

29 And when she saw *him*, she was troubled at his saying, and cast in her mind what manner of salutation this should be. 30 And the angel said unto her:

\* \* \*

"Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found  
favour with God.  
31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive,  
And bring forth a son,  
And thou shalt call his name Jesus.  
32 He shall be great, and shall be called  
the Son of the Highest:  
And the Lord shall give unto him the throne  
of his father David:  
33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob  
for ever;  
And of his kingdom there shall be no end."

\*

34 Then said Mary unto the angel, "How shall this be, seeing that I know not a man?" 35 And the angel answered and said unto her:

\* \* \*

"The Holy Spirit shall come upon thee,  
And the power of the Highest shall  
overshadow thee;  
Therefore also that holy thing that shall  
be born of thee,  
Shall be called the Son of God.  
36 And, behold, thy cousin Elizabeth,  
She hath also conceived a son in her old age:  
And this is the sixth month with her,  
who was called barren.  
37 For with God nothing shall be impossible."

\*

38 And Mary said:

\* \* \*

"Behold the handmaid of the Lord;  
Be it unto me according to thy word."

*Chapter 1:28-38*

## III. THE VISIT OF MARY TO ELIZABETH

## a. The Canticle of Elizabeth

39 And Mary arose in those days, and went into the hill country with haste, into a city of Judah; 40 and entered into the house of Zacharias, and saluted Elizabeth. 41 And it came to pass, that when Elizabeth heard the salutation of Mary, the babe leaped in her womb; and Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit: 42 and she spoke out with a loud voice, and said:

\* \* \*

"Blessed *art* thou among women,  
And blessed *is* the fruit of thy womb.  
43 And whence *is* this to me,  
That the mother of my Lord should come to me?  
44 For, lo, as soon as the voice of thy salutation  
sounded in my ears,  
The babe leaped in my womb for joy.  
45 And blessed *is* she that believed:  
For there shall be a performance of those things  
that were told her from the Lord."

b. The "Magnificat"<sup>1</sup> of Mary

46 And Mary said:

\* \* \*

"My soul doth magnify the Lord,  
47 And my spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour.  
48 For he hath regarded the low estate  
of his handmaiden;  
For, behold, from henceforth all generations  
shall call me blessed.

\*

49 For he that is mighty hath done to me  
great things;  
And holy *is* his name.  
50 And his mercy *is* on them that fear him  
From generation to generation.

\*

51 He hath shown strength with his arm;  
He hath scattered the proud in the imagination  
of their hearts.  
52 He hath put down the mighty from *their* seats,  
And exalted them of low degree.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Magnificat falls into four strophes. It is modelled on the Psalms.



- 53 He hath filled the hungry with good things;  
And the rich he hath sent empty away.

\*

- 54 He hath helped his servant Israel,  
In remembrance of *his* mercy;

- 55 As he spoke to our fathers,  
To Abraham, and to his seed for ever."

\*

56 And Mary abode with her about three months, and returned to her own house.

## §2. THE BIRTH OF JOHN THE BAPTIST

### THE CIRCUMCISION AND NAME

#### a. The Impression Upon the People

57 Now Elizabeth's full time came that she should be delivered; and she brought forth a son. 58 And her neighbors and her cousins heard how the Lord had shown great mercy upon her; and they rejoiced with her. 59 And it came to pass, that on the eighth day they came to circumcise the child; and they called him Zacharias, after the name of his father. 60 And his mother answered and said, "Not *so*; but he shall be called John." 61 And they said unto her, "There is none of thy kindred that is called by that name." 62 And they made signs to his father, how he would have him called. 63 And he asked for a writing table, and wrote, saying, "His name is John." And they all marvelled. 64 And his mouth was opened immediately, and his tongue *loosed*, and he spoke, and praised God. 65 And fear came on all that dwelt round about them: and all these sayings were noised abroad throughout all the hill country of Judæa. 66 And all they that heard *them* laid *them* up in their hearts, saying, "What manner of child shall this be!" And the hand of the Lord was with him.

#### b. The "Benedictus"<sup>1</sup> of Zacharias

67 And his father Zacharias was filled with the Holy Spirit, and prophesied, saying:

\* \* \*

- 68 "Blessed *be* the Lord God of Israel;  
For he hath visited and redeemed his people,  
69 And hath raised up a horn of salvation for us  
In the house of his servant David;

<sup>1</sup> The "Benedictus" falls into five strophes. It is modelled on the prophets.

- 70 As he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets,  
 Who have been since the world began:  
 71 That we should be saved from our enemies,  
 And from the hand of all that hate us;  
 72 To perform the mercy *promised* to our fathers,  
 And to remember his holy covenant;

\*

- 73 The oath which he sware to our father Abraham,  
 74 That he would grant unto us,  
 That we being delivered out of the hand  
 of our enemies,  
 Might serve him without fear,  
 75 In holiness and righteousness before him,  
 all the days of our life.

\* \*

- 76 And thou, child, shall be called the prophet  
 of the Highest:  
 For thou shalt go before the face of the Lord  
 to prepare his ways;  
 77 To give knowledge of salvation unto his people,  
 By the remission of their sins:

\*

- 78 Through the tender mercy of our God;  
 Whereby the Dayspring from on high  
 hath visited us,  
 79 To give light to them that sit in darkness,  
 And *in* the shadow of death,  
 To guide our feet into the way of peace."

\*

80 And the child grew, and waxed strong in spirit, and was in the deserts till the day of his showing unto Israel.

### §3. THE NATIVITY

#### I. THE BIRTH OF JESUS AT BETHLEHEM

##### The Cradle in the Manger

2:1 And it came to pass in those days, that there went out a decree from Cæsar Augustus,<sup>1</sup> that all the world should be taxed.  
 2 And this taxing was first made when Cyrenius was governor of Syria. 3 And all went to be taxed, every one into his own city.  
 4 And Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judæa, unto the city of David, which is called

<sup>1</sup> Augustus, Emperor of Rome, reigned B. C. 31–A. D. 12, 14.

Bethlehem (because he was of the house and lineage of David); 5 to be taxed with Mary his espoused wife, being great with child. 6 And so it was, that while they were there, the days were accomplished that she should be delivered. 7 And she brought forth her firstborn son, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger; because there was no room for them in the inn.

---

## II. THE ANGEL AND THE SHEPHERDS

### a. The Proclamation to the Shepherds

8 And there were in the same country shepherds abiding in the field, keeping watch over their flock by night. 9 And, lo, the angel of the Lord came upon them, and the glory of the Lord shone round about them: and they were sore afraid. 10 And the angel said unto them:

\* \* \*

“Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings  
of great joy,  
Which shall be to all people.

11 For unto you is born this day in the city of David  
A Saviour, who is Christ the Lord.

12 And this *shall be* a sign unto you:  
You shall find the babe wrapped in swaddling  
clothes,  
Lying in a manger.”

---

### b. The “Gloria in Excelsis”

13 And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying:

\* \* \*

14 “Glory to God in the highest,  
And on earth peace, good will toward men.”

\*

15 And it came to pass, as the angels were gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said one to another, “Let us now go even unto Bethlehem, and see this thing that is come to pass, which the Lord hath made known to us.” 16 And they came with haste and found Mary and Joseph, and the babe lying in a manger. 17 And when they had seen *him*, they made known abroad the saying that was told them concerning this child. 18 And all they that heard *it* wondered at those things that were told them by the shepherds. 19 But Mary kept all these things,

Chapter 2:5-19

and pondered *them* in her heart. 20 And the shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God for all the things that they had heard and seen, as it was told unto them.

### III. THE CIRCUMCISION AND PRESENTATION

#### a. The Name Given by the Angel

21 And when eight days were accomplished for the circumcising of the child, his name was called JESUS, which was so named by the angel before he was born.

#### b. The "Nunc Dimittis" of Simeon

22 And when the days of her purification according to the law of Moses were accomplished, they brought him to Jerusalem, to present *him* to the Lord 23 [as it is written in the law of the Lord:<sup>1</sup> "Every male that is the firstborn shall be called Holy unto the Lord"], 24 and to offer a sacrifice according to that which is said in the law of the Lord, "A pair of turtledoves, or two young pigeons." 25 And behold there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name *was* Simeon; and the same *was* just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Spirit was upon him. 26 And it was revealed unto him by the Holy Spirit that he should not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ. 27 And he came by the Spirit into the temple: and when the parents brought in the child Jesus, to do for him after the custom of the law, 28 then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said:

\* \* \*

29 "Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart  
in peace,  
According to thy word;  
30 For my eyes have seen thy salvation,  
31 Which thou hast prepared before the face  
of all people;  
32 A light to lighten the Gentiles,  
And the glory of thy people Israel."

\*

33 And Joseph and his mother marvelled at those things that were spoken of him. 34 And Simeon blessed them, and said unto Mary his mother, "Behold, this *child* is set for the fall and rising again of many in Israel; and for a sign which shall be spoken against; 35 yea, a sword shall pierce through thine own soul

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 13:2.



also, that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed." 36 And there was one Anna, a prophetess, the daughter of Phanuel, of the tribe of Asher: she was of a great age, and had lived with a husband seven years from her virginity; 37 and she *was* a widow of about fourscore and four years, who departed not from the temple, but served *God* with fastings and prayers night and day. 38 And she coming in that instant gave thanks likewise unto the Lord, and spoke of him to all them that looked for redemption in Jerusalem. 39 And when they had performed all things according to the law of the Lord, they returned into Galilee, to their own city Nazareth.

---

**c. The Childhood of Jesus at Nazareth**

40 And the child grew, and waxed strong in spirit, filled with wisdom: and the grace of God was upon him.

---

**IV. THE VISIT OF JESUS TO JERUSALEM**

**The Child Jesus Among the Doctors**

41 Now his parents went to Jerusalem every year at the feast of the passover. 42 And when he was twelve years old, they went up to Jerusalem after the custom of the feast. 43 And when they had fulfilled the days, as they returned the child Jesus tarried behind in Jerusalem; and Joseph and his mother knew not *of it*. 44 But they, supposing him to have been in the company, went a day's journey; and they sought him among *their* kinsfolk and acquaintance. 45 And when they found him not, they turned back again to Jerusalem, seeking him. 46 And it came to pass, that after three days they found him in the temple, sitting in the midst of the doctors, both hearing them, and asking them questions. 47 And all that heard him were astonished at his understanding and answers. 48 And when they saw him, they were amazed: and his mother said unto him, "Son, why hast thou thus dealt with us? behold, thy father and I have sought thee sorrowing." 49 And he said unto them, "How is it that you sought me? know you not that I must be about my Father's business?" 50 And they understood not the saying that he spoke unto them. 51 And he went down with them, and came to Nazareth, and was subject unto them: but his mother kept all these sayings in her heart.

---

**b. The Manhood of Jesus at Nazareth**

52 And Jesus increased in wisdom and stature, and in favor with God and man.

## §4. THE MANIFESTATION OF JESUS CHRIST

## I. THE COMING OF JOHN THE BAPTIST

## a. The Seven-Fold Date and Prophetic Fulfilment

3:1 Now in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberias Cæsar,<sup>1</sup>

\*

Pontius Pilate<sup>2</sup> being governor of Judæa,

\*

And Herod<sup>3</sup> being tetrarch of Galilee,

\*

And his brother Philip<sup>4</sup> tetrarch of Ituræa and  
of the region of Trachonitis,

\*

And Lisaniās<sup>5</sup> the tetrarch of Abilene,

\*

2 Annas and Caiaphas<sup>6</sup> being the high priests,

\*

The word of God came unto John<sup>7</sup> the son of  
Zacharias in the wilderness.

\*

3 And he came into all the country about the Jordan, preaching  
the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins; 4 as it  
is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet, saying:

\* \* \*

"The voice of one crying in the wilderness,  
Prepare ye the way of the Lord,  
Make his paths straight.

5 Every valley shall be filled,  
And every mountain and hill shall be brought low;  
And the crooked shall be made straight,  
And the rough ways *shall be* made smooth;

6 And all flesh shall see the salvation of God."<sup>8</sup>

## b. The Call of John to Repentance

7 Then said he to the multitude that came forth to be bap-  
tized by him, "O generation of vipers, who hath warned you to  
flee from the wrath to come? 8 Bring forth therefore fruits

<sup>1</sup> Emperor of Rome, A. D. 12, 14-37.

<sup>3</sup> Tetrarch, B. C. 4-A. D. 39.

<sup>5</sup> Tetrarch, B. C., 4 and after.

<sup>7</sup> John lived B. C. 5-A. D. 29.

<sup>2</sup> Governor of Judæa, A. D. 26-36.

<sup>4</sup> Tetrarch, B. C. 4-A. D. 34.

<sup>6</sup> High Priest, A. D. 18-36.

<sup>8</sup> Isa. 40:3f.

worthy of repentance, and begin not to say within yourselves, We have Abraham as *our* father; for I say unto you, that God is able of these stones to raise up children unto Abraham. 9 And now also the axe is laid unto the root of the trees: every tree therefore that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

\*

10 And the people asked him, saying, "What shall we do then?"  
11 He answered and saith unto them, "He that hath two coats, let him impart to him that hath none; and he that hath meat, let him do likewise."

\*

12 Then came also publicans to be baptized, and said unto him, "Master, what shall we do?" 13 And he said unto them, "Exact no more than that which is appointed you."

\*

14 And the soldiers likewise demanded of him, saying, "And what shall we do?" And he said unto them, "Do violence to no man, neither accuse *any* falsely; and be content with your wages.'

---

#### c. The Seven-Fold Forecast of Christ

15 And as the people were in expectation, and all men mused in their hearts concerning John, whether he were the Christ, or not, 16 John answered, saying unto *them* all:

\* \* \*

"I indeed baptize you with water;

\*

But one mightier than I cometh, the latchet  
of whose shoes I am not worthy to unloose:

\*

He shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit,

\*

And with fire:

\*

17 Whose fan *is* in his hand, and he will thoroughly purge his floor,

\*

And will gather the wheat into his garner;

\*

But the chaff he will burn with fires un-  
quenchable."

#### d. The Imprisonment of John by Herod

18 And many other things in his exhortation preached he unto the people. 19 But Herod the tetrarch, being reprov'd by him for Herodias his brother Philip's wife, and for all the evils which Herod had done, 20 added yet this above all, that he shut up John in prison.

### II. THE VOICE OF GOD FROM HEAVEN

#### The Witness to the Son

21 And when all the people were baptized, it came to pass, that Jesus also being baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened, 22 and the Holy Spirit descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice came from heaven, which said:

\* \* \*

"Thou art my beloved Son:  
In thee I am well pleased."

### III. THE GENEALOGY OF JESUS

#### The Natural Line from Jesus back to God

23 And Jesus himself began to be about thirty years of age, being [as was supposed] the son of Joseph,

- Who was *the son* of Heli,
- 24 Who was *the son* of Matthat,
- Who was *the son* of Levi,
- Who was *the son* of Melchi,
- Who was *the son* of Jannai,
- Who was *the son* of Joseph,
- 25 Who was *the son* of Mattathias,
- Who was *the son* of Amos,
- Who was *the son* of Nahum,
- Who was *the son* of Esli,
- Who was *the son* of Naggai,
- 26 Who was *the son* of Maath,
- Who was *the son* of Mattathias,
- Who was *the son* of Semein,
- Who was *the son* of Josech,
- Who was *the son* of Joda,
- 27 Who was *the son* of Joanan,
- Who was *the son* of Rhesa,
- Who was *the son* of Zerubbabel,
- Who was *the son* of Shealtiel,
- Who was *the son* of Neri,



- 28 Who was *the son* of Melchi,  
Who was *the son* of Addi,  
Who was *the son* of Cosam,  
Who was *the son* of Elmadam,  
Who was *the son* of Er,  
29 Who was *the son* of Jesus,  
Who was *the son* of Eliezer,  
Who was *the son* of Jorim,  
Who was *the son* of Matthat,  
Who was *the son* of Levi,  
30 Who was *the son* of Simeon,  
Who was *the son* of Judas,  
Who was *the son* of Joseph,  
Who was *the son* of Jonam,  
Who was *the son* of Eliakim,  
31 Who was *the son* of Melea,  
Who was *the son* of Menna,  
Who was *the son* of Mattatha,  
Who was *the son* of Nathan,  
Who was *the son* of David,  
32 Who was *the son* of Jesse,  
Who was *the son* of Obed,  
Who was *the son* of Boaz,  
Who was *the son* of Salmon,  
Who was *the son* of Nahshon,  
33 Who was *the son* of Amminadab,  
Who was *the son* of Arni,  
Who was *the son* of Hezron,  
Who was *the son* of Perez,  
Who was *the son* of Judah,  
34 Who was *the son* of Jacob,  
Who was *the son* of Isaac,  
Who was *the son* of Abraham,  
Who was *the son* of Terah,  
Who was *the son* of Nahor,  
35 Who was *the son* of Zerug,  
Who was *the son* of Reu,  
Who was *the son* of Peleg,  
Who was *the son* of Eber,  
Who was *the son* of Shelah,  
36 Who was *the son* of Cainan,  
Who was *the son* of Arphaxad,  
Who was *the son* of Shem,  
Who was *the son* of Noah,  
Who was *the son* of Lamech,  
37 Who was *the son* of Methuselah,  
Who was *the son* of Enoch,

Who was *the son* of Jared,  
 Who was *the son* of Mahalaleel,  
 Who was *the son* of Cainan,  
 38 Who was *the son* of Enos,  
 Who was *the son* of Seth,  
 Who was *the son* of Adam,  
 Who was *the son* of God.

#### IV. THE GREAT TEMPTATION OF JESUS

##### The Three-Fold Test of the Son of God

4:1 And Jesus being full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan, and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness, 2 being forty days tempted of the devil.

##### a. The Temptation of the Prophet of God

And in those days he did eat nothing: and when they were ended, he afterward hungered. 3 And the devil said unto him, "If thou be the Son of God, command this stone, that it be made bread." 4 And Jesus answered him, saying, "It is written, that 'Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God.'"<sup>1</sup>

##### b. The Temptation of the King of Israel

5 And the devil, taking him up into a high mountain, showed unto him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. 6 And the devil said unto him, "All this power will I give thee, and the glory of them: for that is delivered unto me; and to whomsoever I will I give it. 7 If thou therefore wilt worship<sup>2</sup> me, all shall be thine." 8 And Jesus answered and said unto him, "Get thee behind me, Satan: for it is written, 'Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.'"<sup>3</sup>

##### c. The Temptation of the Priest of the People

9 And he brought him to Jerusalem, and set him on a pinnacle of the temple, and said unto him, "If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down from hence: 10 for it is written,

\* \* \*

'He shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee:

<sup>1</sup> Deut. 8:3.

<sup>2</sup> Or fall down before me.

<sup>3</sup> Deut. 6:13.

11 And, in *their* hands they shall bear thee up,  
Lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a  
stone.' ”

\*

12 And Jesus answering said unto him, “It is said, ‘Thou shalt  
not tempt the Lord thy God.’ ”

\*

13 And when the devil had ended all the temptations, he de-  
parted from him for a season.

---

### **The First Summary**

14 And Jesus returned in the power of the Spirit into Galilee:  
and there went out a fame of him through all the region round  
about. 15 And he taught in their synagogues, being glorified of  
all.





## Part Two

# THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN GALILEE

---

### §1. THE PUBLIC APPEARANCE OF JESUS CHRIST

#### I. THE ANNOUNCEMENT AT NAZARETH

##### a. The First Sermon in the Synagogue

And he came to Nazareth, where he was brought up, and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up to read. 17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Isaiah. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it is written:

\* \* \*

- 18 "The Spirit of the Lord *is* upon me,  
Because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel  
to the poor;  
He hath sent me to heal the broken-hearted,  
To preach deliverance to the captives,  
And recovering of sight to the blind,  
To set at liberty them that are bruised,  
19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord."<sup>1</sup>

\*

20 And he closed the book, and gave *it* again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him. 21 And he began to say unto them, "This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears." 22 And all bear him witness, and wondered at the gracious words that proceeded out of his mouth. And they said, "Is not this Joseph's son?" 23 And he said unto them, "You will surely say unto me this proverb, 'Physician, heal thyself:' whatsoever we have heard done in Capernaum, do also here in thy country." 24 And he said, "Verily, I say unto you, 'No prophet is accepted in his own country.'" 25 But I tell you of a truth, many widows were in Israel in the days of Elijah, when the heaven was shut up three years and six months, when great famine was throughout all the land; 26 but unto none of them was Elijah sent, save unto Sarepta, *a city* of Sidon, unto a woman that was a widow. 27 And many lepers were in Israel in the time of Elisha the prophet;

---

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 61:1f.

and none of them was cleansed, saving Naaman the Syrian." 28 And all they in the synagogue, when they heard these things, were filled with wrath, 29 and rose up, and thrust him out of the city, and led him unto the brow of the hill whereon their city was built, that they might cast him down headlong. 30 But he passing through the midst of them went his way.

---

#### b. The Ministry at Capernaum

31 And *he* came down to Capernaum, a city of Galilee, and taught them on the sabbath days. 32 And they were astonished at his doctrine: for his word was with power. 33 And in the synagogue there was a man, who had a spirit of an unclean devil, and cried out with a loud voice, 34 saying, "Let *us* alone; what have we to do with thee, *thou* Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art; the Holy One of God." 35 And Jesus rebuked him, saying, "Hold thy peace, and come out of him." And when the devil had thrown him in the midst, he came out of him, and hurt him not. 36 And they were all amazed, and spoke among themselves, saying, "What a word is this! for with authority and power he commandeth the unclean spirits, and they come out." 37 And the fame of him went out into every place of the country round about.

---

#### c. The Healing of Simon's Wife's Mother

38 And he arose out of the synagogue, and entered into Simon's house. And Simon's wife's mother was taken with a great fever; and they besought him for her. 39 And he stood over her, and rebuked the fever; and it left her: and immediately she arose and ministered unto them.

---

#### d. The Healing of the Multitude

40 Now when the sun was setting, all they that had any sick with divers diseases brought them unto him: and he laid his hands on every one of them, and healed them. 41 And devils also came out of many, crying out, and saying, "Thou art Christ the Son of God." And he rebuking *them* suffered them not to speak: for they knew that he was Christ.

---

## II. THE MINISTRY OF JESUS THROUGH GALILEE

### a. The Preaching of the Kingdom of God

42 And when it was day, he departed and went into a desert place: and the people sought him, and came unto him, and stayed

*Chapter 4:28-42*

him, that he should not depart from them. 43 And he said unto them, "I must preach the kingdom of God to other cities also: for therefore am I sent." 44 And he preached in the synagogues of Galilee.

---

#### b. The Call of Four Disciples

5:1 And it came to pass, that, as the people pressed upon him to hear the word of God, he stood by the lake of Gennesaret, 2 and saw two ships standing by the lake: but the fishermen were gone out of them, and were washing *their* nets. 3 And he entered into one of the ships, which was Simon's, and prayed him that he would thrust out a little from the land. And he sat down, and taught the people out of the ship. 4 Now when he had left speaking, he said unto Simon, "Launch out into the deep, and let down your nets for a draught." 5 And Simon answering said unto him, "Master, we have toiled all the night, and have taken nothing: nevertheless at thy word I will let down the net." 6 And when they had done this, they enclosed a great multitude of fishes: and their net broke. 7 And they beckoned unto *their* partners, who were in the other ship, that they should come and help them. And they came, and filled both the ships, so that they began to sink. 8 When Simon saw *it*, he fell down at Jesus' knees, saying, "Depart from me; for I am a sinful man, O Lord." 9 For he was astonished, and all that were with him, at the draught of the fishes which they had taken: 10 and so were also James and John, the sons of Zebedee, who were partners with Simon. And Jesus said unto Simon, "Fear not; from henceforth thou shalt catch men." 11 And when they had brought their ship to land, they forsook all, and followed him.

---

#### c. The Healing of a Leper

12 And it came to pass, when he was in a certain city, behold a man full of leprosy: who seeing Jesus, fell on *his* face, and besought him, saying, "Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean." 13 And he put forth *his* hand, and touched him, saying, "I will: be thou clean." And immediately the leprosy departed from him. 14 And he charged him to tell no man: "but go, and show thyself to the priest, and offer for thy cleansing, according as Moses commanded, for a testimony unto them." 15 But so much the more went there a fame abroad of him: and great multitudes came together to hear, and to be healed by him of their infirmities. 16 And he withdrew himself into the wilderness and prayed.

### III. THE FORGIVENESS AND HEALING OF A PARALYTIC

#### The Charge of Blasphemy Against Jesus

17 And it came to pass on a certain day, as he was teaching, that there were Pharisees and doctors of the law sitting by, who came out of every town of Galilee, and Judæa, and Jerusalem: and the power of the Lord was *present* to heal them. 18 And, behold, men brought in a bed a man who was taken with a palsy; and they sought *means* to bring him in, and to lay *him* before him. 19 And when they could not find by what *way* they might bring him in because of the multitude, they went upon the housetop, and let him down through the tiling with his couch into the midst before Jesus. 20 And when he saw their faith, he saith unto him, "Man, thy sins are forgiven thee." 21 And the scribes and the Pharisees began to reason, saying, "Who is this that speakest blasphemies? Who can forgive sins, but God alone?" 22 But when Jesus perceived their thoughts, he answering said unto them, "What reason ye in your hearts? 23 Which is easier, to say, 'Thy sins are forgiven thee;' or to say, Rise up and walk? 24 But that you may know that the Son of man hath power upon earth to forgive sins (he saith unto the sick of the palsy), I say unto thee, Arise, and take up thy couch, and go into thy house." 25 And immediately he rose up before them, and took up that whereon he lay, and departed to his own house, glorifying God. 26 And they were all amazed, and they glorified God, and were filled with fear saying, "We have seen strange things to-day."

---

### IV. THE CALL OF LEVI THE PUBLICAN

#### a. The Call and Obedience of Levi

27 And after these things he went forth, and saw a publican, named Levi, sitting at the receipt of customs: and he said unto him, "Follow me." 28 And he left all, rose up, and followed him.

---

#### b. The Feast of Levi for Jesus

29 And Levi made him a great feast in his own house: and there was a great company of publicans and of others that sat down with them. 30 But their scribes and Pharisees murmured against the disciples, saying, "Why do you eat and drink with publicans and sinners?" 31 And Jesus answering said unto them, "They that are whole need not a physician; but they that are sick. 32 I came not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."



### c. The Question of Fasting

33 And they said unto him, "Why do the disciples of John fast often, and make prayers, and likewise *the disciples* of the Pharisees; but thine eat and drink?" 34 And he said unto them, "Can you make the children of the bridechamber fast, while the bridegroom is with them? 35 But the days will come when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, and then shall they fast in those days."

---

### d. The Parable of the Old and the New

36 And he spoke also a parable unto them: "No man putteth a piece of a new garment upon an old; if otherwise, then both the new maketh a rent, and the piece that was *taken* out of the new agreeth not with the old. 37 And no man putteth new wine into old bottles; else the new wine will burst the bottles, and be spilled, and the bottles shall perish. 38 But new wine must be put into new bottles; and both are preserved. 49 No man also having drunk old *wine* straightway desireth new: for he saith, 'The old is better.'"

---

## §2. THE LORDSHIP OF JESUS

### THE OPPOSITION OF THE PHARISEES TO JESUS

#### a. The Plucking of Corn on the Sabbath

6:1 And it came to pass on the second sabbath after the first, that he went through the corn fields; and his disciples plucked the ears of corn, and did eat, rubbing *them* in *their* hands. 2 And certain of the Pharisees said unto them, "Why do ye that which it is not lawful to do on the sabbath days?" 3 And Jesus answering them said, "Have you not read so much as this, what David did, when himself was an hungered, and they that were with him; 4 how he went into the house of God, and did take and eat the shewbread, and gave also to them that were with him; which it is not lawful to eat but for the priests alone?" 5 And he said unto them, that the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

---

#### b. The Healing of the Withered Hand

6 And it came to pass also on another sabbath, that he entered into the synagogue and taught: and there was a man whose right hand was withered. 7 And the scribes and Pharisees watched him, whether he would heal on the sabbath day; that they might find an accusation against him. 8 But he knew their thoughts, and said to the man who had the withered hand, "Rise up, and stand forth in the midst." And he arose and stood forth. 9

Chapter 5:33-6:9

Then said Jesus unto them, "I will ask you one thing: Is it lawful on the sabbath days to do good or to do evil? to save life, or to destroy *it*?" 10 And looking round about upon them all, he said unto the man, "Stretch forth thy hand." And he did so: and his hand was restored whole as the other. 11 And they were filled with madness; and communed with one another what they might do to Jesus.

---

### §3. THE ORGANIZATION OF APOSTLES

#### I. THE CHOICE OF THE TWELVE

##### The Night in Prayer

12 And it came to pass in those days, that he went out into a mountain to pray, and continued all night in prayer to God. 13 And when it was day, he called unto *him* his disciples, and of them he chose twelve, whom also he named apostles: 14 Simon, whom he also named Peter, and Andrew his brother, James and John, Philip and Bartholomew, 15 Matthew and Thomas, James the son of Alphæus, and Simon called the Zealot, 16 and Judas *the brother* of James, and Judas Iscariot [who also was the traitor].

---

#### II. THE FOLLOWING MULTITUDES

##### The Ministry to the People from All Syria

17 And he came down with them, and stood in the plain, and the company of his disciples, and a great multitude of people out of all Judæa and Jerusalem, and from the seacoast of Tyre and Sidon, who came to hear him, and to be healed of their diseases; 18 and they that were vexed with unclean spirits: and they were healed. 19 And the whole multitude sought to touch him: for there went virtue out of him, and healed *them* all.

---

#### III. THE GREAT SERMON IN THE PLAIN

##### The Seven-Fold Address

20 And he lifted up his eyes on his disciples, and said:

\*

"Blessed *be ye* poor: for yours is the kingdom of God. 21 Blessed *are you* that hunger now: for you shall be filled. Blessed *are you* that weep now: for you shall laugh. 22 Blessed are you, when men shall hate you, and when they shall separate you *from their company*, and shall reproach *you*, and cast out your name as evil, for the Son of man's sake. 23 Rejoice ye in that day, and leap for joy:

*Chapter 6:10-23*

for, behold, your reward is great in heaven: for in the like manner did their fathers unto the prophets.”

\* \* \*

24 “But woe unto you that are rich! for you have received your consolation. 25 Woe unto you that are full! for you shall hunger. Woe unto you that laugh now! for you shall mourn and weep. 26 Woe unto you, when all men shall speak well of you! for so did their fathers to the false prophets.”

\* \* \*

27 “But I say unto you that hear, Love your enemies, do good to them that hate you, 28 bless them that curse you, and pray for them that despitefully use you. 29 And unto him that smiteth thee on the *one* cheek, offer also the other; and him that taketh away thy cloke, forbid not *to take thy* coat also. 30 Give to every man that asketh of thee; and of him that taketh away thy goods, ask *them* not again. 31 And as you would that men should do to you, do ye also to them likewise. 32 For if you love them that love you, what thanks have you? for sinners also love those that love them. 33 And if you do good to them that do good to you, what thanks have you? for sinners also do even the same. 34 And if you lend *to them* of whom you hope to receive, what thank have ye? for sinners also lend to sinners, to receive as much again. 35 But love ye your enemies, and do good, and lend, hoping for nothing again; and your reward shall be great, and you shall be the children of the Highest: for he is kind unto the unthankful and *to* the evil. 36 Be ye therefore merciful, as your Father also is merciful.”

\*\* \*\*

37 “Judge not, and you shall not be judged: condemn not, and you shall not be condemned: forgive, and you shall be forgiven: 38 give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give into your bosom. For with the same measure that you mete withal it shall be measured to you again.”

\*

39 And he spoke a parable unto them:

\*\*\* \*\*

“Can the blind lead the blind? shall they not both fall unto the ditch? 40 The disciple is not above

Chapter 6:24-40

his master: but every one that is perfect shall be as his master. 41 And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, and perceivest not the beam that is in thine own eye? 42 Either how canst thou say to thy brother, Brother, let me pull out the mote that is in thine eye, when thou thyself beholdest not the beam that is in thine own eye? Thou hypocrite, cast out first the beam out of thine own eye, and then shalt thou see clearly to pull out the mote that is in thy brother's eye."

\*\*\* \*\*

43 "For a good tree bringeth not forth corrupt fruit; neither doth a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit. 44 For every tree is known by its own fruit. For of thorns men do not gather figs, nor of a bramble bush gather they grapes. 45 A good man out of the good treasure of his heart bringeth forth that which is good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart bringeth forth that which is evil: for of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaketh.

\*\*\* \*\*

46 "And why call ye me Lord, Lord, and do not the things that I command? 47 Whosoever cometh to me, and heareth my sayings, and doeth them, I will show you to whom he is like: 48 He is like a man who built a house, and digged deep, and laid the foundation on a rock: and when the flood arose, the stream beat vehemently upon that house, and could not shake it: for it was founded upon a rock. 49 But he that heareth, and doeth not, is like a man that without a foundation built a house upon the earth; against which the stream did beat vehemently, and immediately it fell; and the ruin of that house was great."

---

### **The Second Summary**

7:1 Now when he had ended all his sayings in the audience of the people, he entered into Capernaum.



## Part Three

# THE MINISTRY IN GALILEE CONCLUDED

---

### §1. THE AUTHORITY OF JESUS CHRIST

#### I. THE HEALING OF THE SERVANT OF A CENTURION

##### The Faith of a Gentile Soldier

And a certain centurion's servant, who was dear unto him, was sick, and ready to die. 3 And when he heard of Jesus, he sent unto him the elders of the Jews, beseeching him that he would come and heal his servant. 4 And when they came to Jesus, they besought him instantly, saying, that he was worthy for whom he should do this: 5 "for he loveth our nation, and he hath built us a synagogue." 6 Then Jesus went with them, And when he was now not far from the house, the centurion sent friends to him, saying unto him, "Lord, trouble not thyself: for I am not worthy that thou shouldest enter under my roof; 7 wherefore neither thought I myself worthy to come unto thee; but say in a word, and my servant shall be healed. 8 For I also am a man set under authority, having under me soldiers, and I say unto one, 'Go,' and he goeth; and to another, 'Come,' and he cometh; and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he doeth *it*." 9 And when Jesus heard these sayings, he marvelled at him, and turned him about, and said unto the people that followed him, "I say unto you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel." 10 And they that were sent, returning to the house, found the servant whole that had been sick.

---

#### II. THE RAISING OF A WIDOW'S SON

##### The Widespread Report of Jesus

11 And it came to pass the day after, that he went into a city called Nain; and many of his disciples went with him, and many people. 12 Now when he came nigh to the gate of the city, behold, there was a dead man carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow; and many people of the city were with her. 13 And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her, and said unto her, "Weep not." 14 And he came and touched the bier: and they that bore *him* stood still. And he

said, "Young man, I say unto thee, Arise." 15 And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother. 16 And there came a fear on all: and they glorified God, saying that a great prophet is risen among us; and, that God hath visited his people. 17 And this rumour of him went forth throughout all Judæa, and throughout all the region round about.

### III. THE INQUIRY OF JOHN THE BAPTIST

#### The Seven-Fold Witness to Christ

18 And the disciples of John showed him of all these things. 19 And John calling *unto him* two of his disciples sent *them* to Jesus, saying, "Art thou he that should come? or look we for another?" 20 When the men were come unto them, they said, "John the Baptist hath sent unto thee, saying, 'Art thou he that should come? or look we for another?'" 21 And in that same hour he cured many of *their* infirmities and plagues, and of evil spirits; and unto many *that were* blind he gave sight. 22 Then Jesus answering said unto them:

\* \* \*

"Go your way, and tell John what things you have seen and heard: how that,

\*

The blind see,

\*

The lame walk,

\*

The lepers are cleansed,

\*

The deaf hear,

\*

The dead are raised,

\*

To the poor the gospel is preached.

\*

23 And blessed is *he*, whosoever shall not be offended in me."

### IV. THE WITNESS OF JESUS TO JOHN

#### The Greatness of John the Baptist

24 And when the messengers of John were departed, he began to speak unto the people concerning John: "What went you out into the wilderness for to see? A reed shaken with the wind?

Chapter 7:15-24

25 But what went you out for to see? A man clothed in soft raiment? Behold, they that are gorgeously apparelled, and live delicately, are in king's courts. 26 But what went you out for to see? A prophet? Yea, I say unto you, and much more than a prophet. 27 This is *he* of whom it is written:

\* \* \*

"Behold, I send my messenger before thy face,  
Who shall prepare thy way before thee."<sup>1</sup>

\*

28 For I say unto you, Among those that are born of woman, there is not a greater prophet than John the Baptist: but he that is least in the kingdom of God is greater than he. 29 And all the people that heard him, and the publicans, justified God, being baptized with the baptism of John. 30 But the Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God against themselves, being not baptized of him." 31 And the Lord said, "Whereunto then shall I liken the men of this generation? and to what are they like? 32 They are like unto children sitting in the marketplace, and calling one to another, and saying, 'We have piped unto you, and you have not danced; we have mourned to you, and you have not wept. 33 For John the Baptist came neither eating bread nor drinking wine; and you say, 'He hath a devil.' 34 The Son of man is come eating and drinking, and you say, 'Behold a gluttonous man, and a winebibber, a friend of publicans and sinners!' 35 But wisdom is justified of all her children."

## §2. THE RECOGNITION OF JESUS

### I. THE ANOINTING IN A PHARISEE'S HOUSE

#### The Parable of the Two Debtors

36 And one of the Pharisees desired him that he would eat with him. And he went into the Pharisee's house, and sat down to meat. 37 And, behold, a woman in the city, who was a sinner, when she knew that *Jesus* sat at meat in the Pharisee's house, brought an alabaster box of ointment, 38 and stood at his feet behind *him* weeping, and began to wash his feet with tears, and did wipe *them* with the hairs of her head, and kissed his feet, and anointed *them* with the ointment. 39 Now when the Pharisee who had bidden him saw *it*, he spoke within himself, saying, "This man, if he were a prophet, would have known who and what manner of woman *this is* that toucheth him: for she is a sinner." 40 And Jesus answering said unto him, "Simon, I have somewhat to say unto thee." And he saith, "Master,

<sup>1</sup> Mal. 3:1.

say on." 41 "There was a certain creditor who had two debtors: the one owed five hundred pence, and the other fifty. 42 And when they had nothing to pay, he frankly forgave them both. Tell me therefore, which of them will love him most?" 43 Simon answered and said, "I suppose that he to whom *he* forgave most." And he said unto him, "Thou hast rightly judged." 44 And he turned to the woman, and said unto Simon, "Seest thou this woman? I entered into thy house; thou gavest me no water for my feet: but she hath washed my feet with tears, and wiped them with the hairs of her head. 45 Thou gavest me no kiss: but this woman since the time I came in, hath not ceased to kiss my feet. 46 My head with oil thou didst not anoint: but this woman hath anointed my feet with ointment. 47 Wherefore I say unto thee, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, *the same* loveth little." 48 And he said unto her, "Thy sins are forgiven." 49 And they that sat at meat with him began to say within themselves, "Who is this that forgiveth sins also?" 50 And he said to the woman, "Thy faith hath saved thee; go in peace."

---

## II. THE PREACHING TOUR OF GALILEE

### The Ministering Women

8:1 And it came to pass afterward, that he went throughout every city and village, preaching and showing the glad tidings of the kingdom of God: and the twelve *were* with him, 2 and certain women, who had been healed of evil spirits and infirmities, Mary called Magdalene out of whom went seven devils, 3 and Joanna the wife of Chuza Herod's steward, and Susanna, and many others, who ministered unto him of their substance.

---

## III. THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER

### a. The Seed is the Word of God

4 And when many people were gathered together, and were come to him out of every city, he spoke by a parable: 5 "A sower went out to sow his seed: and as he sowed, some fell by the wayside; and it was trodden down, and the fowls of the air devoured it. 6 And some fell upon a rock; and as soon as it was sprung up, it withered away, because it lacked moisture. 7 And some fell among thorns; and the thorns sprang up with it, and choked it. 8 And other fell on good ground, and sprang up, and bare fruit an hundredfold." And when he had said these things, he cried, "He that hath ears to hear, let him hear."

Chapter 7:41-8:8



### b. The Exposition of the Parable

9 And his disciples asked him, saying, "What might this parable be?" 10 And he said, "Unto you it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God: but to others in parables; that seeing they might not see, and hearing they might not understand. 11 Now the parable is this: The seed is the word of God. 12 Those by the way side are they that hear; then cometh the devil, and taketh away the word out of their hearts, lest they should believe and be saved. 13 They on the rock *are they* who when they hear receive the word with joy; and these have no root, which for a while believe, and in time of temptation fall away. 14 And they that fell among thorns are they, who when they have heard, go forth, and are choked with cares and riches and pleasures of *this* life, and bring no fruit to perfection. 15 But that on the good ground are they, who in an honest and good heart, having heard the word, keep *it*, and bring forth fruit with patience. 16 No man, when he hath lighted a candle, covereth it with a vessel, or putteth *it* under a bed; but setteth *it* on a candlestick, that they who enter in may see the light. 17 For nothing is secret, that shall not be made manifest; neither *anything* hid, that shall not be known and come abroad. 18 Take heed therefore how you hear; for whosoever hath, to him shall be given; and whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken even that which he seemeth to have."

## IV. THE TRUE KINDRED OF JESUS

### The Hearing and Doing of the Word

19 Then came to him *his* mother and his brothers, and could not come to him for the press. 20 And it was told him *by certain* who said, "Thy mother and thy brothers stand without, desiring to see thee." 21 And he answered and said unto them, "My mother and my brothers are these that hear the word of God, and do it."

## §3. THE GREAT POWER OF JESUS

### I. THE STILLING OF THE STORM ON THE LAKE

#### The Amazement of the Disciples

22 Now it came to pass on a certain day, that he went into a ship with his disciples: and he said unto them, "Let us go over unto the other side of the lake." And they launched forth. 23 And as they sailed he fell asleep: and there came down a storm of wind on the lake; and they were filled *with water*, and were in jeopardy. 24 And they came to him, and awoke him, saying,

Chapter 8:9-24

"Master, Master, we perish." Then he arose, and rebuked the wind and the raging of the water: and they ceased, and there was a great calm. 25 And he said unto them, "Where is your faith?" And they being afraid wondered, saying one to another, "What manner of man is this! for he commandeth even the winds and water, and they obey him."

---

## II. THE SOJOURN OF JESUS IN GADARA

### The Healing of a Demoniac

26 And they arrived at the country of the Gadarenes, which is over against Galilee. 27 And when he went forth to land, there met him out of the city a certain man, who had devils long time, and ware no clothes, neither abode in *any* house, but in the tombs. 28 When he saw Jesus, he cried out, and fell down before him, and with a loud voice said, "What have I to do with thee, Jesus, *thou* Son of God most high? I beseech thee, torment me not." 29 [For he commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For oftentimes it had caught him: and he was kept bound with chains and in fetters; and he brake the bands, and was driven of the devil into the wilderness]. 30 And Jesus asked him, saying, "What is thy name?" And he said, "Legion:" because many devils were entered into him. 31 And they besought him that he would not command them to go out into the deep. 32 And there was there a herd of many swine feeding on the mountain: and they besought him that he would suffer them to enter into them. And he suffered them. 33 Then went the devils out of the man, and entered into the swine; and the herd ran violently down a steep place into the lake, and were choked. 34 When they that fed *them* saw what was done, they fled, and went and told *it* in the city and in the country. 35 Then they went out to see what was done; and came to Jesus, and found the man, out of whom the devils were departed, sitting at the feet of Jesus, clothed, and in his right mind: and they were afraid. 36 They also who saw *it* told them by what means he that was possessed of the devils was healed. 37 Then the whole multitude of the country of the Gadarenes round about besought him to depart from them; for they were taken with great fear: and he went up into the ship, and returned back again. 38 Now the man out of whom the devils were departed besought him that he might be with him: but Jesus sent him away, saying, 39 "Return to thine own house, and show how great things God hath done unto thee." And he went his way, and published throughout the whole city how great things Jesus had done unto him.

### III. THE RETURN OF JESUS INTO GALILEE

#### a. The Request of Jairus the Ruler

40 And it came to pass, that, when Jesus was returned, the people *gladly* received him: for they were all waiting for him. 41 And, behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue: and he fell down at Jesus' feet, and besought him that he would come into his house: 42 for he had one only daughter, about twelve years of age, and she lay a dying.

#### b. The Faith of an Invalid Woman

But as he went the people thronged him. 43 And a woman<sup>1</sup> having an issue of blood twelve years, who had spent all her living upon physicians, neither could be healed of any, 44 came behind *him*, and touched the border of his garment; and immediately her issue of blood stanch'd. 45 And Jesus said, "Who touched me?" When all denied, Peter and they that were with him said, "Master, the multitude throng thee and press thee, and sayest thou, 'Who touched me?'" 46 And Jesus said, "Somebody hath touched me: for I perceive that virtue is gone out of me." 47 And when the woman saw that she was not hid, she came trembling, and falling down before him, she declared unto him before all the people for what cause she had touched him, and how she was healed immediately. 48 And he said unto her, "Daughter,<sup>2</sup> be of good comfort: thy faith hath made thee whole; go in peace."

#### c. The Restoration of Jairus' Daughter

49 While he yet spoke, there cometh one from the ruler of the synagogue's *house*, saying to him, "Thy daughter is dead; trouble not the Master." 50 But when Jesus heard *it*, he answered him, saying, "Fear not: believe only, and she shall be made whole." 51 And when he came into the house, he suffered no man to go in, save Peter, and James, and John, and the father and the mother of the maiden. 52 And all wept, and bewailed her: but he said, "Weep not; she is not dead, but sleepeth." 53 And they laughed him to scorn, knowing that she was dead. 54 And he put them all out, and took her by the hand, and called; saying, "Maid, arise." 55 And her spirit came again, and she arose straightway: and he commanded them to give her meat. 56 And her parents were astonished: but he charged them that they should tell no man what was done.

<sup>1</sup> Tradition says her name was Veronica.

<sup>2</sup> The only record of our Lord's use of this tender name to a woman.

## IV. THE MISSION OF THE TWELVE APOSTLES

**The Seven-Fold Instruction of Jesus**

9:1 And he called his twelve disciples together, and gave them power and authority over all devils, and to cure diseases. 2 And he sent them to preach the kingdom of God, and to heal the sick. 3 And he said unto them:

\* \* \*

"Take nothing for *your* journey,

\*

Neither staves,

\*

Nor scrip,

\*

Neither bread,

\*

Neither money;

\*

Neither have two coats apiece.

\*

4 And whatsoever house you enter into, there abide, and thence depart.

\*

5 And whosoever shall not receive you, when you go out of the city, shake off the very dust from your feet for a testimony against them."

\*

6 And they departed, and went through the towns, preaching the gospel, and healing every where.

---

**b. The Desire of Herod to See Jesus**

7 Now Herod the tetrarch heard of all that was done by him: and he was perplexed, because it was said by some, that John was risen from the dead; 8 and by some, that Elijah had appeared; and by others, that one of the old prophets was risen again. 9 And Herod said, John have I beheaded: but who is this, of whom I hear such things?" And he desired to see him.

---

**c. The Return of the Apostles**

10 And the apostles, when they had returned, told him all that they had done, And he took them, and went aside privately into a desert place belonging to the city called Bethsaida. 11

*Chapter 9:1-11*



And the people, when they knew *it*, followed him: and he received them, and spoke unto them of the kingdom of God, and healed them that had need of healing.

#### d. The Feeding of the Five Thousand

12 And when the day began to wear away, then came the twelve, and said unto him: "Send the multitude away, that they may go into the towns and country round about, and lodge, and get victuals: for we are here in a desert place. 13 But he said unto them, "Give ye them to eat." And they said, "We have no more than five loaves and two fishes, except we should go and buy meat for all this people." 14 For there were about five thousand men. And he said to his disciples, "Make them sit down by fifties in a company." 15 And they did so, and made them all sit down. 16 Then he took the five loaves and the two fishes, and looking up to heaven, he blessed them, and brake, and gave to the disciples, to set before the multitude. 17 And they did eat, and were filled: and there were taken up of the fragments that remained to them twelve baskets.

### §4. THE GLORY OF JESUS CHRIST

#### I. THE GREAT CONFESSION OF SIMON PETER

##### The Cross and the Kingdom of God

18 And it came to pass, as he was alone praying, his disciples were with him: and he asked them, saying, "Who say the people that I am?" 19 They answering said, "John the Baptist; but some say, Elijah; and others say, that one of the prophets is risen again." 20 He said unto them, "But who say ye that I am?" Peter answering said, "The Christ of God." 21 And he straitly charged them, and commanded *them* to tell no man this thing, 22 saying, "The Son of man must suffer many things, and be rejected of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be slain, and be raised the third day." 23 And he said to them all:

\* \* \*

"If any *man* will come after me, let him deny himself,

\*

And take up his cross daily, and follow me.

\*

24 For whosoever will save his life, shall lose it;

\*

But whosoever will lose his life for my sake, the same shall save it.

\*

25 For what is a man advantaged, if he gain the whole world, and lose himself, or be cast away?

\*

26 For whosoever shall be ashamed of me and of my words, of him shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he shall come in his own glory, and *in his* Father's, and of the holy angels.

\*

27 But I tell you of a truth, there are some standing here, who shall not taste of death, till they see the kingdom of God."

---

## II. THE TRANSFIGURATION OF JESUS

### The Voice of God from Heaven

28 And it came to pass about eight days after these sayings, he took Peter and John and James, and went up into a mountain to pray. 29 And as he prayed, the fashion of his countenance was altered, and his raiment *was* white *and* glistening. 30 And, behold, there talked with him two men, who were Moses and Elijah: 31 who appeared in glory, and spoke of his decease which he should accomplish at Jerusalem. 32 But Peter and they that were with him were heavy with sleep; and when they were awake, they saw his glory, and the two men that stood with him. 33 And it came to pass, as they departed from him, Peter said unto Jesus, "Master, it is good for us to be here: and let us make three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah," not knowing what he said. 34 And while he thus spoke, there came a cloud, and overshadowed them: and they feared as they entered into the cloud. 35 And there came a voice out of the cloud, saying, "This is my beloved Son: hear him." 36 And when the voice was past, Jesus was found alone. And they kept *it* close, and told no man in those days any of those things that they had seen.

---

## III. THE HEALING OF THE DEMONIAK

### The Mighty Power of God

37 And it came to pass, that on the next day, when they were come down from the hill, many people met him. 38 And, behold, a man of the company cried out, saying, "Master, I beseech

*Chapter 9:25-38*

thee, look upon my son; for he is my only child. 39 And, lo, a spirit taketh him, and he suddenly crieth out; and it teareth him so that he foameth again, and bruising him hardly departeth from him. 40 And I besought thy disciples to cast him out; and they could not." 41 And Jesus answering said, "O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you, and suffer you? Bring thy son hither." 42 And as he was coming, the devil threw him down, and tare *him*. And Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, and healed the child, and delivered him again to his father. 43 And they were all amazed at the mighty power of God.

---

#### IV. THE FORECAST OF THE CRUCIFIXION

##### a. The Fear of the Disciples

But while they wondered every one at all things that Jesus did, he said unto his disciples, 44 "Let these sayings sink down into your ears: for the Son of man shall be delivered into the hands of men." 45 But they understood not this saying, and it was hid from them, so that they perceived it not: and they feared to ask him of that saying.

---

##### b. The Question of Rank

46 Then there arose a reasoning among them, which of them should be greatest. 47 And Jesus, perceiving the thought of their heart, took a child, and set him by him, 48 and said unto them, "Whosoever shall receive this child in my name, receiveth me: and whosoever shall receive me, receiveth him that sent me: for he that is least among you all, the same shall be great."

---

##### c. The Friends of Jesus

49 And John answered and said, "Master, we saw one casting out devils in thy name; and we forbade him, because he followeth not with us." 50 And Jesus said unto him, "Forbid *him* not: for he that is not against us is for us."

---

#### The Third Summary

51 And it came to pass, when the time was come that he should be received up, he stedfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem.





## Part Four

# THE GREAT JOURNEY TO JERUSALEM

---

### §1. THE COMING OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD

#### I. THE REJECTION OF THE SAMARITANS

##### The Mission of the Son of Man

And *he* sent messengers before his face: and they went and entered into a village of the Samaritans, to make ready for him. 53 And they did not receive him, because his face was as though he would go to Jerusalem. 54 And when his disciples James and John saw *this*, they said, "Lord, wilt thou that we command fire to come down from heaven, and consume them, even as Elijah did?"<sup>1</sup> 55 But he turned, and rebuked them, and said, "You know not what manner of spirit you are of. 56 For the Son of man is not come to destroy men's lives, but to save *them*." And they went to another village.

---

#### II. THE WOULD-BE FOLLOWERS OF JESUS

##### The Urgency of the Kingdom

57 And it came to pass, that, as they went in the way, a certain *man* said unto him, "Lord, I will follow thee whithersoever thou goest." 58 And Jesus said unto him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the air *have* nests; but the Son of man hath not where to lay *his* head."

\*

59 And he said unto another, "Follow me." But he said, "Lord, suffer me first to go and bury my father." 60 Jesus said unto him, "Let the dead bury their dead: but go thou and preach the kingdom of God."

\*

61 And another also said, "Lord, I will follow thee; but let me first go bid them farewell, that are at home at my house." 62 And Jesus said unto him, "No man, having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God."

---

<sup>1</sup> II Kings, 1:10f.

## III. THE MISSION OF THE SEVENTY

## a. The Seven-Fold Address

10:1 After these things the Lord appointed other seventy also and sent them two and two before his face into every city and place, whither he himself would come. 2 Therefore said he unto them:

\* \* \*

"The harvest truly is great, but the labourers are few: pray ye therefore the lord of the harvest, that he would send forth labourers into his harvest.

\*

3 "Go your ways: behold, I send you forth as lambs among wolves.

\* \*

4 "Carry neither purse, nor scrip, nor shoes.

\* \* \*

"And salute no man by the way.

\*\* \*\* \*

5 "And into whatsoever house you enter, first say, Peace be to this house. 6 And if the son of peace be there, your peace shall rest upon it; if not, it shall turn to you again. 7 And in the same house remain, eating and drinking such things as they give: for the labourer is worthy of his hire.

\*\*\* \*\*

"Go not from house to house.

\*\* \*\* \*\* \*

8 "And into whatsoever city you enter, and they receive you, eat such things as are set before you: 9 and heal the sick that are therein, and say unto them, The kingdom of God is come nigh unto you. 10 But into whatsoever city you enter, and they receive you not, go your ways out into the streets of the same, and say, 11 Even the very dust of your city, which cleaveth on us, we do wipe off against you: notwithstanding, be ye sure of this, that the kingdom of God is come nigh unto you. 12 But I say unto you that it shall be more tolerable in that day for Sodom, than for that city.

\*\*\* \*\* \*

13 "Woe unto thee, Chorazin! woe unto thee, Bethsaida! for if the mighty works had been done in Tyre and Sidon that have been done in you, they

would a great while ago have repented, sitting in sackcloth and ashes. 14 But it shall be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you. 15 And thou, Capernaum, that art exalted to heaven, shall be thrust down to hell.

\*

16 "He that heareth you heareth me; and he that despiseth you despiseth me; and he that despiseth me despiseth him that sent me."

---

#### b. The Return of the Seventy

17 And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, "Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name." 18 And he said unto them, "I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven. 19 Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you. 20 Notwithstanding, in this rejoice not, That the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven."

---

#### c. The Thanksgiving of Jesus

21 In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit, and said, "I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth; that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father, for so it seemed good in thy sight."

\*

22 "All things are delivered to me of my Father: and no man knoweth who the Son is, but the Father; and who the Father is, but the Son, and *he* to whom the Son will reveal *him*."

\*

23 And he turned unto *his* disciples, and said privately, "Blessed *are* the eyes that see the things that you see: 24 for I tell you, that many prophets and kings have desired to see those things that you see, and have not seen *them*; and to hear those things that you hear, and have not heard *them*."

---

#### d. The Parable of the Good Samaritan

25 And behold, a certain lawyer stood up, and tempted him, saying, "Master, what shall I do to inherit eternal life?" 26 He said unto him, "What is written in the law? how readest

*Chapter 10:14-26*

thou?" 27 And he answering said, "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy strength, and with all thy mind; and thy neighbor as thyself." 28 And he said unto him, "Thou hast answered right: this do, and thou shalt live." 29 But he, willing to justify himself, said unto Jesus, "And who is my neighbor?" 30 And Jesus answering, said, "A certain *man* went down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among thieves, who stripped him of his raiment, and wounded *him*, and departed, leaving *him* half dead. 31 And by chance there came down a certain priest that way: and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side. 32 And likewise a Levite, when he was at the place, came and looked *on him*, and passed by on the other side. 33 But a certain Samaritan, as he journeyed, came where he was; and when he saw him, he had compassion *on him*, 34 and went to *him*, and bound up his wounds, pouring in oil and wine, and set him on his own beast, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him. 35 And on the morrow when he departed, he took out two pence, and gave *them* to the host, and said unto him, 'Take care of him: and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee.' 36 Which now of these three, thinkest thou, was neighbor unto him that fell among the thieves?" 37 And he said, "He that showed mercy on him." Then said Jesus unto him, "Go, and do thou likewise."

#### IV. THE HOME OF MARTHA AND MARY

##### The One Thing Needful

38 Now it came to pass, as they went, that he entered into a certain village: and a certain woman named Martha received him into her house. 39 And she had a sister called Mary, who sat at Jesus' feet, and heard his word. 40 But Martha was cumbered about much serving, and came to him, and said, "Lord, dost thou not care that my sister hath left me to serve alone? bid her therefore that she help me." 41 And Jesus answered and said unto her, "Martha, Martha, thou art careful and troubled about many things: 42 but one thing is needful: and Mary hath chosen that good part, which shall not be taken away from her."

## §2. THE PRAYER FOR THE KINGDOM OF GOD

### I. THE INSTRUCTION OF THE DISCIPLES

#### The Seven-Fold Prayer to the Father

11:1 And it came to pass, that, as he was praying in a certain place, when he ceased, one of his disciples said unto him, "Lord,

*Chapter 10:27-11:1*



teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples." 2 And he said unto them, "When you pray, say:

\* \* \*

Our Father who art in heaven,

\*

Hallowed be thy name.

\*

Thy kingdom come.

\*

Thy will be done, as in heaven, so in earth.

\*

3 Give us this day our daily bread.

\*

4 And forgive us our sins; for we also forgive every one that is indebted to us.

\*

And lead us not into temptation;

\*

But deliver us from evil."

---

## II. THE ENCOURAGEMENT TO PRAYER

### *The Gift of the Holy Spirit*

5 And he said unto them, "Which of you shall have a friend, and shall go unto him at midnight, and say unto him, Friend, lend me three loaves; 6 for a friend of mine in his journey is come to me, and I have nothing to set before him. 7 And he from within shall answer and say, Trouble me not: the door is now shut, and my children are with me in bed; I cannot rise and give thee. 8 I say unto you, Though he will not rise and give him, because he is his friend, yet because of his importunity he will rise and give him as many as he needeth. 9 And I say unto you:

\* \* \*

Ask, and it shall be given you;

Seek, and you shall find;

Knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

10 For every one that asketh, receiveth;

And he that seeketh, findeth;

And to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

\*

11 If a man shall ask bread of any of you that is a father, will he give him a stone? or if *he ask* a fish, will he for a fish give him

*Chapter 11:2-11*

a serpent? 12 Or if he shall ask for an egg, will he offer him a scorpion? 13 If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?"

### III. THE BLASPHEMY OF THE PHARISEES

#### The Healing of a Dumb Demoniac

14 And he was casting out a devil, and it was dumb. And it came to pass, when the devil was gone out, the dumb spoke: and the people wondered. 15 But some of them said, "He casteth out devils through Beelzebub the chief of the devils." 16 And others tempting *him*, sought of him a sign from heaven. 17 But he, knowing their thoughts, said unto them:

\*

"Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation; and a house *divided* against itself falleth.

\* \*

18 "If Satan also be divided against himself, how shall his kingdom stand? because you say that I cast out devils through Beelzebub.

\* \* \*

19 "And if I by Beelzebub cast out devils, by whom do your sons cast *them* out? therefore shall they be your judges.

\* \* \* \*

20 "But if I with the finger of God cast out devils, no doubt the kingdom of God is come upon you.

\* \* \* \* \*

21 "When a strong man armed keepeth his palace, his goods are in peace: 22 but when a stronger than he shall come upon him, and overcome him, he taketh from him all his armour wherein he trusted, and divideth his spoils.

\* \* \* \* \*

23 "He that is not with me is against me: and he that gathereth not with me scattereth.

\* \* \* \* \*

24 "When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest; and finding none, he saith, 'I will turn to my house whence I came out.' 25 And when he cometh, he findeth *it* swept and garnished. 26 Then goeth

he, and taketh *to him* seven other spirits more wicked than himself; and they enter in, and dwell there: and the last *state* of that man is worse than the first."

#### IV. THE PRAISE OF A WOMAN

##### The Blessedness of Obeying the Word

27 And it came to pass, as he spoke these things, a certain woman of the company lifted up her voice, and said unto him, "Blessed *is* the womb that bare thee, and the paps that thou hast sucked." 28 But he said, "Yea, rather, blessed *are* they that hear the word of God, and keep it."

### §3. THE JUDGMENT OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD

#### I. THE PRESENT EVIL GENERATION

##### The Seven-Fold Address

29 And when the people were gathered thick together, he began to say:

\*

"This is an evil generation: they seek a sign; and there shall be no sign given it, but the sign of Jonah the prophet. 30 For as Jonah was a sign unto the Ninevites, so shall the Son of man be to this generation.

\* \*

31 "The Queen of the South shall rise up in the judgment with the men of this generation, and condemn them: for she came from the utmost part of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon;<sup>1</sup> and, behold, a greater than Solomon *is* here.

\* \* \*

32 "The men of Nineveh shall rise up in the judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: for they repented at the preaching of Jonah; and, behold, a greater than Jonah *is* here.

\* \* \* \*

33 "No man, when he hath lighted a candle, putteth *it* in a secret place, neither under a bushel, but on a candlestick, that they that come in may see the light.

<sup>1</sup> I Kings, 10:1f.

\* \* \* \*

34 "The light of the body is the eye: therefore when thine eye is single, thy whole body also is full of light: but when *thine eye* is evil, thy whole body also *is* full of darkness.

\* \* \* \*

35 "Take heed therefore that the light that is in thee be not darkness.

\* \* \* \*

36 "If the whole body therefore *be* full of light, having no part dark, the whole shall be full of light, as when the bright shining of a candle doth give thee light."

## II. THE CONDEMNATION OF THE PHARISEES AND LAWYERS

### The Seven-Fold Address of Jesus

37 And as he spoke, a certain Pharisee besought him to dine with him; and he went in and sat down to meat. 38 And when the Pharisee saw *it*, he marvelled that he had not first washed before dinner. 39 And the Lord said unto him:

\*

"Now do you Pharisees make clean the outside of the cup and the platter; but your inward part is full of ravening and wickedness. 40 *Ye* fools, did not he that made that which is without, make that which is within also? 41 But rather give alms of such things as you have; and, behold, all things are clean unto you.

\* \*

42 "But woe unto you, Pharisees! for you tithe mint and rue and all manner of herbs, and pass over judgment and the love of God: these ought you to have done, and not to have left the other undone.

\* \* \*

43 "Woe unto you, Pharisees! for you love the uppermost seats in the synagogues, and greetings in the markets.

\* \* \*

44 "Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you are as graves that appear not, and the men that walk over *them* are not aware of *them*."

Chapter 11:34-44



\*

45 Then answered one of the lawyers, and said unto him, "Master, thus saying thou reproachest us also." 46 And he said:

\* \* \* \*

"Woe unto you also, ye lawyers! for you lade men with burdens grievous to be borne, and you yourself touch not the burdens with one of your fingers.

\* \* \* \* \*

47 "Woe unto you! for you build the sepulchres of the prophets, and your fathers killed them. 48 Truly you bear witness that you allow the deeds of your fathers: for they indeed killed them, and you build their sepulchres. 49 Therefore also said the wisdom of God, 'I will send them prophets and apostles, and *some* of them they will slay and persecute:' 50 that the blood of all the prophets, that was shed from the foundation of the world, may be required of this generation; 51 from the blood of Abel unto the blood of Zacharias, who perished between the altar and the temple: verily I say unto you, It shall be required of this generation.

\* \* \* \* \*

52 "Woe unto you, lawyers! for you have taken away the key of knowledge: you entered not in yourselves, and them that were entering in you hindered."

\*

53 And as he said these things unto them, the scribes and the Pharisees began to urge *him* vehemently, and to provoke him to speak of many things: 54 laying in wait for him, and seeking to catch something out of his mouth, that they might accuse him.

### III. THE WARNING AGAINST PHARISEEISM

#### The Seven-Fold Address

12:1 And in the mean time, when there was gathered together an innumerable multitude of people, insomuch that they trod one upon another, he began to say unto his disciples first of all:

\*

"Beware ye of the leaven of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy.      \* \*

2 "For there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; neither hid, that shall not be known.

*Chapter 11:45-12:2*

3 Therefore whatsoever you have spoken in darkness, shall be heard in the light; and that which you have spoken in the ear in closets shall be proclaimed upon the housetops.

\* \* \*

4 "And I say unto you, my friends, be not afraid of them that kill the body, and after that have no more that they can do. 5 But I will forewarn you whom you shall fear: Fear him, who after he hath killed hath power to cast into hell; yea, I say unto you, fear him.

\* \* \*

6 "Are not five sparrows sold for two farthings, and not one of them is forgotten before God? 7 But even the very hairs of your head are all numbered. Fear not therefore: you are of more value than many sparrows.

\* \* \* \*

8 "Also I say unto you, Whosoever shall confess me before men, him shall the Son of man confess before the angels of God; 9 but he that denieth me before men, shall be denied before the angels of God.

\* \* \* \* \*

10 "And whosoever shall speak a word against the Son of man, it shall be forgiven him; but unto him that blasphemeth against the Holy Spirit, it shall not be forgiven.

\*\*\* \* \*\*\*

11 "And when they bring you into the synagogues, and *unto* magistrates, and powers, take ye no thought how or what you shall answer, or what you shall say: 12 for the Holy Spirit shall teach you in the same hour what you ought to say."

---

#### IV. THE DISCOURSE ON WORLDLY-MINDEDNESS

##### a. The Seven-Fold Address

13 And one of the company said unto him, "Master, speak to my brother, that he divide the inheritance with me." 14 And he said unto him, "Man, who made me a judge or a divider over you?" 15 And he said unto them, "Take heed, and beware of covetousness: for a man's life consisteth not in the abundance of the things which he possesseth." 16 And he spoke a parable unto them, saying:

*Chapter 12:3-16*

Prologue<sup>1</sup>

"The ground of a certain rich man brought forth plentifully: 17 and he thought within himself, saying, 'What shall I do, because I have no where to bestow my fruits?' 18 And he said, 'This will I do: I will pull down my barns, and build greater; and there will I bestow all my fruits and my goods. 19 And I will say to my soul, Soul, thou hast much goods laid up for many years; take thine ease, eat, drink, *and* be merry.' 20 But God said unto him, 'Thou fool, this night thy soul shall be required of thee; then whose shall those things be, which thou hast provided?' 21 So *is* he that layeth up treasure for himself, and is not rich toward God."

\*

22 And he said unto his disciples:

\*

"Therefore I say unto you, Take no thought for your life, what you shall eat; neither for your body, what you shall put on. 23 The life is more than meat, and the body *is* more than raiment.

\* \*

24 "Consider the ravens: for they neither sow nor reap; which neither have store house nor barn; and God feedeth them; how much more are you better than the fowls?

\* \* \*

25 "And which of you with taking thought can add to his stature one cubit? 26 If you then are not able to do that which is least, why take you thought for the rest?

\* \* \*

27 "Consider the lilies, how they grow: they toil not, they spin not; and yet I say unto you, that Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these. 28 If then God so clothe the grass, which is to day in the field, and to morrow is cast into the oven; how much more *will he clothe* you, O you of little faith?

\* \* \* \*

29 "And seek not ye what you shall eat, or what you shall drink, neither be ye of doubtful mind. 30 For all these things do the nations of the world

---

<sup>1</sup> The Parable of the Rich Fool.

seek after; but your Father knoweth that you have need of these things. 31 But rather seek ye the kingdom of God; and all these things shall be added unto you.

\*\*\* \*\*

32 "Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom.

\*\*\* \*\*

33 "Sell that which you have, and give alms; provide yourselves bags that wax not old, a treasure in the heavens that faileth not, where no thief approacheth, neither moth corrupteth. 34 For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

#### Epilogue

35 "Let your loins be girded about, and *your* lamps burning; 36 and ye yourselves like unto men that wait for their lord, when he will return from the wedding; that when he cometh and knocketh, they may open unto him immediately. 37 Blessed *are* those servants, whom the lord when he cometh, shall find watching; verily I say unto you, that he shall gird himself, and make them to sit down to meat, and will come forth and serve them. 38 And if he shall come in the second watch, or come in the third watch and find *them* so, blessed are those servants. 39 And know this, that if the goodman of the house had known what hour the thief would come, he would have watched, and not have left the house to be broken through. 40 Be ye therefore ready also; for the Son of man cometh at an hour when you think not."

---

#### b. The Reward of Faithfulness

41 Then Peter said unto him, "Lord, speakest thou this parable unto us, or even to all?" 42 And the Lord said, "Who then is that faithful and wise steward, whom *his* lord shall set over his household, to give *them their* portion of meat in due season? 43 Blessed is that servant, whom his Lord when he cometh shall find so doing. 44 Of a truth I say unto you, that he will make him ruler over all that he hath. 45 But if that servant say in his heart, My lord delayeth his coming; and shall begin to beat the menservants and maidens, and to eat and drink, and to be drunken; 46 the lord of that servant will come in a day when

Chapter 12:31-46



he looketh not for him, and at an hour when he is not aware, and shall cut him asunder, and will appoint his portion with the unbelievers. 47 And that servant who knew his lord's will, and prepared not *himself*, neither did according to his will, shall be beaten with many *stripes*: 48 But he that knew not, and did things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few *stripes*. For unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required; and to whom men have committed much, of him they will ask the more."

---

### c. The Impending Crisis

49 "I came to cast fire upon the earth; and what will I, if it be already kindled? 50 But I have a baptism to be baptized with; and how am I straightened<sup>1</sup> till it be accomplished? 51 Suppose ye that I am come to give peace on earth? I tell you, Nay; but rather division; 52 for from henceforth there shall be five in one house divided, three against two, and two against three. 53 The father shall be divided against the son, and the son against the father; the mother against the daughter, and the daughter against the mother; the mother in law against her daughter in law, and the daughter in law against her mother in law."

---

### d. The Signs of the Times

54 And he said also to the people, "When you see a cloud rise out of the west, straightway you say, 'There cometh a shower;' and so it is. 55 And when *you see* the south wind blow, you say, 'There will be heat;' and it cometh to pass. 56 *You* hypocrites, you can discern the face of the sky and of the earth; but how is it that you do not discern this time? 57 Yea, and why even of yourselves judge ye not what is right? 58 When thou goest with thine adversary to the magistrate, *as thou art* in the way, give diligence that thou mayest be delivered from him; lest he hale thee to the judge, and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and the officer cast thee into prison. 59 I tell thee, Thou shalt not depart thence, till thou hast paid the very last mite."

---

## §4. THE NATURE OF THE JUDGMENT

### I. THE CALL TO REPENTANCE

#### The Universality of Sin

13:1 There were present at that season some that told him of the Galilæans, whose blood Pilate had mingled with their sacri-

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, pained.

fices. 2 And Jesus answering said unto them, "Suppose ye that these Galilæans were sinners above all the Galilæans, because they have suffered such things? 3 I tell you, Nay; but, except you repent, you shall all likewise perish. 4 Or those eighteen, upon whom the tower in Siloam fell, and slew them, think ye that they were sinners above all men that dwell in Jerusalem? 5 I tell you, Nay; but, except you repent, you shall all likewise perish."

---

## II. THE PARABLE OF THE FIG TREE

### The Patience of the Lord

6 He spoke also this parable: "A certain *man* had a fig tree planted in his vineyard; and he came and sought fruit thereon, and found none. 7 Then said he unto the dresser of his vineyard, 'Behold, these three years I come seeking fruit on this fig tree, and find none: cut it down; why cumbereth it the ground?' 8 And he answering said unto him, 'Lord, let it alone this year also, till I shall dig about it, and dung *it*;' 9 and if it bear fruit *well*: but if not, *then* after that thou shalt cut it down."

---

## III. THE HEALING OF AN INFIRM WOMAN

### The Compassion of the Lord

10 And he was teaching in one of the synagogues on the sabbath. 11 And, behold, there was a woman who had a spirit of infirmity eighteen years, and was bowed together, and could in no wise lift up *herself*. 12 And when Jesus saw her, he called *her to him*, and said unto her, "Woman, thou art loosed from thine infirmity." 13 And he laid *his* hands upon her: and immediately she was made straight, and glorified God. 14 And the ruler of the synagogue answered with indignation, because Jesus had healed on the sabbath day, and said unto the people, "There are six days in which men ought to work; in them therefore come and be healed, and not on the sabbath day." 15 The Lord then answered him, and said *Thou* hypocrite, doth not each one of you on the sabbath loose his ox or *his* ass from the stall, and lead *him* away to watering? 16 And ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan hath bound, lo, these eighteen years, to be loosed from this bond on the sabbath day?" 17 And when he had said these things, all his adversaries were ashamed: and all the people rejoiced for all the glorious things that were done by him.

**IV. THE EXTENSION OF THE KINGDOM****The Parables of the Mustard Seed and Leaven**

18 Then said he, "Unto what is the kingdom of God like? and whereunto shall I resemble it? 19 It is like a grain of mustard seed, which a man took, and cast into his graden; and it grew, and became a great tree; and the fowls of the air lodged in the branches of it." 20 And again he said, "Whereunto shall I liken the kingdom of God? 21 It is like leaven, which a woman took and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened."

---

**The Fourth Summary**

22 And he went through the cities and villages, teaching, and journeying toward Jerusalem.





## Part Five

# THE JOURNEY TO JERUSALEM CONCLUDED

---

### §1. THE GLORY OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD

#### I. THE QUESTION CONCERNING THE SAVED

##### The First and the Last

Then said one unto him, "Lord, are there few that be saved?" And he said unto them, 24 "Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able. 25 When once the master of the house is risen up, and hath shut to the door, and you begin to stand without, and to knock at the door, saying, Lord, Lord, open unto us; and he shall answer and say unto you, I know not whence you are: 26 then shall you begin to say, We have eaten and drunken in thy presence, and thou hast taught in our streets. 27 But he shall say, I tell you, I know not whence you are; depart from me all ye workers of iniquity. 28 There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth when you shall see Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and all the prophets, in the kingdom of God, and you *yourselves* thrust out. 29 And they shall come *from* the east, and from the west, and from the north, and *from* the south, and shall sit down in the kingdom of God. 30 And behold, there are last that shall be first; and there are first that shall be last."

---

#### II. THE THREAT OF HEROD<sup>1</sup> THE TETRARCH

##### The Fall of Jerusalem Foretold

31 The same day there came certain of the Pharisees, saying unto him, "Get thee out, and depart hence: for Herod will kill thee." 32 And he said unto them, "Go ye, and tell that fox, Behold, I cast out devils, and I do cures to day, and to morrow, and the third *day* I shall be perfected. 33 Nevertheless, I must walk to day, and to morrow, and the *day* following; for it cannot be that a prophet perish out of Jerusalem. 34 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee; how often would I have gathered thy children

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 118: 26.

together as a hen *doth* gather her brood under *her* wings, and you would not! 35 Behold, your house is left unto you desolate: and verily I say unto you, You shall not see me, until *the time* come when you shall say, 'Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord.'"

---

### III. THE VISIT WITH A CHIEF PHARISEE

#### a. The Healing of a Man with Dropsy

14:1 And it came to pass, as he went into the house of one of the chief Pharisees to eat bread on the sabbath day, that they watched him. 2 And, behold, there was a certain man before him who had the dropsy. 3 And Jesus answering spoke unto the lawyers and Pharisees, saying, "Is it lawful to heal on the sabbath day?" 4 And they held their peace. And he took *him*, and healed him, and let him go; 5 and answered them, saying, "Which of you shall have an ass or an ox fallen into a pit, and will not straightway pull him out on the sabbath day?" 6 And they could not answer him again to these things.

---

#### b. The True Rank among Men

7 And he put forth a parable to those that were bidden, when he marked how they chose out the chief rooms; saying unto them, 8 "When thou art bidden of any *man* to a wedding, sit not down in the highest room, lest a more honourable man than thou be bidden of him; 9 and he that bade thee and him come and say unto thee, Give this man place, and thou begin with shame to take the lowest room. 10 But when thou art bidden, go and sit down in the lowest room; that when he that bade thee cometh, he may say unto thee, Friend, go up higher: then shalt thou have worship in the presence of them that sit at meat with thee. 11 For whosoever exalteth himself shall be abased; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted."

---

#### c. The True Hospitality

12 Then said he also to him that bade him, "When thou makest a dinner or supper, call not thy friends, nor thy brethren, neither thy kinsmen, nor *thy* rich neighbors; lest they also bid thee again, and a recompense be made thee. 13 But when thou makest a feast, call the poor, the maimed, the lame, the blind; 14 and thou shalt be blessed; for they cannot recompense thee: for thou shalt be recompensed at the resurrection of the just."

Chapter 13:35-14:14

d. The Gracious Invitation<sup>1</sup>

15 And when one of them that sat at meat with him heard these things, he said unto him, "Blessed *is* he that shall eat bread in the kingdom of God." 16 Then said he unto him, "A certain man made a great supper, and made many: 17 and sent his servant at supper time to say to them that were bidden, 'Come; for all things are now ready.' 18 And they all with one *consent* began to make excuse: The first said unto him, 'I have bought a piece of ground, and I must needs go and see it: I pray thee have me excused.' 19 And another said, 'I have bought five yoke of oxen, and I go to prove them: I pray thee have me excused.' 20 And another said, 'I have married a wife, and therefore I cannot come.' 21 So that servant came and showed his lord these things. Then the master of the house being angry said to his servant, 'Go out quickly into the streets and lanes of the city, and bring in hither the poor, and the maimed, and the halt, and the blind.' 22 And the servant said, 'Lord, it is done as thou hast commanded, and yet there is room.' 23 And the lord said unto the servant, 'Go out into the highways and hedges, and compel *them* to come in, that my house may be filled.' 24 For I say unto you, that none of those men that were bidden shall taste of my supper.' "

## IV. THE COST OF DISCIPLESHIP

## The Seven-Fold Address

25 And there went great multitudes with him: and he turned, and said unto them:

\*

26 "If any man come to me, and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yea, and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple."<sup>2</sup>

\* \*

27 "And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple.

\* \* \*

28 "For who of you, intending to build a tower, sitteth not down first and counteth the cost, whether he have *sufficient* to finish *it*? 29 lest haply, after he hath laid the foundation, and is not able to finish *it*, all that behold *it* begin to mock him, 30

<sup>1</sup> The parable of the Great Supper.

<sup>2</sup> The seven-fold renunciation.

saying, 'This man began to build, and was not able to finish.'

\* \* \*

31 "Or what king, going to make war against another king, sitteth not down first, and consulteth whether he be able with ten thousand to meet him that cometh against him with twenty thousand? 32 Or else, while the other is yet a great way off, he sendeth an ambassage, and desireth conditions of peace.

\* \* \* \*

33 "So likewise, whosoever he be of you that forsaketh not all that he hath, he cannot be my disciple.

\*\*\* \*\*

34 "Salt is good; but if the salt have lost its savor, wherewith shall it be seasoned? 35 It is neither fit for the land, nor yet for the dunghill; *but* men cast it out.

\*\*\* \* \*\*

"He that hath ears to hear, let him hear."

## §2. THE GREAT REJOICING IN HEAVEN

### THE LOST AND FOUND

#### a. The Parable of the Lost Sheep

15:1 Then drew near unto him all the publicans and sinners to hear him. 2 And the Pharisees and scribes murmured, saying, "This man receiveth sinners, and eateth with them." 3 And he spoke this parable unto them, saying, 4 "What man of you, having a hundred sheep, if he lose one of them, doth not leave the ninety and nine in the wilderness, and go after that which is lost, until he find it? 5 And when he hath found *it*, he layeth *it* on his shoulders, rejoicing. 6 And when he cometh home, he calleth together *his* friends and neighbors, saying unto them, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found my sheep that was lost.' 7 I say unto you, that likewise joy shall be in heaven over one sinner that repenteth, more than over ninety and nine just persons, who need no repentance."

#### b. The Parable of the Lost Coin

8 "Either what woman having ten pieces of silver, if she lose one piece, doth not light a candle, and sweep the house, and seek diligently till she find *it*? 9 And when she hath found *it*, she

Chapter 14:31-15:9



calleth *her* friends and *her* neighbors together, saying, 'Rejoice with me; for I have found the piece which I had lost.' 10 Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth."

---

#### c. The Parable of the Prodigal Son

11 And he said, "A certain man had two sons. 12 and the younger of them said to *his* father, 'Father, give me the portion of goods that falleth to *me*.' And he divided unto them *his* living. 13 And not many days after, the younger son gathered all together, and took his journey into a far country, and there wasted his substance with riotous living. 14 And when he had spent all, there arose a mighty famine in that land, and he began to be in want. 15 And he went and joined himself to a citizen of that country; and he sent him into his fields to feed swine. 16 And he would fain have filled his belly with the husks that the swine did eat: and no man gave unto him. 17 And when he came to himself, he said, 'How many hired servants of my father's have bread enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger! 18 I will arise and go to my father, and I will say unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and before thee, 19 and am no more worthy to be called thy son: make me as one of thy hired servants. 20 And he arose and came to his father. But when he was yet a great way off, his father saw him, and had compassion, and ran, and fell on his neck, and kissed him. 21 And the son said unto him, 'Father, I have sinned against heaven, and in thy sight, and am no more worthy to be called thy son.' 22 But the father said to his servants, 'Bring forth the best robe, and put *it* on him; and put a ring on his hand, and shoes on *his* feet: 23 and bring hither the fatted calf, and kill *it*; and let us eat, and be merry: 24 for this my son was dead, and is alive again; he was lost, and is found.' And they began to be merry. 25 Now his elder son was in the field: and as he came and drew nigh to the house, he heard music and dancing. 26 And he called one of the servants, and asked what these things meant. 27 And he said unto him, 'Thy brother is come; and thy father has killed the fatted calf, because he hath received him safe and sound.' 28 And he was angry, and would not go in: therefore came his father out, and intreated him. 29 And he answering said to *his* father, 'Lo, these many years do I serve thee, neither transgressed I at any time thy commandments: and yet thou never gavest me a kid, that I might make merry with my friends: 30 but as soon as this thy son was come, who hath devoured thy living with harlots, thou hast killed for him the fatted calf.' 31 And he said unto him, 'Son, thou art ever with me, and all that

I have is thine. 32 It was mete that we should make merry, and be glad: for this thy brother was dead, and is alive again; and was lost, and is found.' ”

### §3. THE GREAT REWARD OF THE KINGDOM

#### I. THE PARABLE OF THE UNJUST STEWARD

##### The Service of God and Mammon

16:1 And he said also unto his disciples, “There was a certain rich man, who had a steward; and the same was accused unto him that he had wasted his goods. 2 And he called him, and said unto him, ‘How is it that I hear this of thee? give an account of thy stewardship; for thou mayest be no longer steward.’ 3 Then the steward said within himself, ‘What shall I do? for my lord taketh away from me the stewardship: I cannot dig; to beg I am ashamed. 4 I am resolved what to do, that when I am put out of my stewardship, they may receive me into their houses.’ 5 So he called every one of his lord’s debtors *unto him*, and said unto the first, ‘How much owest thou unto my lord?’ 6 And he said, ‘An hundred measures of oil.’ And he said unto him, ‘Take thy bill, and sit down quickly, and write fifty.’ 7 Then said he to another, ‘And how much owest thou?’ And he said, ‘An hundred measures of wheat.’ And he said unto him, ‘Take thy bill, and write fourscore.’ 8 And the lord commended the unjust steward, because he had done wisely: for the children of this world are in their generation wiser than the children of light. 9 And I say unto you, Make to yourselves friends of the mammon of righteousness; that, when you fail, they may receive you into everlasting habitations. 10 He that is faithful in that which is least is faithful also in much: and he that is unjust in the least is unjust also in much. 11 If therefore you have not been faithful in the unrighteous mammon, who will commit to your trust the true *riches*? 12 And if you have not been faithful in that which is another man’s, who shall give you that which is your own? 13 No servant can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. You cannot serve God and mammon.”

#### II. THE REPLY TO THE PHARISEES

##### a. The Seven-Fold Saying

14 And the Pharisees also, who were covetous, heard all these things: and they derided him. 15 And he said unto them, “You are they that justify yourselves before men: but God

*Chapter 15:32–16:15*

knoweth your hearts: for that which is highly esteemed among men is abomination in the sight of God. 16 The law and the prophets *were* until John: since that time the kingdom of God is preached, and every man presseth into it. 17 And it is easier for heaven and earth to pass, than one tittle of the law to fail. 18 Whosoever putteth away his wife, and marrieth another, committeth adultery: and whosoever marrieth her that is put away from *her* husband committeth adultery.

---

#### b. The Parable of the Rich Man and Lazarus

19 "There was a certain rich man, who was clothed in purple and fine linen, and fared sumptuously every day. 20 And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, who was laid at his gate full of sores, 21 and desiring to be fed with the crumbs that fell from the rich man's table: moreover the dogs came and licked his sores. 22 And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died and was buried; 23 and in hell he lifted up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. 24 And he cried and said, 'Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame.' 25 But Abraham said, 'Son, remember that thou in thy lifetime receivedst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented. 26 And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they that would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that *would come* from thence.' 27 Then he said, 'I pray thee therefore, Father, that thou wouldst send him to my father's house; 28 for I have five brothers; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment. 29 Abraham saith unto him, 'They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them.' 30 And he said, 'Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they will repent.' 31 And he said unto him, 'If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one rose from the dead.' "

---

### III. THE WOE OF OFFENCES

#### The Seven-Fold Saying

17:1 Then said he unto the disciples, "It is impossible but that offences will come: but woe *unto him* through whom they come! 2 It were better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and he cast into the sea, than that he should

*Chapter 16:16-17:2*



offend one of these little ones. 3 Take heed to yourselves: If thy brother trespass against thee, rebuke him; and if he repent, forgive him. 4 And if he trespass against thee seven times in a day, and seven times in a day turn again to thee, saying, I repent, thou shalt forgive him."

---

#### IV. THE GREATNESS OF FAITH

##### The Law of Duty

5 And the apostles said unto the Lord, "Increase our faith." 6 And the Lord said, "If you had faith as a grain of mustard seed, you might say to this sycamine tree, Be thou plucked up by the root, and be thou planted in the sea; and it shall obey you. 7 But which of you, having a servant plowing or feeding cattle, will say unto him by and by, when he is come from the field, Go and sit down to meat? 8 And will not rather say unto him, Make ready wherewith I may sup, and gird thyself, and serve me, till I have eaten and drunken; and afterward thou shalt eat and drink? 9 Doth he thank that servant because he did the things that were commanded him? I think not. 10 So likewise ye, when you shall have done all those things that are commanded you, say, We are unprofitable servants: we have done that which it was our duty to do."

---

#### §4. THE JUDGMENT TO COME

##### I. THE CLEANSING OF THE TEN LEPERS

##### The Ingratitude of the Nine

11 And it came to pass, as he went to Jerusalem, that he passed through the midst of Samaria and Galilee. 12 And as he entered into a certain village, there met him ten men that were lepers, who stood afar off: 13 and they lifted up *their* voices, and said, "Jesus, Master, have mercy on us." 14 And when he saw *them*, he said unto them, "Go show yourselves unto the priests." And it came to pass, that, as they went, they were cleansed. 15 And one of them, when he saw that he was healed, turned back, and with a loud voice glorified God, 16 and fell down on *his* face, giving him thanks; and he was a Samaritan. 17 And Jesus answering said, "Were there not ten cleansed? but where *are* the nine? 18 There are not found any that returned to give glory to God, save this stranger." 19 And he said unto him, "Arise, go thy way; thy faith hath made thee whole."

Chapter 17:3-19



## II. THE KINGDOM OF GOD IN THE MIDST

## a. The Reply to the Pharisees

20 And when he was demanded of the Pharisees, when the kingdom of God should come, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God cometh not with observation;<sup>1</sup> 21 neither shall they say, Lo, here! or, Lo, there! for, behold, the kingdom of God is within you."<sup>2</sup>

## b. The Seven-Fold Address to the Disciples

22 And he said unto his disciples:

\*

"The days will come, when you shall desire to see one of the days of the Son of man, and you shall not see *it*. 23 And they shall say unto you, See, here! or, See, there! go not after *them*, nor follow *them*. 24 For as the lightning, that lighteneth out of one *part* under heaven, shineth unto the other *part* under heaven; so shall also the Son of man be in his day.

\* \*

25 "But first must he suffer many things, and be rejected of this generation.

\* \* \*

26 "And as it was in the days of Noah, so shall it be in the days of the Son of man. 27 They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark, and the flood came and destroyed them all.

\* \* \*

28 "Likewise also as it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded; 29 but the same day that Lot went out of Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed *them* all.

\* \* \* \*

30 "Even thus shall it be in the day when the Son of man is revealed. 31 In that day, he that shall be upon the housetop, and his stuff in the house,

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, with outward show.

<sup>2</sup> Or, among you, or, in your midst.

let him not come down to take it away: and he that is in the field, let him likewise not return back.

\*\*\* \*\*

32 "Remember Lot's wife. 33 Whosoever shall seek to save his life shall lose it; and whosoever shall lose his life shall preserve it.

\*\*\* \* \*\*\*

34 "I tell you, in that night there shall be two *men* in one bed; the one shall be taken, and the other left. 35 Two *women* shall be grinding together; the one shall be taken, and the other left. 36 Two *men* shall be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left."

\*

37 And they answered and said unto him, "Where, Lord?" And he said unto them, "Wheresoever the body *is*, thither will the eagles be gathered together."

#### c. The Finding of Faith on the Earth<sup>1</sup>

18:1 And he spoke a parable unto them *to this end*, that men ought always to pray, and not to faint; 2 saying, "There was in a city a judge, who feared not God, neither regarded man; 3 and there was a widow in that city, and she came unto him, saying, 'Avenge me of my adversary.' 4 And he would not for a while: but afterward he said within himself, 'Though I fear not God, nor regard man; 5 yet, because this widow troubleth me, I will avenge her, lest by her continual coming she weary me.'" 6 And the Lord said, "Hear what the unjust judge saith. 7 And shall not God avenge his own elect who cry day and night unto him, though he bear long with them? 8 I tell you that he will avenge them speedily. Nevertheless, when the Son of man cometh, shall he find faith on the earth?"

### III. THE TRUE MEMBERS OF THE KINGDOM

#### a. The Pharisee and the Publican

9 And he spoke this parable unto certain that trusted in themselves that they were righteous, and despised others: 10 "Two men went up into the temple to pray; the one a Pharisee, and the other a publican. 11 The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself: 'God, I thank thee that I am not as other men *are*, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican. 12 I

<sup>1</sup> The parable of the Unjust Judge.

fast twice in the week; I give tithes of all that I possess.' 13 And the publican, standing afar off, would not lift up so much as *his* eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, 'God, be merciful to me a sinner.' 14 I tell you, this man went down to his house justified *rather* than the other: for every one that exalteth himself shall be abased; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted."

---

**b. The Children and the Kingdom**

15 And they brought unto him also infants, that he would touch them; but when *his* disciples saw *it*, they rebuked them. 16 But Jesus called them *unto him*, and said, "Suffer little children to come *unto* me, and forbid them not: for of such is the kingdom of God. 17 Verily I say unto you, Whosoever shall not receive the kingdom of God as a little child shall in no wise enter therein."

---

**c. The Rich and the Kingdom**

18 And a certain ruler asked him, saying, "Good Master, what shall I do to inherit eternal life?" 19 And Jesus said unto him, "Why callest thou me good? none *is* good, save one, *that is*, God. 20 Thou knowest the commandments,

\* \* \*

'Do not commit adultery,  
Do not kill,  
Do not steal,  
Do not bear false witness,  
Honour thy father and thy mother.'"<sup>1</sup>

\*

21 And he said, "All these have I kept from my youth up." 22 Now when Jesus heard these things, he said unto him, "Yet lackest thou one thing: sell all that thou hast, and distribute unto the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven: and come, follow me." 23 And when he heard this, he was very sorrowful: for he was very rich.

---

**d. The Reward of Renunciation**

24 And when Jesus saw that he was very sorrowful, he said, "How hardly shall they that have riches enter into the kingdom of God! 25 For it is easier for a camel to go through a needle's eye, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God." 26

---

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 20:12.

And they that heard *it* said, "Who then can be saved?" 27 And he said, "The things that are impossible with men, are possible with God." 28 Then Peter said, "Lo, we have left all, and followed thee." 29 And he said unto them, "Verily I say unto you, there is no man that hath left house, or parents, or brethren, or wife, or children, for the kingdom of God's sake, 30 who shall not receive manifold more in this present time, and in the world to come life everlasting."

---

#### IV. THE APPROACH TO JERUSALEM

##### a. The Seven-Fold Forecast of the Crucifixion

31 Then he took *unto him* the twelve, and said unto them:  
\* \* \*

"Behold, we go up to Jerusalem, and all things that are written by the prophets concerning the Son of man shall be accomplished.

\*

32 For he shall be delivered unto the Gentiles,

\*

And shall be mocked, and spitefully entreated,

\*

And spitted upon,

\*

33 And they shall scourge *him*,

\*

And put him to death;

\*

And the third day he shall rise again."

\*

34 And they understood none of these things: and this saying was hid from them, neither knew they the things that were spoken.

---

##### b. The Blind Man near Jericho

35 And it came to pass, that as he came nigh unto Jericho, a certain blind man sat by the wayside begging: 36 and hearing the multitude pass by, asked what it meant. 37 And they told him that Jesus of Nazareth passeth by. 38 And he cried, saying, "Jesus, *thou* Son of David, have mercy on me." 39 And they that went before rebuked him, that he should hold his peace: but he cried so much the more, "*Thou* son of David, have mercy on me." 40 And Jesus stood, and commanded him to be brought unto him: and when he was come near, he asked him, 41 saying,

Chapter 18:27-41



"What wilt thou that I shall do unto thee?" And he said, "Lord, that I may receive my sight." 42 And Jesus said unto him, "Receive thy sight: thy faith hath saved thee." 43 And immediately he received his sight, and followed him, glorifying God: and all the people, when they saw *it*, gave praise unto God.

---

#### c. The Meeting with Zacchæus

19:1 And *Jesus* entered and passed through Jericho. 2 And, behold, *there was* a man named Zacchæus, who was the chief among the publicans, and he was rich. 3 And he sought to see Jesus who he was; and he could not for the press, because he was little of stature. 4 And he ran before, and climbed up into a sycamore tree to see him: for he was to pass that *way*. 5 And when Jesus came to the place, he looked up and saw him, and said unto him, "Zacchæus, make haste, and come down; for today I must abide at thy house." 6 And he made haste, and came down, and received him joyfully. 7 And when they saw *it*, they all murmured, saying, that he was gone to be the guest of a man that was a sinner. 8 And Zacchæus stood, and said unto the Lord, "Behold, Lord, the half of my goods I give to the poor; and if I have taken anything from any man by false accusation, I restore *him* fourfold." 9 And Jesus said unto him, "This day is salvation come to this house, forasmuch as he also is a son of Abraham. 10 For the Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost."

---

#### d. The Parable of the Pounds

11 And as they heard these things, he added and spoke a parable, because he was nigh to Jerusalem, and because they thought that the kingdom of God should immediately appear. 12 He said therefore, "A certain nobleman went into a far country to receive for himself a kingdom, and to return. 13 And he called his ten servants, and delivered them ten pounds, and said unto them, 'Occupy till I come.' 14 But his citizens hated him, and sent a message after him, saying, 'We will not have this *man* to reign over us.' 15 And it came to pass that when he had returned, having received the kingdom, then he commanded these servants to be called unto him, to whom he had given the money, that he might know how much every man had gained by trading. 16 Then came the first, saying, 'Lord, thy pound hath gained ten pounds.' 17 And he said unto him, 'Well, thou good servant: because thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou authority over ten cities.' 18 And the second

*Chapter 18:42-19:18*

came, saying, 'Lord, thy pound hath gained five pounds.' 19 And he said likewise to him, 'Be thou also over five cities.' 20 And another came, saying, 'Lord, behold, *here* is thy pound, which I have kept laid up in a napkin: 21 for I feared thee, because thou art an austere man: thou takest up that thou layedst not down, and reapest that thou didst not sow.' 22 And he saith unto him, 'Out of thine own mouth will I judge thee, *thou* wicked servant. Thou knewest that I was an austere man, taking up that I laid not down, and reaping that I did not sow: 23 wherefore then gavest not thou my money into the bank, that at my coming I might have required mine own with usury?' 24 And he said unto them that stood by, 'Take from him the pound, and give *it* to him that hath ten pounds.' 25 [And they said unto him, 'Lord, he hath ten pounds.'] 26 'For I say unto you, That unto every one that hath shall be given; and from him that hath not, even that he hath shall be taken away from him. 27 But those my enemies, who would not that I should reign over them, bring hither, and slay *them* before me.' "

---

### The Fifth Summary

28 And when he had thus spoken, he went before, ascending up to Jerusalem.

## Part Six

# THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN JERUSALEM

---

### §1. THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY

#### I. THE ROYAL RECEPTION BY THE CITY

##### The Praise of the People

And it came to pass, when he drew nigh to Bethphage and Bethany, at the mount called *the mount* of Olives, he sent two of his disciples, 30 saying, "Go ye into the village over against *you*; in which as you enter you shall find a colt tied, whereon never man sat; loose him, and bring *him hither*. 31 And if any man ask you, Why do you loose *him*? thus shall you say unto him, Because the Lord hath need of him." 32 And they that were sent went their way, and found even as he had said unto them. 33 And as they were loosing the colt, the owners thereof said unto them, "Why loose ye the colt?" 34 And they said, "The Lord hath need of him." 35 And they brought him to Jesus: and they cast their garments upon the colt, and they set Jesus thereon. 36 And as he went, they spread their clothes in the way. 37 And when he was come nigh, even now at the descent of the mount of Olives, the whole multitude of the disciples began to rejoice and praise God with a loud voice for all the mighty works that they had seen, 38 saying:

\* \* \*

"Blessed *be* the King that cometh in the name  
of the Lord;  
Peace in heaven; and,  
Glory in the highest."<sup>1</sup>

\*

39 And some of the Pharisees from among the multitude said unto him, "Master, rebuke thy disciples." 40 And he answered and said unto them, "I tell you that, if these should hold their peace, the stones would immediately cry out."

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 118: 26.

## II. THE LAMENTATION OF JESUS

### The Forecast of the Destruction of Jerusalem

41 And when he was come near, he beheld the city, and wept over it, 42 saying, "If thou hadst known, even thou, at least in this thy day, the things *that belong* unto thy peace! but now are they hid from thine eyes. 43 For the days shall come upon thee, that thine enemies shall cast a trench about thee, and compass thee round, and keep thee in on every side, 44 and shall lay thee even with the ground, and thy children within thee; and they shall not leave in thee one stone upon another; because thou knewest not the time of thy visitation."

---

## III. THE CLEANSING OF THE TEMPLE

### The House of Prayer

45 And he went into the temple, and began to cast out them that sold therein, and them that bought; 46 saying unto them, "It is written, 'My house is the house of prayer;'<sup>1</sup> but you have made it a den of thieves."

---

## IV. THE PLOT TO DESTROY JESUS

### The Fear of the Rulers

47 And he taught daily in the temple. But the chief priests and the scribes and the chief of the people sought to destroy him, 48 and they could not find what they might do: 49 for all the people were very attentive to hear him.

---

## §2. THE CONTROVERSY WITH THE RULERS

### I. THE CHALLENGE OF AUTHORITY

#### The Refusal of Jesus

20:1 And it came to pass, *that* on one of those days, as he taught the people in the temple, and preached the gospel, the chief priests and the scribes came upon *him* with the elders, 2 and spoke unto him, saying, "Tell us, by what authority doest thou these things? or who is he that gave thee this authority?" 3 And he answered and said unto them, "I will also ask you one thing; and answer me: 4 The baptism of John, was it from heaven, or of men?" 5 And they reasoned with themselves,

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 93:5.



saying, "If we shall say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Why then believed ye him not?' 6 but if we say, 'Of men,' all the people will stone us: for they are persuaded that John was a prophet." 7 And they answered, that they could not tell whence *it was*. 8 And Jesus said unto them, "Neither tell I you by what authority I do these things."

---

## II. THE REJECTION OF JESUS

### The Parable of the Wicked Husbandmen

9 Then began he to speak to the people this parable: "A certain man planted a vineyard, and let it forth to husbandmen, and went into a far country for a long time. 10 And at the season he sent a servant to the husbandmen, that they should give him of the fruit of the vineyard: but the husbandmen beat him, and sent *him* away empty. 11 And again he sent another servant: and they beat him also, and treated *him* shamefully, and sent *him* away empty. 12 And again he sent a third: and they wounded him also, and cast *him* out. 13 Then said the lord of the vineyard, 'What shall I do? I will send my beloved son: it may be *that* they will reverence *him* when they see him.' 14 But when the husbandmen saw him, they reasoned among themselves, saying, 'This is the heir: come, let us kill him, that the inheritance may be ours.' 15 So they cast him out of the vineyard, and killed *him*. What therefore shall the lord of the vineyard do unto them? 16 He shall come and destroy these husbandmen, and shall give the vineyard to others." And when they heard *it*, they said, "God forbid." 17 And he beheld them, and said, "What is this then that is written:

\* \* \*

'The stone which the builders rejected,  
The same is become the head of the corner?'<sup>1</sup>

\*

18 Whosoever shall fall upon that stone shall be broken; but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder."

---

## III. THE PLOT TO ENSNARE JESUS

### a. The Question of the Tribute

19 And the chief priests and the scribes the same hour sought to lay hands on him; and they feared the people: for they perceived that he had spoken this parable against them. 20 And they watched *him*, and sent forth spies, who should feign them-

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 118: 22.

selves just men, that they might take hold of his words, that so they might deliver him unto the power and authority of the governor. 21 And they asked him, saying, "Master, we know that thou sayest and teachest rightly, neither acceptest thou the person of *any*, but teachest the way of God truly: 22 Is it lawful for us to give tribute unto Cæsar, or no?" 23 But he perceived their craftiness, and said unto them, "Why tempt ye me? 24 Show me a penny. Whose image and superscription hath it?" They answered and said, "Cæsar's."<sup>1</sup> 25 And he said unto them, "Render therefore unto Cæsar the things that are Cæsar's, and unto God the things that are God's." 26 And they could not take hold of his words before the people: and they marvelled at his answer, and held their peace.

---

#### b. The Question of the Resurrection

27 Then came to *him* certain of the Sadducees, who deny that there is any resurrection: and they asked him, 28 saying, "Master, Moses wrote unto us, 'If any man's brother die, having a wife, and he die without children, that his brother should take his wife, and raise up seed unto his brother.' 29 There were therefore seven brothers: and the first took a wife and died without children. 30 And the second took her to *be his* wife, and he died childless. 31 And the third took her; and in like manner the seven also; and they left no children, and died. 32 Last of all the woman died also. 33 Therefore in the resurrection whose wife of them is she? for seven had her as wife." 34 And Jesus answering said unto them, "The children of this world marry and are given in marriage: 35 but they that shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry, nor are given in marriage: 36 neither can they die any more; for they are equal unto the angels; and are the children of God, being the children of the resurrection. 37 Now that the dead are raised, even Moses showed at the bush, when he calleth the Lord the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. 38 For he is not the God of the dead, but of the living: for all live unto him." 39 Then certain of the scribes answering said, "Master, thou hast well said." 40 And after that they dared not ask him any *question at all*.

---

#### c. The Counter Question of Jesus

41 And he said unto them, "How say they that Christ is David's son? 42 And David himself saith in the book of Psalms:

---

<sup>1</sup> Tiberias Cæsar reigned A. D. 12, 14-37.

\* \* \*

'The Lord said unto my Lord,  
 Sit thou on my right hand,  
 43 Till I make thy enemies thy footstool.'<sup>1</sup>

\*

44 David therefore calleth him Lord: how is he then his son?"

#### IV. THE CONDEMNATION OF THE SCRIBES

##### *The Seven-Fold Saying of Jesus*

45 Then in the audience of all the people he said unto his disciples:

\* \* \*

46 "Beware of the scribes,

\*

Who desire to walk in long robes,

\*

And love greetings in the markets,

\*

And the highest seats in the synagogues,

\*

And the chief rooms at feasts;

\*

47 Who devour widow's houses,

\*

And for a show make long prayers:

\*

The same shall receive greater damnation."

#### §3. THE GOSPEL OF GIVING

##### THE GIFT OF A WIDOW INTO THE TREASURY

##### *The Praise of Jesus*

21:1 And he looked up, and saw the rich men casting their gifts into the treasury. 2 And he saw also a certain poor widow casting in thither two mites. 3 And he said, "Of a truth I say unto you, that this poor widow hath cast in more than they all: 4 for all these have of their abundance cast in unto the offerings of God: but she of her penury hath cast in all the living that she had."

<sup>1</sup> Psa. 110:1.

## §4. THE GREAT DISCOURSE ON LAST THINGS

## THE FALL OF JERUSALEM AND SECOND COMING OF JESUS

## The Seven-Fold Address to the Disciples

5 And as some spoke of the temple, how it was adorned with goodly stones and gifts, he said: 6 "*As for* these things that you behold, the days will come in which there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down." 7 And they asked him, saying: "Master, but when shall these things be? and what sign *will there be* when these things shall come to pass?" 8 And he said, "Take heed that you be not deceived: for many shall come in my name, saying, I am *Christ*; and, The time draweth near: go ye not therefore after them. 9 But when you shall hear of wars and commotions, be not terrified: for these things must first come to pass; but the end *is* not by and by." 10 Then said he unto them:

\*

"Nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: 11 and great earthquakes shall be in divers places, and famines, and pestilences; and fearful sights and great signs shall there be from heaven.

\* \*

12 "But before all these, they shall lay their hands on you, and persecute *you*, delivering *you* up to the synagogues, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers for my name's sake. 13 And it shall turn to you for a testimony. 14 Settle *it* therefore in your hearts, not to meditate beforehand what you shall answer: 15 for I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist.

\* \* \*

16 "And you shall be betrayed both by parents, and brothers, and kinsfolks, and friends; and *some* of you shall they cause to be put to death. 17 And you shall be hated of all *men* for my name's sake. 18 But there shall not a hair of your head perish. 19 In your patience possess ye your souls.

\* \* \*

20 "But when you shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh. 21 Then let them that are in Judæa flee to the mountains; and let them that are in the midst of it depart out; and let not them that are in the

*Chapter 21:5-21*



countries enter thereinto. 22 For these are the days of vengeance, that all things that are written may be fulfilled. \*\*\* \*\*

23 "But woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck, in those days! for there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people. 24 And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled. \*\*\* \*\*

25 "And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring; 26 men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things that are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken. \*\*\* \*\*

27 "And then shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. 28 And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh." \*

29 And he spoke unto them a parable: "Behold the fig tree, and all the trees; 30 when they now shoot forth, you see and know of your own selves that summer is now nigh at hand. 31 So likewise ye, when you see these things come to pass, know ye that the kingdom of God is nigh at hand. 32 Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass away, till all be fulfilled. 33 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away. 34 And take heed to yourselves, lest at any time your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and so that day come upon you unawares. 35 For as a snare shall it come on all them that dwell on the face of the whole earth. 36 Watch ye therefore, and pray always, that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man."

---

### **The Sixth Summary**

37 And in the day time he was teaching in the temple; and at night he went out, and abode in the mount that is called *the mount* of Olives. 38 And all the people came early in the morning to him in the temple, for to hear him.



## **Part Seven**

# **THE CRUCIFIXION AND RESURRECTION OF JESUS**

---

### **§1. THE OBSERVANCE OF THE PASSOVER**

#### **I. THE APPROACHING FEAST**

##### **The Conspiracy of Judas with the Rulers**

Now the feast of unleavened bread drew nigh, which is called the Passover. 2 And the chief priests and the scribes sought how they might kill him; for they feared the people. 3 Then entered Satan into Judas, surnamed Iscariot, being of the number of the twelve. 4 And he went his way, and communed with the chief priests and captains, how he might betray him unto them. 5 And they were glad, and covenanted to give him money. 6 And he promised, and sought opportunity to betray him unto them in the absence of the multitudes.

---

#### **II. THE PREPARATION FOR THE FEAST**

##### **The Upper Room in the City**

7 Then came the day of unleavened bread, when the passover must be killed. 8 And he sent Peter and John, saying, "Go, and prepare for us the passover, that we may eat." 9 And they said unto him, "Where wilt thou that we prepare?" 10 And he said unto them, "Behold, when you have entered into the city, there shall a man meet you, bearing a pitcher of water; follow him into the house where he entereth in. 11 And you shall say unto the good man of the house, The Master saith unto thee, Where is the guestchamber, where I shall eat the passover with my disciples? 12 And he shall show you a large upper room furnished: there make ready." 13 And they went, and found as he had said unto them; and they made ready the passover.

---

#### **III. THE OBSERVANCE OF THE FEAST**

##### **The Institution of the Holy Communion**

14 And when the hour was come, he sat down, and the twelve apostles with him. 15 And he said unto them, "With desire, I

have desired<sup>1</sup> to eat this passover with you before I suffer: 16 for I say unto you, I will not any more eat thereof, until it be fulfilled in the kingdom of God." 17 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and said, "Take this, and divide *it* among yourselves: 18 for I say unto you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine, until the kingdom of God shall come." 19 And he took bread, and gave thanks, and broke *it* and gave unto them, saying, "This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me." 20 Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, "This cup *is* the New Testament in my blood, which is shed for you. 21 But, behold, the hand of him that betrayeth me *is* with me on the table. 22 And truly the Son of man goeth, as it was determined: but woe unto that man by whom he is betrayed!" 23 And they began to inquire among themselves, which of them it was that should do this thing.

---

#### IV. THE SITUATION AFTER THE FEAST

##### a. The Question of Rank

24 And there was also a strife among them, which of them should be accounted the greatest. 25 And he said unto them, "The kings of the Gentiles exercise lordship over them; and they that exercise authority upon them are called benefactors. 26 But you *shall* not *be* so: but he that is greatest among you, let him be as the younger; and he that is chief, as he that doth serve. 27 For which *is* greater, he that sitteth at meat, or he that serveth? *Is* not he that sitteth at meat? But I am among you as he that serveth. 28 You are they that have continued with me in my temptations. 29 And I appoint unto you a kingdom, as my Father hath appointed unto me; 30 that you may eat and drink at my table in my kingdom, and sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel."

---

##### b. The Forecast of Peter's Denial

31 And the Lord said, "Simon, Simon, behold, Satan hath desired to *have* you, that he may sift *you* as wheat: 32 but I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not: and when thou art converted, strengthen thy brethren." 33 And he said unto him, "Lord, I am ready to go with thee, both into prison, and to death." 34 And he said, "I tell thee, Peter, the cock shall not crow this day, before thou shalt thrice deny that thou knowest me."

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, I have heartily desired.



### c. The Impending Crisis

35 And he said unto them, "When I sent you without purse, and scrip, and shoes, lacked you any thing?" And they said, "Nothing." 36 Then said he unto them, "But now, he that hath a purse, let him take *it*, and likewise *his* scrip: and he that hath no sword, let him sell his garment, and buy one. 37 For I say unto you, that this that is written must yet be accomplished in me, 'And he was reckoned among the transgressors:'<sup>1</sup> for the things concerning me have an end." 38 And they said, "Lord, behold, here *are* two swords." And he said unto them, "It is enough."

## §2. THE BETRAYAL AND ARREST OF JESUS

### I. THE AGONY IN THE GARDEN

#### The Ministry of an Angel

39 And he came out, and went, as he was wont, to the mount of Olives; and his disciples also followed him. 40 And when he was at the place, he said unto them, "Pray that you enter not into temptation." 41 And he was withdrawn from them about a stone's throw, and kneeled down, and prayed, 42 saying, "Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done." 43 And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him. 44 And being in an agony he prayed more earnestly: and his sweat was as it were great drops of blood falling down to the ground. 45 And when he rose up from prayer, and was come to his disciples, he found them sleeping for sorrow, 46 and said unto them, "Why sleep ye? Rise and pray, lest you enter into temptation."

### II. THE BETRAYAL AND ARREST OF JESUS

#### The Baseness of Judas Iscariot

47 And while he yet spoke, behold a multitude, and he that was called Judas, one of the twelve, went before them, and drew near unto Jesus to kiss him. 48 But Jesus said unto him, "Judas, betrayest thou the Son of man with a kiss?" 49 When they that were about him saw what would follow, they said unto him, "Lord, shall we smite with the sword?" 50 And one of them smote the servant of the high priest, and cut off his right ear. 51 And Jesus answered and said, "Suffer ye thus far." And he touched his ear, and healed him. 52 Then Jesus said unto the

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 53:12.

chief priests, and captains of the temple, and the elders, who were come to him, "Are you come out, as against a thief, with swords and staves? 53 When I was daily with you in the temple, you stretched forth no hand against me; but this is your hour, and the power of darkness."

### III. THE DENIAL OF SIMON PETER

#### The Bitter Sorrow of Peter

54 Then took they him, and led *him*, and brought him into the high priest's house. And Peter followed afar off. 55 And when they had kindled a fire in the midst of the hall, and were set down together, Peter sat down among them. 56 But a certain maid beheld him as he sat by the fire, and earnestly looked upon him, and said, "This man was also with him." 57 And he denied him, saying, "Woman, I know him not." 58 And after a little while another saw him, and said, "Thou art also one of them." And Peter said, "Man, I am not." 59 And about the space of one hour after, another vehemently affirmed, saying, "Of a truth, this *fellow* also was with him: for he is a Galilaean." 60 And Peter said, "Man, I know not what thou sayest." And immediately, while he yet spoke, the cock crew. 61 And the Lord turned, and looked upon Peter. And Peter remembered the word of the Lord, how he said unto him, "Before the cock crow, thou shalt deny me thrice." 62 And Peter went out, and wept bitterly.

### IV. THE MOCKING OF JESUS

#### The Blasphemy of the Soldiers

63 And the men that held Jesus mocked him, and smote *him*. 64 And when they had blindfolded him, they struck him on the face, and asked him, saying, "Prophecy, who is it that smote thee?" 65 And many other things blasphemously spoke they against him.

## §3. THE TRIAL AND CRUCIFIXION OF JESUS

### I. THE CONDEMNATION OF JESUS

#### a. The Action of the Sanhedrin

66 And as soon as it was day, the elders of the people and the chief priests and the scribes came together, and led him into their council, saying, 67 "Art thou the Christ? tell us." And he said unto them, "If I tell you, you will not believe: 68 and

*Chapter 22:53-68*

if I ask *you*, you will not answer me, nor let *me* go. 69 Hereafter shall the Son of man sit on the right hand of the power of God." 70 Then said they all, "Art thou then the Son of God?" And he said unto them, "You say that I am." 71 And they said, "What need have we of any further witness? for we ourselves have heard of his own mouth."

---

#### b. The Hearing Before Pilate

23:1 And the whole multitude of them arose, and led him unto Pilate. 2 And they began to accuse him, saying, "We found this *fellow* perverting the nation, and forbidding to give tribute to Cæsar, saying that he himself is Christ a king." 3 And Pilate asked him, saying, "Art thou the king of the Jews?" And he answered him and said, "Thou sayest *it*." 4 Then said Pilate to the chief priests and to the people, "I find no fault in this man." 5 And they were the more fierce, saying, "He stirreth up the people, teaching throughout all Jewry, beginning from Galilee to this place." 6 When Pilate heard of Galilee, he asked whether the man were a Galilæan. 7 And as soon as he knew that he belonged to Herod's jurisdiction, he sent him to Herod, who himself was also at Jersusalem at that time.

---

#### c. The Hearing before Herod Antipas

8 And when Herod saw Jesus he was exceeding glad: for he was desirous to see him for a long *season*, because he had heard many things of him; and he hoped to have seen some miracle done by him. 9 And he questioned with him in many words; but he answered him nothing. 10 And the chief priests and scribes stood and vehemently accused him. 11 And Herod with his men of war set him at nought, and mocked *him*, and arrayed him in a gorgeous robe, and sent him again to Pilate. 12 And the same day Pilate and Herod were made friends together; for before they were at enmity between themselves.

---

#### d. The Sentence of Pilate

13 And Pilate, when he had called together the chief priests and the rulers of the people, 14 said unto them, "You have brought this man unto me, as one that perverteth the people: and, behold, I, having examined *him* before you, have found no fault in this man touching those things whereof ye accuse him: 15 no, nor yet Herod: for I sent you to him; and, lo, nothing worthy of death is done unto him. 16 I will therefore chastise

*Chapter 22:69-23:16*

him, and release *him*." 17 [For of necessity he must release one at the feast.] 18 And they cried out all at once, saying, "Away with this *man*, and release unto us Barabbas;" 19 [who for a certain sedition made in the city, and for murder, was cast into prison.] 20 Pilate therefore, willing to release Jesus, spoke again to them. 21 But they cried out, saying, "Crucify *him*! crucify him!" 22 And he said unto them the third time, "Why, what evil hath he done? I have found no cause of death in him: I will therefore chastise him, and let *him* go." 23 And they were instant with loud voices, requiring that he might be crucified. And the voices of them and of the chief priests prevailed. 24 And Pilate gave sentence that it should be as they required. 25 And he released unto them him who for sedition and murder was cast into prison, whom they had desired; but he delivered Jesus to their will.

## II. THE WAY TO CALVARY

### a. The Bearing of the Cross by Simon of Cyrene

26 And as they led him away, they laid hold upon one Simon, a Cyrenian, coming out of the country, and on him they laid the cross, that he might bear *it* after Jesus.

### b. The Sorrowing Women of Jerusalem

27 And there followed him a great company of people, and of women, who also bewailed and lamented him. 28 But Jesus turning unto them said, "Daughters of Jerusalem, weep not for me, but weep for yourselves, and for your children. 29 For, behold, the days are coming, in which they shall say, Blessed *are* the barren, and the wombs that never bare, and the paps that never gave suck. 30 Then shall they begin to say to the mountains, Fall on us; and to the hills, Cover us. 31 For if they do these things in the green tree, what shall be done in the dry."

### c. The Two Malefactors

32 And there were also two others, malefactors, led with him to be put to death.

## III. THE CRUCIFIXION OF JESUS

### a. The Circumstances of the Crucifixion

33 And when they were come to the place, which is called Calvary,<sup>1</sup> there they crucified him, and the malefactors, one on the right hand, and the other on the left.

<sup>1</sup> Or, the place of a skull.



\*

34 Then said Jesus, "Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do."

\*

And they parted his raiment, and cast lots.

\*

35 And the people stood beholding.

\*

And the rulers also with them derided *him*, saying, "He saved others; let him save himself, if he be the Christ, the chosen of God."

\*

36 And the soldiers also mocked him, coming to him, and offering him vinegar, 37 and saying, "If thou be the king of the Jews, save thyself."

\*

38 And a superscription also was written over him in letters of Greek, and Latin, and Hebrew:

\* \* \*

"THIS IS THE KING OF THE JEWS."

---

#### **b. The Conversation with the Malefactors**

39 And one of the malefactors which were hanged railed on him, saying, "If thou be the Christ, save thyself and us." 40 But the other answering rebuked him, saying, "Dost not thou fear God, seeing thou art in the same condemnation? 41 And we indeed justly; for we receive the due reward of our deeds; but this man hath done nothing amiss." 42 And he said unto Jesus, "Lord, remember me when thou comest into thy kingdom." 43 And Jesus said unto him, "Verily I say unto thee, 'Today shalt thou be with me in paradise.'"

---

#### **c. The Death of Jesus on the Cross**

44 And it was about the sixth hour, and there was a darkness over all the earth until the ninth hour. 45 And the sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was rent in the midst. 46 And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, "Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit:" and having said thus, he gave up the ghost. 47 Now when the centurion saw what was done, he glorified God, saying, "Certainly this was a righteous man." 48 And all the people that came together to that sight,

*Chapter 23:34-48*

beholding the things that were done, smote their breasts, and returned. 49 And all his acquaintance, and the women who followed him from Galilee, stood afar off, beholding these things.

#### IV. THE BURIAL OF JESUS NEAR THE CITY

##### The Request of Joseph of Arimathæa

50 And, behold, *there was* a man named Joseph, a counsellor; *and he was* a good and just man 51 [The same had not consented to their counsel and deed]: *he was* of Arimathæa, a city of the Jews: who also himself waited for the kingdom of God. 52 This *man* went unto Pilate, and begged the body of Jesus. 53 And he took it down, and wrapped it in linen, and laid it in a sepulchre that was hewn in stone, wherein never man before was laid. 54 And that day was the preparation, and the sabbath drew on. 55 And the women also, who came with him from Galilee, followed after, and beheld the sepulchre, and how his body was laid. 56 And they returned, and prepared spices and ointments; and rested the sabbath day according to the commandment.

#### §4. THE RESURRECTION AND ASCENSION OF JESUS

##### I. THE ANNOUNCEMENT OF THE RESURRECTION

##### The Report of the Women

24:1 Now upon the first *day* of the week, very early in the morning, they came unto the sepulchre, bringing the spices which they had prepared, and certain *others* with them. 2 And they found the stone rolled away from the sepulchre. 3 And they entered in, and found not the body of the Lord Jesus. 4 And it came to pass, as they were much perplexed thereabout, behold two men stood by them in shining garments: 5 and as they were afraid, and bowed down their faces to the earth, they said unto them, "Why seek ye the living among the dead? 6 He is not here, but is risen: remember how he spoke unto you when he was yet in Galilee, 7 saying, 'The Son of man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day rise again.'" 8 And they remembered his words, 9 and returned from the sepulchre, and told all these things unto the eleven, and to all the rest. 10 It was Mary Magdalene, and Joanna, and Mary *the mother* of James, and other *women that were* with them, who told these things unto the apostles. 11 And their words seemed to them as idle tales, and they believed them not. 12 Then arose Peter, and ran unto the sepulchre; and stooping down, he beheld the linen clothes laid by themselves, and departed, wondering in himself at that which had come to pass.

*Chapter 23:49-24:12*

## II. THE APPEARANCE OF JESUS AT EMMAUS

## The Conversation with Two Disciples

13 And, behold, two of them went that same day to a village called Emmaus, which was from Jerusalem *about* threescore furlongs. 14 And they talked together of all these things that had happened. 15 And it came to pass, that, while they communed *together* and reasoned, Jesus himself drew near, and went with them. 16 But their eyes were holden that they should not know him. 17 And he said unto them, "What manner of communications *are* these that you have one to another, as you walk, and are sad?" 18 And one of them, whose name was Cleopas, answering said unto him, "Art thou only a stranger in Jerusalem, and hast not known the things that are come to pass there in these days?" 19 And he said unto them, "What things?" And they said unto him, "Concerning Jesus of Nazareth, who was a prophet mighty in deed and word before God and all the people: 20 and how the chief priests and our rulers delivered him to be condemned to death, and have crucified him. 21 But we trusted that it had been he that should have redeemed Israel: and beside all this, to day is the third day since these things were done. 22 Yea, and certain women also of our company made us astonished, who were early at the sepulchre; 23 and when they found not his body, they came, saying, that they had also seen a vision of angels, who said that he was alive. 24 And certain of them that were with us, went to the sepulchre, and found *it* even as the women had said: but him they saw not." 25 Then said he unto them, "O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken: 26 ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?" 27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself. 28 And they drew nigh unto the village, whither they went: and he made as though he would have gone further. 29 But they constrained him, saying, "Abide with us: for it is toward evening, and the day is far spent." And he went in to tarry with them. 30 And it came to pass, as he sat at meat with them, he took bread, and blessed *it*, and brake, and gave to them. 31 And their eyes were opened, and they knew him; and he vanished out of their sight. 32 And they said one to another, "Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures?" 33 And they rose up the same hour, and returned to Jerusalem, and found the eleven gathered together, and them that were with them, 34 saying, "The Lord is risen indeed, and hath appeared to Simon." 35 And they told what things *were done* in the way, and how he was known of them in the breaking of bread.



### III. THE APPEARANCE OF JESUS TO THE APOSTLES

#### a. The Proof of the Ressurrection

36 And as they thus spoke, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and saith unto them, "Peace *be* unto you." 37 But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit. 38 And he said unto them, "Why are you troubled? and why do thoughts arise in your hearts? 39 Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see, for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as you see me have." 40 And when he had thus spoken, he showed them *his* hands and *his* feet. 41 And while they yet believed not for joy, and wondered, he said unto them, "Have you here any meat?" 42 And they gave him a piece of broiled fish, and of a honeycomb. 43 And he took *it*, and did eat before them.

#### b. The Promise of the Holy Spirit

44 And he said unto them, "These *are* the words which I spoke unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, that were written in the law of Moses, and *in* the prophets, and *in* the psalms, concerning me." 45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures, 46 and said unto them, "Thus it is written, and thus it behooved the Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day: 47 and that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. 48 And you are witnesses of these things. 49 And behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until you are endued with power from on high."

### IV. THE ASCENSION OF JESUS

#### The Ascension of Jesus from Bethany

50 And he led them out as far as to Bethany, and he lifted up his hands, and blessed them. 51 And it came to pass, while he blessed them, that he was parted from them, and carried up into heaven.

### The Closing Summary

52 And they worshipped him, and returned to Jerusalem with great joy: 53 and were continually in the temple, praising and blessing God. Amen.

\* \* \*  
\* \*  
\*



The Gospel  
According to John



## Prologue<sup>1</sup>

# THE WORD THAT WAS GOD IN THE BEGINNING

---

### THE INCARNATION OF THE WORD

#### THE REVELATION OF GOD BY THE ONLY BEGOTTEN SON NOW GLORIFIED

##### The Seven-Fold Prologue

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

\*

2 The same was in the beginning with<sup>2</sup> God.

\*

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

\*

4 In him was life, and the life was the light of men. 5 And the light shineth in the darkness; and the darkness comprehended<sup>3</sup> it not. 6 There was a man sent from God whose name *was* John. 7 The same came for a witness, to bear witness of the light, that all *men* through him might believe. 8 He was not that light, but *was sent* to bear witness of that light. 9 *That* was the true light that lighteth every man coming into the world.

\*

10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not. 11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not. 12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name, 13 who were born not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.

\*

14 And the word was made flesh, and dwelt among us [And we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father]

---

<sup>1</sup> The Gospel according to John was written at Ephesus, at the close of the first century.

<sup>2</sup> Or, face to face, or, at home with God.

<sup>3</sup> Overcame.

full of grace and truth. 15 John bare witness of him, and cried, saying, "This was he of whom I spoke, 'He that cometh after me is preferred before me,' for he was before me." 16 And of his fulness have all we received, and grace for grace. 17 For the law was given by Moses, *but* grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.

\*

18 No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, who is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared *him*.



## Part One

### JESUS THE PROPHET OF GOD

---

#### §1. THE TESTIMONY OF JOHN THE BAPTIST

##### I. THE MANIFESTATION OF THE CHRIST

###### a. The Voice in the Wilderness

And this is the record of John, when the Jews sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, "Who art thou?" 20 And he confessed, and denied not; but confessed, "I am not the Christ." 21 And they asked him, "What then? Art thou Elijah?" And he saith, "I am not." "Art thou that prophet?" And he answered, "No." 22 Then said they unto him, "Who art thou? that we may give an answer to them that sent us. What sayest thou of thyself?" 23 He said, "I am

\* \* \*

'The voice of one crying in the wilderness,  
Make straight the way of the Lord,'

\*

as said the prophet Isaiah."

---

###### b. The Presence of the Christ

24 And they who were sent were of the Pharisees. 25 And they asked him, and said unto him, "Why baptizest thou then, if thou be not that Christ, nor Elijah, neither that prophet?" 26 John answered them, saying, "I baptize with water; but there standeth one among you, whom you know not; 27 he it is who coming after me is preferred before me, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose." 28 These things were done in Bethabara beyond Jordan, where John was baptizing.

---

###### c. The Lamb of God for the Sin of the World

29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, "Behold the Lamb of God, that taketh away the sin of the world. 30 This is he of whom I said, 'After me cometh a man who is

---

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 40:3.

preferred before me:' for he was before me. 31 And I knew him not: but that he should be made manifest to Israel therefore am I come baptizing with water." 32 And John bare record, saying, "I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him. 33 And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, 'Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he that baptizeth with the Holy Spirit.' 34 And I saw, and bare record, that this is the Son of God."

---

## II. THE FIRST DISCIPLES OF JESUS

### a. The Call of Andrew and Peter

35 Again the next day after John stood, and two of his disciples; 36 and looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, "Behold the Lamb of God!" 37 And the two disciples heard him speak, and they followed Jesus. 38 Then Jesus turned, and saw them following, and saith unto them, "What seek ye?" They said unto him, "Rabbi [which is to say, Master], where dwellest thou?" 39 He saith unto them, "Come and see." They came and saw where he dwelt, and abode with him that day: for it was about the tenth hour. 40 One of the two that heard John *speak* was Andrew, Simon Peter's brother. 41 He first findeth his own brother Simon, and saith unto him, "We have found the Messiah" [which is, being interpreted, the Christ]. 42 And he brought him to Jesus. And when Jesus beheld him, he said, "Thou art Simon the son of John: thou shalt be called Cephas" [which is by interpretation, A stone].

---

### b. The Call of Philip and Nathanael

43 The day following Jesus would go forth into Galilee, and he *findeth Philip*, and saith unto him, "Follow me." 44 Now Philip was of Bethsaida, the city of Andrew and Peter. 45 Philip findeth Nathanael, and saith unto him, "We have found him of whom Moses in the law, and the prophets, did write, Jesus of Nazareth, the son of Joseph." 46 And Nathanael said unto him, "Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?" Philip saith unto him, "Come and see." 47 Jesus saw Nathanael coming to him, and saith of him, "Behold an Israelite indeed, in whom is no guile!" 48 Nathanael saith unto him, "Whence knowest thou me?" Jesus answered and said unto him, "Before Philip called thee, when thou wast under the fig tree, I saw thee." 49 Nathanael answered and said unto him, "Rabbi, thou art the Son of God; thou art the King of Israel." 50 Jesus answered

*Chapter 1:31-50*

and said unto him, "Because I said unto thee, 'I saw thee under the fig tree,' believest thou? thou shall see greater things than these." 51 And he saith unto him, "Verily, I say unto you, Hereafter you shall see the heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man."

## §2. THE MARRIAGE AT CANA OF GALILEE

### THE TURNING OF WATER INTO WINE

#### The Faith of the Disciples

2:1 And the third day there was a marriage in Cana of Galilee; and the mother of Jesus was there: 2 and both Jesus was called, and his disciples, to the marriage. 3 And when they wanted wine, the mother of Jesus saith unto him, "They have no wine." 4 Jesus saith unto her, "Woman, what have I to do with thee? my hour is not yet come." 5 His mother said unto the servants, "Whatsoever he saith unto you, do *it*." 6 And there were set there six waterpots of stone, after the manner of the purifying of the Jews, containing two or three firkins apiece. 7 Jesus saith unto them, "Fill the waterpots with water." And they filled them up to the brim. 8 And he saith unto them, "Draw out now, and bear unto the governor of the feast." And they bare *it*. 9 When the ruler of the feast had tasted the water that was made wine, and knew not whence it was [but the servants that drew the water knew], the governor of the feast called the bridegroom, 10 and saith unto him, "Every man at the beginning doth set forth good wine; and when men have well drunk, then that which is worse: *but* thou hast kept the good wine until now." 11 This beginning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee, and manifested forth his glory; and his disciples believed on him.

## §3. THE CLEANSING OF THE TEMPLE

### THE FORECAST OF THE RESURRECTION

#### The Faith of the Disciples in Christ

12 After this he went down to Capernaum, he, and his mother, and his brothers, and his disciples: and they continued there not many days. 13 And the Jews' passover was at hand, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem, 14 and found in the temple those that sold oxen, and sheep and doves, and the changers of money sitting: 15 and when he had made a scourge of small cords, he drove them all out of the temple, and the sheep, and the oxen; and poured out the changers' money, and overthrew the tables;

*Chapter 1:51-2:15*



16 and said unto them that sold doves, "Take these things hence: make not my Father's house a house of merchandise." 17 And his disciples remembered that it was written, "The zeal of thy house hath eaten me up." 18 Then answered the Jews and said unto him, "What sign showest thou unto us, seeing that thou doest these things?" 19 Jesus answered and said unto them, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up." 20 Then said the Jews, "Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?" 21 But he spoke of the temple of his body. 22 When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word that Jesus had said.

#### §4. THE INTERVIEW WITH NICODEMUS

##### THE ATONEMENT AND THE NEW BIRTH

##### The Great Love of God for the World

23 Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast *day*, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles that he did. 24 But Jesus did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all *men*, 25 and needed not that any should testify of man: for he knew what was in man. 3:1 But there was a man of the Pharisees, named Nicodemus, a ruler of the Jews: 2 the same came to Jesus by night, and said unto him, "Rabbi, we know that thou art a teacher come from God, for no man can do these miracles that thou doest, except God be with him." 3 Jesus answered and said unto him, "Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God." 4 Nicodemus saith unto him, "How can a man be born when he is old? can he enter the second time into his mother's womb, and be born?" 5 Jesus answered, "Verily, verily, I say unto thee, 'Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. 6 That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. 7 Marvel not that I said unto thee, 'You must be born again.' 8 The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth: so is every one that is born of the Spirit.'" 9 Nicodemus answered and said unto him, "How can these things be?" 10 Jesus answered and said unto him, "Art thou a master of Israel, and knowest not these things? 11 Verily, verily, I say unto thee, We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen; and you receive not our witness. 12 If I have

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 69:9.



told you earthly things, and you believe not, how shall you believe if I tell you *of* heavenly things? 13 And no man hath ascended up to heaven, but he that came down from heaven, *even* the Son of man who is in heaven. 14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up: 15 that whosoever believeth on him should not perish, but have eternal life. 16 For<sup>1</sup> God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. 17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved. 18 He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God. 19 And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil. 20 For every one that doeth evil hateth the light, neither cometh to the light, lest his deeds should be reproved. 21 But he that doeth truth cometh to the light, that his deeds may be made manifest, that they are wrought in God.

## §5. THE WITNESS OF JOHN THE BAPTIST

### THE GIFT OF GOD FROM HEAVEN

#### The Pre-Eminence of Jesus Christ

22 After these things came Jesus and his disciples into the land of Judæa; and there he tarried with them, and baptized. 23 And John also was baptizing in Ænon near to Salim, because there was much water there: and they came, and were baptized. 24 For John was not yet cast into prison. 25 Then there arose a question between *some* of John's disciples and the Jews about purifying. 26 And they came unto John, and said unto him, "Rabbi, he that was with thee beyond Jordan, to whom thou barest witness, behold, the same baptizeth, and all *men* come to him. 27 John answered and said, "A man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven. 28 You yourselves bear me witness, that I said, 'I am not the Christ,' but, that I am sent before him. 29 He that hath the bride is the bridegroom: but the friend of the bridegroom, who standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth greatly because of the bridegroom's voice: this my joy therefore is fulfilled. 30 He must increase, but I *must* decrease. 31 He that cometh from above is above all: he that is of the earth is earthly, and speaketh of the earth; he that cometh from heaven is above all. 32 And what he hath seen and heard, that

<sup>1</sup> Vs. 16-21. This is thought by many to be a comment of John.

he testifieth; and no man receiveth his testimony. 33 He that hath received his testimony hath set to his seal that God is true. 34 For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*. 35 The Father loveth the Son, and hath given all things into his hand. 36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life; and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him."

## §6. THE MINISTRY OF JESUS IN SAMARIA

### THE UNIVERSALITY OF REDEMPTION

#### a. The Woman at the Well

4:1 When therefore the Lord knew how the Pharisees had heard that Jesus made and baptized more disciples than John 2 [though Jesus himself baptized not, but his disciples], 3 he left Judæa, and departed again into Galilee. 4 And he must needs go through Samaria. 5 Then cometh he to a city of Samaria, which is called Sychar, near to the parcel of ground that Jacob gave to his son Joseph. 6 Now Jacob's well was there. Jesus therefore, being wearied with *his* journey, sat thus on the well: and it was about the sixth hour. 7 There cometh a woman of Samaria to draw water: Jesus saith unto her, "Give me to drink." 8 [For his disciples were gone away unto the city to buy meat]. 9 Then saith the woman of Samaria unto him, "How is it that thou, being a Jew, askest drink of me, who am a woman of Samaria? [For the Jews have no dealings with the Samaritans]. 10 Jesus answered and said unto her, "If thou knewest the gift of God, and who it is that saith to thee, 'Give me to drink,' thou wouldest have asked of him, and he would have given thee living water." 11 The woman saith unto him, "Sir, thou hast nothing to draw with, and the well is deep: from whence then hast thou that living water? 12 Art thou greater than our father Jacob, who gave us the well, and drank thereof himself, and his children, and his cattle?" 13 Jesus answered and said unto her, "Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again: 14 but whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life." 15 The woman saith unto him, "Sir, give me this water, that I thirst not, neither come hither to draw."

#### b. The Announcement of the Messiah

16 Jesus saith unto her, "Go, call thy husband, and come hither." 17 The woman answered and said, "I have no husband."

*Chapter 3:33-4:17*

Jesus said unto her, "Thou hast well said, 'I have no husband;' 18 for thou hast had five husbands; and he whom thou now hast is not thy husband: in that saidst thou truly." 19 The woman saith unto him, "Sir, I perceive that thou art a prophet. 20 Our fathers worshipped in this mountain; and you say, that in Jerusalem is the place where men ought to worship." 21 Jesus saith unto her, "Woman, believe me, the hour cometh, when you shall neither in this mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father. 22 You worship you know not what: we know what we worship: for salvation is of the Jews. 23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him. 24 God *is* a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship *him* in spirit and in truth." 25 The woman saith unto him, "I know that the Messiah cometh, who is called Christ: when he is come, he will tell us all things." 26 Jesus saith unto her, "I that speak unto thee am *he*."

---

#### c. The Return of the Disciples

27 And upon this came his disciples, and marvelled that he talked with the woman: yet no man said, What seekest thou? or, Why talkest thou with her? 28 The woman then left her waterpot, and went her way into the city, and saith to the men, 29 "Come, see a man who told me all things that ever I did: is not this the Christ?" 30 Then they went out of the city and came unto him. 31 In the mean while his disciples prayed him, saying, "Master, eat." 32 But he said unto them, "I have meat to eat that you know not of." 33 Therefore said the disciples one to another, "Hath any man brought him *aught* to eat?" 34 Jesus saith unto them, "My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work. 35 Say not ye, 'There are yet four months, and *then* cometh harvest?' behold, I say unto you, Lift up your eyes, and look on the fields; for they are white already to harvest. 36 And he that reapeth receiveth wages, and gathereth fruit unto life eternal: that both he that soweth and he that reapeth may rejoice together. 37 And herein is that saying true, 'One soweth, and another reapeth.' 38 I sent you to reap that whereon you bestowed no labour; other men laboured, and you are entered into their labours."

---

#### d. The Belief of the Samaritans

39 And many of the Samaritans of that city believed on him for the saying of the woman, who testified, "He told me all that ever I did." 40 So when the Samaritans were come unto him,

*Chapter 4:18-40*



they besought him that he would tarry with them: and he abode there two days. 41 And many more believed because of his own word; 42 and said unto the woman, "Now we believe, not because of thy saying: for we have heard *him* ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world."

---

## §7. THE HEALING OF THE NOBLEMAN'S SON

### THE SECOND MIRACLE OF JESUS AT CANA

#### The Great Faith of the Nobleman

43 Now after two days he departed thence, and went into Galilee. 44 For Jesus himself testified, that a prophet hath no honour in his own country. 45 Then when he was come into Galilee, the Galilæans received him, having seen all things that he did at the feast: for they also went unto the feast. 46 So Jesus came again into Cana of Galilee, where he made the water wine. And there was a certain nobleman, whose son was sick at Capernaum. 47 When he heard that Jesus had come out of Judæa into Galilee, he went unto him, and besought him that he would come down, and heal his son: for he was at the point of death. 48 Then said Jesus unto him, "Except you see signs and wonders, you will not believe." 49 The nobleman saith unto him, "Sir, come down ere my child die." 50 Jesus saith unto him, "Go thy way; thy son liveth." And the man believed the word that Jesus had spoken unto him, and he went his way. 51 And as he was now going down, his servants met *him*, saying, "Thy son liveth." 52 Then inquired he of them the hour when he began to mend. And they said unto him, "Yesterday at the seventh hour the fever left him." 53 So the father knew that *it was* at the same hour, in which Jesus said unto him, "Thy son liveth:" and himself believed, and his whole house.

---

#### The First Summary

54 This is again the second miracle *that* Jesus did, when he was come out of Judæa into Galilee.



## Part Two

### JESUS THE KING OF ISRAEL

---

#### §1. THE HEALING OF THE MAN AT THE POOL

##### THE DOCTRINE OF THE SON OF GOD

###### a. The Healing on the Sabbath

After this there was a feast of the Jews; and Jesus went up to Jerusalem. 2 Now there is at Jerusalem by the sheep *market* a pool, which is called in the Hebrew tongue Bethesda, having five porches. 3 In these lay a great multitude of impotent folk, of blind, halt, withered, waiting for the moving of the water. 4 For an angel went down at a certain season into the pool, and troubled the water; whosoever then first after the troubling of the water stepped in was made whole of whatever disease he had. 5 And a certain man was there, who had an infirmity thirty and eight years. 6 When Jesus saw him lie, and knew that he had been now a long time *in that case*, he saith unto him, "Wilt thou be made whole?" 7 The impotent man answered him, "Sir, I have no man, when the the water is troubled, to put me into the pool: but while I am coming, another steppeth down before me." 8 Jesus saith unto him, "Rise, take up thy bed, and walk." 9 And immediately the man was made whole, and took up his bed, and walked.

---

###### b. The Complaint of the Jews

And on the same day was the sabbath. 10 The Jews therefore said unto him that was cured, "It is the sabbath day: it is not lawful for thee to carry *thy* bed." 11 He answered them, "He that made me whole, the same said unto me, 'Take up thy bed and walk.'" 12 Then asked they him, "What man is that who said unto thee, 'Take up thy bed and walk'?" 13 And he that was healed knew not who it was: for Jesus had conveyed himself away, a multitude being in *that* place. 14 Afterward Jesus findeth him in the temple, and said unto him, "Behold, thou art made whole: sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee." 15 The man departed, and told the Jews that it was Jesus who had made him whole. 16 And therefore did the Jews persecute Jesus, and sought to slay him, because he had

done these things on the sabbath day. 17 But Jesus answered them, "My Father worketh hitherto, and I work." 18 Therefore the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he had not only broken the sabbath, but said also that God was his Father, making himself equal with God.

---

c. The Reply of Jesus

19 Then answered Jesus and said unto them, "Verily, verily I say unto you, "The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do: for what things soever he doeth, these also doeth the Son likewise. 20 For the Father loveth the Son, and showeth him all things that himself doeth: and he will show him greater works than these, that you may marvel. 21 For as the Father raiseth up the dead, and quickeneth *them*; even so the Son quickeneth whom he will. 22 For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son: 23 that all *men* should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father. He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father who hath sent him. 24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life. 25 Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God; and they that hear shall live. 26 For as the Father hath life in himself, so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself; 27 and hath given him authority to execute judgment also because he is the Son of man. 28 Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in which all that are in the graves, shall hear his voice, 29 and shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation.

---

d. The Witnesses to the Son of God

30 "I can of my own self do nothing: as I hear, I judge: and my judgment is just; because I seek not my own will, but the will of the Father who hath sent me. 31 If I bear witness of myself, my witness is not true. 32 There is another that beareth witness of me; and I know that the witness that he witnesseth of me is true. 33 You sent unto John, and he bore witness unto the truth. 34 But I receive not testimony from man: but these things I say, that you might be saved. 35 He was a burning and a shining light: and you were willing for a season to rejoice in his light. 36 But I have greater witness than *that* of John: for the works which the Father hath given me to finish, the same works

that I do, bear witness of me, that the Father hath sent me. 37 And the Father himself, who hath sent me, hath borne witness of me. You have neither heard his voice at any time, nor seen his form. 38 And you have not his word abiding in you: for whom he hath sent, him you believe not. 39 You search the scriptures; for in them you think you have eternal life; and these are they that testify of me. 40 And you will not come to me that you might have life. 41 I receive not honour from men. 42 But I know you that you have not the love of God in you. 43 I am come in my Father's name, and you receive me not; if another shall come in his own name, him you will receive. 44 How can you believe, who receive honour one of another, and seek not the honour that *cometh* from God only? 45 Do not think that I will accuse you to the Father: there is *one* that accuseth you, *even* Moses, in whom you trust. 46 For had you believed Moses, you would have believed me: for he wrote of me. 47 But if you believe not his writings, how shall you believe my words?"

## §2. THE FEEDING OF THE FIVE THOUSAND

### I. THE BREAD OF LIFE FROM HEAVEN

#### a. The Plot to Make Jesus King

6:1 After these things Jesus went over the sea of Galilee, which is *the sea* of Tiberias. 2 And a great multitude followed him, because they saw his miracles which he did on them that were diseased. 3 And Jesus went up into a mountain, and there sat with his disciples. 4 And the passover, a feast of the Jews, was nigh. 5 When Jesus then lifted up *his* eyes, and saw a great multitude come unto him, he saith unto Philip, "Whence shall we buy bread, that these may eat?" 6 And this he said to prove him; for he knew what he would do. 7 Philip answered him, "Two hundred pennyworth of bread is not sufficient for them, that every one of them may take a little." 8 One of his disciples, Andrew, Simon Peter's brother, saith unto him, 9 "There is a lad here, who hath five barley loaves and two small fishes: but what are they among so many?" 10 And Jesus said, "Make the men sit down." Now there was much grass in the place. So the men sat down, in number about five thousand. 11 And Jesus took the loaves; and when he had given thanks, he distributed to the disciples, and the disciples to them that were set down; and likewise of the fishes as much as they would. 12 When they were filled, he said unto his disciples, "Gather up the fragments that remain, that nothing be lost." 13 Therefore they gathered *them* together, and filled twelve baskets with the fragments of the five barley loaves, which remained over and above



unto them that had eaten. 14 Then those men, when they had seen the miracle that Jesus did, said, "This is of a truth that prophet that should come into the world. 15 When Jesus therefore perceived that they would come and take him by force, to make him a king, he departed again into a mountain himself alone.

---

**b. The Walking of Jesus on the Sea**

16 And when even was *now* come, his disciples went down unto the sea, 17 and entered into a ship, and went over the sea toward Capernaum. And it was now dark and Jesus had not come to them. 18 And the sea arose by reason of a great wind that blew. 19 So when they had rowed about five and twenty or thirty furlongs, they see Jesus walking on the sea, and drawing near unto the ship: and they were afraid. 20 But he saith unto them, "It is I: be not afraid." 21 Then they willingly received him into the ship: and immediately the ship was at the land whither they went.

---

**c. The Pursuit of the Multitude**

22 The day following, when the people that stood on the other side of the sea saw that there was no other boat there, save that one wherinto his disciples were entered, and that Jesus went not with his disciples into the boat, but *that* his disciples were gone away alone 23 [howbeit there came other boats from Tiberias nigh unto the place where they did eat bread, after that the Lord had given thanks:] 24 when the people therefore saw that Jesus was not there, neither his disciples, they also took shipping, and came to Capernaum, seeking for Jesus. 25 And when they found him on the other side of the sea, they said unto him, "Rabbi, when camest thou hither?" 26 Jesus answered them and said, "Verily, verily, I say unto you, You seek me, not because you saw the miracles, but because you did eat of the loaves, and were filled. 27 Labour not for the meat that perisheth, but for that meat which endureth unto everlasting life, which the Son of man shall give unto you: for him hath God the Father sealed." 28 Then said they unto him, "What shall we do that we might work the works of God?" 29 Jesus answered and said unto them, "This is the work of God, that you believe on him whom he hath sent." 30 They said therefore unto him, "What sign showest thou then, that we may see and believe? what dost thou work? 31 Our fathers did eat manna in the desert: as it is written, 'He gave them bread from heaven to eat.'"<sup>1</sup> 32 Then Jesus said unto them, "Verily,

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 78:24.



verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven. 33 For the bread of God is he that cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world. 34 Then said they unto him, "Lord, evermore give us this bread." 35 And Jesus said unto them, "I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst. 36 But I said unto you, That you also have seen me, and believe not. 37 All that the Father hath given me shall come to me; and him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out. 38 For I came down from heaven, not to do my own will, but the will of him that sent me. 39 And this is the Father's will that hath sent me, that of all that he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day. 40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one that seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day."

---

#### **d. The Bread of Life from Heaven**

41 The Jews then murmured at him, because he said, "I am the bread that came down from heaven." 42 And they said, "Is not this Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? how is it then that he saith, 'I came down from heaven'?" 43 Jesus therefore answered and said unto them, "Murmur not among yourselves. 44 No man can come to me, except the Father that hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day. 45 It is written in the prophets, 'And they shall be all taught of God.' Every man therefore that hath heard, and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me. 46 Not that any man hath seen the Father, save he that is of God, he hath seen the Father. 47 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life. 48 I am that bread of life. 49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead. 50 This is the bread that cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die. 51 I am the living bread that came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live forever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world."

---

## **II. THE BLOOD OF THE ATONEMENT**

### **a. The Teaching of Jesus**

52 The Jews therefore strove among themselves, saying, "How can this man give us *his* flesh to eat?" 53 Then Jesus said unto them, "Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except you eat the

*Chapter 6:33-53*

flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, you have no life in you. 54 Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day. 55 For my flesh is meat indeed, and my blood is drink indeed. 56 He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him. 57 As the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me. 58 This is that bread which came down from heaven: not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead: he that eateth of this bread shall live for ever." 59 These things said he in the synagogue as he taught in Capernaum.

---

#### b. The Doubt of the Disciples

60 Many therefore of his disciples, when they had heard *this*, said, "This is a hard saying; who can hear it?" 61 When Jesus knew in himself that his disciples murmured at it, he said unto them, "Doth this offend you? 62 *What* if you shall see the Son of man ascend up where he was before? 63 It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, *they* are spirit, and *they* are life. 64 But there are some of you that believe not." For Jesus knew from the beginning who they were that believed not, and who should betray him. 65 And he said, "Therefore said I unto you, that no man can come unto me, except it were given unto him of my Father."

---

#### c. The Great Confession of Peter

66 From that *time* many of his disciples went back, and walked no more with him. 67 Then said Jesus unto the twelve, "Will you also go away?" 68 Then Simon Peter answered him, "Lord, to whom shall we go? thou hast the words of eternal life. 69 And we believe and are sure that thou art that Christ, the Son of the living God." 70 Jesus answered them, "Have not I chosen you twelve, and one of you is a devil?" 71 He spoke of Judas Iscariot *the son* of Simon: for he it was that should betray him, being one of the twelve.

---

### §3. THE FEAST OF TABERNACLES

#### I. THE DEPARTURE OF JESUS TO JERUSALEM

##### a. The Counsel of Jesus' Brothers

7:1 After these things Jesus walked in Galilee: for he would not walk in Judæa, because the Jews sought to kill him. 2

*Chapter 6:54-7:2*

Now the Jews' feast of tabernacles was at hand. 3 His brethren therefore said unto him, "Depart hence, and go into Judæa, that thy disciples also may see the works that thou doest. 4 For *there is* no man *that* doeth any thing in secret, and he himself seeketh to be known openly. If thou do these things, show thyself to the world." 5 For neither did his brothers believe in him. 6 Then Jesus said unto them, "My time is not yet come: but your time is always ready. 7 The world cannot hate you; but me it hateth, because I testify of it, that the works thereof are evil. 8 Go ye up to the feast: I go not up yet unto this feast; for my time is not yet come." 9 When he had said these words unto them, he abode *still* in Galilee.

---

#### b. The State of Public Opinion

10 But when his brothers had gone up, then went he also up unto the feast, not openly, but as it were in secret. 11 Then the Jews sought him at the feast, and said, "Where is he?" 12 And there was much murmuring among the people concerning him: for some said, "He is a good man:" others said, "Nay, but he deceiveth the people." 13 Howbeit no man spoke openly of him for fear of the Jews.

---

#### c. The Teaching in the Temple

14 Now about the midst of the feast Jesus went up into the temple, and taught. 15 And the Jews marvelled, saying, "How knoweth this man letters, having never learned?" 16 Jesus answered them and said, "My doctrine is not mine, but his that sent me. 17 If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or *whether* I speak of myself. 18 He that speaketh of himself seeketh his own glory: but he that seeketh his glory that sent him, the same is true, and no unrighteousness is in him. 19 Did not Moses give you the law and *yet* none of you keepeth the law? Why do you go about to kill me?" 20 The people answered and said, "Thou hast a devil: who goeth about to kill thee?" 21 Jesus answered and said unto them, "I have done one work, and you all marvel. 22 Moses therefore gave unto you circumcision [not because it is of Moses, but of the fathers]; and you on the sabbath day circumcise a man. 23 If a man on the sabbath day receive circumcision, that the law of Moses should not be broken; are you angry at me, because I have made a man every whit whole on the sabbath day? 24 Judge not according to appearance, but judge righteous judgment."



## d. The Attempt to Arrest Jesus

25 Then said some of them of Jerusalem, "Is not this he, whom they seek to kill? 26 But, lo, he speaketh boldly, and they say nothing unto him. Do the rulers know indeed that this is the very Christ? 27 Howbeit we know this man whence he is: but when Christ cometh, no man knoweth whence he is." 28 Then cried Jesus in the temple as he taught, saying, "You both know me, and you know whence I am: and I am not come of myself, but he that sent me is true, whom you know not. 29 But I know him: for I am from him, and he hath sent me." 30 Then they sought to take him: but no man laid hands on him, because his hour was not yet come. 31 And many of the people believed on him, and said, "When Christ cometh, will he do more miracles than these which this *man* hath done?" 32 The Pharisees heard that the people murmured such things concerning him; and the Pharisees and the chief priests sent officers to take him. 33 Then said Jesus unto them, "Yet a little while am I with you, and *then* I go unto him that sent me. 34 You shall seek me, and shall not find *me*: and where I am, *thither* you cannot come." 35 Then said the Jews among themselves, "Whither will he go, that we shall not find him? will he go unto the dispersed among the Gentiles, and teach the Gentiles? 36 What *manner* of saying is this that he said, 'You shall seek me, and shall not find *me*: and where I am *thither* you cannot come'?"

## II. THE DOCTRINE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

## a. The Division Among the People

37 In the last day, that great *day* of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, "If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink. 38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, 'Out of his inner self shall flow rivers of living water.'" <sup>1</sup> 39 [But this he spoke of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Spirit was not yet *given*; because Jesus was not yet glorified]. 40 Many of the people therefore, when they heard this saying, said, "Of a truth this is the Prophet." 41 Others said, "This is the Christ." But some said, "Shall Christ come out of Galilee?" 42 Hath not the scripture said, That Christ cometh of the seed of David,<sup>2</sup> and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was?"<sup>3</sup> 43 So there was a division among the people because of him. 44 And some of them would have taken him; but no man laid hands on him.

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 12:3.<sup>2</sup> Ps. 132:11.<sup>3</sup> I. Sam. 16:1.



**b. The Report to the Sanhedrin**

45 Then came the officers to the chief priests and Pharisees; and they said unto them, "Why have you not brought him?" 46 The officers answered, "Never man spoke like this man." 47 Then answered they the Pharisees, "Are you also deceived? 48 Have any of the rulers or of the Pharisees believed on him? 49 But this people who knoweth not the law are accursed." 50 Nicodemus saith unto them, he that came to Jesus by night being one of them, 51 "Doth our law judge *any* man, before it hear him, and know what he doeth?" 52 They answered and said unto him, "Art thou also of Galilee? Search and look: for out of Galilee ariseth no prophet."

---

**c. [The Woman Taken in Sin: An Aside]**

53 And every man went unto his own house. 8:1 Jesus went unto the mount of Olives. 2 And early in the morning he came again into the temple, and all the people came unto him; and he sat down and taught them. 3 And the scribes and Pharisees brought unto him a woman taken in adultery; and when they had set her in the midst, 4 They said unto him, "Master, this woman was taken in adultery, in the very act. 5 Now Moses in the law commanded us, that such should be stoned: but what sayest thou?" 6 This they said, tempting him, that they might have to accuse him. But Jesus stooped down, and with *his* finger wrote on the ground, *as though he heard them not*. 7 So when they continued asking him, he lifted himself up, and said unto them, "He that is without sin among you, let him first cast a stone at her." 8 And again he stooped down, and wrote on the ground. 9 And they that heard it, being convicted by *their own* conscience, went out one by one, beginning at the eldest, *even* unto the last: and Jesus was left alone, and the woman standing in the midst. 10 When Jesus had lifted up himself, and saw none but the woman, he said unto her, "Woman, where are those thine accusers? hath no man condemned thee?" 11 She said, "No man, Lord." And Jesus said unto her, "Neither do I condemn thee: go, and sin no more."

---

**III. THE LIGHT OF THE WORLD****a. The Witness of Jesus**

12 Then spoke Jesus again unto them, saying, "I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life." 13 The Pharisees therefore said unto him, "Thou bearest record of thyself; thy record is not true."

*Chapter 7:45-8:13*

14 Jesus answered and said unto them, "Though I bear record of myself, *yet* my record is true: for I know whence I came, and whither I go; but you cannot tell whence I came, and whither I go. 15 You judge after the flesh; I judge no man. 16 And yet if I judge, my judgment is true: for I am not alone, but I and the Father that sent me. 17 It is also written in your law, that the testimony of two men is true. 18 I am one that bear witness of myself, and the Father that sent me beareth witness of me." 19 Then said they unto him, "Where is thy Father?" Jesus answered, "You neither know me, nor my Father: if you had known me, you would have known my Father also." 20 These words spoke Jesus in the treasury, as he taught in the temple: and no man laid hands on him; for his hour was not yet come.

---

#### b. The Forecast of the Crucifixion

21 Then said Jesus again unto them, "I go my way, and you shall seek me, and shall die in your sins: whither I go, you cannot come." 22 Then said the Jews, "Will he kill himself?" because he saith, "Whither I go, you cannot come." 23 And he said unto them, "You are from beneath; I am from above: you are of this world; I am not of this world. 24 I said therefore unto you, that you shall die in your sins: for if you believe not that I am *he*, you shall die in your sins." 25 Then said they unto him, "Who art thou?" And Jesus saith unto them, "Even *the same* that I said unto you from the beginning. 26 I have many things to say and to judge of you: but he that sent me is true; and I speak to the world those things that I have heard of him." 27 They understood not that he spoke to them of the Father. 28 Then said Jesus unto them, "When you have lifted up the Son of man, then shall you know that I am *he*, and *that* I do nothing of myself; but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things. 29 And he that sent me is with me: and the Father hath not left me alone; for I do always those things that please him." 30 As he spoke these words, many believed on him.

---

#### c. The Witness of the Father

31 Then said Jesus to those Jews that believed on him, "If you continue in my word, *then* are you my disciples indeed; 32 and you shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free." 33 They answered him, "We are Abraham's seed, and were never in bondage to any man: how sayest thou, 'You shall be made free?'" 34 Jesus answered them, "Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin. 35 And the servant abideth not in the house for ever: *but* the Son

*Chapter 8:14-35*

abideth ever. 36 If the Son therefore shall make you free, you shall be free indeed. 37 I know that you are Abraham's seed; but you seek to kill me, because my word hath no place in you. 38 I speak that which I have seen with my Father: and you do that which you have seen with your father." 39 They answered and said unto him, "Abraham is our father." Jesus saith unto them, "If you were Abraham's children, you would do the works of Abraham. 40 But now you seek to kill me, a man that hath told you the truth, which I have heard of God: this did not Abraham. 41 You do the deeds of your Father." Then said they to him, "We were not born of fornication; we have one Father, *even* God." 42 Jesus said unto them, "If God were your Father, you would love me: for I proceeded forth and came from God; neither came I of myself, but he sent me. 43 Why do you not understand my speech? even because you cannot hear my word. 44 You are of *your* father the devil, and the lusts of your father you will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it. 45 And because I tell *you* the truth, you believe me not. 46 Which of you convinceth me of sin? And if I say the truth, why do you not believe me? 47 He that is of God heareth God's words: you therefore hear *them* not, because you are not of God." 48 Then answered the Jews, and said unto him, "Say we not well that thou art a Samaritan, and hast a devil?" 49 Jesus answered, "I have not a devil; but I honour my Father, and you dishonour me. 50 And I seek not my own glory: there is one that seeketh and judgeth. 51 Verily, verily, I say unto you, If a man keep my saying, he shall never see death." 52 Then said the Jews unto him, "Now we know that thou hast a devil. Abraham is dead, and the prophets; and thou sayest, 'If a man keep my sayings, he shall never taste of death.' 53 Art thou greater than our Father Abraham, who is dead? and the prophets are dead: whom makest thou thyself?" 54 Jesus answered, "If I honour myself, my honour is nothing: it is my Father that honoureth me; of whom you say, that he is your God: 55 yet you have not known him; but I know him: and if I should say, I know him not, I shall be a liar like unto you, but I know him, and keep his saying. 56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad." 57 Then said the Jews unto him, "Thou art not yet fifty years old, and hast thou seen Abraham?" 58 Jesus said unto them, "Verily, verily, I say unto you, 'Before Abraham was, I am.'" 59 Then took they up stones to cast at him: but Jesus hid himself, and went out of the temple, going through the midst of them, and so passed by.



#### §4. THE HEALING OF THE MAN BORN BLIND

##### THE TRUE KINGDOM OF GOD

###### a. The Healing of the Blind Man on the Sabbath

9:1 And as *Jesus* passed by, he saw a man who was blind from *his* birth. 2 And his disciples asked him, saying, "Master, who did sin, this man, or his parents, that he was born blind?" 3 *Jesus* answered, "Neither hath this man sinned, nor his parents: but that the works of God should be made manifest in him. 4 I must work the works of him that sent me, while it is day: the night cometh, when no man can work. 5 As long as I am in the world, I am the light of the world." 6 When he had thus spoken, he spat on the ground, and made clay of the spittle, and he anointed the eyes of the blind man with the clay, 7 and said unto him, "Go, wash in the pool of Siloam" [which is by interpretation, Sent]. He went his way therefore, and washed, and came seeing. 8 The neighbors therefore, and they that before had seen him that was blind, said, "Is not this he that sat and begged?" 9 Some said, "This is he:" others said, "He is like him:" but he said, "I am *he*." 10 Therefore said they unto him, "How were thine eyes opened?" 11 He answered and said, "A man that is called *Jesus* made clay, and anointed my eyes, and said unto me, 'Go to the pool of Siloam, and wash:' and I went and washed, and I received sight." 12 Then said they unto him, "Where is he?" He said, "I know not."

---

###### b. The Complaint of the Jews

13 They brought to the Pharisees him that aforetime was blind. 14 And it was the sabbath day when *Jesus* made the clay, and opened his eyes. 15 Then again the Pharisees also asked him how he received his sight. He said unto them, "He put clay upon my eyes, and I washed, and do see." 16 Therefore said some of the Pharisees, "This man is not of God, because he keepeth not the sabbath day." Others said, "How can a man that is a sinner do such miracles?" And there was a division among them. 17 They said unto the blind man again, "What sayest thou of him, that he hath opened thine eyes?" He said, "He is a prophet." 18 But the Jews did not believe concerning him, that he had been blind, and receiveth his sight, until they called the parents of him that had received his sight. 19 And they asked them, saying, "Is this your son, who you say was born blind? How then doth he now see?" 20 His parents answered them and said, "We know that this is our son, and that he was born blind: 21 but by what means he now seeth, we know not; or who hath opened his eyes, we know not. He is of age;

*Chapter 9:1-21*



ask him: he shall speak for himself." 22 These *words* spoke his parents, because they feared the Jews: for the Jews had agreed already, that if any man did confess that he was Christ, he should be put out of the synagogue. 23 Therefore said his parents, "He is of age: ask him." 24 Then again called they the man that was blind, and said unto him, "Give God the praise: we know that this man is a sinner." 25 He answered and said, "Whether he be a sinner *or no*, I know not: one thing I know, that, whereas I was blind, now I see." 26 Then said they to him again, "What did he do to thee? How opened he thine eyes?" 27 He answered them, "I have told you already, and you did not hear: wherefore would you hear *it* again? Will you also be his disciples?" 28 Then they reviled him, and said, "Thou art his disciple; but we are Moses' disciples. 29 We know that God spoke unto Moses: *as for this fellow*, we know not from whence he is." 30 The man answered and said unto them, "Why herein is a marvellous thing, that you know from whence he is, and *yet* he hath opened my eyes. 31 Now we know that God heareth not sinners: but if any man be a worshipper of God, and doeth his will, him he heareth. 32 Since the world began, was it not heard that any man opened the eyes of one that was born blind. 33 If this man were not of God, he could do nothing." 34 They answered and said unto him, "Thou wast altogether born in sin, and dost thou teach us?" And they cast him out.

#### c. The Condemnation of the Jews

35 Jesus heard that they had cast him out; and when he had found him, he said unto him, "Dost thou believe on the Son of God?" 36 He answered and said, "Who is he, Lord, that I might believe on him?" 37 And Jesus said unto him, "Thou hast both seen him, and it is he that talketh to thee." 38 he said "Lord, I believe." And he worshipped him. 39 And Jesus said "For judgment I am come into this world, that they that see not might see; and that they that see might be made blind." 40 And *some* of the Pharisees who were with him heard these words and said unto him, "Are we blind also?" 41 Jesus said unto them, "If you were blind, you should have no sin: but now you say, 'We see;' therefore your sin remaineth."

## §5. THE PARABLE OF THE GOOD SHEPHERD

### THE KINGDOM OF GOD CONCLUDED

#### a. The Sheepfold and the Shepherd

10:1 "Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold, but climbeth up some other way,

*Chapter 9:22-10:1*

the same is a thief and a robber. 2 But he that entereth in by the door is the shepherd of the sheep. 3 To him the porter openeth; and the sheep hear his voice, and he calleth his own sheep by name, and leadeth them out. 4 And when he putteth forth his own sheep, he goeth before them, and the sheep follow him: for they know his voice. 5 And a stranger will they not follow, but will flee from him: for they know not the voice of strangers." 6 This parable spoke Jesus unto them: but they understood not what things they were which he spoke unto them.

---

#### b. The Voluntary Sacrifice

7 Then said Jesus unto them again, "Verily, verily, I say unto you, I am the door of the sheep. 8 All that ever came before me are thieves and robbers: but the sheep did not hear them. 9 I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture. 10 The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have *it* more abundantly. 11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep. 12 But he that is a hireling, and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep. 13 The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling, and careth not for the sheep. 14 I am the good shepherd, and know *my* sheep, and am known of mine. 15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep. 16 And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold *and* one shepherd. 17 Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life, that I might take it again. 18 No man taketh it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This commandment have I received of my Father."

---

#### c. The Division among the Jews

19 There was a division therefore again among the Jews for these sayings. 20 And many of them said, "He hath a devil, and is mad; why hear ye him?" 21 Others said, "These are not the words of him that hath a devil. Can a devil open the eyes of the blind?"

---

#### d. The Attempt to Stone Jesus

22 And it was at Jerusalem the feast of dedication, and it was winter. 23 And Jesus walked in the temple in Solomon's

*Chapter 10:2-23*

porch. 24 Then came the Jews round about him, and said unto him, "How long dost thou make us to doubt? If thou be the Christ, tell us plainly." 25 Jesus answered them, "I told you, and you believed not: the works that I do in my Father's name, they bear witness of me. 26 But you believe not, because you are not of my sheep, as I said unto you. 27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me: 28 and I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any *man* pluck them out of my hand. 29 My Father, who gave *them* unto me, is greater than all; and no *man* is able to pluck *them* out of my Father's hand. 30 I and *my* Father are one." 31 Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him. 32 Jesus answered them, "Many good works have I showed you from my Father; for which of those works do you stone me?" 33 The Jews answered him, "For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, makest thyself God." 34 Jesus answered them, "Is it not written in your law, 'I said, You are gods'?<sup>1</sup> 35 If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken; 36 say ye of him, whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world, 'Thou blasphemest;' because I said, 'I am the Son of God'? 37 If I do not the works of my Father, believe me not. 38 But if I do, though you believe me not, believe the works: that you may know, and believe, that the Father *is* in me, and I in him." 39 Therefore they sought again to take him: but he escaped out of their hand.

## §6. THE RAISING OF LAZARUS AT BETHANY

### THE DOCTRINE OF THE RESURRECTION

#### a. The Sojourn Beyond the Jordan

40 And *he* went away again beyond the Jordan into the place where John at first baptized; and there he abode. 41 And many resorted unto him, and said, "John did no miracle: but all things that John spoke of this man were true." 42 And many believed on him there.

#### b. The Call of Jesus to Bethany

11:1 Now a certain *man* was sick, *named* Lazarus, of Bethany, the town of Mary and her sister Martha. 2 [It was *that* Mary who anointed the Lord with ointment, and wiped his feet with her hair, whose brother Lazarus was sick]. 3 Therefore his sisters sent unto him, saying, "Lord, behold, he whom thou

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 82:6.



lovest is sick." 4 When Jesus heard *that*, he said, "This sickness is not unto death, but for the glory of God, that the Son of God might be glorified thereby." 5 Now Jesus loved Martha, and her sister, and Lazarus. 6 When he heard therefore that he was sick, he abode two days still in the same place where he was. 7 Then after that he saith to *his* disciples, "Let us go into Judæa again." 8 *His* disciples say unto him, "Master, the Jews of late sought to stone thee; and goest thou thither again?" 9 Jesus answered, "Are there not twelve hours in the day? If any man walk in the day, he stumbleth not, because he seeth the light of this world. 10 But if a man walk in the night, he stumbleth, because there is no light in him." 11 These things said he: and after that he saith unto them, "Our friend Lazarus sleepeth; but I go, that I may wake him out of sleep." 12 Then said his disciples, "Lord, if he sleep, he shall do well." 13 Howbeit Jesus spoke of his death: but they thought that he had spoken of taking rest in sleep. 14 Then said Jesus unto them plainly, "Lazarus is dead. 15 And I am glad for your sakes *that* I was not there, to the intent you may believe; nevertheless let us go unto him." 16 Then said Thomas, who is called Didymus, unto his fellow-disciples, "Let us also go, that we may die with him."

---

#### c. The Raising of Lazarus from the Dead

17 Then when Jesus came, he found that he had *lain* in the grave four days already. 18 Now Bethany was nigh unto Jerusalem, about fifteen furlongs off: 19 and many of the Jews came to Mary and Martha, to comfort them concerning their brother. 20 Then Martha, as soon as she heard that Jesus was coming, went and met him: but Mary sat *still* in the house. 21 Then said Martha unto Jesus, "Lord, if thou hadst been here, my brother had not died. 22 But I know, that even now, whatsoever thou wilt ask of God, God will give *it* thee. 23 Jesus saith unto her, "Thy brother shall rise again." 24 Martha saith unto him, "I know that he shall rise again in the resurrection at the last day." 25 Jesus said unto her, "I am the resurrection and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live: 26 and whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this?" 27 She saith unto him, "Yea, Lord: I believe that thou art the Christ, the Son of God, which should come into the world." 28 And when she had so said, she went her way, and called Mary her sister secretly, saying, "The Master is come, and calleth for thee." 29 As soon as she heard *that* she arose quickly, and came unto him. 30 Now Jesus was not yet come into the town, but was in the place where Martha met him. 31 The Jews then who were with her in the house,

*Chapter 11:4-31*



and comforted her, when they saw Mary, that she rose up hastily and went out, followed her, saying, "She goeth unto the grave to weep there." 32 Then when Mary was come where Jesus was, and saw him, she fell down at his feet, saying unto him, "Lord, if thou hadst been here, my brother had not died." 33 When Jesus therefore saw her weeping, and the Jews also weeping who came with her, he groaned in the spirit, and was troubled, 34 and said, "Where have you laid him?" They said unto him, "Lord, come and see." 35 Jesus wept. 36 Then said the Jews, "Behold how he loved him!" 37 And some of them said, "Could not this man, who opened the eyes of the blind, have caused that even this man should not have died?" 38 Jesus therefore again groaning in himself cometh to the grave. It was a cave, and a stone lay upon it. 39 Jesus said, "Take ye away the stone." Martha, the sister of him who was dead, saith unto him, "Lord, by this time he stinketh: for he hath been *dead* four days." 40 Jesus saith unto her, "Said I not unto thee, that, if thou wouldst believe, thou shouldest see the glory of God?" 41 Then they took away the stone *from the place* where the dead was laid. And Jesus lifted up *his* eyes, and said, "Father, I thank thee that thou hast heard me. 42 And I knew that thou hearest me always: but because of the people who stand by I said *it*, that they may believe that thou hast sent me." 43 And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, "Lazarus, come forth." 44 And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with grave clothes: and his face was bound about with a napkin. Jesus saith unto them, "Loose him, and let him go."

---

#### d. The Report to the Authorities

45 Then many of the Jews who came to Mary, and had seen the things that Jesus did, believed on him. 46 But some of them went their ways to the Pharisees, and told them what things Jesus had done.

---

#### e. The Action of the Sanhedrin

47 Then gathered the chief priests and the Pharisees a council, and said, "What do we? for this man doeth many miracles. 48 If we let him thus alone, all *men* will believe on him: and the Romans shall come and take away both our place and nation." 49 And one of them, *named* Caiaphas, being the high priest that same year, said unto them, "You know nothing at all, 50 nor consider that it is expedient for us, that one man should die for the people, and that the whole nation perish not." 51 And this spoke he not of himself: but being high priest that year, he prophesied

*Chapter 11:32-51*

that Jesus should die for that nation; 52 and not for that nation only, but that also he should gather together in one the children of God who were scattered abroad. 53 Then from that day forth they took counsel together for to put him to death.

---

## §7. THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY INTO JERUSALEM

### I. THE STATE OF OPINION IN JERUSALEM

#### The Sojourn of Jesus at Ephraim

54 Jesus therefore walked no more openly among the Jews; but went thence unto a country near to the wilderness, into a city called Ephraim, and there continued with his disciples. 55 And the Jews' passover was nigh at hand: and many went out of the country up to Jerusalem before the passover, to purify themselves. 56 Then sought they for Jesus, and spoke among themselves, as they stood in the temple, "What think ye, that he will not come to the feast?" 57 Now both the chief priests and the pharisees had given a commandment, that, if any knew where he was, he should show *it*, that they might take him.

---

### II. THE ARRIVAL OF JESUS AT BETHANY

#### a. The Anointing of Jesus

12:1 Then Jesus six days before the passover came to Bethany, where Lazarus was who had been dead, whom he raised from the dead. 2 There they made him a supper; and Martha served: but Lazarus was one of them that sat at the table with him. 3 Then Mary took a pound of ointment of spikenard, very costly, and anointed the feet of Jesus, and wiped his feet with her hair: and the house was filled with the odour of the ointment. 4 Then said one of his disciples, Judas Iscariot, Simon's *son*, who should betray him, 5 "Why was not this ointment sold for three hundred pence, and given to the poor?" 6 This he said, not that he cared for the poor; but because he was a thief, and had the bag, and bare what was put therein. 7 Then Jesus said, "Let her alone: against the day of my burying hath she kept this. 8 For the poor you have always with you; but me you have not always."

---

#### b. The Action against Lazarus

9 Many people of the Jews therefore knew that he was there, and they came not for Jesus' sake only, but that they might see Lazarus also, whom he had raised from the dead. 10 But the

*Chapter 11:52-12:10*

chief priests consulted that they might put Lazarus to death; 11 because that by reason of him many of the Jews went away, and believed on Jesus.

### III. THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY INTO THE CITY

#### a. The Later Belief of the Disciples

12 On the next day many people that were come to the feast, when they heard that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem, 13 took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried:

\* \* \*

“Hosanna!

Blessed is the King of Israel that cometh  
in the name of the Lord!”<sup>1</sup>

\*

14 And Jesus when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written. 15 “Fear not, daughter of Zion: behold, thy King cometh, sitting on an ass’s colt.”<sup>2</sup> 16 These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Jesus was glorified then remembered they that these things were written of him, and that they had done these things unto him. 17 The people therefore that were with him when he called Lazarus out of the grave, and raised him from the dead, bare record. 18 For this cause also the people met him, for they had heard that he had done this miracle. 19 The Pharisees therefore said among themselves, “Perceive ye how ye prevail nothing? behold, the world is gone after him.”

#### b. The Belief of the Gentiles

20 And there were certain Greeks among them that came up to worship at the feast: 21 The same came therefore to Philip, who was of Bethsaida of Galilee, and desired him, saying, “Sir, we would see Jesus.” 22 Philip cometh and telleth Andrew: and again Andrew and Philip tell Jesus. 23 And Jesus answered them, saying, “The Hour is come, that the Son of man should be glorified. 24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except a corn of wheat fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone: but if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit. 25 He that loveth his life shall lose it; and he that hateth his life in this world shall keep it unto life eternal. 26 If any man serve me, let him follow me; and where I am, there shall also my servant be: if any man serve me, him will *my* Father honour. 27 Now is my soul troubled; and what shall I say? Father, save me from this hour: but for

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 118:25.

<sup>2</sup> Zech. 9:9.

this cause came I unto this hour. 28 Father, glorify thy name." Then came there a voice from heaven, *saying*, "I have both glorified *it*, and will glorify *it* again." 29 The people therefore that stood by, and heard *it*, said that it thundered: others said, "An angel spoke to him." 30 Jesus answered and said, "This voice came not because of me, but for your sakes. 31 Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out. 32 And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all *men* unto me." 33 This he said, signifying what death he should die. 34 The people answered him, "We have heard out of the law that Christ abideth for ever: and how sayest thou, 'The Son of man must be lifted up'? who is this Son of man?" 35 Then said Jesus unto them, "Yet a little while is the light with you. Walk while you have the light, lest darkness come upon you: for he that walketh in darkness knoweth not whither he goeth. 36 While you have the light, believe in the light, that you may become the children of light."

### c. The Disbelief of the Jews

These things spoke Jesus, and departed, and did hide himself from them. 37 But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him: 38 that the saying of Isaiah the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spoke:

\* \* \*

"Lord, who hath believed our report?  
And to whom hath the arm of the Lord  
been revealed?"<sup>1</sup>

\*

39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Isaiah said again:

\* \* \*

40 "He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened  
their heart;  
That they should not see with *their* eyes,  
nor understand with *their* heart,  
And be converted,  
And I should heal them."<sup>2</sup>

\*

41 These things said Isaiah, when he saw his glory, and spoke of him. 42 Nevertheless among the chief rulers also many believed on him; not because of the Pharisees they did not confess *him*, lest they should be put out of the synagogue: 43 for they loved the praise of men more than the praise of God.

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 53:1.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. 6:10.



### **The Second Summary**

44 Jesus cried and said:

\* \* \*

"He that believeth on me, believeth not on me,  
but on him that sent me.

\*

45 And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me.

\*

46 I am come a light into the world, that whoso-  
ever believeth on me should not abide in darkness.

\*

47 And if any man hear my words, and believe  
not, I judge him not: for I came not to judge the  
world, but to save the world.

\*

48 He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my  
words, hath one that judgeth him: the word that  
I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the  
last day.

\*

49 For I have not spoken of myself; but the  
Father who sent me, he gave me a commandment,  
what I should say, and what I should speak.

\*

50 And I know that his commandment is life  
everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as  
the Father said unto me, so I speak."



## Part Three

### JESUS THE PRIEST OF THE PEOPLE

---

#### §1. THE LAST SUPPER WITH THE APOSTLES

##### THE HUMILITY OF JESUS

###### a. The Washing of the Apostles' Feet

Now before the feast of the passover, when Jesus knew that his hour was come that he should depart out of this world unto the Father, having loved his own that were in the world, he loved them unto the end. 2 And supper being ended, the devil now put into the heart of Judas Iscariot, Simon's *son*, to betray him; 3 Jesus knowing that the Father had given all things into his hands, and that he was come from God, and went to God; 4 he riseth from the supper, and laid aside his garments; and took a towel, and girded himself. 5 After that he poureth water into a basin, and began to wash the disciples' feet, and to wipe *them* with the towel wherewith he was girded. 6 Then cometh he to Simon Peter: and Peter saith unto him, "Lord, dost thou wash my feet?" 7 Jesus answered and said unto him, "What I do thou knowest not now; but thou shalt know hereafter." 8 Peter saith unto him, "Thou shalt never wash my feet." Jesus answered him, "If I wash thee not, thou hast no part with me." 9 Simon Peter saith unto him, "Lord, not my feet only, but also *my hands and my head*." 10 Jesus saith to him, "He that is washed needeth not save to wash his feet, but is clean every whit: and you are clean, but not all." 11 For he knew who should betray him; therefore said he, "You are not all clean."

---

###### b. The Forecast of the Betrayal

12 So after he had washed their feet, and had taken his garments, and was set down again, he said unto them, "Know ye what I have done to you? 13 You call me Master and Lord; and you say well; for so I am. 14 If I then, *your* Lord and Master, have washed your feet; you also ought to wash one another's feet. 15 For I have given you an example, that you should do as I have done to you. 16 Verily, verily, I say unto you, The servant is not greater than his lord; neither he that is sent greater

than he that sent him. 17 If you know these things, happy are you if you do them. 18 I speak not of you all: I know whom I have chosen: but that the scripture might be fulfilled:

\* \* \*

'He that eateth bread with me  
Hath lifted up his heel against me.'"<sup>1</sup>

\*

19 Now I tell you before it come, that when it is come to pass, you may believe that I am *he*. 20 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that receiveth whom I send receiveth me; and he that receiveth me receiveth him that sent me."

#### c. The Departure of Judas from the Room

21 When Jesus had thus said, he was troubled in spirit, and testified, and said, "Verily, verily, I say unto you, that one of you shall betray me." 22 Then the disciples looked one on another, doubting of whom he spoke. 23 Now there was leaning on Jesus' bosom one of his disciples, whom Jesus loved. 24 Simon Peter therefore beckoned to him, that he should ask who it should be of whom he spoke. 25 He then lying on Jesus' breast saith unto him, "Lord, who is it?" 26 Jesus answered, "He it is, to whom I shall give a sop, when I have dipped *it*." And when he had dipped the sop, he gave *it* to Judas Iscariot, *the son* of Simon. 27 And after the sop Satan entered into him. Then said Jesus unto him, "That thou doest do quickly." 28 Now no man at the table knew for what intent he spoke this unto him. 29 For some of *them* thought, because Judas had the bag, that Jesus had said unto him, Buy *those things* that we have need of for the feast; or, that he should give something to the poor. 30 He then having received the sop went immediately out: and it was night.

## §2. THE PROMISE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

### THE FORECAST OF THE ASCENSION AND SECOND COMING

#### a. The Glory of the Son of Man

31 Therefore, when he was gone out, Jesus said, "Now is the Son of man glorified, and God is glorified in him. 32 If God be glorified in him, God shall also glorify him in himself, and shall straightway glorify him. 33 Little children, yet a little while I am with you. You shall seek me: and as I said unto the

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 41:9.



Jews, 'Whither I go you cannot come;'<sup>1</sup> so now I say to you. 34 A new commandment I give unto you, That you love one another; as I have loved you, that you also love one another. 35 By this shall all *men* know that you are my disciples, if you have love one to another."

---

**b. The Forecast of Peter's Denial**

36 Simon Peter said unto him, "Lord, whither goest thou?" Jesus answered him, "Whither I go, thou canst not follow me now; but thou shalt follow me afterwards." 37 Peter said unto him, "Lord, why cannot I follow thee now? I will lay down my life for thy sake." 38 Jesus answered him, "Wilt thou lay down thy life for my sake? Verily, verily, I say unto thee, The cock shall not crow, till thou hast denied me thrice."

---

**c. The Forecast of Jesus' Departure**

14:1 "Let not your heart be troubled: you believe in God, believe also in me. 2 In my Father's house are many mansions: if *it were* not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you. 3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, *there* you may be also. 4 And whither I go you know, and the way you know." 5 Thomas saith unto him, "Lord, we know not whither thou goest; and how can we know the way?" 6 Jesus saith unto him, "I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me. 7 If you had known me, you should have known my Father also: and from henceforth you know him, and have seen him." 8 Philip saith unto him, "Lord, show us the Father, and it sufficeth us." 9 Jesus saith unto him, "Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou *then*, 'Show us the Father'? 10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you, I speak not of myself; but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works. 11 Believe me that I *am* in the Father, and the Father in me; or else believe me for the very works' sake. 12 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater *works* than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father. 13 And whatsoever you shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. 14 If you shall ask any thing in my name, I will do *it*."

---

<sup>1</sup> John 7:34.

#### d. The Promise of the Holy Spirit

15 "If you love me, keep my commandments. 16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; 17 *even* the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. 18 I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you. 19 Yet a little while, and the world seeth me no more; but you see me; because I live, you shall live also. 20 At that day you shall know that I *am* in the Father, and ye in me, and I in you. 21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him." 22 Judas saith unto him, not Iscariot, "Lord, how is it that thou wilt manifest thyself unto us, and not unto the world?" 23 Jesus answered and said unto him, "If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him. 24 He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which you hear is not mine, but ~~the~~ Father's who sent me."

#### e. The Ministry of the Holy Spirit

25 "These things have I spoken unto you, being *yet* present with you. 26 But the Comforter, *which is* the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you. 27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid. 28 You have heard how I said unto you, I go away, and come *again* unto you. If you loved me, you would rejoice, because I said, 'I go unto the Father:' for my Father is greater than I. 29 And now I have told you before it come to pass, that when it is come to pass, you might believe. 30 Hereafter I will not talk much with you: for the prince of this world cometh, and hath nothing in me. 31 But that the world may know that I love the Father; and as the Father gave me commandment, even so I do. Arise, let us go hence."

### §3. THE PARABLE OF THE VINE

#### THE FATHER, THE SON, AND THE HOLY SPIRIT

##### a. The Vine and the Branches

15:1 "I am the true vine, and my Father is the husbandman. 2 Every branch in me that beareth

*Chapter 14:15-15:2*

not fruit he taketh away: and every *branch* that beareth fruit, he purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit. 3 Now you are clean through the word that I have spoken unto you. 4 Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine, no more can you, except you abide in me. 5 I am the vine; you *are* the branches. He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me, you can do nothing. 6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast *them* into the fire, and they are burned. 7 If you abide in me, and my words abide in you, you shall ask what you will, and it shall be done unto you. 8 Herein is my Father glorified, that you bear much fruit; so shall you be my disciples.

---

#### b. The Commandment of Brotherly Love

9 "As the Father hath loved me, so have I loved you: continue ye in my love. 10 If you keep my commandments, you shall abide in my love, even as I have kept my Father's commandments, and abide in his love. 11 These things have I spoken unto you, that my joy might remain in you, and *that* your joy might be full. 12 This is my commandment, That you love one another, as I have loved you. 13 Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends. 14 You are my friends, if you do whatsoever I command you. 15 Henceforth I call you not servants; for the servant knoweth not what his lord doeth: but I have called you friends; for all things that I have heard from my Father I have made known unto you. 16 You have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that you should go and bring forth fruit, and *that* your fruit should remain: that whatsoever you shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you. 17 These things I command you, that you love one another."

---

#### c. The Hatred of the World

18 "If the world hate you, you know that it hated me before *it* hated you. 19 If you were of

the world, the world would love his own: but because you are not of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, therefore the world hateth you. 20 Remember the word that I said unto you, 'The servant is not greater than his lord.' If they have persecuted me, they will also persecute you; if they have kept my sayings they will keep yours also. 21 But all these things will they do unto you for my name's sake, because they know not him that sent me. 22 If I had not come and spoken unto them, they had not had sin: but now they have no cloke for their sin. 23 He that hateth me hateth my Father also. 24 If I had not done among them the works that no other man did, they had not had sin: but now have they both seen and hated both me and my Father. 25 But *this cometh to pass*, that the word might be fulfilled that is written in their law, 'They hated me without a cause.'<sup>1</sup> 26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, *even* the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me. 27 And you also shall bear witness, because you have been with me from the beginning. 16:1 These things have I spoken unto you that you should not be offended. 2 They shall put you out of the synagogues: yea, the time cometh, that whosoever killeth you will think that he doeth God service. 3 And these things will they do, because they have not known the Father, nor me. 4 But these things have I told you, that when the time shall come, you may remember that I told you of them. And these things I said not unto you at the beginning, because I was with you."

---

#### d. The Ministry of the Holy Spirit

5 "But now I go my way to him that sent me; and none of you asketh me, Whither goest thou? 6 But because I have said these things unto you, sorrow hath filled your heart. 7 Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 35:19.



him unto you. 8 And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment; 9 of sin, because they believe not on me; 10 of righteousness, because I go to my Father, and you see me no more; 11 of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged. 12 I have yet many things to say unto you, but you cannot bear them now. 13 Howbeit, when he the Spirit of truth is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he shall show you things to come. 14 For he shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall show *it* unto you. 15 All things that the Father hath are mine: therefore said I, that he shall take of mine, and show it unto you. 16 A little while, and you shall not see me: and again, a little while, and you shall see me, because I go to my Father."

---

## II. THE REPLY OF JESUS TO THE DISCIPLES

### a. The Questioning among the Apostles

17 Then said *some* of his disciples among themselves, "What is this that he saith unto us, 'A little while, and you shall not see me: and again, a little while, and you shall see me:' and, 'Because I go to the Father'?" 18 They said therefore, "What is this that he saith, 'A little while'? we cannot tell what he saith."

---

### b. The Assurance of the Second Coming

19 Now Jesus knew that they were desirous to ask him, and said unto them, "Do you inquire among yourselves of that I said, 'A little while, and you shall not see me: and again, a little while, and you shall see me'? 20 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that you shall weep and lament, but the world shall rejoice: and you shall be sorrowful, but your sorrow shall be turned into joy. 21 A woman when she is in a travail hath sorrow, because her hour is come: but as soon as she is delivered of the child, she remembereth no more the anguish, for joy that a man is born into the world. 22 And you now therefore have sorrow: but I will see you again, and your heart shall rejoice, and your joy no man taketh from you. 23 And in that day you shall ask me nothing. Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whatsoever you shall ask the Father in my name, he will give *it* you. 24 Hitherto have you asked nothing in my name: ask, and you shall receive, that your joy may be full."

### c. The Victory Over the World

25 "These things have I spoken unto you in proverbs: but the time cometh, when I shall no more speak unto you in proverbs, but I shall show you plainly of the Father. 26 At that day you shall ask in my name: and I say not unto you, that I will pray the Father for you: 27 for the Father himself loveth you, because you have loved me, and have believed that I came out from God. 28 I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world: again, I leave the world, and go to the Father." 29 His disciples said unto him, "Lo, now speakest thou plainly, and speakest no proverb. 30 Now we are sure that thou knowest all things, and needest not that any man should ask thee: by this we believe that thou camest forth from God." 31 Jesus answered them, "Do you now believe? 32 Behold, the hour cometh, yea, is now come, that you shall be scattered, every man to his own, and shall leave me alone: and yet I am not alone, because the Father is with me. 33 These things have I spoken unto you, that in me you might have peace. In the world you shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world."

## §4. THE PRAYER OF INTERCESSION

### THE MASTER, THE APOSTLES, AND THE CHURCH

#### a. The Prayer of Jesus for Himself

17:1 These words spoke Jesus, and lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said:

\* \* \*

"Father, the hour is come: glorify thy Son, that thy Son also may glorify thee: 2 as thou hast given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him. 3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent. 4 I have glorified thee on the earth: I have finished the work that thou gavest me to do. 5 And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was."

#### b. The Prayer for the Disciples

6 "I have manifested thy name unto the men whom thou gavest me out of the world: thine they were, and thou gavest them me; and they have kept

*Chapter 16:25-17:6*

thy word. 7 Now they have known that all things whatsoever thou hast given me are of thee. 8 For I have given unto them the words that thou gavest me; and they have received *them*, and have known surely that I came out from thee, and they have believed that thou didst send me. 9 I pray for them: I pray not for the world, but for them that thou hast given me; for they are thine. 10 And all mine are thine, and thine are mine; and I am glorified in them. 11 And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to thee. Holy Father, keep throughout thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one, as we *are*. 12 While I was with them in the world, I kept them in thy name: those that thou gavest me I have kept and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled. 13 And now I come to thee; and these things I speak in the world, that they might have my joy fulfilled in themselves. 14 I have given them thy word; and the world hath hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. 15 I pray not that thou shouldest take them out of the world, but that thou shouldest keep them from the evil. 16 They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. 17 Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth. 18 As thou hast sent me into the world, even so have I also sent them into the world. 19 And for their sakes I sanctify myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth."

---

#### c. The Prayer for the Church

20 "Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also that shall believe on me through their word; 21 that they all may be one; as thou, Father, *art* in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me. 22 And the glory that thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one: 23 I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me. 24 Father, I will that they also, whom thou hast given me, be with me where

I am; that they may behold my glory, which thou hast given me: for thou lovedst me before the foundation of the world. 25 O righteous Father, the world hath not known thee: but I have known thee, and these have known that thou hast sent me. 26 And I have declared unto them thy name, and will declare *it*: that the love wherewith thou hast loved me may be in them, and I in them."

---

## §5. THE BETRAYAL AND CONDEMNATION

### THE OFFENCE OF DISCIPLESHIP

#### a. The Arrest of Jesus in the Garden

18:1 When Jesus had spoken these words, he went forth with his disciples over the brook Cedron, where was a garden, into which he entered, and his disciples. 2 And Judas also, who betrayed him, knew the place: for Jesus oftentimes resorted thither with his disciples. 3 Judas then having received a band of *men* and officers from the chief priests and Pharisees cometh thither with lanterns and torches and weapons. 4 Jesus therefore, knowing all things that should come upon him, went forth, and said unto them, "Whom seek ye?" 5 They answered him, "Jesus of Nazareth." Jesus saith unto them, "I am *he*." And Judas also, who betrayed him, stood with them. 6 As soon as he had said unto them, "I am *he*," they went backward, and fell to the ground. 7 Then asked he them again, "Whom seek ye?" And they said, "Jesus of Nazareth." 8 Jesus answered, "I have told you that I am *he*: if therefore you seek me, let these go their way:" 9 that the saying might be fulfilled which he spoke, "Of them that thou gavest me have I lost none." 10 Simon Peter then having a sword drew it, and smote the high priest's servant, and cut off his right ear. The servant's name was Malchus. 11 Then said Jesus unto Peter, "Put up thy sword into the sheath: the cup which my Father hath given me, shall I not drink it?"

---

#### b. The Delivery of Jesus to the High Priest

12 Then the band and the captain and officers of the Jews took Jesus and bound him, 13 and led him away to Annas first; for he was father in law to Caiaphas, who was high priest that same year. 14 Now Caiaphas was he who gave counsel to the Jews, that it was expedient that one man should die for the people.

Chapter 17:25–18:14



### c. The First Denial of Peter

15 And Simon Peter followed Jesus, and *so did* another disciple: that disciple was known unto the high priest, and went in with Jesus into the palace of the high priest. 16 But Peter stood at the door without. Then went out that other disciple, who was known unto the high priest, and spoke unto her that kept the door, and brought in Peter. 17 Then said the damsel that kept the door unto Peter, "Art thou not also *one* of this man's disciples?" He saith, "I am not." 18 And the servants and the officers stood there, who had made a fire of coals; for it was cold: and they warmed themselves: and Peter stood with them, and warmed himself.

---

## II. THE TRIAL BEFORE THE HIGH PRIEST

### a. The Examination of Jesus

19 The high priest then asked Jesus of his disciples, and of his doctrine. 20 Jesus answered him, "I spoke openly to the world; I ever taught in the synagogue, and in the temple, whither the Jews always resort; and in secret have I said nothing. 21 Why askest thou me? ask them that heard me, what I have said unto them: behold, they know what I said." 22 And when he had thus spoken, one of the officers who stood by struck Jesus with the palm of his hand, saying, "Answerest thou the high priest so?" 23 Jesus answered him, "If I have spoken evil, bear witness of the evil: but if well, why smitest thou me?" 24 Now Annas had sent him bound unto Caiaphas the high priest.

---

### b. The Second and Third Denials of Peter

25 And Simon Peter stood and warmed himself. They said therefore unto him, "Art not thou also *one* of his disciples?" He denied *it*, and said, "I am not." 26 One of the servants of the high priest, being *his* kinsman whose ear Peter cut off saith, "Did not I see thee in the garden with him?" 27 Peter then denied again: and immediately the cock crew.

---

## III. THE TRIAL BEFORE PILATE THE GOVERNOR

### a. The Complaint of the Jews Against Jesus

28 Then led they Jesus from Caiaphas unto the hall of judgment: and it was early; and they themselves went not into the judgment hall, lest they should be defiled; but that they might eat the passover. 29 Pilate then went out unto them, and said,

*Chapter 18:15-29*

"What accusation bring you against this man?" 30 They answered and said unto him, "If he were not a malefactor, we would not have delivered him up unto thee." 31 Then said Pilate unto them, "Take ye him, and judge him according to your law." The Jews therefore said unto him, "It is not lawful for us to put any man to death." 32 that the saying of Jesus might be fulfilled, which he spoke, signifying by what death he should die.

---

#### b. The Examination of Jesus by Pilate

33 Then Pilate entered into the judgment hall again, and called Jesus, and said unto him, "Art thou the King of the Jews?" 34 Jesus answered him, "Sayest thou this thing of thyself, or did others tell it thee of me?" 35 Pilate answered, "Am I a Jew? Thine own nation and the chief priests have delivered thee unto me: what hast thou done?" 36 Jesus answered, "My kingdom is not of this world: if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight, that I should not be delivered to the Jews: but now is my kingdom not from hence." 37 Pilate therefore saith unto him, "Art thou a king then?" Jesus answered, "Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice." 38 Pilate saith unto him, "What is truth?"

---

#### c. The Passover Amnesty for the Jews

And when he had said this, he went out again unto the Jews and saith unto them, "I find in him no fault *at all*." 39 But you have a custom, that I should release unto you one at the passover: will you therefore that I release unto you the King of the Jews?" 40 Then cried they all again, saying, "Not this man, but Barabbas." Now Barabbas was a robber.

---

#### d. The Further Examination and Condemnation of Jesus

19:1 Then Pilate therefore took Jesus, and scourged *him*. 2 And the soldiers platted a crown of thorns, and put *it* on his head, and they put on him a purple robe, 3 and said, "Hail, King of the Jews!" and they smote him with their hands. 4 Pilate therefore went forth again, and saith unto them, "Behold, I bring him forth to you, that you may know that I find no fault in him." 5 Then came Jesus forth, wearing the crown of thorns, and the purple robe. And *Pilate* saith unto them, "Behold the man!" 6 When the chief priests therefore and officers saw him,

*Chapter 18:30-19:6*

they cried out, saying, "Crucify *him*, crucify *him*." Pilate saith unto them, "Take ye him, and crucify *him*: for I find no fault in him." 7 The Jews answered him, "We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God." 8 When Pilate therefore heard that saying, he was the more afraid; 9 and went again into the judgment hall, and saith unto Jesus, "Whence art thou?" But Jesus gave him no answer. 10 Then saith Pilate unto him, "Speakest thou not unto me? knowest thou not that I have power to crucify thee, and have power to release thee?" 11 Jesus answered, "Thou couldest have no power *at all* against me, except it were given thee from above: therefore he that delivered me unto thee hath the greater sin." 12 And from thenceforth Pilate sought to release him: but the Jews cried out, saying, "If thou let this man go, thou art not Cæsar's friend: whosoever maketh himself a king speaketh against Cæsar." 13 When Pilate therefore heard that saying, he brought Jesus forth, and sat down in the judgment seat in a place that is called the Pavement, but in the Hebrew, Gabbatha. 14 And it was the preparation of the passover, and about the sixth hour: and he saith unto the Jews, "Behold your King!" 15 But they cried out, 'Away with *him*, away with *him*, crucify him.'" Pilate saith unto them, "Shall I crucify your king?" The chief priests answered, "We have no king but Cæsar." 16 Then delivered he him therefore unto them to be crucified.

## §6. THE CRUCIFIXION OF JESUS

### THE DEATH AND BURIAL NEAR JERUSALEM

#### a. The Circumstances of the Crucifixion

And they took Jesus, and led *him* away. 17 And he bearing his cross went forth into a place called *the place* of a skull, which is called in the Hebrew, Golgotha: 18 where they crucified him, and two others with him, on either side one, and Jesus in the midst.

\*

19 And Pilate wrote a title, and put *it* on the cross. And the writing was:

\* \* \*

"JESUS OF NAZARETH THE KING OF THE JEWS."

\*

20 This title then read many of the Jews: for the place where Jesus was crucified was nigh to the city: and it was written in Hebrew, and Greek, and Latin. 21 Then said the chief priests of the Jews to Pilate, "Write not, 'The King of the Jews;'" but

Chapter 19:7-21



that he said, 'I am King of the Jews.' " 22 Pilate answered, "What I have written I have written."

\*

23 Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Jesus, took his garments, and made four parts, to every soldier a part; and also *his* coat: now the coat was without seam, woven from the top throughout. 24 They said there among themselves, "Let us not rend it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be:" that the scripture might be fulfilled, which saith:

\* \* \*

"They parted my raiment among them,  
And for my vesture they did cast lots."<sup>1</sup>

\*

These things therefore the soldiers did.

\*

25 Now there stood by the cross of Jesus his mother, and his mother's sister, Mary the *wife* of Cleopas, and Mary Magdalene. 26 When Jesus therefore saw his mother, and the disciple standing by, whom he loved, he saith unto his mother, "Woman, behold thy son!" 27 Then saith he to the disciple, "Behold thy mother!" And from that hour that disciple took her to his own *home*.

\*

28 After this, Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the scripture might be fulfilled, saith, "I thirst."<sup>2</sup> 29 Now there was set a vessel full of vinegar: and they filled a sponge with vinegar, and put it upon hyssop, and put it to his mouth. 30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, "It is finished:" and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

#### b. The Removal of the Bodies

31 The Jews therefore, because it was the Preparation, that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the sabbath day [for that sabbath day was a high day], besought Pilate that their legs might be broken, and *that* they might be taken away. 32 Then came the soldiers, and brake the legs of the first, and of the other that was crucified with him. 33 But when they came to Jesus, and saw that he was dead already, they brake not his legs: 34 but one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came there out blood and water. 35 And he that saw *it* bear record, and his record is true: and he knoweth

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 69:21.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 22:18.



that he saith true, that ye might believe. 36 For these things were done, that the scripture should be fulfilled, "A bone of him shall not be broken."<sup>1</sup> 37 And again another scripture saith, "They shall look on him whom they pierced."<sup>2</sup>

---

#### c. The Burial of Jesus Near the City

38 And after this Joseph of Arimathæa, being a disciple of Jesus, but secretly for fear of the Jews, besought Pilate that he might take away the body of Jesus: and Pilate gave *him* leave. He came therefore, and took the body of Jesus. 39 And there came also Nicodemus, who at first came to Jesus by night, and brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about a hundred pound *weight*. 40 Then took they the body of Jesus, and wound it in linen cloths with the spices, as the manner of the Jews is to bury. 41 Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden; and in the garden a new sepulchre, wherein was never man yet laid. 42 There laid they Jesus therefore because of the Jews' Preparation *day*: for the sepulchre was near at hand.

---

### §7. THE RESURRECTION OF JESUS

#### I. THE RESURRECTION AND APPEARANCE OF JESUS

##### a. The Discovery of the Empty Tomb

20:1 The first *day* of the week cometh Mary Magdalene early when it was yet dark, unto the sepulchre, and seeth the stone taken away from the sepulchre. 2 Then she runneth, and cometh to Simon Peter, and to the other disciple, whom Jesus loved, and saith unto them, "They have taken away the Lord out of the sepulchre, and we know not where they have laid him." 3 Peter therefore went forth, and that other disciple, and came to the sepulchre. 4 So they ran both together: and the other disciple did outrun Peter, and came first to the sepulchre. 5 And stooping down, *and looking in*, saw the linen cloths lying; yet went he not in. 6 Then cometh Simon Peter following him, and went into the sepulchre, and seeth the linen cloths lie, 7 and the napkin, that was about his head, not lying with the linen cloths, but wrapped together in a place by itself. 8 Then went in also that other disciple, who came first to the sepulchre, and he saw, and believed. 9 For as yet they knew not the scripture, that he must rise again from the dead. 10 Then the disciples went away again unto their own home.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 34:20.

<sup>2</sup> Zech. 12:10.

**b. The Appearance to Mary Magdalene**

11 But Mary stood without at the sepulchre weeping: and as she wept, she stooped down, *and looked* into the sepulchre, 12 and seeth two angels in white sitting, the one at the head, and the other at the feet, where the body of Jesus had laid. 13 And they say unto her, "Woman, why weepest thou?" She saith unto them, "Because they have taken away my Lord, and I know not where they have laid him. 14 And when she had thus said, she turned herself back, and saw Jesus standing, and knew not that it was Jesus. 15 Jesus saith unto her, "Woman, why weepest thou? whom seekest thou?" She, supposing him to be the gardener, saith unto him, "Sir, if thou have borne him hence, tell me where thou hast laid him, and I will take him away." 16 Jesus saith unto her, "Mary." She turned herself, and saith unto him, "Rabboni!" [which is to say, Master]. 17 Jesus saith unto her, "Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, 'I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God.'" 18 Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the Lord, and *that* he had spoken these things unto her.

---

**II. THE COMMISSION FOR THE APOSTLES****a. The Proof of the Resurrection**

19 Then the same day at evening, being the first *day* of the week, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled for fear of the Jews, came Jesus and stood in the midst, and saith unto them, "Peace *be* unto you." 20 And when he had so said, he showed unto them his hands and his side. Then were the disciples glad, when they saw the Lord. 21 Then said Jesus to them again, "Peace *be* unto you: as *my* Father hath sent me, even so send I you." 22 And when he had said this, he breathed on *them*, and saith unto them, "Receive ye the Holy Spirit: 23 Whose soever sins you remit, they are remitted unto them; *and* whose soever *sins* you retain, they are retained."

---

**b. The Disbelief of Thomas**

24 But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with them when Jesus came. 25 The other disciples therefore said unto him, "We have seen the Lord." But he saith unto them, "Except I shall see in his hands the print of the nails and put my finger into the print of the nails, and thrust my hands into his side, I will not believe."

Chapter 20:11-25

**c. The Proof of the Resurrection to Thomas**

26 And after eight days again his disciples were within, and Thomas with them: *then* came Jesus, the doors being shut, and stood in the midst, and said, "Peace *be* unto you." 27 Then saith he to Thomas, "Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless, but believing." 28 And Thomas answered and said unto him, "My Lord and my God." 29 Jesus saith unto him, "Thomas, because thou hast seen me, thou hast believed: blessed *are* they that have not seen, and *yet* have believed."

---

**The Third Summary**

30 And many other signs truly did Jesus in the presence of his disciples, that are not written in this book: 31 but these are written, that you might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing you might have life through his name.





## Epilogue

---

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE GOSPEL

#### I. THE GREAT DRAUGHT OF FISHES

##### The Appearance of Jesus at the Sea of Tiberias

After these things Jesus showed himself again to the disciples at the sea of Tiberias; and on this wise showed he *himself*. 2 There were together Simon Peter, and Thomas called Didymus, and Nathanael of Cana in Galilee, and the *sons* of Zebedee, and two other of his disciples. 3 Simon Peter saith unto them, "I go a fishing." They say unto him, "We also go with thee." They went forth, and entered into a ship immediately; and that night they caught nothing. 4 But when the morning was now come, Jesus stood on the shore: but the disciples knew not that it was Jesus. 5 Then Jesus saith unto them, "Children, have you any meat?" They answered him, "No." 6 And he said unto them, "Cast the net on the right side of the ship, and you shall find." They cast therefore, and now they were not able to draw it for the multitude of fishes. 7 Therefore that disciple whom Jesus loved, saith unto Peter, "It is the Lord." Now when Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he girt *his* fisher's coat *unto him* [for he was naked], and did cast himself into the sea. 8 And the other disciples came in a little ship [for they were not far from land, but, as it were, two hundred cubits], dragging the net with fishes. 9 As soon then as they were come to land, they saw a fire of coals there, and fish laid thereon, and bread. 10 Jesus saith unto them, "Bring the fish which you have now caught." 11 Simon Peter went up and drew the net to land full of great fishes, an hundred and fifty and t ree: and for all there were so many, yet was not the net broken. 12 Jesus saith unto them, "Come *and* dine." And none of the disciples durst ask him, Who art thou? knowing that it was the Lord. 13 Jesus then cometh and taketh bread, and giveth them, and fish likewise. 14 This is now the third time that Jesus showed himself to his disciples, after that he was risen from the dead.

---

#### II. THE COMMISSION TO SIMON PETER

##### The Love of Peter for Jesus

15 So when they had dined, Jesus saith to Simon Peter, "Simon, *son* of John, lovest thou me more than these?" He saith

unto him, "Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee." He saith unto him, "Feed my lambs." 16 He saith to him again the second time, "Simon, *son* of John, lovest thou me?" He saith unto him, "Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee." He saith unto him, "Feed my sheep." 17 He saith unto him the third time, "Simon, *son* of John, lovest thou me?" Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, "Lovest thou me?" And he said unto him, "Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love thee." Jesus saith unto him, "Feed my sheep." 18 "Verily, verily, I say unto thee, When thou wast young, thou girdest thyself, and walkest whither thou wouldest: but when thou shalt be old, thou shalt stretch forth thy hands, and another shall gird thee and carry *thee* whither thou wouldest not." 19 This spoke he, signifying by what death he should glorify God. And when he had thus spoken, he saith unto him, "Follow me." 20 Then Peter, turning about, seeth the disciple whom Jesus loved following; who also leaned on his breast at supper, and said, "Lord, who is he that betrayeth thee?" 21 Peter seeing him saith to Jesus, "Lord, and what *shall* this man do?" 22 Jesus saith unto him, "If I will that he tarry till I come, what *is that* to thee? follow thou me." 23 Then went this saying abroad among the brethren that this disciple should not die: yet Jesus said not unto him, He shall not die; but, "If I will that he tarry till I come, what *is that* to thee?" 24 This is the disciple that testifieth of these things, and wrote these things: and we know that his testimony is true.

\*

25 And there are also many other things which Jesus did, the which if they should be written every one, I suppose that even the world itself could not contain the books that should be written. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*

# The Acts of the Apostles





## Part One

# THE COMING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

---

### §1. THE INTRODUCTION

#### I. THE LIFE AND WORK OF JESUS

##### The Promise of the Coming of the Holy Spirit

The former treatise<sup>1</sup> have I made, O Theophilus, of all that Jesus began both to do and teach, 2 until the day in which he was taken up, after that he through the Holy Spirit had given commandment unto the apostles whom he had chosen: 3 to whom also he showed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, being seen of them forty days, and speaking of things pertaining to the kingdom of God: 4 and being assembled together with *them*, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, "*which,*" *said he*, "you have heard of me. 5 For John truly baptized with water; but you shall be baptized with the Holy Spirit not many days hence."

---

#### II. THE GREAT COMMISSION TO THE APOSTLES

##### The Ascension of Jesus Into Heaven

6 When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, "Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?" 7 And he said unto them, "It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power. 8 But you shall receive power, after that the Holy Spirit is come upon you: and you shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judæa, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth." 9 And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight. 10 And while they looked stedfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel; 11 who also said, "Ye men of Galilee, why stand you gazing into heaven? This same Jesus, who is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as you have seen him go into heaven."

---

<sup>1</sup> The Gospel According to Luke. The preface to Luke's gospel is designed to cover the Acts also, the gospel and history being two parts of one work.

## III. THE WAITING APOSTLES IN JERUSALEM

## The Church in the Upper Room

12 Then returned they unto Jerusalem from the mount called Olivet, which is from Jerusalem a sabbath day's journey. 13 And when they were come in, they went up into an upper room, where abode both Peter and James and John and Andrew, Phillip and Thomas, Bartholomew and Matthew, James *the son of Alphæus*, and Simon Zelotes, and Judas *the brother of James*. 14 These all continued with one accord in prayer and supplication, with the women, and Mary the mother of Jesus, and with his brothers.<sup>1</sup>

## §2. THE ORGANIZATION OF APOSTLES

## THE CHOICE OF MATTHIAS AS ONE OF THE TWELVE

## The Prophetic Fate of Judas Iscariot

15 And in those days Peter stood up in the midst of the disciples, and said [The number of names together was about a hundred and twenty]: 16 "*Men and brethren*, this scripture must needs have been fulfilled, which the Holy Spirit by the mouth of David spoke before concerning Judas, who was the guide to them that took Jesus. 17 For he was numbered with us, and had obtained part of this ministry. 18 [Now this man purchased a field with the reward of iniquity; and falling headlong, he burst asunder in the midst, and all his bowels gushed out. 19 And it was known unto all the dwellers at Jerusalem, insomuch as that field is called in their proper tongue, "*Aceldama*," that is to say, The field of blood.] 20 For it is written in the book of Psalms:

\* \* \*

'Let his habitation be desolate,  
And let no man dwell therein:<sup>2</sup>  
And his bishoprick let another take.'<sup>3</sup>

\*

21 Wherefore of these two who have companied with us all the time that the Lord Jesus went in and out among us, 22 beginning from the baptism of John, unto that same day that he was taken up from us, must one be ordained to be a witness with us of his resurrection." 23 And they appointed two, Joseph called Barsabas, who was surnamed Justus, and Matthias. 24 And they prayed, and said, "Thou, Lord, who knowest the hearts of all *men*, show which of these two thou hast chosen, 25 that he may take part of this ministry and apostleship from which Judas by

<sup>1</sup> James, Joseph, Simeon and Judas. Matt. 13:55.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 69:25. <sup>3</sup> Ps. 109:8.

transgression fell, that he might go to his own place." 26 And they gave forth their lots; and the lot fell upon Matthias, and he was numbered with the eleven apostles.

---

### §3. THE BAPTISM OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

#### I. THE FULFILMENT OF THE FATHER'S PROMISE

##### *The Tongues as of Fire Upon the Disciples*

2:1 And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place. 2 And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting. 3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them. 4 And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

---

#### II. THE IMPRESSION UPON THE CITY

##### *The Witness of the Nations*

5 And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven. 6 And when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language. 7 And they were all amazed and marvelled, saying one to another, "Behold, are not all these that speak Galilæans?" 8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born? 9 Parthians and Medes and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judæa and Cappadocia, in Pontus and Asia, 10 Phrygia and Pamphylia, in Egypt and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes, 11 Cretans and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of God." 12 And they were all amazed, and were in doubt, saying one to another, "What meaneth this?" 13 Others mocking said, "These men are full of new wine."

---

#### III. THE ADDRESS OF THE APOSTLE PETER

##### *The Exposition of the Pentecost*

14 But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them:

\*

"Ye men of Judæa, and all ye that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words: 15 For these are not drunken,

*Chapter 1:26-2:15*

as you suppose, seeing it is *but* the third hour of the day. 16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel:

\* \* \*

- 17 'And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God,  
I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh;  
And your sons and your daughters  
shall prophesy,  
And your young men shall see visions,  
And your old men shall dream dreams;  
18 And on my servants and on my hand-maidens  
I will pour out in those days of my Spirit;  
And they shall prophesy;  
19 And I will shew wonders in heaven above,  
And signs in the earth beneath;  
Blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke;  
20 The sun shall be turned into darkness,  
And the moon into blood,  
Before that great and notable day of the  
Lord come;  
21 And it shall come to pass,  
*That* whosoever shall call on the name  
of the Lord,  
Shall be saved.'<sup>1</sup>

\*

22 "Ye men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as you yourselves also know: 23 him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, you have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain: 24 whom God raised up, having loosed the pains of death; because it was not possible that he should be holden of it. 25 For David speaketh concerning him:

\* \* \*

- 'I foresaw the Lord always before my face,  
For he is on my right hand,  
That I should not be moved:  
26 Therefore did my heart rejoice,  
And my tongue was glad;  
Moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope:

---

<sup>1</sup> Joel 2:28f.



- 27 Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell,  
Neither wilt thou suffer thy Holy One to  
see corruption.  
28 Thou hast made known to me the ways of life;  
Thou shalt make me full of joy with  
thy countenance.<sup>1</sup>

\*

29 Men *and* brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day. 30 Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne; 31 he seeing this before spoke of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither did his flesh see corruption. 32 This Jesus hath God raise up, whereof we all are witnesses.

\*

33 "Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit, he hath shed forth this, which you now see and hear. 34 For David has not ascended into heaven; but he saith himself:

\* \* \*

- 'The Lord said unto my Lord,  
Sit thou on my right hand,  
35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.'<sup>2</sup>

\*

36 "Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom you have crucified, both Lord and Christ."

#### IV. THE GREAT AWAKENING IN JERUSALEM

##### The Increase of Three Thousand Disciples

37 Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, "Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?" 38 Then Peter said unto them, "Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. 39 For the promise is unto you, and to your

<sup>1</sup>Ps. 16:8f.

<sup>2</sup>Ps. 110:1.

children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call." 40 And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, "Save yourselves from this untoward generation." 40 Then they that gladly received the word were baptized; and the same day there were added *unto them* about three thousand souls.

---

#### §4. THE NEW LIFE OF THE DISCIPLES

##### THE CHURCH AFTER PENTECOST

###### The Seven-Fold Forecast

42 And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship,

\*

And in the breaking of bread,

\*

And in the prayers.

\*

43 And fear came upon every soul:

\*

And many signs and wonders were done by the apostles.

\*

44 And all that believed were together, and had all things common; 45 and sold their possessions and goods, and parted them to all *men*, as every man had need.

\*

46 And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart, 47 praising God, and having favour with all the people.

---

#### The First Summary

And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved.

## Part Two

### THE MINISTRY IN JERUSALEM

---

#### §1. THE APOSTLES PETER AND JOHN AT THE TEMPLE

##### I. THE LAME MAN AT THE BEAUTIFUL GATE

###### The First Miracle of the Apostles

Now Peter and John went up to the temple at the hour of prayer, *being* the ninth *hour*. 2 And a certain man lame from his birth was carried, whom they laid daily at the gate of the temple which is called Beautiful, to ask alms of them that entered into the temple: 3 who seeing Peter and John about to go into the temple asked an alms. 4 And Peter, fastening his eyes upon him with John, said, "Look on us." 5 And he gave heed unto them, expecting to receive something from them. 6 And Peter said, "Silver and gold have I none: but such as I have give I thee: In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth rise up and walk." 7 And he took him by the right hand, and lifted *him* up: and immediately his feet and ankle bones received strength. 8 And he leaping up stood, and walked, and entered with them into the temple, walking, and leaping, and praising God. 9 And all the people saw him walking and praising God: 10 and they knew that it was he that sat for alms at the Beautiful gate of the temple: and they were filled with wonder and amazement at that which had happened unto him.

---

##### II. THE ADDRESS OF PETER TO THE PEOPLE

###### The Great Power of Jesus' Name

11 And as the lame man that was healed held Peter and John, all the people ran together unto them in the porch that is called Solomon's, greatly wondering. 12 And when Peter saw *it*, he answered unto the people:

\*

"Ye men of Israel, why marvel ye at this? or why look ye so earnestly on us, as though by our own power or holiness we had made this man to walk?"

\* \*

13 "The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, hath glorified his

Son Jesus; whom you delivered up, and denied him in the presence of Pilate, when he was determined to let *him* go. 14 But you denied the Holy One and Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you; 15 and killed the Prince of Life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

\* \* \*

16 "And his name through faith in his name hath made this man strong, whom you see and know: yea, the faith which is by him hath given him this perfect soundness in the presence of you all.

\*\* \*\*

17 "And, now, brethren, I know that through ignorance you did *it*, as *did* also your rulers. 18 But those things, which God before had showed by the mouth of all his prophets, that Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled.

\*\*\* \*\*

19 "Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord; 20 and he shall send Jesus Christ, who before was preached unto you: 21 whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.

\*\* \* \* \*

22 "For Moses truly said unto the fathers, 'A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. 23 And it shall come to pass, *that* every soul that will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people.'<sup>1</sup> 24 Yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days.

\*\*\* \* \*\*\*

25 "You are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, 'And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.'<sup>1</sup> 26 Unto

---

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 12:3.



you first God, having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities.”

---

### III. THE APOSTLES BEFORE THE SANHEDRIN

#### a. The Arrest of Peter and John

4:1 And as they spoke unto the people, the priests, and the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees, came upon them, 2 being grieved because they taught the people, and preached through Jesus the resurrection from the dead. 3 And they laid hands on them, and put *them* in hold until the next day, for it was now eventide. 5 Howbeit many of them that heard the word believed, and the number of the men was about five thousand.

---

#### b. The Defense of the Apostle Peter

5 And it came to pass on the morrow, that their rulers, and elders, and scribes, 6 and Annas the high priest, and Caiaphas, and John, and Alexander, and as many as were of the kindred of the high priest, were gathered together at Jerusalem. 7 And when they had set them in the midst they asked, “By what power, or by what name, have you done this?” 8 Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said unto them: “Ye rulers of the people, and elders of Israel, 9 if we this day are examined for the good deed done to the impotent man, by what means he is made whole, 10 be it known unto you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom you crucified, whom God raised from the dead, *even* by him doth this man stand here before you whole. 11 This is the stone which was set at naught by you builders, which is become the head of the corner. 12 Neither is there salvation in any other; for there is no other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”

---

#### c. The Acquittal of Peter and John

13 Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John, and perceived that they were unlearned and ignorant men, they marvelled; and they took knowledge of them, that they had been with Jesus. 14 And beholding the man who was healed standing with them, they could say nothing against it. 15 But when they had commanded them to go aside out of the council, they conferred among themselves, 16 saying, “What shall we do to these men? for that indeed a notable miracle hath been done by

*Chapter 4:1-16*

them is manifest to all them that dwell in Jerusalem; and we cannot deny *it*. 17 But that it spread no further among the people, let us straitly threaten them, that they speak henceforth to no man in this name." 18 And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor to teach in the name of Jesus. 19 But Peter and John answered and said unto them, "Whether it be right in the sight of God to hearken unto you more than unto God, judge ye. 20 For we cannot but speak the things that we have seen and heard." 21 So when they had further threatened them, they let them go, finding nothing how they might punish them, because of the people; for all *men* glorified God for that which was done. 22 For the man was about forty years old on whom this miracle of healing was showed.

#### IV. THE RETURN TO THE DISCIPLES

##### The Baptism of the Holy Spirit

23 And being let go they went to their own company, and reported all that the chief priests and elders had said unto them. 24 And when they heard it, they lifted up their voice to God with one accord, and said, "Lord, thou *art* God, who hast made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is: 25 who by the mouth of thy servant David hast said:

\* \* \*

'Why did the heathen rage,  
And the people imagine vain things?  
26 The kings of the earth stood up,  
And the rulers were gathered together  
Against the Lord, and against his Christ.'<sup>1</sup>

\*

27 For of a truth against thy holy child Jesus, whom thou hast anointed, both Herod, and Pontius Pilate, and the Gentiles, and the people of Israel, were gathered together, 28 for to do whatsoever thy hand and thy counsel determined before to be done. 29 And now, Lord, behold their threatenings: and grant unto thy servants that with all boldness they may speak thy word, 30 by stretching forth thy hand to heal; and that signs and wonders may be done by the name of thy holy child Jesus." 31 And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and they spoke the word of God with boldness.

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 2:1.

## §2. THE SOCIAL LIFE OF THE CHURCH

### I. THE UNITY OF THE DISCIPLES

#### The Community of Property

32 And the multitude of them that believed were of one heart and of one soul: neither said any of *them* that ought of the things that he possessed was his own; but they had all things common. 33 And with great power gave the apostles witness of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus: and great grace was upon them all. 34 Neither was there any among them that lacked: for as many as were possessors of lands or houses sold them, and brought the prices of the things that were sold, 35 and laid *them* down at the apostles' feet: and distribution was made unto every man according as he had need.

---

### II. THE FAITHFULNESS OF BARNABAS

#### The Gift of Land to the Church

36 And Joseph, who by the apostles was surnamed Barnabas, which is, being interpreted, The son of consolation, a Levite, *and* of the country of Cyprus, 37 having land, sold *it*, and brought the money, and laid *it* at the apostles' feet.

---

### III. THE UNFAITHFULNESS OF ANANIAS AND SAPPHIRA

#### a. The Exposure and Death of Ananias

5:1 But a certain man named Ananias, with Sapphira his wife, sold a possession, 2 and kept back *part* of the price, his wife also being privy *to it*, and brought a certain part, and laid *it* at the apostles' feet. 3 But Peter said, "Ananias, why hath Satan filled thy heart to lie to the Holy Spirit, and to keep back *part* of the price of the land? 4 While it remained, was it not thine own? and after it was sold, was it not in thine own power? why hast thou conceived this thing in thy heart? thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God." 5 And Ananias hearing these words fell down, and gave up the ghost: and great fear came on all them that heard these things. 6 And the young men arose, wound him up, and carried *him* out, and buried *him*.

---

#### b. The Confession and Death of Sapphira

7 And it was about the space of three hours after, when his wife, not knowing what was done, came in. 8 And Peter said unto her, "Tell me whether you sold the land for so much? And

*Chapter 4:32-5:8*

she said, "Yea, for so much." 9 Then Peter said unto her, "How is it that you have agreed together to tempt the Spirit of the Lord? behold, the feet of them that have buried thy husband *are* at the door, and shall carry thee out." 10 Then fell she down straightway at his feet, and yielded up the ghost: and the young men came in, and found her dead, and, carrying *her* forth, buried *her* by her husband. 11 And great fear came upon all the church, and upon as many as heard these things.

### §3. THE INFLUENCE OF THE APOSTLES

#### I. THE POPULARITY OF THE TWELVE

##### The Ministry of Signs and Wonders

12 And by the hands of the apostles were many signs and wonders wrought among the people [And they were all with one accord in Solomon's porch. 13 And of the rest durst no man join himself to them; but the people magnified them. 14 And believers were the more added to the Lord, multitudes both of men and women]; insomuch that they brought forth the sick into the streets, and laid *them* on beds and couches, that at least the shadow Peter passing by might overshadow some of them. 16 There came also a multitude *out* of the cities roundabout unto Jerusalem, bringing sick folk, and them that were vexed with unclean spirits: and they were healed every one.

#### II. THE ARREST OF THE TWELVE APOSTLES

##### The Miraculous Deliverance from Prison

17 Then the high priest rose up, and all they that were with him, which is the sect of the Sadducees, and were filled with indignation, 18 and laid their hands on the apostles, and put them in the common prison. 19 But the angel of the Lord by night opened the prison doors, and brought them forth, and said, 20 "Go, stand and speak in the temple to the people all the words of this life." 21 And when they heard *that*, they entered into the temple early in the morning, and taught.

#### III. THE TRIAL BEFORE THE SANHEDRIN

##### The Obedience Due to God

But the high priest came, and they that were with him, and called the council together, and all the senate of the children of Israel, and sent to the prison to have them brought. 22 But when the officers came, and found them not in the prison, they

*Chapter 5:9-22*



returned, and told, 23 saying, "The prison truly found we shut with all safety, and the keepers standing without before the doors: but when we had opened, we found no man within." 24 Now when the high priest and the captain of the temple and the chief priests heard these things, they doubted of them whereunto this would grow. 25 Then came one and told them, saying, "Behold, the men whom you put in prison are standing in the temple, and teaching the people. 26 Then went the captain with the officers, and brought them without violence: for they feared the people, lest they should have been stoned. 27 And when they had brought *them*, they set them before the council: and the high priests asked them, 28 saying, "Did not we straitly command you that you should not teach in this name?<sup>1</sup> and, behold, you have filled Jerusalem with your doctrine, and intend to bring this man's blood upon us." 29 Then Peter and the *other* apostles answered and said, "We ought to obey God rather than men. 30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom you slew and hanged on a tree. 31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins. 32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Spirit, whom God hath given to them that obey him."

---

#### IV. THE ACQUITTAL OF THE APOSTLES

##### The Wise Counsel of Gamaliel

33 When they heard *that*, they were cut to the heart, and took counsel to slay them. 34 Then stood there up one in the council, a Pharisee, named Gamaliel, a doctor of the law, had in reputation among all the people, and commanded to put the apostles forth a little space; 35 and said unto them, "Ye men of Israel, take heed to yourselves what you intend to do as touching these men. 36 For before these days rose up Theudas, boasting himself to be somebody, to whom a number of men, about four hundred, joined themselves: who was slain; and all, as many as obeyed him, were scattered, and brought to naught. 37 After this man rose up Judas of Galilee in the days of the taxing, and drew away much people after him: he also perished; and all, *even* as many as obeyed him, were dispersed. 38 And now I say unto you refrain from these men, and let them alone: for if this counsel or this work be of men, it will come to naught: 39 but if it be of God, you cannot overthrow it; lest haply you be found even to fight against God." 40 And to him they agreed: and when they had called the apostles, and beaten *them*, they commanded that they should not speak in the name of Jesus, and let

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 4:13f.

them go. 41 And they departed from the presence of the council rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer shame for his name. 42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

---

#### §4. THE CHOICE OF THE SEVEN

##### THE PROVISION FOR THE BENEVOLENCE

###### The Ordination of the Seven

6:1 And in those days, when the number of the disciples was multiplied, there arose a murmuring of the Græcians against the Hebrews, because their widows were neglected in the daily ministrations. 2 Then the twelve called the multitude of the disciples *unto them*, and said, "It is not reason that we should leave the word of God, and serve tables. 3 Wherefore, brethren, look ye out among you seven men of honest report, full of the Holy Spirit and wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business. 4 But we will give ourselves continually to prayer, and to the ministry of the word." 5 And the saying pleased the whole multitude: and they chose Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit, and Philip, and Prochorus, and Nicanor, and Timon, and Parmenas, and Nicolas, a proselyte of Antioch: 6 whom they set before the apostles: and when they had prayed, they laid *their* hands on them.

---

#### The Second Summary

7 And the word of God increased; and the number of the disciples multiplied in Jerusalem greatly; and a great number of the priests were obedient to the faith.

## Part Three

### THE MINISTRY IN PALESTINE

---

#### §1. THE DISPERSION FROM JERUSALEM

##### I. THE ARREST OF STEPHEN

###### The Complaint before the Jewish Sanhedrin

And Stephen, full of faith and power, did great wonders and miracles among the people. 9 Then there arose certain of the synagogue which is called *the synagogue* of the libertines, and Cyrenians, and Alexandrians, and of them of Cilicia and of Asia, disputing with Stephen. 10 And they were not able to resist the wisdom and the spirit by which he spoke. 11 Then they suborned men, who said, "We have heard him speak blasphemous words against Moses, and *against* God." 12 And they stirred up the people, and the elders, and the scribes, and came upon *him*, and caught him, and brought him to the council, 13 and set up false witnesses, who said, "This man ceaseth not to speak blasphemous words against this holy place, and the law: 14 for we have heard him say, that this Jesus of Nazareth shall destroy this place, and shall change the customs which Moses delivered unto us."

---

##### II. THE TRIAL OF STEPHEN

###### The Defence of Stephen before the Sanhedrin

7:1 Then the high priest said, "Are these things so?" 2 And he said:

###### Prologue

"Men, brethren, and fathers, hearken: The God of glory appeared unto our father Abraham, when he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Haran, 3 and said unto him, 'Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and come into the land which I shall show thee.'<sup>1</sup> 4 Then came he out of the land of the Chaldæans, and dwelt in Haran: and from thence when his father was

---

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 12:1.

dead, he removed him into this land wherein you now dwell. 5 And he gave him no inheritance in it, no, not *so much as* to set his foot on: yet he promised that he would give it to him for a possession, and to his seed after him, when *as yet* he had no child. 6 And God spoke on this wise, That his seed should sojourn in a strange land; and that they should bring them into bondage, and entreat *them* evil four hundred years. 7 'And the nation to whom they shall be in bondage will I judge,'<sup>1</sup> said God: 'and after that they shall come forth, and serve me in this place.' 8 And he gave them the covenant of circumcision; and so *Abraham* begat Isaac, and circumcised him the eighth day; and Isaac *begat* Jacob; and Jacob *begat* the twelve patriarchs.

\*

9 "And the patriarchs, moved with envy, sold Joseph into Egypt: but God was with him, 10 and delivered him out of all his afflictions, and gave him favour and wisdom in the sight of Pharaoh, king of Egypt; and he made him governor over Egypt and all his house. 11 Now there came a dearth over the land of Egypt and Canaan, and great affliction: and our fathers found no sustenance. 12 But when Jacob heard that there was corn in Egypt, he sent out our fathers first. 13 And at the second *time* Joseph was made known to his brothers; and Joseph's kindred was made known to Pharaoh. 14 Then sent Joseph, and called his father Jacob to *him*, and all his kindred, three-score and fifteen souls. 15 So Jacob went down into Egypt, and died, he, and our fathers, 16 and were carried over into Sychem, and laid in the sepulchre that Abraham bought for a sum of money of the sons of Emmor, *the father* of Sychem.

\* \*

17 "But when the time of the promise drew nigh which God had sworn to Abraham, the people grew and multiplied in Egypt, 18 till another king arose, who knew not Joseph. 19 The same dealt subtilly with our kindred, and evil entreated our fathers, so that they cast out their young children, to the end that they might not live. 20 In which time Moses was born, and was exceeding fair, and nourished up in his father's house three months. 21

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 15:13f.



And when he was cast out, Pharaoh's daughter took him up, and nourished him for her own son. 22 And Moses was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians, and was mighty in words and in deeds.

\* \* \*

23 "And when he was full forty years old, it came into his heart to visit his brethren the children of Israel. 24 And seeing one of *them* suffer wrong, he defended *him*, and avenged him that was oppressed, and smote the Egyptian: 25 for he supposed his brethren would have understood how that God by his hand would deliver them: but they understood not. 26 And the next day he showed himself unto them as they strove, and would have set them at one again, saying, 'Sirs, you are brethren: why do ye wrong one to another?' 27 But he that did his neighbor wrong thrust him away, saying, 'Who made thee a ruler and a judge over us? 28 Wilt thou kill me, as thou didest the Egyptian yesterday?' 29 Then Moses fled at this saying, and was a stranger in the land of Midian, where he begat two sons.

\*\* \*\*

30 "And when forty years were expired, there appeared unto him in the wilderness of mount Sinai an angel of the Lord in a flame of fire in a bush. 31 When Moses saw *it* he wondered at the sight: and as he drew near to behold *it*, the voice of the Lord came unto him, 32 *saying*, 'I *am* the God of thy fathers, the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.'<sup>1</sup> Then Moses trembled, and durst not behold. 33 Then said the Lord to him, 'Put off thy shoes from thy feet: for the place where thou standest is holy ground. 34 I have seen, I have seen the affliction of my people who are in Egypt, and I have heard their groaning, and am come to deliver them. And now come, I will send thee into Egypt.' 35 This Moses whom they refused, saying, 'Who made thee a ruler and a judge?' the same did God send *to be* a ruler and a deliverer by the hand of the angel which appeared to him in the bush. 36 He brought them out, after that he had shown signs and wonders in the land of Egypt, and in the Red sea, and in the wilderness forty years.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 3:6.

\* \* \* \*

37 "This is the Moses who said unto the children of Israel, 'A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall you hear.'<sup>1</sup> 38 This is he, that was in the church in the wilderness with the angel who spoke to him in mount Sinai, and *with* our fathers; who received the living oracles to give unto us: 39 whom our fathers would not obey, but thrust *him* from them, and in their hearts turned back again into Egypt, 40 saying unto Aaron, 'Make us gods to go before us; for *as for* this Moses, who brought us out of the land of Egypt, we know not what is become of him.'<sup>2</sup>

\* \* \* \*

41 "And they made a calf in those days, and offered sacrifice unto the idol, and rejoiced in the work of their own hands. 42 Then God turned, and gave them up to worship the host of heaven; as it is written in the book of the prophets:

\* \* \*

'O you house of Israel,  
Have you offered to me slain beasts  
and sacrifices  
*By the space of* forty years in the wilderness?  
43 Yea, you took up the tabernacle of Moloch,  
And the star of your god Remphan,  
Figures which you made to worship them:  
And I will carry you away beyond Babylon.'<sup>3</sup>

\* \* \* \*

44 "Our fathers had the tabernacle of witness in the wilderness, as he had appointed, speaking unto Moses, that he should make it according to the fashion that he had seen. 45 Which also our fathers that came after brought in with Joshua into the possession of the Gentiles, whom God drove out before the face of our fathers, unto the days of David; 46 who found favor before God, and desired to build a tabernacle for the God of Jacob. 47 But Solomon built him a house. 48 Howbeit the Most High dwelleth not in temples made with hands; as saith the prophet:

\* \* \*

49 'Heaven *is* my throne;  
And earth *is* my footstool:

<sup>1</sup> Deut. 18:15.<sup>2</sup> Ex. 32:1.<sup>3</sup> Amos 5:25.

What house will you build me? saith the Lord?:  
Or what *is* the place of my rest?  
50 Hath not my hands made all these things?"<sup>1</sup>

#### Epilogue

51 "Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, you do always resist the Holy Spirit: as your fathers *did*, so *do* you. 52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them that showed before the coming of the Just One; of whom you have been now the betrayers and murderers: 53 who have received the law by the disposition of angels, and have not kept *it*."

### III. THE EXECUTION OF STEPHEN

#### The Consent of Saul to the Death of Stephen

54 When they heard these things, they were cut to the heart, and they gnashed on him with *their* teeth. 55 But he, being full of the Holy Spirit, looked up stedfastly into heaven, and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God, 56 and said, "Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God!" 57 Then they cried out with a loud voice, and stopped their ears, and ran upon him with one accord, 58 and cast *him* out of the city, and stoned *him*: and the witnesses laid down their clothes at a young man's feet, whose name was Saul. 59 And they stoned Stephen, calling upon *God*, and saying, "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit." 60 And he kneeled down, and cried with a loud voice, "Lord, lay not this sin to their charge." And when he had said this, he fell asleep. 8:1 And Saul was consenting unto his death.

### IV. THE GREAT PERSECUTION IN JERUSALEM

#### The Dispersion of the Disciples

And at that time there was a great persecution against the church which was at Jerusalem; and they were all scattered abroad throughout the region of Judæa and Samaria, except the apostles. 2 And devout men carried Stephen *to his burial*, and made great lamentation over him.<sup>2</sup> 3 And as for Saul, he made havoc of the church, entering into every house, and haling men and women committed *them* to prison.

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 66:12.

<sup>2</sup> A public protest against the martyrdom of Stephen.

## §2. THE MINISTRY IN SAMARIA

### I. THE MINISTRY OF PHILIP THE EVANGELIST

#### The Rejoicing Among the People

4 Therefore they that were scattered abroad went everywhere preaching the word. 5 Then Philip went down to the city of Samaria, and preached Christ unto them. 6 And the people with one accord gave heed unto those things which Philip spoke, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did. 7 For unclean spirits, crying with loud voice, came out of many that were possessed with them: and many taken with palsies, and that were lame, were healed. 8 And there was great joy in that city.

---

### II. THE BAPTISM OF SIMON MAGUS

#### The Ministry of Philip to Simon

9 But there was a certain man, called Simon, who beforetime in the same city used sorcery, and bewitched the people of Samaria, giving out that he himself was some great one: 10 to whom they all gave heed, from the least to the greatest, saying, "This man is the great power of God." 11 And to him they had regard, because that of long time he had bewitched them with sorceries. 12 But when they believed Philip, preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women. 13 Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done.

---

### III. THE MISSION OF PETER AND JOHN

#### The Samaritan Pentecost

14 Now when the apostles who were at Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent unto them Peter and John: 15 who, when they were come down, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Spirit. 16 For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. 17 Then laid they *their* hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit.

---

### IV. THE BLASPHEMY OF SIMON MAGUS

#### The Apostle Peter's Rebuke

18 And when Simon saw that through the laying on of the apostles' hands the Holy Spirit was given, he offered them money, 19 saying, "Give me also this power, that on whomsoever I

*Chapter 8:4-19*



lay hands, he may receive the Holy Spirit." 20 But Peter said unto him, "Thy money perish with thee, because that thou hast thought that the gift of God may be purchased with money. 21 Thou hast neither part nor lot in this matter: for thy heart is not right in the sight of God. 22 Repent therefore of this thy wickedness, and pray God, if perhaps the thought of thy heart may be forgiven thee. 23 For I perceive that thou art in the gall of bitterness, and *in* the bond of iniquity." 24 Then answered Simon, and said, "Pray ye to the Lord for me, that none of these things that you have spoken come upon me." 25 And they, when they had testified, and preached the word of the Lord, returned to Jerusalem, and preached the gospel in many villages of the Samaritans.

### §3. THE CONVERSION OF AN ETHIOPIAN

#### THE CALL OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

##### The Ministry of Philip

26 And the angel of the Lord spoke unto Philip, saying, "Arise, and go toward the south, unto the way that goeth down from Jerusalem unto Gaza," which is desert. 27 And he arose and went: and, behold, a man of Ethiopia, a eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem to worship, 28 was returning, and sitting in his chariot read Isaiah the prophet. 29 Then the Spirit said unto Philip, "Go near, and join thyself to this chariot." 30 And Philip ran thither to *him*, and heard him read the prophet Isaiah, and said, "Understandest thou what thou readest?" 31 And he said, "How can I, except some man should guide me?" And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him. 32 The place of the scripture which he read was this:

\* \* \*

"He was led as a sheep to the slaughter;  
And like a lamb dumb before his shearer,  
So opened he not his mouth:

33 In his humiliation his judgment was taken  
away:

And who shall declare his generation?  
For his life is taken from the earth."<sup>1</sup>

\*

34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, "I pray thee, of whom speakest the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?" 35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 53:7.

same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus. 36 And as they went on *their* way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, "See, *here is* water; what doth hinder me to be baptized?" 37 And Philip said, "If thou believest with all thy heart, thou mayest." And he answered and said, "I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God." 38 And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him. 39 And when they had come up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip, so that the eunuch saw him no more: and he went on his way rejoicing. 40 But Philip was found at Azotus: and passing through he preached in all the cities, till he came to Cæsarea.

#### §4. THE CONVERSION OF SAUL OF TARSUS

##### I. THE PERSECUTION OF SAUL AT DAMASCUS

###### The Interference of Jesus Near the City

9:1 And Saul, yet breathing out threatenings and slaughter against the disciples of the Lord, went unto the high priest, 2 and desired of him letters to Damascus to the synagogues, that if he found any of this way, whether they were men or women, he might bring them bound unto Jerusalem. 3 And as he journeyed, he came near Damascus: and suddenly there shone round about him a light from heaven: 4 and he fell to the earth, and heard a voice saying unto him, "Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me?" 5 And he said, "Who art thou, Lord?" And the Lord said, "I am Jesus, whom thou persecutest: *it is* hard for thee to kick against the pricks." 6 And he trembling and astonished said, "Lord, what wilt thou have me to do?" And the Lord *said* unto him, "Arise, and go into the city, and it shall be told thee what thou must do." 7 And the men who journeyed with him stood speechless, hearing a voice, but seeing no man. 8 And Saul arose from the earth: and when his eyes were opened, he saw no man: but they led him by the hand, and brought *him* into Damascus. 9 And he was three days without sight, and did neither eat nor drink.

##### II. THE MINISTRY OF ANANIAS TO SAUL

###### The Restoration and Baptism of Saul

10 And there was a certain disciple at Damascus, named Ananias; and to him said the Lord in a vision, "Ananias." And he said, "Behold, I *am here*, Lord." 11 And the Lord *said* unto him, "Arise, and go into the street that is called Straight, and inquire in the house of Judas for *one* called Saul, of Tarsus: for,

*Chapter 8:36-9:11*

behold, he prayeth, 12 and hath seen in a vision a man named Ananias coming in, and putting his hand on *him*, that he might receive his sight." 13 Then Ananias answered, "Lord, I have heard by many of this man, how much evil he hath done to thy saints at Jerusalem: 14 and here he hath authority from the chief priests to bind all that call on thy name." 15 But the Lord said unto him, "Go thy way: for he is a chosen vessel unto me, to bear my name before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel: 16 for I will show him how great things he must suffer for my name's sake." 17 And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, "Brother Saul, the Lord Jesus, who appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Spirit." 18 And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales; and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized. 19 And when he had received meat he was strengthened.

---

### III. THE PREACHING OF CHRIST BY SAUL

#### The Amazement of the People

Then was Saul certain days with the disciples who were at Damascus. 20 And straightway he preached Christ in the synagogues, that he is the Son of God. 21 But all that heard *him* were amazed, and said, "Is not this he that destroyed them that called on this name in Jerusalem, and came hither for that intent, that he might bring them bound unto the chief priests?" 22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews who dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is the very Christ.

---

### IV. THE PLOT OF THE JEWS AGAINST SAUL

#### The Return to Jerusalem and Tarsus

23 And after many days were fulfilled,<sup>1</sup> the Jews took counsel to kill him: 24 but their lying in wait was known by Saul. And they watched the gates day and night to kill him. 25 Then the disciples took him by night, and let *him* down by the wall in a basket. 26 And when Saul was come to Jerusalem, he essayed to join himself to the disciples; but they were all afraid of him, and believed not that he was a disciple. 27 But Barnabas took him, and brought *him* to the apostles,<sup>2</sup> and declared unto them how he had seen the Lord in the way, and that he had

---

<sup>1</sup> Probably three years. See Gal. 1:18.

<sup>2</sup> Peter, the chief of the Apostles, and James, the chief pastor in Jerusalem. Gal. 1:18f.

spoken to him, and how he had preached boldly at Damascus in the name of Jesus. 28 And he was with them coming in and going out at Jerusalem. 29 And he spoke boldly in the name of the Lord Jesus, and disputed against the Græcians: but they went about to slay him. 30 *Which* when the brethren knew, they brought him down to Cæsarea, and sent him forth to Tarsus.

---

### **The Third Summary**

31 Then had the churches rest throughout all Judæa and Galilee and Samaria, and were edified; and walking in the fear of the Lord, and in the comfort of the Holy Spirit, were multiplied.



## Part Four

### THE GOSPEL FOR THE GENTILES

---

#### §1. THE TOUR OF PETER THROUGH PALESTINE

##### I. THE MINISTRY AT LYDDA AND SHARON

###### The Healing of Æneas at Lydda

And it came to pass, that as Peter passed throughout all quarters, he came down also to the saints that dwelt at Lydda. 33 And there he found a certain man named Æneas, who had kept his bed eight years, and was sick of the palsy. 34 And Peter said unto him, "Æneas, Jesus Christ maketh thee whole: arise, and make thy bed." And he arose immediately. 35 And all that dwelt at Lydda and Sharon saw him, and turned to the Lord.

---

##### II. THE CALL OF THE APOSTLE PETER TO JOPPA

###### The Restoration of Dorcas by Peter

36 Now there was at Joppa a certain disciple named Tabitha, which by interpretation is called Dorcas: this woman was of good works and almsdeeds which she did. 37 And it came to pass in those days, that she was sick, and died: whom when they had washed, they laid her in an upper chamber. 38 And forasmuch as Lydda was nigh to Joppa, and the disciples had heard that Peter was there, they sent unto him two men, desiring *him* that he would not delay to come to them. 39 Then Peter arose and went with them. When he was come, they brought him into the upper chamber: and all the widows stood by him weeping, and showing the coats and garments which Dorcas made, while she was with them. 40 But Peter put them all forth, and kneeled down, and prayed; and turning *him* to the body said, "Tabitha, arise." And she opened her eyes; and when she saw Peter, she sat up. 41 And he gave her *his* hand, and lifted her up, and when he had called the saints and widows, presented her alive. 42 And it was known throughout all Joppa; and many believed in the Lord. 43 And it came to pass, that he tarried many days in Joppa with one Simon a tanner.

## §2. THE GENTILE PENTECOST AT CÆSAREA

### I. THE VISION OF CORNELIUS AT CÆSAREA

#### The Messengers to Peter at Joppa

10:1 There was a certain man in Cæsarea called Cornelius, a centurion of the band called the Italian *band*, 2 a devout *man*, and one that feared God with all his house, who gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God always. 3 He saw in a vision evidently about the ninth hour of the day an angel of God coming in to him, and saying unto him, "Cornelius." 4 And when he looked on him, he was afraid, and said, "What is it, Lord?" And he said unto him, "Thy prayers and thine alms are come up for a memorial before God. 5 And now send men to Joppa, and call for *one* Simon, whose surname is Peter: 6 he lodgeth with one Simon a tanner, whose house is by the sea side: he shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do." 7 And when the angel that spoke unto Cornelius was departed, he called two of his household servants, and a devout soldier of them that waited on him continually: 8 and when he had declared all these things unto them, he sent them to Joppa.

---

### II. THE VISION OF PETER AT JOPPA

#### a. The Three-Fold Revelation

9 On the morrow, as they went on their journey, and drew nigh unto the city, Peter went up upon the housetop to pray about the sixth hour: 10 and he became very hungry, and would have eaten: but while they made ready, he fell into a trance, 11 and saw heaven opened, and a certain vessel descending unto him, as it had been a great sheet knit at the four corners, and let down to the earth: 12 wherein were all manner of fourfooted beasts of the earth, and wild beasts, and creeping things, and fowls of the air. 13 And there came a voice to him, "Rise, Peter; kill, and eat." 14 But Peter said, "Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten anything that is common or unclean." 15 And the voice spoke unto him again the second time, "What God hath cleansed, *that* call not thou common." 16 This was done thrice: and the vessel was received up again into heaven.

---

#### b. The Messengers from Cornelius

17 Now while Peter doubted in himself what this vision which he had seen should mean, behold, the men who were sent from Cornelius had made inquiry for Simon's house, and stood before the gate, 18 and called, and asked whether Simon, who was

*Chapter 10:1-18*

surnamed Peter, were lodged there. 19 And while Peter thought on the vision, the Spirit said unto him, "Behold, three men seek thee. 20 Arise therefore, and get thee down, and go with them, doubting nothing: for I have sent them." 21 Then Peter went down to the men who were sent unto him from Cornelius, and said, "Behold, I am he whom you seek: what is the cause wherefore you are come?" 22 And they said, "Cornelius the centurion, a just man, and one that feareth God, and of good report among all the nation of the Jews, was warned from God by a holy angel to send for thee into his house, and to hear words of thee." 23 Then called he them in, and lodged *them*.

### III. THE MINISTRY OF PETER AT CÆSAREA

#### a. The Meeting of Peter with Cornelius

And on the morrow Peter went away with them, and certain brethren from Joppa accompanied *him*. 24 And the morrow after they entered into Cæsarea. And Cornelius waited for them, and had called together his kinsmen and near friends. 25 And as Peter was coming in, Cornelius met him, and fell down at his feet, and worshipped *him*. 26 But Peter took him up, saying, "Stand up; I myself also am a man." 27 And as he talked with him, he went in, and found many that were come together. 28 And he said unto them, "You know that it is an unlawful thing for a man that is a Jew to keep company, or come in unto one of another nation; but God hath shown me that I should not call any man common or unclean. 29 Therefore came I unto you without gainsaying, as soon as I was sent for: I ask therefore for what intent you have sent for me?" 30 And Cornelius said, "Four days ago I was fasting until this hour; and at the ninth hour I prayed in my house, and, behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing, 31 and said, 'Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thine alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God. 32 Send therefore to Joppa, and call hither Simon, whose surname is Peter; he is lodged in the house of *one* Simon a tanner by the sea side: who, when he cometh, shall speak unto thee.' 33 Immediately therefore I sent to thee; and thou hast well done that thou art come. Now therefore are we all here present before God, to hear all things that are commanded thee of God."

#### b. The Address of Peter at Cæsarea

34 Then Peter opened *his* mouth, and said:

\* \* \*

"Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons: 35 but in every nation he

*Chapter 10:19-35*



that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him. 36 The word which *God* sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ [he is Lord of all], 37 that word, *I say*, you know, which was published throughout all Judæa, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached: 38 how that God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit, and with power; who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil: for God was with him. 39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree: 40 him God raised up the third day, and showed him openly; 41 not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before of God, *even* to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead. 42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he that was ordained of God *to be* the judge of quick and dead. 43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins."

---

#### c. The Coming of the Holy Spirit

44 While Peter yet spoke these words, the Holy Spirit fell on all them that heard the word. 45 And they of the circumcision who believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Spirit. 46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter, 47 "Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, who have received the Holy Spirit as well as we?" 48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.

---

### IV. THE ACTION OF THE CHURCH AT JERUSALEM

#### The Admission of the Gentiles to the Church

11:1 And the apostles and brethren that were in Judæa heard that the Gentiles had also received the word of God. 2 And when Peter was come up to Jerusalem, they that were of the circumcision contended with him, 3 saying, "Thou wentest in to men uncircumcised, and didst eat with them." 4 But Peter

*Chapter 10:36-11:4*



rehearsed *the matter* from the beginning, and expounded *it* by order unto them, saying:

\* \* \*

5 "I was in the city of Joppa, praying: and in a trance I saw a vision: a certain vessel descended, as it had been a great sheet, let down from heaven by four corners; and it came even to me: 6 upon which, when I had fastened my eyes, I considered, and saw fourfooted beasts of the earth, and wild beasts, and creeping things, and fowls of the air. 7 And I heard a voice saying unto me, 'Arise, Peter, slay and eat.' 8 But I said, 'Not so, Lord: for nothing common or unclean hath at any time entered into my mouth.' 9 But the voice answered me again from heaven, 'What God hath cleansed, *that* call thou not common.' 10 And this was done three times: and all were drawn up again into heaven. 11 And, behold, immediately there were three men already come unto the house where I was, sent from Cæsarea unto me. 12 And the Spirit bade me go with them, nothing doubting. Moreover, these six brethren accompanied me, and we entered into the man's house. 13 And he showed us how he had seen an angel in his house, who stood and said unto him, 'Send men to Joppa, and call for Simon, whose surname is Peter; 14 who shall tell thee words, whereby thou and all thy house shall be saved; 15 And as I began to speak, the Holy Spirit fell on them, as on us at the beginning. 16 Then remembered I the word of the Lord, how that he said, 'John indeed baptized with water; but you shall be baptized with the Holy Spirit.' 17 Forasmuch then as God gave them the like gift as *he did* unto us, who believed on the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I that I could resist God?"

\*

18 When they heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified God, saying, "Then hath God also to the Gentiles granted repentance unto life."

### §3. THE GENTILE CHURCH AT ANTIOCH

#### I. THE FOUNDING OF THE CHURCH

##### The Great Awakening Among Jews and Greeks

19 Now they that were scattered abroad upon the persecution that arose about Stephen, traveled as far as Phœnicia, and

*Chapter 11:5-19*

Cyprus, and Antioch, preaching the word but unto the Jews only. 20 And some of them were men of Cyprus and Cyrene, who, when they were come to Antioch, spoke unto the Græcians preaching the Lord Jesus. 21 And the hand of the Lord was with them: and a great number believed, and turned unto the Lord.

---

## II. THE MISSION OF BARNABAS FROM JERUSALEM

### The Addition of Many People to the Church

22 Then tidings of these things came unto the ears of the church which was in Jerusalem: and they sent forth Barnabas, that he should go as far as Antioch; 23 who, when he came, and had seen the grace of God, was glad, and exhorted them all, that with purpose of heart they would cleave unto the Lord. 24 For he was a good man, and full of the Holy Spirit and of faith: and many people were added to the Lord.

---

## III. THE COMING OF PAUL TO ANTIOCH

### The Beginning of the Christian Name

25 Then departed Barnabas to Tarsus for to seek Saul; 26 and when he had found him, he brought him unto Antioch. And it came to pass, that a whole year they assembled themselves with the church and taught many people. And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch.

---

## IV. THE FAMINE MISSION OF JERUSALEM

### The Gift of Every Man to the Mission

27 And in these days came prophets from Jerusalem unto Antioch. 28 And there stood up one of them named Agabus, and signified by the Spirit that there should be a great dearth throughout all the world; which came to pass in the days of Claudius Cæsar.<sup>1</sup> 29 Then the disciples, every man according to his ability, determined to send relief unto the brethren who dwelt in Judæa; 30 which also they did, and sent it to the elders by the hands of Barnabas and Saul.

---

<sup>1</sup> Claudius reigned A. D. 41-54.

#### §4. THE PERSECUTION OF HEROD AGRIPPA I<sup>1</sup>

##### I. THE DEATH OF THE APOSTLE JAMES

###### The Beheading of James by Herod

12:1 Now about that time Herod the king stretched forth *his* hand to vex certain of the church. 2 And he killed James the brother of John with the sword.

---

##### II. THE ASSAULT UPON PETER

###### a. The Arrest of Peter and Prayer of the Church

3 And because he saw it pleased the Jews, he proceeded further to take Peter also. [Then were the days of unleavened bread.] 4 And when he had apprehended him, he put *him* in prison, and delivered *him* to four quaternions of soldiers to keep him; intending after easter to bring him forth to the people. 5 Peter therefore was kept in prison: but prayer was made without ceasing by the church unto God for him.

---

###### b. The Miraculous Deliverance of Peter

6 And when Herod would have brought him forth, the same night Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains: and the keepers before the door kept the prison. 7 And, behold, the angel of the Lord came upon *him*, and a light shone in the prison; and he smote Peter on the side, and raised him up, saying, "Arise up quickly." And his chains fell off from *his* hands. 8 And the angel said unto him, "Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals." And so he did. And he saith unto him, "Cast thy garment about thee, and follow me." 9 And he went out, and followed him; and knew not that it was true that was done by the angel; but thought he saw a vision. 10 When they were past the first and second ward, they came unto the iron gate that leadeth into the city, which opened to them of its own accord; and they went out, and passed on through one street; and forthwith the angel departed from him. 11 And when Peter was come to himself, he said, "Now I know of a surety, that the Lord hath sent his angel, and hath delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and *from* all the expectation of the people of the Jews."

---

###### c. The Return of Peter to the Disciples

12 And when he had considered *the thing*, he came to the house of Mary, the mother of John, whose surname was Mark,

---

<sup>1</sup> Herod Agrippa I. was made Governor by Emperor Caligula A. D. 37, and King by Emperor Claudius A. D. 41.

where many were gathered together praying. 13 And as Peter knocked at the door of the gate, a damsel came to hearken, named Rhoda. 14 And when she knew Peter's voice, she opened not the gate for gladness, but ran in, and told how Peter stood before the gate. 15 And they said unto her, "Thou art mad." But she confidently affirmed that it was even so. Then said they, "It is his angel." 16 But Peter continued knocking: and when they had opened *the door*, and saw him, they were astonished. 17 But he, beckoning unto them with the hand to hold their peace, declared unto them how the Lord brought him out of the prison. And he said, "Go show these things unto James, and to the brethren." And he departed, and went into another place.

---

### III. THE DEATH OF THE JAILORS

#### The Order of King Herod

18 Now as soon as it was day, there was no small stir among the soldiers, what had become of Peter. 19 And when Herod had sought for him, and found him not, he examined the keepers, and commanded that *they* should be put to death.

---

### IV. THE BLASPHEMY AND DEATH OF THE KING

#### The Last Days of Herod at Cæsarea

And he went down from Judæa to Cæsarea, and *there* abode. 20 And Herod was highly displeased with them of Tyre and Sidon: and they came with one accord to him, and having made Blastus the king's chamberlain their friend, desired peace; because their country was nourished by the king's *country*. 21 And upon a set day Herod, arrayed in royal apparel, sat upon his throne, and made an oration unto them. 22 And the people gave a shout, *saying*, "*It is the voice of a god, and not of a man.*" 23 And immediately the angel of the Lord smote him, because he gave not God the glory; and he was eaten of worms, and gave up the ghost.

---

### The Fourth Summary

24 But the word of God grew and multiplied.



## Part Five

# THE FIRST GENTILE CHURCHES

---

### §1. THE MINISTRY OF PAUL THROUGH CYPRUS

#### I. THE CALL OF BARNABAS AND PAUL AT ANTIOCH

##### The Departure on the First Missionary Journey

And Barnabas and Saul returned from Jerusalem, when they had fulfilled *their* ministry, and took with them John, whose surname was Mark. 13:1 Now there were in the church that was at Antioch certain prophets and teachers: as Barnabas, and Simeon who was called Niger, and Lucius of Cyrene, and Manæn, who had been brought up with Herod the tetrarch, and Saul. 2 As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Spirit said, "Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them." 3 And when they had fasted and prayed, and laid *their* hands on them, they sent *them* away.

---

#### II. THE CONVERSION OF THE PROCONSUL

##### The Ministry of John Mark

4 So they, being sent forth by the Holy Spirit, departed unto Seleucia; and from thence they sailed to Cyprus. 5 And when they were at Salamis, they preached the word of God in the synagogue of the Jews: and they had also John to *their* ministry. 6 And when they had gone through the island unto Paphos, they found a certain sorcerer, a false prophet, a Jew, whose name *was* Bar-jesus: 7 who was with the deputy<sup>1</sup> of the country, Sergius Paulus, a prudent man; who called for Barnabas and Saul, and desired to hear the word of God. 8 But Elymas the sorcerer, for so is his name by interpretation, withstood them, seeking to turn away the deputy from the faith. 9 Then Saul, who also is called Paul, filled with the Holy Spirit, set his eyes on him, 10 and said, "O full of all subtilty and all mischief, *thou* child of the devil, *thou* enemy of all righteousness, wilt thou not cease to pervert the right ways of the Lord? 11 And now, behold, the hand of the Lord is upon thee, and thou shalt be blind, not

---

<sup>1</sup> The Roman Proconsul.

seeing the sun for a season." And immediately there fell on him a mist and a darkness; and he went about seeking some to lead him by the hand. 12 Then the deputy, when he saw what was done, believed, being astonished at the doctrine of the Lord.

## §2. THE MINISTRY OF PAUL IN GALATIA

### I. THE CHURCH AT ANTIOCH OF PISIDIA

#### a. The Sermon of Paul in the Synagogue

13 Now when Paul and his company loosed from Paphos, they came to Perga in Pamphylia: and John departing from them returned to Jerusalem. 14 But when they departed from Perga, they came to Antioch in Pisidia, and went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and sat down. 15 And after the reading of the law and the prophets, the rulers of the synagogue sent unto them, saying, "*Ye men and brethren*, if you have any word of exhortation for the people, say on." 16 Then Paul stood up, and beckoning with *his* hand said:

\* \* \*

"Men of Israel, and you that fear God, give audience:

\*

17 "The God of this people of Israel chose our fathers, and exalted the people when they dwelt as strangers in the land of Egypt, and with a high arm brought he them out of it.

\*

18 "And about the time of forty years suffered he their manners in the wilderness.

\*

19 "And when he had destroyed seven nations in the land of Canaan, he divided their land to them by lot.

\*

20 "And after that he gave *unto them* judges about the space of four hundred years, until Samuel the prophet.

\*

21 "And afterward they desired a king: and God gave unto them Saul the son of Kish, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, by the space of forty years.

\*

22 "And when he had removed him, he raised up

*Chapter 13:12-22*

David to be their king; to whom also he gave testimony, and said:

\* \* \*

'I have found David the *son* of Jesse,  
A man after my own heart,  
Who shall fulfill all my will.'<sup>1</sup>

\*

23 "Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus: 24 when John had first preached before his coming the baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel. 25 And as John fulfilled his course, he said, 'Whom think ye that I am? I am not *he*. But, behold, there cometh one after me, whose shoes of *his* feet I am not worthy to loose.'

\* \* \*

26 "Men *and* brethren, children of the stock of Abraham, and whosoever among you feareth God, to you is the word of this salvation sent. 27 For they that dwell at Jerusalem, and their rulers, because they knew him not, nor yet the voices of the prophets which are read every sabbath day, they have fulfilled *them* in condemning *him*. 28 And though they found no cause of death *in him*, yet desired they Pilate that he should be slain. 29 And when they had fulfilled all that was written of *him*, they took *him* down from the tree, and laid *him* in a sepulchre. 30 But God raised him from the dead: 31 and he was seen many days by them that came up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are his witnesses to the people. 32 And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers, 33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm:

\* \* \*

'Thou art my Son,  
This day have I begotten thee.'<sup>2</sup>

\*

34 "And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, *now* no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, 'I will give you the sure mercies of David.'<sup>3</sup>  
35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, 'Thou

<sup>1</sup> I Sam. 13:14; Ps. 89:20.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 2:7.

<sup>3</sup> Isa. 55:3.

shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption."<sup>1</sup>  
 36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell asleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption: 37 but he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

\* \* \*

38 "Be it known unto you therefore, men *and* brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins: 39 and by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which you could not be justified by the law of Moses. 40 Beware therefore, lest that come upon you, which is spoken of in the prophets:

\* \* \*

41 'Behold, you despisers, and wonder, and perish:

For I work a work in your days,  
 A work which you shall in no wise believe,  
 Though a man declare it unto you.'"<sup>2</sup>

\*

42 And when the Jews were gone out of the synagogue, the Gentiles besought that these words might be preached to them the next sabbath. 43 Now when the congregation was broken up many of the Jews and religious proselytes followed Paul and Barnabas; who, speaking to them, persuaded them to continue in the grace of God.

---

#### b. The Persecution of Paul and Barnabas

44 And the next sabbath day came almost the whole city together to hear the word of God. 45 But when the Jews saw the multitudes, they were filled with envy, and spoke against those things that were spoken by Paul, contradicting and blaspheming. 46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold and said, "It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken unto you; but seeing you put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of eternal life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles. 47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, *saying*:

\* \* \*

'I have set thee to be a light to the Gentiles,  
 That thou shouldest be for salvation  
 Unto the uttermost part of the earth.'"<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 16:10.

<sup>2</sup> Hab. 1:5.

<sup>3</sup> Isa. 49:6.



48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained unto eternal life believed. 49 And the word of the Lord was published throughout all that region. 50 But the Jews stirred up the devout and honourable women, and the chief men of the city, and raised a persecution against Paul and Barnabas, and expelled them out of their borders. 51 But they shook off the dust of their feet against them, and came into Iconium. 52 And the disciples were filled with joy, and with the Holy Spirit.

---

## II. THE CHURCH AT ICONIUM

### The Ministry and Departure of Paul and Barnabas

14:1 And it came to pass in Iconium, that they went both together into the synagogue of the Jews, and so spoke, that a great multitude both of the Jews and also of the Greeks believed. 2 But the unbelieving Jews stirred up the Gentiles, and made their minds evil affected against the brethren. 3 Long time therefore abode they, speaking boldly in the Lord, who gave testimony unto the word of his grace, and granted signs and wonders to be done by their hands. 4 But the multitude of the city was divided: and part held with the Jews, and part with the apostles. 5 And when there was an assault made both by the Gentiles, and also by the Jews with their rulers, to use *them* despitefully, and to stone them, 6 they were aware of *it*, and fled unto Lystra and Derbe, cities of Lycaonia, and unto the region that lieth round about: 7 and there they preached the gospel.

---

## III. THE CHURCH AT LYSTRA

### The Adoration of Paul and Barnabas by the Lystrans

8 And there sat a certain man at Lystra, impotent in his feet, being a cripple from his birth, who never had walked: 9 the same heard Paul speak; who stedfastly beholding him, and perceiving that he had faith to be healed, 10 said with a loud voice, "Stand upright on thy feet." And he leaped and walked. 11 And when the people saw what was done, they lifted up their voices, saying in the speech of Lycaonia, "The gods are come down to us in the likeness of men." 12 And they called Barnabas, Jupiter; and Paul, Mercury, because he was the chief speaker. 13 Then the priest of Jupiter, who was before their city, brought oxen and garlands unto the gates, and would have done sacrifice with the people, 14 *which* when the apostles, Barnabas and Paul, heard of, they rent their clothes, and ran in among the people,

*Chapter 13:48-14:14*

crying out, 15 and saying, "Sirs, why do ye these things? We also are men of like passions with you, and preach unto you that you should turn from these vanities unto the living God, who made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and all things that are therein: 16 who in times past suffered all nations to walk in their own ways. 17 Nevertheless, he left not himself without witness, in that he did good, and gave us rain from heaven, and fruitful seasons, filling our hearts with food and gladness." 18 And with these sayings scarcely restrained they the people, that they had not done sacrifice unto them.

---

#### IV. THE CHURCH AT DERBE

##### The Stoning of Paul and Return to Antioch

19 And there came thither *certain* Jews from Antioch and Iconium, and persuaded the people, and, having stoned Paul, drew *him* out of the city, supposing he was dead. 20 Howbeit, as the disciples stood round about him, he rose up, and came into the city: and the next day he departed with Barnabas to Derbe. 21 And when they had preached the gospel to that city, and had taught many, they return again to Lystra, and to Iconium, and Antioch, 22 confirming the souls of the disciples, *and* exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God. 23 And when they had ordained them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, on whom they believed. 24 And after they had passed throughout Pisidia, they came to Pamphylia. 25 And when they had preached the gospel in Perga, they went down to Attalia: 26 and thence sailed to Antioch, from whence they had been recommended to the grace of God for the work they fulfilled. 27 And when they were come and had gathered the church together, they rehearsed all that God had done with them, and how he had opened the door of faith unto the Gentiles. 28 And there they abode a long time with the disciples.

---

### §3. THE GENTILE COUNCIL AT JERUSALEM

#### I. THE CONTROVERSY AT ANTIOCH

##### The Appeal to the Apostles and Elders at Jerusalem

15:1 And certain men that came down from Judæa taught the brethren, *and said*, "Except ye be circumcised after the manner of Moses, you cannot be saved." 2 When therefore Paul and Barnabas had no small dissension and disputation with them, they determined that Paul and Barnabas, and certain others of

*Chapter 14:15-15:2*

them, should go up to Jerusalem unto the apostles and elders about this question. 3 And being brought on their way by the church, they passed through Phœnicia and Samaria, declaring the conversion of the Gentiles: and they caused great joy unto all the brethren. 4 And when they were come to Jerusalem, they were received by the church, and by the apostles and elders, and they declared all things that God had done with them. 5 But there rose up certain of the sect of the Pharisees who believed, saying, that it was needful to circumcise them, and to command *them* to keep the law of Moses.

---

## II. THE COUNCIL OF APOSTLES AND ELDERS

### a. The Address of the Apostle Peter

6 And the apostles and elders came together to consider this matter. 7 And when there had been much disputing, Peter rose up, and said unto them:

\* \* \*

“Men *and* brethren, you know how that a good while ago<sup>1</sup> God made choice among us, that the Gentiles by my mouth should hear the word of the gospel, and believe. 8 And God, who knoweth the hearts, bare them witness, giving them the Holy Spirit, even as *he did* unto us; 9 and put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts by faith. 10 Now therefore why tempt ye God, to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear? 11 But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we shall be saved, even as they.”

---

### b. The Report of Barnabas and Paul

12 Then all the multitude kept silence, and gave audience to Barnabas and Paul, declaring what miracles and wonders God had wrought among the Gentiles by them.

---

### c. The Recommendation of James<sup>2</sup>

13 And after they had held their peace, James answered, saying:

\*

“Men and brethren, hearken unto me: Simeon hath declared how God at the first did visit the

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 10: 1f.

<sup>2</sup> The Pastor of the Church in Jerusalem.



Gentiles, to take out of them a people for his name.  
 15 And to this agree the words of the prophets; as it is written:

\* \* \*

- 16 'After this I will return,  
 And will build again the tabernacle of David,  
 Which is fallen down;  
 And I will build again the ruins thereof,  
 And I will set it up:  
 17 That the residue of men might seek after the Lord,  
 And all the Gentiles, upon whom my name is called,  
 Saith the Lord, who doeth all these things.  
 18 Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world.'<sup>1</sup>

\*

19 Wherefore my sentence is, that we trouble not them who from among the Gentiles are turned unto God: 20 but that we write unto them, that they abstain from pollutions of idols, and *from* fornication, and *from* things strangled, and *from* blood. 21 For Moses of old time hath in every city them that preach him, being read in the synagogue every sabbath day."

### III. THE ACTION OF THE COUNCIL

#### The Exemption of the Gentiles from Circumcision

22 Then it pleased the apostles and elders, with the whole church, to send chosen men of their own company to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas: namely, Judas surnamed Barnabas, and Silas, chief men among the brethren: 23 and they wrote letters by them after this manner:

\* \* \*

"The apostles and elders and brethren *send* greeting unto the brethren who are of the Gentiles in Antioch and Syria and Cilicia:

24 "Forasmuch as we have heard, that certain who went out from us have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying, '*You must be circumcised and keep the law;*' to whom we gave no such commandment; 25 it seemed good unto us,

<sup>1</sup> Amos 9:11-12.



being assembled with one accord, to send chosen men unto you with our beloved Barnabas and Paul, 26 men that have hazarded their lives for the name of our Lord Jesus Christ. 27 We have sent therefore Judas and Silas, who shall also tell *you* the same things, by mouth. 28 For it seemed good to the Holy Spirit, and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things: 29 That you abstain from meats offered unto idols, and from blood, and from things strangled, and from fornication; from which if you keep yourselves, you shall do well.

"Fare you well."

---

#### IV. THE DELIVERY OF THE DECREES

##### The Ministry of Paul, Barnabas and Silas at Antioch

30 So when they were dismissed, they came to Antioch; and when they had gathered the multitude together, they delivered the epistle: 31 *which* when they had read, they rejoiced for the consolation. 32 And Judas and Silas, being prophets also themselves, exhorted the brethren with many words, and confirmed *them*. 33 And after they had tarried *there* a space, they were let go in peace from the brethren unto the apostles. 34 Notwithstanding, it pleased Silas to abide there still. 35 Paul also and Barnabas continued in Antioch, teaching and preaching the word of the Lord, with many others also.

---

#### §4. THE VISIT TO THE GALATIAN CHURCHES

##### THE SECOND MISSIONARY JOURNEY

##### The Delivery of the Decrees

36 And some days after, Paul said unto Barnabas, "Let us go again and visit our brethren in every city where we have preached the word of the Lord, *and see* how they do." 37 And Barnabas determined to take with them John, whose surname was Mark. 38 But Paul thought it not good to take with them him who withdrew from them from Pamphylia, and went not with them to the work.<sup>1</sup> 39 And the contention was so sharp between them, that they parted asunder one from another: and so Barnabas took Mark, and sailed unto Cyprus; 40 and Paul chose Silas,<sup>2</sup> and departed, being recommended by the brethren unto the

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 13:13.

<sup>2</sup> Paul calls him Silvanus.

grace of God. 41 And he went through Syria and Cilicia, confirming the churches. 16:1 Then came he to Derbe and Lystra: and, behold, a certain disciple was there, named Timothy, the son of a certain woman, who was a Jewess, and believed; but his father *was* a Greek: 2 who was well reported of by the brethren who were at Lystra and Iconium. 3 Him would Paul have to go forth with him; and he took and circumcised him because of the Jews who were in those quarters; for they all knew that his father was a Greek. 4 And as they went through the cities, they delivered them the decrees for to keep, that were ordained of the apostles and elders who were at Jerusalem.

---

### **The Fifth Summary**

5 And so were the churches established in the faith, and increased in number daily.

## Part Six

# THE CHURCHES IN MACEDONIA, GREECE AND ASIA

---

### §1. THE CALL OF PAUL INTO MACEDONIA

#### THE DIVINE GUIDANCE TOWARD TROAS

##### The Journey to Philippi in Macedonia

Now when they had gone throughout Phrygia and the region of Galatia, and were forbidden by the Holy Spirit to preach the word in Asia, 7 after they had come to Mysia they essayed to go into Bithynia: but the Spirit suffered them not. 8 And they passing by Mysia came down to Troas. 9 And a vision appeared to Paul in the night: There stood a man<sup>1</sup> of Macedonia, and prayed him, saying, "Come over into Macedonia, and help us." 10 And after he had seen the vision, immediately we endeavored to go into Macedonia, assuredly gathering that the Lord had called us to preach the gospel unto them. 11 Therefore loosing from Troas, we came with a straight course to Samothracia, and the next day to Neapolis; 12 and from thence to Philippi, which is the chief city of that part of Macedonia, and a colony.

---

### §2. THE MINISTRY OF PAUL IN MACEDONIA

#### I. THE CHURCH AT PHILIPPI

##### The Residence with Lydia of Thyatira

And we were in that city abiding certain days. 13 And on the sabbath we went out of the city by a river side, where prayer was wont to be made; and we sat down, and spoke to the women who resorted thither. 14 And a certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple, of the city of Thyatira, who worshipped God, heard us; whose heart the Lord opened, so that she attended to the things that were spoken by Paul. 15 And when she was baptized, and her household, she besought us, saying, "If you have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come into my house, and abide *there*." And she constrained us.

---

<sup>1</sup> This is believed to be Luke, the author of Acts.

## II. THE CONVERSION OF THE JAILOR

### a. The Healing of a Damsel

16 And it came to pass, as we went to prayer, that a certain damsel possessed with a spirit of divination met us, who brought her masters much gain by soothsaying. 17 The same followed Paul and us, and cried, saying, "These men are the servants of the Most High God, who show unto us the way of salvation." 18 And this did she many days. But Paul, being grieved, turned and said to the spirit, "I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her." And it came out the same hour.

---

### b. The Arrest and Imprisonment of Paul and Silas

19 And when her masters saw that the hope of their gain was gone, they caught Paul and Silas, and drew *them* into the marketplace unto the rulers, 20 and brought them to the magistrates, saying, "These men, being Jews, do exceedingly trouble our city, 21 and teach customs, which are not lawful for us to receive, neither to observe, being Romans. 22 And the multitude rose up together against them: and the magistrate rent off their clothes, and commanded to beat *them*. 23 And when they had laid many stripes upon them, they cast *them* into prison, charging the jailor to keep them safely: 24 who, having received such a charge thrust them into the inner prison, and made their feet fast in the stocks.

---

### c. The Conversion of the Philippian Jailor

25 And at midnight Paul and Silas prayed, and sang praises unto God: and the prisoners heard them. 26 And suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken: and immediately all the doors were opened, and every one's bands were loosed. 27 And the keeper of the prison, awaking out of his sleep, and seeing the prison doors open, drew out his sword, and would have killed himself, supposing that the prisoners had fled. 28 But Paul cried with a loud voice, saying, "Do thyself no harm: for we are all here." 29 Then he called for a light, and sprang in, and came trembling, and fell down before Paul and Silas, 30 and brought them out, and said, "Sirs, what must I do to be saved?" 31 And they said, "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house." 32 And they spoke unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house. 33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway. 34 And when he had brought them into

Chapter 16:16-34



his house, he set meat before them, and rejoiced, believing in God with all his house.

---

#### d. The Release and Departure of Paul and Silas

35 And when it was day, the magistrates sent the sergeants, saying, "Let those men go." 36 And the keeper of the prison told this saying to Paul, "The magistrates have sent to let you go: now therefore depart, and go in peace." 37 But Paul said unto them, "They have beaten us openly uncondemned, being Romans, and have cast *us* into prison; and now do they thrust us out privily? Nay verily; but let them come themselves and fetch us out. 38 And the sergeants told these words unto the magistrates: and they feared, when they heard that they were Romans. 39 And they came and besought them, and brought *them* out, and desired *them* to depart out of the city. 40 And they went out of the prison, and entered into *the house* of Lydia: and when they had seen the brethren, they comforted them, and departed.

---

### III. THE CHURCH AT THESSALONICA

#### The Persecution of Paul and Silas

17:1 Now when they had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where there was a synagogue of the Jews; 2 and Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures, 3 opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, "whom I preach unto you, is Christ." 4 And some of them believed, and consorted with Paul and Silas; and of the devout Greeks a great multitude, and of the chief women not a few. 5 But the Jews who believed not, moved with envy, took unto themselves certain lewd fellows of the baser sort, and gathered a company, and set all the city in an uproar, and assaulted the house of Jason, and sought to bring them out to the people. 6 And when they found them not, they drew Jason and certain brethren unto the rulers of the city, crying, "These that have turned the world upside down are come hither also; 7 whom Jason hath received: and these all do contrary to the decrees of Cæsar, saying that there is another king, *one* Jesus." 8 And they troubled the people and the rulers of the city, when they heard these things. 9 And when they had taken security of Jason, and of the others, they let them go.

## IV. THE CHURCH AT BERCEA

## The Arrival at Bercea and Voyage to Athens

10 And the brethren immediately sent away Paul and Silas by night unto Bercea: who coming *thither* went into the synagogue of the Jews. 11 These were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, and searched the scriptures daily, whether these things were so. 12 Therefore many of them believed; also of honourable women who were Greeks, and of men, not a few. 13 But when the Jews of Thessalonica had knowledge that the word of God was preached by Paul at Bercea, they came thither also, and stirred up the people. 14 And then immediately the brethren sent away Paul to go as it were to the sea: but Silas and Timothy abode there still. 15 And they that conducted Paul brought him unto Athens: and receiving a commandment unto Silas and Timothy to come to him with all speed, they departed.

## §3. THE MINISTRY OF PAUL IN GREECE

## I. THE APOSTLE AT ATHENS

## The Address to the Græcian Philosophers

16 Now while Paul waited for them at Athens, his spirit was stirred in him, when he saw the city wholly given to idolatry. 17 Therefore disputed he in the synagogue with the Jews, and with the devout persons, and in the market daily with them that met with him. 18 Then certain philosophers of the Epicurians, and of the Stoics, encountered him. And some said, "What will this babbler say?" other some, "He seemeth to be a setter forth of strange gods:" because he preached unto them Jesus, and the resurrection. 19 And they took him, and brought him unto Areopagus, saying, "May we know what this new doctrine, whereof thou speakest, *is*?" 20 For thou bringest certain strange things to our ears: and we would know therefore what these things mean." 21 [For all the Athenians and strangers that were there spent their time in nothing else, but either to tell, or to hear some new thing.] 22 Then Paul stood in the midst of Mar's hill, and said:

\* \* \*

"You men of Athens, I perceive that in all things you are too superstitious. 23 For as I passed by, and beheld your devotions, I found an altar with this inscription, 'TO THE UNKNOWN GOD.' Whom therefore you ignorantly worship,

Chapter 17:10-23

him declare I unto you. 24 God that made the world and all things therein, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands; 25 neither is worshiped with men's hands, as though he needed any thing, seeing he giveth to all life, and breath, and all things; 26 and hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation; 27 that they should seek the Lord, if haply they might feel after him, and find him, though he be not far from every one of us: 28 for in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, 'For we are also his offspring.'<sup>1</sup> 29 Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device. 30 And the times of this ignorance God overlooked; but now commandeth all men every where to repent: 31 because he hath appointed a day, in which he will judge the world in righteousness by *that* man whom he hath ordained; *whereof* he hath given assurance unto all *men*, in that he hath raised him from the dead."

\*

32 And when they heard of the resurrection of the dead, some mocked: and others said, "We will hear thee again of this *matter*." 33 So Paul departed from among them. 34 Howbeit certain men clave unto him, and believed: among whom *were* Dionysius the Areopagite, and a woman named Damaris, and others with them.

## II. THE CHURCH AT CORINTH

### a. The Residence of Paul with Aquila and Priscilla

18:1 After these things Paul departed from Athens, and came to Corinth; 2 and found a certain Jew named Aquila, born in Pontus, lately come from Italy, with his wife Priscilla (because Claudius had commanded all the Jews to depart from Rome); and he came unto them. 3 And because he was of the same trade, he abode with them, and wrought; for by their occupation they were tentmakers. 4 And he reasoned in the synagogue every sabbath, and persuaded the Jews and the Greeks.

<sup>1</sup> Aratus, *Phænomena*, 5; Cleanthes, *Hymn to Jupiter*, 5.



### b. The Ministry to the Gentiles

5 And when Silas and Timothy were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews *that* Jesus *was* Christ. 6 And when they opposed themselves, and blasphemed, he shook *his* raiment, and said unto them, "Your blood *be* upon your own heads; I am clean: from henceforth I will go unto the Gentiles." 7 And he departed thence and entered into a certain *man's* house, named Justus, *one* that worshipped God, whose house joined hard to the synagogue. 8 And Crispus, the chief ruler of the synagogue, believed on the Lord with all his house; and many of the Corinthians hearing believed, and were baptized. 9 Then spoke the Lord to Paul in the night by a vision, "Be not afraid, but speak, and hold not thy peace: 10 for I am with thee, and no man shall set on thee to hurt thee: for I have much people in this city." 11 And he continued *there* a year and six months, teaching the word of God among them.<sup>1</sup>

## III. THE APOSTLE BEFORE THE PROCONSUL

### The Protection of the Roman Law

12 But when Gallio was deputy of Achaia, the Jews made insurrection with one accord against Paul, and brought him to the judgment seat, 13 saying, "This *fellow* persuadeth men to worship God contrary to the law." 14 And when Paul was now about to open *his* mouth, Gallio said unto the Jews, "If it were a matter of wrong or wicked lewdness, O *ye* Jews, reason would that I should bear with you: 15 but if it be a question of words and names, and *of* your law, look *ye to it*; for I will be no judge of such *matters*." 16 And he drove them from the judgment seat. 17 Then all the Greeks took Sosthenes, the chief ruler of the synagogue, and beat *him* before the judgment seat. And Gallio cared for none of those things.

## IV. THE RETURN OF PAUL TO ANTIOCH IN SYRIA

### The Stops at Ephesus and Jerusalem en Route

18 And Paul *after this* tarried *there* a good while, and then took his leave of the brethren, and sailed thence into Syria, and with him Priscilla and Aquila; having shorn *his* head in Cenchrea: for he had a vow. 19 And he came to Ephesus, and left them there: but he himself entered into the synagogue, and reasoned with the Jews. 20 When they desired *him* to tarry longer time with them, he consented not; 21 but bade them farewell,

<sup>1</sup> Paul wrote the Epistles to the Thessalonians at this time.



saying, "I must by all means keep this feast that cometh in Jerusalem: but I will return again unto you, if God will." And he sailed from Ephesus. 22 And when he had landed at Cæsarea, and gone up, and saluted the church, he went down to Antioch.

---

#### §4. THE MINISTRY OF PAUL IN ASIA

##### I. THE BEGINNING OF THE THIRD MISSIONARY JOURNEY

###### The Ministry through Galatia and Phrygia

23 And after he had spent some time *there*,<sup>1</sup> he departed, and went over *all* the country of Galatia and Phrygia in order, strengthening all the disciples.

---

##### II. THE MINISTRY OF APOLLOS AT EPHESUS

###### The Departure of Apollos into Achaia

24 And a certain Jew named Apollos, born at Alexandria, an eloquent man, *and* mighty in the scriptures, came to Ephesus. 25 This man was instructed in the way of the Lord; and being fervent in the spirit, he spoke and taught diligently the things of the Lord, knowing only the baptism of John. 26 And he began to speak boldly in the synagogue: whom when Aquila and Priscilla had heard, they took him unto *them*, and expounded unto him the way of God more perfectly. 27 And when he was disposed to pass into Achaia, the brethren wrote, exhorting the disciples to receive him: who, when he was come, helped them much that had believed through grace: 28 for he mightily convinced the Jews, *and that* publicly, showing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.

---

##### III. THE ARRIVAL OF PAUL AT EPHESUS<sup>2</sup>

###### The Pentecost for Certain Disciples

19:1 And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples, 2 he said unto them, "Have you received the Holy Spirit since you believed?" And they said unto him, "We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Spirit." 3 And he said unto them, "Unto what then were you baptized?" And they said, "Unto John's baptism."

---

<sup>1</sup> Paul is said to have written the *Epistle to the Galatians* from Antioch at this time.

<sup>2</sup> Paul wrote *I Corinthians* while at Ephesus, and probably a part of *II Corinthians*.

4 Then said Paul, "John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him who should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus." 5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. 6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Spirit came on them; and they spoke with tongues, and prophesied. 7 And all the men were about twelve.

---

#### IV. THE EVANGELIZATION OF ASIA

##### The Gentile Church in the School of Tyrannus

8 And he went into the synagogue, and spoke boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God. 9 And when divers were hardened, and believed not, but spoke evil of that Way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus. 10 And this continued for the space of two years; so that all they that dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus, both Jews and Greeks. 11 And God wrought special miracles by the hands of Paul: 12 so that from his body were brought unto the sick handkerchiefs or aprons, and the diseases departed from them, and the evil spirits went out of them. 13 Then certain of the vagabond Jews, exorcists, took unto them to call over them that had evil spirits the name of the Lord Jesus, saying, "We adjure you by Jesus whom Paul preacheth." 14 And there were seven sons of *one* Sceva, a Jew, *and* chief of the priests, who did this. 15 And the evil spirit answered and said, "Jesus I know, and Paul I know: but who are you?" 16 And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded. 17 And this was known to all the Jews and Greeks also dwelling at Ephesus; and fear fell on them all, and the name of the Lord Jesus was magnified. 18 And many that believed came, and confessed, and showed their deeds. 19 Many of them also that used curious arts brought their books together, and burned them before all *men*: and they counted the price of them, and found *it* fifty thousand *pieces* of silver.

---

#### The Sixth Summary

20 So mightily grew the word of God and prevailed.

## Part Seven

# THE MINISTRY OF PAUL AT ROME

---

### §1. THE JOURNEY VIA CORINTH TO JERUSALEM

#### I. THE PLAN OF PAUL TO VISIT ROME

##### The Continued Ministry in Asia

After these things were ended, Paul purposed in the Spirit, when he had passed through Macedonia and Achaia, to go to Jerusalem, saying, "After I have been there, I must also see Rome." 22 So he sent into Macedonia two of them that ministered unto him, Timothy and Erastus; but he himself stayed in Asia for a season.

---

#### II. THE PAGAN RIOT AT EPHESUS

##### a. The Agitation of Demetrius against Paul

23 And at the same time there arose no small stir about that way. 24 For a certain *man* named Demetrius, a silversmith, who made silver shrines for Diana, brought no small gain unto the craftsmen; 25 whom he called together with the workmen of like occupation, and said, "Sirs, you know that by this craft we have our wealth. 26 Moreover you see and hear, that not alone at Ephesus, but almost throughout all Asia, this Paul hath persuaded and turned away many people, saying that they be no gods which are made with hands: 27 so that not only this our craft is in danger of being set at nought; but also that the temple of the great goddess Diana should be despised, and her magnificence should be destroyed, whom all Asia and the world worshippeth." 28 And when they heard *these sayings*, they were full of wrath, and cried out, saying, "Great is Diana of the Ephesians!"

---

##### b. The Tumult in the City

29 And the whole city was filled with confusion; and having caught Gaius and Aristarchus, men of Macedonia, Paul's companions in travel, they rushed with one accord into the theater. 30 And when Paul would have entered in unto the

people, the disciples suffered him not. 31 And certain of the chief of Asia, who were his friends, sent unto him, desiring that he would not adventure himself into the theater. 32 Some therefore cried one thing, and some another: for the assembly was confused; and the more part knew not wherefore they were come together. 33 And they drew Alexander out of the multitude, the Jews putting him forward. And Alexander beckoned with the hand, and would have made his defence unto the people. 34 But when they knew that he was a Jew, all with one voice about the space of two hours cried out, "Great *is* Diana of the Ephesians."

#### c. The Interference of the Townclerk

35 And when the townclerk had appeased the people, he said, "Ye men of Ephesus, what man is there that knoweth not how that the city of the Ephesians is a worshipper of the great goddess Diana, and of the *image* that fell down from Jupiter? 36 Seeing then that these things cannot be spoken against, you ought to be quiet, and to do nothing rashly. 37 For you have brought hither these men, who are neither robbers of churches, nor yet blasphemers of your goddess. 38 Wherefore if Demetrius, and the craftsmen that are with him, have a matter against any man, the law is open, and there are deputies: let them implead one another. 39 But if you enquire any thing concerning other matters, it shall be determined in a lawful assembly. 40 For we are in danger of being called in question for this day's uproar, there being no cause whereby we may give an account of this concourse." 41 And when he had thus spoken, he dismissed the assembly.

### III. THE JOURNEY INTO GREECE AND RETURN

#### a. The Traveling Companions of Paul

20:1 And after the uproar had ceased, Paul called unto *him* the disciples, and embraced *them*, and departed for to go into Macedonia.<sup>1</sup> 2 And when he had gone over those parts, and had given them much exhortation, he came into Greece, 3 and *there* abode three months.<sup>1</sup> And when the Jews laid wait for him, as he was about to sail unto Syria, he purposed to return through Macedonia. 4 And there accompanied him into Asia Sopater of Berea; and of the Thessalonians, Aristarchus and Secundus; and Gaius of Derbe, and Timothy; and of Asia, Tychicus and Trophimus. 5 These going before tarried for us at Troas. 6 And we sailed away from Philippi after the days of unleavened bread, and came unto them at Troas in five days; where we abode seven days.

<sup>1</sup> Paul wrote *II Corinthians* and *Romans* at this time.



**b. The Restoration of Eutycus at Troas**

7 And upon the first *day* of the week, when the disciples were came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow; and continued his speech until midnight. 8 And there were many lights in the upper chamber, where they were gathered together. 9 And there sat in a window a certain young man named Eutycus, being fallen into a deep sleep; and as Paul was long preaching, he sank down with sleep, and fell down from the third loft, and was taken up dead. 10 And Paul went down, and fell on him, and embracing *him* said, "Trouble not yourselves; for his life is in him." 11 When he therefore was come up again, and had broken bread, and eaten, and talked a long while, even till the break of day, so he departed. 12 And they brought the young man alive, and were not a little comforted.

---

**c. The Voyage from Troas to Miletus**

13 And we went before to ship, and sailed unto Assos, there intending to take in Paul: for so had he appointed, minding himself to go afoot. 14 And when he met with us at Assos, we took him in, and came to Mitylene. 15 And we sailed thence, and came the next *day* over against Chios; and the next *day* we arrived at Samos, and tarried at Trogyllium; and the next *day* we came to Miletus. 16 For Paul had determined to sail by Ephesus, because he would not spend the time in Asia: for he hasted, if it were possible for him, to be at Jerusalem the day of Pentecost.

---

**d. The Meeting with the Ephesian Elders**

17 And from Miletus he sent to Ephesus, and called the elders of the church. 18 And when they were come to him, he said unto them:

\* \* \*

"You know from the first day that I came into Asia, after what manner I have been with you at all seasons, 19 serving the Lord with all humility of mind, and with many tears, and temptations, which befel me by the lying in wait of the Jews: 20 *and* how I kept back nothing that was profitable *unto* you, but have showed you, and have taught you publicly, and from house to house, 21 testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ.

*Chapter 20:7-21*

22 "And now, behold, I go bound in the spirit unto Jerusalem, not knowing the things that shall befall me there: 23 save that the Holy Spirit witnesseth in every city, saying that bonds and afflictions abide me. 24 But none of these things move me, neither count I my life dear unto myself, so that I might finish my course with joy, and the ministry, which I have received of the Lord Jesus, to testify the gospel of the grace of God.

\*

25 "And now, behold, I know that you all, among whom I have gone preaching the kingdom of God, shall see my face no more. 26 Wherefore I take you to record this day that I *am* pure from the blood of all *men*. 27 For I have not shunned to declare unto you all the counsel of God.

\*

28 "Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over which the Holy Spirit hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood. 29 For I know this, that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock. 30 Also of your own selves shall men arise, speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them. 31 Therefore watch, and remember, that by the space of three years I ceased not to warn every one night and day with tears.

\*

32 "And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them that are sanctified.

\*

33 "I have coveted no man's silver, or gold, or apparel. 34 Yea, you yourselves know, that these hands have ministered unto my necessities, and to them that were with me. 35 I have shown you all things, how that so laboring you ought to support the weak, and to remember the words of the Lord Jesus, how he said, 'It is more blessed to give than to receive.'"

\*

36 And when he had thus spoken, he kneeled down, and prayed with them all. 37 And they all wept sore, and fell on Paul's

*Chapter 20:22-37*

neck, and kissed him, 38 sorrowing most of all for the words which he spoke, that they should see his face no more. And they accompanied him to the ship.

---

#### IV. THE JOURNEY FROM MILETUS TO JERUSALEM

##### a. The Warning of the Disciples at Tyre

21:1 And it came to pass, that after we were parted from them, and had launched, we came with a straight course unto Coos, and the *day* following unto Rhodes, and from thence unto Patara: 2 and finding a ship sailing over unto Phœnicia, we went aboard, and set forth. 3 Now when we had discovered Cyprus, we left it on the left hand, and sailed unto Syria, and landed at Tyre: for there the ship was to unload her burden. 4 And finding disciples, we tarried there seven days, who said to Paul through the Spirit, that he should not go up to Jerusalem. 5 And when we had accomplished those days, we departed and went our way; and they all brought us on our way, with wives and children, till *we were* out of the city: and we kneeled down on the shore, and prayed. 6 And when we had taken our leave one of another, we took ship; and they returned home again.

---

##### b. The Warning of Agabus at Cæsarea

7 And when we had finished *our* course from Tyre, we came to Ptolemais, and saluted the brethren, and abode with them one day. 8 And the next *day* we that were of Paul's company departed, and came unto Cæsarea: and we entered into the house<sup>1</sup> of Philip the evangelist, who was *one* of the seven: and abode with him. 9 And the same man had four daughters, virgins, who did prophesy. 10 And as we tarried *there* many days, there came down from Judæa a certain prophet, named Agabus. 11 And when he had come unto us, he took Paul's girdle, and bound his own hands and feet, and said, "Thus saith the Holy Spirit, 'So shall the Jews at Jerusalem bind the man that owneth this girdle, and shall deliver *him* into the hands of the Gentiles.'" 12 And when we had heard these things both we, and they of that place, besought him not to go up to Jerusalem. 13 Then Paul answered, "What mean you, to weep and to break my heart? for I am ready not to be bound only, but also to die at Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus." 14 And when he would not be persuaded, we ceased, saying, "The will of the Lord be done."

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 8:40.



### c. The Arrival of Paul at Jerusalem

15 And after those days we took up our carriages, and went up to Jerusalem. 16 And there went with us also *certain* of the disciples of Cæsarea, and brought with them one Mnason of Cyprus, an old disciple, with whom we should lodge.

---

## §2. THE PERSECUTION OF PAUL BY THE JEWS

### I. THE REPORT OF PAUL TO THE CHURCH

#### The Counsel of the Elders

17 And when we were come to Jerusalem, the brethren received us gladly. 18 And the *day* following Paul went in with us unto James; and all the elders were present. 19 And when he had saluted them, he declared particularly what things God had wrought among the Gentiles by his ministry. 20 And when they heard *it*, they glorified the Lord, and said unto him, "Thou seest, brother, how many thousands of Jews there are that believe; and they are all zealous for the law; 21 and they are informed of thee, that thou teachest all the Jews who are among the Gentiles to forsake Moses, saying that they ought not to circumcise *their* children, neither to walk after the customs. 22 What is it therefore? the multitude must needs come together: for they will hear that thou art come. 23 Do therefore this that we say to thee: We have four men who have a vow on them; 24 them take, and purify thyself with them, and be at charges with them, that they may shave *their* heads; and all may know that those things, whereof they were informed concerning thee, are nothing; but *that* thou thyself also walkest orderly, and keep-est the law. 25 As touching the Gentiles who believe, we have written<sup>1</sup> and concluded that they observe no such things, save only that they keep themselves from *things* offered to idols, and from blood, and from things strangled, and from fornication." 26 Then Paul took the men, and the next day purifying himself with them entered into the temple, to signify the accomplishment of the days of purification, until an offering should be made for every one of them.

---

### II. THE SEIZURE OF PAUL IN THE TEMPLE

#### The Rescue of Paul by the Romans

27 And when the seven days were almost ended, the Jews that were of Asia, when they saw him in the temple, stirred up all the people, and laid hands on him, 28 crying out, "Men of Is-

---

<sup>1</sup> This letter is found in Acts 15:23-29.



rael, help: this is the man that teacheth all *men* every where against the people, and the law, and this place; and further brought Greeks also into the temple, and hath polluted this holy place." 29 (For they had seen before with him in the city Trophimus an Ephesian, whom they supposed that Paul had brought into the temple). 30 And all the city was moved, and the people ran together: and they took Paul, and drew him out of the temple: and forthwith the doors were shut. 31 And as they were about to kill him, tidings came unto the chief captain of the band, that all Jerusalem was in an uproar; 32 who immediately took soldiers and centurions, and ran down unto them: and when they saw the chief captain and the soldiers, they left beating of Paul. 33 Then the chief captain came near, and took him, and commanded *him* to be bound with two chains; and demanded who he was, and what he had done. 34 And some cried one thing, and some another, among the multitude: and when he could not know the certainty for the tumult, he commanded him to be carried into the castle. 35 And when he came upon the stairs, so it was that he was borned by the soldiers for the violence of the people. 36 For the multitude of the people followed after, crying, "Away with him!"

### III. THE ADDRESS OF PAUL FROM THE CASTLE STEPS

#### a. The Persecution, Conversion and Ministry of Paul

37 And as Paul was to be led into the castle, he said unto the chief captain, "May I speak unto thee?" Who said, "Canst thou speak Greek? 38 Art not thou that Egyptian, who before these days made an uproar, and led out into the wilderness four thousand men that were murderers?" 39 But Paul said, "I am a man *who am* a Jew of Tarsus, a *city* in Cilicia, a citizen of no mean city: And, I beseech thee, suffer me to speak unto the people." 40 and when he had given him license, Paul stood on the stairs, and beckoned with the hand unto the people. And when there was made a great silence, he spoke unto *them* in the Hebrew tongue, saying:

\* \* \*

22:1 "Men, brethren, and fathers, hear ye my defence *which I make* now unto you: 2 [And when they heard that he spoke in the Hebrew tongue to them, they kept the more silence: and he saith]:

\*

3 "I verily am a man *who am* a Jew, born in Tarsus, a *city* in Cilicia, yet brought up in this city at the feet of Gamaliel, and taught according

Chapter 21:29-22:3

to the perfect manner of the law of the fathers, and was zealous toward God, as you all are this day. 4 For I persecuted this way unto death, binding and delivering into prisons both men and women. 5 As also the high priests doth bear me witness, and all the estate of the elders; from whom also I received letters unto the brethren, and went to Damascus, to bring them that were there bound unto Jerusalem to be punished.

\*

6 "And it came to pass, that, as I made my journey, and was come nigh unto Damascus, about noon, suddenly there shone from heaven a great light round about me. 7 And I fell unto the ground, and heard a voice saying unto me, 'Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me?' 8 And I answered, 'Who art thou, Lord?' And he said unto me, 'I am Jesus of Nazareth, whom thou persecutest.' 9 And they that were with me saw indeed the light, and were afraid; but they heard not the voice of him that spoke to me. 10 And I said, 'What shall I do, Lord?' And the Lord said unto me, 'Arise, and go into Damascus; and there it shall be told thee of all things that are appointed for thee to do.' 11 And when I could not see for the glory of that light, being led by the hand of them that were with me, I came into Damascus.

\*

12 "And one Ananias, a devout man according to the law, having a good report of all the Jews who dwelt there, 13 came unto me, and stood, and said unto me, 'Brother Saul, receive thy sight.' And the same hour I looked upon him. 14 And he said, 'The God of our fathers hath chosen thee, that thou shouldest know his will, and see that Just One, and shouldest hear the voice of his mouth. 15 For thou shalt be his witness unto all men of what thou hast seen and heard. 16 And now why tarriest thou? Arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.'

\*

17 "And it came to pass, that, when I had come again to Jerusalem, even while I prayed in the temple, I was in a trance; 18 and saw him saying unto me, 'Make haste, and get thee quickly out of Jerusalem: for they will not receive thy testimony

concerning me.' And I said, 'Lord, they know that I imprisoned and beat in every synagogue them that believed on thee: 20 and when the blood of thy martyr Stephen was shed, I also was standing by, and consenting unto his death, and kept the raiment of them that slew him.' 21 And he said unto me, 'Depart: for I will send thee far hence unto the Gentiles.' "

\*

22 And they gave him audience unto his word, and *then* lifted up their voices, and said, "Away with such a *fellow* from the earth: for it is not fit that he should live."

#### b. The Roman Citizenship of Paul

23 And as they cried out, and cast off *their* clothes, and threw dust into the air, 24 the chief captain commanded him to be brought into the castle, and bade that he should be examined by scourging; that he might know wherefore they cried so against him. 25 And as they bound him with thongs, Paul said unto the centurion that stood by, "Is it lawful for you to scourge a man that is a Roman, and uncondemned?"<sup>1</sup> 26 When the centurion heard *that*, he went and told the chief captain, saying, "Take heed what thou doest: for this man is a Roman." 27 Then the chief captain came, and said unto him, "Tell me, art thou a Roman?" He said, "Yea." 28 And the chief captain answered, "With a great sum obtained I this freedom." And Paul said, "But I was *free* born." 29 Then straightway they departed from him that should have examined him: and the chief captain also was afraid, after he knew that he was a Roman, and because he had bound him.

### IV. THE HEARING BEFORE THE SANHEDRIN

#### The Second Rescue by the Romans

30 On the morrow, because he would have known the certainty wherefore he was accused by the Jews, he loosed him from *his* bands, and commanded the chief priests and all their council to appear, and brought Paul down, and set him before them. 23:1 And Paul, earnestly beholding the council, said, "Men *and* brethren, I have lived in all good conscience before God until this day." 2 And the high priest Ananias commanded them that stood by him to smite him on the mouth. 3 Then said Paul unto him, "God shall smite thee, *thou* whited wall: for sit-

<sup>1</sup> This was forbidden by the *Lex Porcia*.



test thou to judge me after the law, and commandest me to be smitten contrary to the law?" 4 And they that stood by said, "Revilest thou God's high priest?" 5 Then said Paul, "I wist not, brethren, that he was the high priest: for it is written, 'Thou shalt not speak evil of the ruler of thy people.'"<sup>1</sup> 6 But when Paul perceived that the one part were Sadducees, and the other Pharisees, he cried out in the council, "Men *and* brethren, I am a Pharisee, the son of a Pharisee: for the hope and resurrection of the dead I am called in question." 7 And when he had so said, there arose a dissension between the Pharisees and the Sadducees: and the multitude was divided. 8 For the Sadducees say that there is no resurrection, neither angel, nor spirit: but the Pharisees confess both. 9 And there arose a great cry: and the scribes *that were* of the Pharisees' part arose, and strove, saying, "We find no evil in this man: but if a spirit or an angel hath spoken to him, let us not fight against God." 10 And when there arose a great dissension, the chief captain, fearing lest Paul should have been pulled in pieces by them, commanded the soldiers to go down, and to take him by force from among them, and to bring *him* into the castle.

### §3. THE TRANSFER OF PAUL TO CÆSAREA

#### I. THE VISION OF PAUL IN THE CASTLE

##### The Witness to be Borne at Rome

11 And the night following the Lord stood by him, and said, "Be of good cheer, Paul: for as thou hast testified of me in Jerusalem, so must thou bear witness also at Rome."

#### II. THE TRANSFER TO THE ROMAN GOVERNOR

##### a. The Conspiracy of the Jews Against Paul

12 And when it was day, certain of the Jews banded together, and bound themselves under a curse, saying that they would neither eat nor drink till they had killed Paul. 13 And there were more than forty that made this conspiracy. 14 And they came to the chief priests and elders, and said, "We have bound ourselves under a great curse, that we will eat nothing until we have slain Paul. 15 Now therefore do ye with the council signify to the chief captain that he bring him down unto you to-morrow, as though you would inquire something more perfectly concerning him; and we, before he comes near, are ready to kill him." 16 And when Paul's sister's son heard of their lying in wait, he went and entered into the castle, and told Paul.

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 22:28.



17 Then Paul called one of the centurions unto *him*, and said, "Bring this young man unto the chief captain: for he hath a certain thing to tell him." 18 So he took him, and brought *him* to the chief captain, and said, "Paul<sup>1</sup> the prisoner called me unto *him*, and prayed me to bring this young man unto thee, who hath something to say unto thee." 19 Then the chief captain took him by the hand, and went *with him* aside privately, and asked *him*, "What is *it* that thou hast to say to me?" 20 And he said, "The Jews have agreed to desire thee that thou wouldst bring down Paul to-morrow into the council, as though they would inquire somewhat of him more perfectly. 21 But do not thou yield unto them: for there lie in wait for him of them more than forty men, who have bound themselves with an oath, that they will neither eat nor drink till they have killed him: and now are they ready, looking for a promise from thee." 22 So the chief captain *then* let the young man depart, and charged *him*, "*See that thou tell no man that thou hast shown these things to me.*" 23 And he called unto *him* two centurions, saying, "Make ready two hundred soldiers to go to Cæsarea, and horsemen threescore and ten, and spearmen two hundred, at the third hour of the night; 24 and provide them beasts, that they may set Paul on, and bring *him* safe unto Felix the governor."

---

b. The Letter to Felix, the Governor of Judæa

25 And he wrote a letter after this manner:

\* \* \*

26 "Claudius Lysias, unto the most excellent governor Felix, *sendeth* greeting:

27 "This man was taken of the Jews, and should have been killed of them: then came I with an army, and rescued him, having understood that he was a Roman. 28 And when I would have known the cause wherefore they accused him, I brought him forth unto their council: 29 whom I perceived to be accused of questions of their law, but to have nothing laid to his charge worthy of death or of bonds. 30 And when it was told me how that the Jews laid wait for the man, I sent straightway to thee, and gave commandment to his accusers also to say before thee what *they had* against him.

"Farewell."

---

<sup>1</sup> Paul resided at Jerusalem during student days in the School of Gamaliel, some say from his thirteenth to his thirtieth year. Sabatier thinks he must have seen Jesus.

### c. The Removal of Paul to Cæsarea

31 Then the soldiers, as it was commanded them, took Paul, and brought *him* by night to Antipatris. 32 On the morrow they left the horsemen to go with him, and returned to the castle: 33 who, when they came to Cæsarea, and delivered the epistle to the governor, presented Paul also before him. 34 And when the governor had read *the letter*, he asked of what province he was. And when he understood that *he was* of Cilicia, 35 "I will hear thee," said he, "when thy accusers are also come." And he commanded him to be kept in Herod's judgment hall.

## III. THE TRIAL BEFORE GOVERNOR FELIX

### a. The Accusation of Tertullus Against Paul

24:1 And after five days Ananias the high priest descended with the elders, and *with* a certain orator *named* Tertullus, who informed the governor against Paul. 2 And when he was called forth, Tertullus began to accuse *him*, saying:

\* \* \*

"Seeing that by thee we enjoy great quietness, and that very worthy deeds are done unto this nation by thy providence, 3 we accept *it* always, and in all places, most noble Felix, with all thankfulness. 4 Notwithstanding, that I be not further tedious unto thee, I pray thee that thou wouldst hear us of thy clemency a few words. 5 For we have found this man *a* pestilent *fellow*, and a mover of sedition among all the Jews throughout the world, and a ringleader of the sect of the Nazarenes: 6 who also hath gone about to profane the temple: whom we took, and would have judged him according to our law. 7 But the chief captain Lysias came *upon us*, and with great violence took *him* away out of our hands, 8 commanding his accusers to come unto thee: by examining of whom thyself mayest take knowledge of all these things, whereof we accuse him."

\*

9 And the Jews also assented, saying that these things were so.

### b. The Defense of Paul Before the Governor

10 Then Paul, after that the governor had beckoned unto him to speak, answered:

Chapter 23:31-24:10

\* \* \*

“Forasmuch as I know that thou hast been for many years a judge unto this nation, I do the more cheerfully answer for myself: 11 because that thou mayest understand, that there are yet but twelve days since I went up to Jerusalem to worship. 12 And they neither found me in the temple disputing with any man, neither raising up the people, neither in the synagogues, nor in the city: 13 neither can they prove the things whereof they accuse me.

\*

14 “But this I confess unto thee, that after the way which they call heresy, so worship I the God of my fathers, believing all things that are written in the law and in the prophets: 15 and have hope toward God, which they themselves also allow, that there shall be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust. 16 And herein do I exercise myself, to have always a conscience void of offence toward God, and *toward* men.

\*

17 “Now after many years I came to bring alms to my nation, and offerings. 18 Whereupon certain Jews found me purified in the temple, neither with multitude, nor with tumult; 19 who ought to have been here before thee, and object, if they had aught against me. 30 Or else let them *here* say, if they have found any evil doing in me, while I stood before the council, 21 except it be for this one voice, that I cried standing among them, ‘Touching the resurrection of the dead I am called in question by you this day.’”

#### c. The Decision of the Governor is Deferred

22 And when Felix heard these things, having more perfect knowledge of *that* way, he deferred them, and said, “When Ly-sias the chief captain shall come down, I will know the uttermost of your matter.” 23 And he commanded a centurion to keep Paul, and to let *him* have liberty, and that he should forbid none of his acquaintance to minister or come unto him.

#### d. The Ministry to Felix and Drusilla

24 But after certain days, when Felix came with his wife Drusilla, who was a Jewess, he sent for Paul, and heard him con-

*Chapter 24:11-24*



cerning the faith in Christ. 25 And as he reasoned of righteousness, temperance, and judgment to come, Felix trembled, and answered, "Go thy way for this time; when I have a convenient season, I will call for thee." 26 He hoped also that money should have been given him by Paul, that he might loose him: wherefore he sent for him the oftener, and communed with him.

#### IV. THE APPEAL OF PAUL TO CÆSAR

##### a. The Succession of Porcius Festus as Governor

27 But after two years Porcius Festus came into Felix' room: and Felix, willing to show the Jews a pleasure, left Paul bound. 25:1 Now when Festus was come into the province, after three days he ascended from Cæsarea to Jerusalem. 2 Then the high priest and the chief of the Jews informed him against Paul, and besought him, 3 and desired favour against him, that he would send for him to Jerusalem, laying wait in the way to kill him. 4 But Festus answered, that Paul should be kept at Cæsarea, and that he himself would depart shortly *thither*. 5 "Let them therefore," said he, "that among you are able, go down with *me*, and accuse this man, if there be any wickedness in him."

##### b. The Appeal of Paul unto Cæsar

6 And when he had tarried among them more than ten days, he went down unto Cæsarea; and the next day sitting on the judgment seat commanded Paul to be brought. 7 And when he had come, the Jews who came down from Jerusalem stood round about, and laid many and grievous complaints against Paul, which they could not prove. 8 While he answered for himself, "Neither against the law of the Jews, nor against the temple, nor yet against Cæsar, have I offended any thing at all." 9 But Festus, willing to do the Jews a pleasure, answered Paul, and said, "Wilt thou go up to Jerusalem, and there be judged of these things before me?" 10 Then said Paul, "I stand at Cæsar's judgment seat, where I ought to be judged: to the Jews have I done no wrong, as thou very well knowest. 11 For if I be an offender or have committed anything worthy of death, I refuse not to die: but if there be none of these things whereof they accuse me, no man may deliver me unto them. I appeal unto Cæsar."<sup>1</sup> 12 Then Festus, when he had conferred with the council, answered, "Hast thou appealed unto Cæsar? unto Cæsar shalt thou go."

<sup>1</sup> Nero, twenty-one years of age, is Emperor of Rome. Seneca, Prime Minister, and Bhurrus, Prefect of the Praetorium, gave to the first quinquennium of Nero—A. D. 54-59—great celebrity.



**c. The Hearing before King Agrippa II**

13 And after certain days king Agrippa and Bernice came unto Cæsarea to salute Festus. 14 And when they had been there many days, Festus declared Paul's cause unto the king, saying, "There is a certain man left in bonds by Felix: 15 about whom, when I was at Jerusalem, the chief priests and the elders of the Jews informed *me*, desiring to have judgment against him. 16 To whom I answered, 'It is not the manner of the Romans to deliver any man to die, before that he that is accused have the accusers face to face, and have license to answer for himself concerning the crime laid against him. 17 Therefore, when they were come hither, without any delay on the morrow I sat on the judgment seat, and commanded the man to be brought forth. 18 Against whom when the accusers stood up, they brought no accusation of such things as I supposed: 19 but had certain questions against him of their own superstition, and of one Jesus, who was dead, whom Paul affirmed to be alive. 20 And because I doubted of such manner of questions, I asked *him* whether he would go up to Jerusalem, and there be judged of these matters. 21 But when Paul appealed to be reserved unto the hearing of Augustus, I commanded him to be kept till I might send him to Cæsar." 22 Then Agrippa said unto Festus, "I would also hear the man myself." "Tomorrow," said he, "thou shalt hear him."

---

**d. The Defense of Paul before the King**

23 And on the morrow, when Agrippa was come, and Bernice, with great pomp, and had entered into the place of hearing, with the chief captains, and principal men of the city, at Festus' commandment Paul was brought forth. 24 And Festus said, "King Agrippa, and all men who are present here with us, you see this man, about whom all the multitude of the Jews have dealt with me, both at Jerusalem, and *also* here, crying that he ought not to live any longer. 25 But when I found that he had committed nothing worthy of death, and that he himself hath appealed to Augustus, I have determined to send him. 26 Of whom I have no certain thing to write unto my Lord. Wherefore I have brought him forth before you, and specially before thee, O king Agrippa, that, after examination had, I might have somewhat to write. 27 For it seemeth to me unreasonable to send a prisoner, and not withal to signify the crimes *laid* against him." 26:1 Then Agrippa said unto Paul, "Thou art permitted to speak for thyself." Then Paul stretched forth the hand, and answered for himself:

\* \* \*

2 "I think myself happy, king Agrippa, because I shall answer for myself this day before thee touching all the things whereof I am accused of the Jews: 3 Especially *because I know* thee to be expert in all customs and questions that are among the Jews: wherefore I beseech thee to hear me patiently.

\*

4 "My manner of life from my youth, that was at the first among my own nation at Jerusalem, know all the Jews; 5 who knew me from the beginning, if they would testify, that after the most straightest sect of our religion I lived a Pharisee. 6 And now I stand and am judged for the hope of the promise made of God unto our fathers: 7 unto which *promise* our twelve tribes, instantly serving *God* day and night, hope to come. For which hope's sake, king Agrippa, I am accused of the Jews.

\*

8 "Why should it be thought a thing incredible with you, that God should raise the dead? 9 I verily thought with myself, that I ought to do many things contrary to the name of Jesus of Nazareth. 10 Which thing I also did in Jerusalem: and many of the saints did I shut up in prison, having received authority from the chief priests; and when they were put to death I gave my voice against *them*. 11 And I punished them oft in every synagogue, and compelled *them* to blaspheme; and being exceedingly mad against them, I persecuted *them* even unto strange cities.

\*

12 "Whereupon as I journeyed to Damascus with authority and commission from the chief priests, 13 at midday, O king, I saw in the way a light shining round about me and them that journeyed with me. 14 And when we were all fallen to the earth, I heard a voice speaking unto me, and saying in the Hebrew tongue, 'Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me? *it is* hard for thee to kick against the pricks.' 15 And I said, 'Who art thou, Lord?' And he said, 'I am Jesus whom thou persecutest.

\*

16 "But rise, and stand upon thy feet: for I have appeared unto thee for this purpose, to make

thee a minister and a witness both of these things that thou hast seen, and of those things in which I will appear unto thee; 17 delivering thee from the people, and *from* the Gentiles, unto whom now I send thee, 18 to open their eyes, *and* to turn them from darkness to light, and *from* the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and an inheritance among them that are sanctified by faith that is in me.'

\*

19 "Whereupon, O king Agrippa, I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision; 20 but showed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judæa, and *then* to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance.

\*

21 "For these causes the Jews caught me in the temple, and went about to kill *me*. 22 Having therefore obtained help of God, I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying no other things than those that the prophets and Moses did say should come: 23 that Christ should suffer, *and* that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should show light unto the people, and to the Gentiles."

\*

24 And as he thus spake for himself, Festus said with a loud voice, "Paul, thou art beside thyself; much learning doth make thee mad." 25 But he said, "I am not mad, most noble Festus: but speak forth the words of truth and soberness. 26 For the king knoweth of these things, before whom also I speak freely: for I am persuaded that none of these things are hidden from him; for this thing was not done in a corner." 27 "King Agrippa, believest thou the prophets? I know that thou believest." 28 Then Agrippa said unto Paul, "Almost thou persuadest me to be a Christian." 29 And Paul said, "I would to God, that not only thou, but also all that hear me this day, were both almost, and altogether such as I am, except these bonds." 30 And when he had thus spoken, the king rose up, and the governor, and Bernice, and they that sat with them: 31 and when they were gone aside, they talked between themselves, saying, "This man doeth nothing worthy of death or of bonds." 32 Then said Agrippa unto Festus, "This man might have been set at liberty, if he had not appealed unto Cæsar."



## §4. THE TRANSFER OF PAUL TO ROME

## I. THE VOYAGE VIA ASIA TO CRETE

## The Arrival at the Fair Havens

27:1 And when it was determined that we should sail unto Italy, they delivered Paul and certain other prisoners unto *one* named Julius, a centurion of Augustus' band. 2 And entering into a ship of Adramyttium, we launched, meaning to sail by the coasts of Asia; *one* Aristarchus, a Macedonian of Thessalonica, being with us. 3 And the next *day* we touched at Sidon. And Julius courteously treated Paul, and gave *him* liberty to go unto his friends and refresh himself. 4 And when we had launched from thence, we sailed under Cyprus, because the winds were contrary. 5 And when we had sailed over the sea of Cilicia and Pamphylia, we came to Myra, *a city* of Lycia. 6 And there the centurion found a ship of Alexandria, sailing unto Italy; and he put us therein. 7 And when we had sailed slowly many days, and scarce were come over against Cnidus, the wind not suffering us, we sailed under Crete, over against Salmone: 8 and, hardly passing it, came unto a place which is called the Fair Havens; nigh whereunto was the city of Lasea.

## II. THE SHIPWRECK ON THE ISLAND OF MELITA

## a. The Ministry of Paul to the Company

9 Now when much time was spent, and when sailing was now dangerous because the Fast was now already past, Paul admonished *them*, 10 and said unto them, "Sirs, I perceive that this voyage will be with hurt and much damage, not only to the lading and the ship, but also to our lives." 11 Nevertheless the centurion believed the master and owner of the ship, more than those things that were spoken by Paul. 12 And because the Haven was not commodious to winter in, the more part advised to depart thence also, if by any means they might attain to Phoenix, *and there* to winter; *which is* a haven of Crete, and lieth toward the southwest and northwest. 13 And when the south wind blew softly, supposing that they had obtained *their* purpose, loosing *thence*, they sailed close by Crete. 14 And not long after there arose against it a tempestuous wind, called Euroclydon. 15 And when the ship was caught, and could not bear up into the wind, we let *her* drive. 16 And running under a certain island which is called Clauda, we had much work to come by the boat: 17 which when they had taken up, they used helps, undergirding the ship; and, fearing lest they should fall into the quicksands, struck sail, and so were driven. 18 And we being

Chapter 27:1-18



exceedingly tossed with a tempest, the next *day* they lightened the ship; 19 and the third *day* we cast out with our own hands the tackling of the ship. 20 And when neither sun nor stars in many days appeared, and no small tempest lay on *us*, all hope that we should be saved was then taken away. 21 But after long abstinence Paul stood forth in the midst of them, and said, "Sirs, you should have hearkened unto me, and not have loosed from Crete, and to have gained this harm and loss. 22 But now I exhort you to be of good cheer: for there shall be no loss of *any man's* life among you, but of the ship. 23 For there stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am, and whom I serve, 24 saying, 'Fear not, Paul; thou must be brought before Cæsar: and, lo, God hath given thee all them that sail with thee.' 25 Wherefore, sirs, be of good cheer; for I believe God, that it shall be even as it was told me. 26 Howbeit we must be cast upon a certain island.

---

**b. The Shipwreck on the Island of Melita**

27 But when the fourteenth night was come, as we were driven up and down in Adria, about midnight the shipmen deemed that they drew near to some country; 28 and sounded and found *it* twenty fathoms; and when they had gone a little further, they sounded again, and found *it* fifteen fathoms. 29 Then fearing lest we should have fallen upon rocks, they cast four anchors out of the stern, and wished for the day.

\*

30 And as the shipmen were about to flee out of the ship, when they had let down the boat into the sea, under colour as though they would have cast anchors out of the foreship, 31 Paul said to the centurion and to the soldiers, "Except these abide in the ship, you cannot be saved." 32 Then the soldiers cut off the ropes of the boat, and let her fall off.

\*

33 And while the day was coming on, Paul besought *them* all to take meat, saying, "This day is the fourteenth day that you have tarried and continued fasting, having taken nothing. 34 Wherefore I pray you to take *some* meat; for this is for your health: for there shall not a hair fall from the head of any of you." 35 And when he had thus spoken, he took bread, and gave thanks to God in the presence of them all: and when he had broken *it*, he began to eat. 36 Then were they all of good cheer, and they also took *some* meat. 37 And we were in all in the ship, two hundred three score and sixteen souls.

\*

38 And when they had eaten enough, they lightened the ship, and cast out the wheat into the sea. 39 And when it was day,

*Chapter 27:19-39*

they knew not the land: but they discovered a certain creek with a shore, into which they were minded, if it were possible, to thrust in the ship. 40 And when they had taken up the anchors, they committed *themselves* unto the sea, and loosed the rudder bands, and hoisted up the mainsail to the wind, and made toward the shore. 41 And falling into a place where two seas met, they ran the ship aground; and the fore part stuck fast, and remained unmovable, but the hinder part was broken up by the violence of the waves.

\*

42 And the soldiers' counsel was to kill the prisoners, lest any of them should swim out, and escape. 43 But the centurion, willing to save Paul, kept them from *their* purpose; and commanded that they that could swim should cast *themselves* first *into the sea*, and get to land: 44 and the rest, some on boards, and some on *broken pieces* of the ship. And so it came to pass, that they escaped all safe to land.

---

#### c. The Reception by the Islanders

28:1 And when they were escaped, then they knew that the island was called Melita. 2 And the barbarous people showed us no little kindness: for they kindled a fire, and received us every one, because of the present rain, and because of the cold. 3 And when Paul had gathered a bundle of sticks, and laid *them* on the fire, there came a viper out of the heat, and fastened on his hand. 4 And when the barbarians saw the venomous beast hang on his hand, they said among themselves, "No doubt this man is a murderer, whom, though he hath escaped the sea, yet vengeance suffereth not to live." 5 And he shook off the beast into the fire, and felt no harm. 6 Howbeit they looked when he should have swollen, or fallen down dead suddenly: but after they had looked a great while, and saw no harm come to him, they changed their minds, and said that he was a god.

---

#### d. The Lodging and Ministry with Publius

7 In the same quarters were possessions of the chief man of the island, whose name was Publius; who received us, and lodged us three days courteously. 8 And it came to pass, that the father of Publius lay sick of a fever and of a bloody flux: to whom Paul entered in, and prayed, and laid his hands on him, and healed him. 9 So when this was done, others also, who had diseases in the island, came, and were healed: 10 who also honoured us with many honours; and when we departed, they loaded *us* with such things as were necessary.

Chapter 27:40-28:10

### III. THE ARRIVAL OF PAUL AT ROME <sup>1</sup>

#### The Meeting with the Disciples

11 And after three months we departed in a ship of Alexandria, that had wintered in the island, whose sign was "Castor and Pollux." 12 And landing at Syracuse, we tarried *there* three days. 13 And from thence we fetched a compass, and came to Rhegium: and after one day the south wind blew, and we came the next day to Puteoli, 14 where we found brethren, and were desired to tarry with them seven days: and so we went toward Rome. 15 And from thence, when the brethren heard of us, they came to meet us as far as Appii forum, and the Three Taverns: whom, when Paul saw, he thanked God, and took courage.

### IV. THE PRISON MINISTRY OF PAUL AT ROME <sup>1</sup>

#### a. The Private Residence Under Guard

16 And when we came to Rome, the centurion delivered the prisoners to the captain of the guard: but Paul was suffered to dwell by himself with a soldier that kept him.

#### b. The Interview with the Jews

17 And it came to pass, that after three days Paul called the chief of the Jews together: and when they were come together, he said unto them, "Men *and* brethren, though I have committed nothing against the people, or customs of our fathers, yet was I delivered prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans: 18 who, when they had examined me, would have let *me* go, because there was no cause of death in me. 19 But when the Jews spoke against *it*, I was constrained to appeal unto Cæsar; not that I had aught to accuse my nation of. 20 For this cause therefore have I called for you, to see *you*, and to speak with *you*: because that for the hope of Israel I am bound with this chain." 21 And they said unto him, "We neither received letters from Judæa concerning thee, neither any of the brethren that came showed or spoke any harm of thee. 22 But we desire to hear of thee what thou thinkest: for as concerning this sect, we know that every where it is spoken against."

#### c. The Salvation for the Gentiles

23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into *his* lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the

<sup>1</sup> Paul wrote *Ephesians*, *Colossians*, *Philemon* and *Philippians* while in Rome at this time.



kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and *out of* the prophets, from morning till evening. 24 And some believed the things that were spoken, and some believed not. 25 And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, "Well spoke the Holy Spirit by Isaiah the prophet unto our fathers, 26 saying:

\* \* \*

'Go unto this people, and say,  
Hearing you shall hear, and shall not understand;  
And seeing you shall see, and not perceive;  
27 For the heart of this people is waxed gross,  
And their ears are dull of hearing,  
And their eyes have they closed;  
Lest they should see with *their* eyes,  
And hear with *their* ears,  
And understand with *their* heart,  
And should be converted,  
And I should heal them.'

[Isa. 6:9 f.]

\*

28 Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of God is sent unto the Gentiles, and *that* they will hear it." 29 And when he had said these words, the Jews departed, and had great reasoning among themselves.

---

### The Closing Summary

30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him, 31 preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*



# The Epistle to the Romans



## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE GOSPEL OF CHRIST FOR THE ROMANS

##### THE SALUTATION AND THANKSGIVING

###### a. The Salutation

Paul, a servant of Jesus Christ, called *to be* an apostle, separated unto the gospel<sup>2</sup> of God, 2 which he had promised before by his prophets in the holy scriptures, 3 concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, who was made of the seed of David, according to the flesh, and declared *to be* the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead: 5 by whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to the faith among all nations for his name: 6 among whom are you also the called of Jesus Christ: 7 to all that are in Rome, beloved of God, called *to be* saints: Grace to you, and peace, from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

###### b. The Thanksgiving

8 First, I thank my God through Jesus Christ for you all, that your faith is spoken of throughout the whole world. 9 For God is my witness, whom I serve with my spirit in the gospel of his Son, that without ceasing I make mention of you always in my prayers; 10 making request, if by any means now at length I might have a prosperous journey by the will of God to come unto you. 11 For I long to see you,<sup>3</sup> that I may impart unto you some spiritual gift, to the end that you may be established; 12 that is, that I may be comforted together with you by the mutual faith both of you and me. 13 Now I would not

---

<sup>1</sup> Written from Corinth, A. D. 57.

<sup>2</sup> Greek—good tidings.

<sup>3</sup> The church in Rome was not founded by Paul. The Roman historian, Tacitus, significantly says of the origin of Christianity in Rome: "Christus, the founder of that name, was put to death as a criminal by Pontius Pilate, procurator of Judæa, in the reign of Tiberias, but the pernicious superstition, repressed for a time, broke out again, not only through Judæa, where the mischief originated, but through the city of Rome also, whither all things horrible and disgraceful flow, from all quarters as to a common receptacle, and where they are encouraged." The Annals, xv. 44.

have you ignorant, brethren, that oftentimes I purposed to come unto you, but was hindered hitherto, that I might have some fruit among you also, even as among other Gentiles. 14 For I am debtor both to the Greeks, and to the barbarians; both to the wise, and to the unwise. 15 So, as much as in me is, I am ready to preach the gospel to you that are at Rome also.

*Chapter 1:14-15*



## Part Two

### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE ROMANS

---

#### I. THE THEOLOGY OF SALVATION: JUSTIFICATION BY FAITH

##### THE DOCTRINAL PREAMBLE

###### The Power of God unto Salvation to the Believer

For I am not ashamed<sup>1</sup> of the gospel of Christ; for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek. 17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written,

\* \* \*

"The just shall live by faith."<sup>2</sup>

---

#### §1. THE REVELATION OF THE WRATH OF GOD

##### I. THE CONDEMNATION OF THE GENTILES

###### a. The Wrath of God Against the Gentiles

18 For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness; 19 because that which may be known of God is manifest in them; for God hath shown it unto them. 20 For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, *even* his eternal power and godhead; so that they are without excuse; 21 because that, when they knew God, they glorified *him* not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened. 22 Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools, 23 and changed the glory of the uncorruptible God into an image made like to corruptible men, and to birds, and fourfooted beasts, and creeping things. 24 Wherefore God also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts, to dishonor their own

---

<sup>1</sup> Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed. Is. 28:16.

<sup>2</sup> Hab. 2:4.

bodies among themselves: 25 who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever. Amen.

---

**b. The Moral Degradation of the Gentiles**

26 For this cause God gave them up to vile affections; for even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature: 27 and likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that recompense of their error, which was meet. 28 And even as they did not like to retain God in *their* knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate<sup>1</sup> mind, to do those things that are not convenient; 29 being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness; full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity; whispers, 29 backbiters, haters of God, despiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents, 31 without understanding, covenant breakers, without natural affection,<sup>2</sup> implacable, unmerciful; 32 who knowing the judgment of God, that they that commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.

---

**II. THE CONDEMNATION OF THE JEWS**

**a. The Wrath of God Against the Jews**

2:1 Therefore thou art inexcusable, O man, whosoever thou art that judgest: for wherein thou judgest another, thou condemnest thyself; for thou that judgest doest the same things. 2 But we are sure that the judgment of God is according to truth against them that commit such things. 3 And thinkest thou this, O man, that judgest them that do such things, and doest the same, that thou shalt escape the judgment of God? 4 Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance? 5 But after thy hardness and impenitent heart treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God; 6 who will render unto every man according to his deeds: 7 to them who by patient continuance in well doing seek for glory and honour and immortality, eternal life; 8 but unto them that are contentious, and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, indignation and wrath, 9 tribulation and anguish, upon every

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, a mind void of judgment.

<sup>2</sup> Or, unsociable.

soul of man that do evil, of the Jew first, and also of the Gentile; 10 but glory, honour and peace, to every man that worketh good, to the Jew first, and also to the Gentile; 11 for there is no respect of persons with God. 12 For as many as have sinned without law shall also perish without law; and as many as have sinned in the law shall be judged by the law, 13 [For not the hearers of the law *are* just before God, but the doers of the law shall be justified. 14 For when the Gentiles, who have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law are a law unto themselves; 15 who show the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and *their* thoughts the meanwhile accusing or else excusing one another:] 16 in the day when God shall judge the secrets of men by Jesus Christ according to my gospel.

---

#### b. The Moral Degradation of the Jew

17 Behold, thou art called a Jew, and retest in the law, and makest thy boast of God, 18 and knowest *his* will, and approvest the things that are more excellent, being instructed out of the law; 19 and art confident that thou thyself art a guide of the blind, a light to them that are in darkness, 20 an instructor of the foolish, a teacher of babes, who have the form of knowledge and of the truth in the law. 21 Thou therefore that teachest another, teachest thou not thyself? Thou that preachest a man should not steal, dost thou steal? 22 Thou that sayest a man should not commit adultery, dost thou commit adultery? Thou that abhorrest idols, dost thou commit sacrilege? 23 Thou that makest thy boast of the law, through breaking the law dishonourest thou God? 24 For the name of God is blasphemed among the Gentiles through you, as it is written. 25 For circumcision verily profiteth, if thou keep the law: but if thou be a breaker of the law, thy circumcision is made uncircumcision. 26 Therefore if the uncircumcision keep the righteousness of the law, shall not his uncircumcision be counted for righteousness? 27 And shall not uncircumcision which is by nature, if it fulfil the law, judge thee, who by the letter and circumcision dost transgress the law? 28 For he is not a Jew, who is one outwardly; neither *is that* circumcision which is in the flesh; 29 but he *is* a Jew who is one inwardly; and circumcision *is that* of the heart, in the spirit, *and* not in the letter; whose praise *is* not of men, but of God.

---

#### c. The True Position of the Jew

3:1 What advantage then hath the Jew? or what profit *is there* of circumcision? 2 Much every way: chiefly, because

Chapter 2:10-3:2

that unto them were committed the oracles of God. 3 For what if some did not believe? shall their unbelief make the faith of God without effect? 4 God forbid: yea, let God be true, but every man a liar; as it is written:

\* \* \*

"That thou mightest be justified in thy sayings,  
And mightest overcome when thou art judged."<sup>1</sup>

\*

5 But if our unrighteousness commend the righteousness of God, what shall we say? *Is* God unrighteous who taketh vengeance? [I speak as a man]. 6 God forbid: for then how shall God judge the world? 7 For if the truth of God hath more abounded through my lie unto his glory, why yet am I also judged as a sinner? 8 And not *rather* [as we be slanderously reported, and as some affirm that we say], "Let us do evil, that good may come?" whose damnation is just.

### III. THE CONDEMNATION OF ALL MEN

#### The Wrath of God Against All

9 What then? are we better *than they*? No, in no wise: for we have before proved<sup>2</sup> both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin; 10 as it is written:

\* \* \*

"There is none righteous, no, not one:

11 There is none that understandeth,

There is none that seeketh after God,

12 They are all gone out of the way,

They are together become unprofitable;

There is none that doeth good, no, not one.<sup>3</sup>

13 Their throat is an open sepulchre:<sup>4</sup>

With their tongues they have used deceit;

The poison of asps *is* under their lips:<sup>5</sup>

14 Whose mouth *is* full of cursing and bitterness:<sup>6</sup>

15 Their feet *are* swift to shed blood:

16 Destruction and misery *are* in their ways:

17 And the way of peace have they not known:<sup>7</sup>

18 There is no fear of God before their eyes."<sup>8</sup>

\*

19 Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them that are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God. 20 There-

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 51:4.

<sup>2</sup> Romans 1:18.

<sup>3</sup> Ps. 14:1.

<sup>4</sup> Ps. 5:9.

<sup>5</sup> Ps. 140:3.

<sup>6</sup> Ps. 10:7.

<sup>7</sup> Isa. 59:7f.

<sup>8</sup> Ps. 36:1.



fore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

## §2. THE REVELATION OF THE RIGHTEOUSNESS OF GOD

### I. THE GREAT FACT OF HUMAN REDEMPTION

#### a. The Grace of God for Sinful Man

21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets; 22 even the righteousness of God *which is* by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all that believe: for there is no difference: 23 for all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God; 24 being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus; 25 whom God hath set forth to *be* a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God; 26 ~~to~~ to declare, *I say*, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just: and the justifier of him that believeth in Jesus.

#### b. The Justification of Man by Faith

27 Where *is* boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? Of works? Nay: but by the law of faith. 28 Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law. 29 *Is he* the God of the Jews only? *Is he* not also of the Gentiles? Yes, of the Gentiles also: 30 seeing *it is* one God, who shall justify the circumcision by faith, and the uncircumcision through faith.

## II. THE COVENANT WITH ABRAHAM

### a. The Foundation of Faith

31 Do we then make void the law through faith? God forbid: yea, we establish the law. 4:1 What shall we say then that Abraham our father, as pertaining to the flesh, hath found? 2 For if Abraham was justified by works, he hath *whereof* to glory; but not before God. 3 For what saith the scripture? "Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness."<sup>1</sup> 4 Now to him that worketh is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt. 5 But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 15:6.

is counted for righteousness. 6 Even as David also described the blessedness of the man, unto whom God imputed righteousness without works, 7 saying:

\* \* \*

“Blessed *are* they whose iniquities are forgiven,  
And whose sins are covered.

8 Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not  
impute sin.”<sup>1</sup>

\*

9 *Cometh* this blessedness then upon the circumcision *only*, or upon the uncircumcision also? for we say that faith was reckoned to Abraham for righteousness. 10 How was it then reckoned? when he was in circumcision, or in uncircumcision? Not in circumcision, but in uncircumcision. 11 And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which *he had yet* being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of them that believe, though they be not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed unto them also; 12 and the father of circumcision to them that are not of the circumcision only, but who also walk in the steps of that faith of our father Abraham, which *he had* being *yet* uncircumcised.

#### b. The Giving of the Promise

13 For the promise, that he should be the heir of the world, *was* not to Abraham, or to his seed, through the law, but through the righteousness of faith. 14 For if they that are of the law *be* heirs, faith is made void, and the promise made of none effect: 15 because the law worketh wrath: for where no law is, *there is* no transgression. 16 Therefore *it is* of faith, that *it might be* by grace; to the end that the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all 17 [As it is written,<sup>2</sup> “I have made thee a father of many nations”], before him whom he believed, *even* God, who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things that are not as though they were.

#### c. The Faith of Abraham in God

18 Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, “So shall thy seed be.”<sup>3</sup> 19 And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about an

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 32:1f.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. 17:5.

<sup>3</sup> Gen. 15:5.

hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sarah's body: 20 he staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; 21 and being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform. 22 And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness. 23 Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him; 24 but for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead; 25 who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.

### III. THE JUSTIFICATION OF MAN BY FAITH

#### The Certainty of the Atonement

5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ; 2 by whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God. 3 And not only so, but we glory in tribulations also: knowing that tribulation worketh patience; 4 and patience, experience; and experience, hope: 5 and hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Spirit which is given unto us. 6 For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly. 7 For scarcely for a righteous man will one die: yet peradventure for a good man some would even dare to die. 8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. 9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him. 10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life. 11 And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.

### IV. THE MEDIATION OF JESUS CHRIST

#### The Grace Abounding Unto All

12 Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned 13 [For until the law sin was in the world; but sin is not imputed when there is no law. 14 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come. 15 But not as the offence, so also is the free gift. For if through the offence of one many be dead, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, *which is by*

*Chapter 4:20-5:15*



one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many. 16 And not as *it was* by one that sinned, *so is* the gift: for the judgment *was* by one to condemnation, but the free gift *is* of many offences unto justification. 17 For if by one man's offence death reigned by one; much more they that receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, [Jesus Christ]: 18 therefore as by the offence of one *judgment came* upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one *the free gift came* upon all men unto justification of life. 19 For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous. 20 Moreover the law entered, that the offence might abound. But where sin abounded, grace did much more abound: 21 that as sin hath reigned unto death, even so might grace reign through righteousness unto eternal life by Jesus Christ our Lord.

## II. THE THEOLOGY OF THE CHRISTIAN LIFE: SANCTIFICATION<sup>1</sup> BY THE SPIRIT

### I. THE CHRISTIAN LIFE DEFINED

#### a. The Significance of Life and Death in Christ

6:1 What shall we say then? Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound? 2 God forbid. How shall we, who are dead to sin, live any longer therein? 3 Know you not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? 4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. 5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness of his resurrection*: 6 knowing this, that our old man is crucified with *him*, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. 7 For he that is dead is freed from sin. 8 Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe we shall also live with him: 9 knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more; death hath no more dominion over him. 10 For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God. 11 Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord. 12 Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that you should obey it in the lusts thereof. 13 Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members

<sup>1</sup> See Sanday and Headlam, *Int. Crit. Comm.*, Romans, ad loc.



as instruments of righteousness unto God. 14 For sin shall not have dominion over you: for you are not under the law, but under grace.

---

#### b. The Significance of Sin and Holiness

15 What then? shall we sin, because we are not under the law, but under grace? God forbid. 16 Know you not, that to whom you yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants you are whom you obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness? 17 But God be thanked, that you were the servants of sin, but you have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you. 18 Being then made free from sin, you became the servants of righteousness. 19 I speak after the manner of men because of the infirmity of your flesh: for as you have yielded your members servants to uncleanness and to iniquity unto iniquity; even so now yield your members servants to righteousness unto holiness. 20 For when you were the servants of sin, you were free from righteousness. 21 But what fruit had you then in those things whereof you are now ashamed? for the end of those things is death. 22 But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, you have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life. 23 For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

---

#### c. The Significance of Law and Grace

7:1 Know you not, brethren [for I speak to them that know the law], how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth? 2 For the woman that hath an husband is bound by the law to *her* husband so long as he liveth; but if the husband be dead, she is loosed from the law of *her* husband. 3 So then if, while *her* husband liveth, she be married to another man, she shall be called an adulteress: but if her husband be dead, she is free from that law; so that she is no adulteress, though she be married to another man. 4 Wherefore, my brethren, you also have become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that you should be married to another, *even* to him who was raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God. 5 For when we were in the flesh, the motions<sup>1</sup> of sin, which were by the law, did work in our members to bring forth fruit unto death. 6 But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead

---

<sup>1</sup> Greek: *passions*.

wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not *in* the oldness of the letter.

## II. THE CHRISTIAN LIFE ANALYZED

### The Nature of the Inner Man

7 What shall we say then? *Is* the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, "Thou shalt not covet."<sup>1</sup> 8 But sin, taking occasion by the commandment, wrought in me all manner of concupiscence. For without the law sin *was* dead. 9 For I was alive without the law once: but when the commandment came, sin revived, and I died. 10 And the commandment, which *was ordained* to life, I found *to be* unto death. 11 For sin, taking occasion by the commandment, deceived me, and by it slew *me*. 12 Wherefore the law *is* holy, and the commandment holy, and just, and good. 13 Was then that which is good made death unto me? God forbid. But sin, that it might appear sin, working death in me by that which is good; that sin by the commandment might become exceeding sinful. 14 For we know that the law is spiritual: but I am carnal, sold under sin. 15 For that which I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I. 16 If then I do that which I would not, I consent unto the law that *it is* good. 17 Now then it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me. 18 For I know that in me [that is, in my flesh], dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but *how* to perform that which is good I find not. 19 For the good that I would, I do not; but the evil that I would not, that I do. 20 Now if I do that I would not, it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me. 21 I find then a law, that, when I would do good, evil is present with me. 22 For I delight in the law of God after the inward man: 23 but I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. 24 O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death? 25 I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.

## III. THE CHRISTIAN LIFE REALIZED

### a. The Life of the Spirit

8:1 *There is* therefore now no condemnation to them that are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 20:17.

Spirit. 2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. 3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: 4 that the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. 5 For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. 6 For to be carnally minded *is* death; but to be spiritually minded *is* life and peace. 7 Because the carnal mind *is* enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. 8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God. 9 But you are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. 10 And if Christ *be* in you, the body *is* dead because of sin; but the Spirit *is* life because of righteousness. 11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.

---

#### b. The Sonship with Christ

12 Therefore, brethren, we are debtors, not to the flesh, to live after the flesh. 13 For if you live after the flesh, you shall die: but if you through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, you shall live. 14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. 15 For you have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but you have received the spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. 16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: 17 and if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with *him*, that we may be also glorified together.

---

### IV. THE CHRISTIAN LIFE GLORIFIED

#### a. The Hope of the Christian

18 For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time *are* not worthy *to be compared* with the glory that shall be revealed in us. 19 For the earnest expectation of the creature waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of God. 20 For the creature was made subject to vanity, not willingly, but by reason of him who hath subjected *the same* in hope, 21 because the creature itself also shall be delivered from the bondage of corruption into

Chapter 8:2-21



the glorious liberty of the children of God. 22 For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now. 23 And not only *they*, but ourselves also, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, *to wit*, the redemption of our body. 24 For we are saved by hope: but hope that is seen is not hope: for what a man seeth, why doth he yet hope for? 25 But if we hope for that we see not, *then* do we with patience wait for *it*.

---

#### b. The Inspiration of the Spirit

26 Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings that cannot be uttered. 27 And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what *is* the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to *the will of* God. 28 And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them that are the called according to *his* purpose. 29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate *to be* conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren. 30 Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.

---

#### c. The Great Triumph of the Christian

31 What shall we then say to these things? If God *be* for us, who *can be* against us? 32 He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things? 33 Who shall lay anything to the charge of God's elect? *It is* God that justifieth. 34 Who *is* he that condemneth? *It is* Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us. 35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? *shall* tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? 36 As it is written,

\* \* \*

"For thy sake we are killed all the day long;  
We are accounted as sheep for the slaughter."<sup>1</sup>

\*

37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us. 38 For I am persuaded, that neither death,

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 44:22.



nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, 39 nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

### III. THE THEOLOGY OF HISTORY: THE PURPOSE OF GOD THROUGH ISRAEL

#### I. THE INTRODUCTION

##### The Problem of Israel in History

9:1 I say the truth in Christ, I lie not, my conscience also bearing me witness in the Holy Spirit, 2 that I have great heaviness and continual sorrow in my heart. 3 For I could wish that myself were accursed from Christ for my brethren, my kinsmen according to the flesh: 4 who are Israelites; to whom *pertaineth* the adoption, and the glory, and covenants, and the giving of the law, and the service of *God*, and the promises; 5 whose *are* the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ *came*, who is over all, God blessed for ever. Amen.

#### II. THE PAST AND THE PROMISE OF GOD

##### a. The Promise of God to Israel

6 Not as though the word of God had taken none effect. For they *are* not all Israel, that are of Israel: 7 neither, because they are the seed of Abraham, *are they* all children; but, "In Isaac shall thy seed be called."<sup>1</sup> 8 That is, they that are the children of the flesh, these *are* not the children of God: but the children of the promise are counted for the seed. 9 For this *is* the word of promise, "At this time will I come, and Sarah shall have a son."<sup>2</sup> 10 And not only *this*; but when Rebecca also had conceived by one, *even* by our father Isaac 11 [For *the children* being not yet born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calleth]; 12 it was said unto her, "The elder shall serve the younger." 13 As it is written, "Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated."<sup>3</sup>

##### b. The Giving of the Promise

14 What shall we say then? *Is there* unrighteousness with God? God forbid. 15 For he saith to Moses, "I will have

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 21:12.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. 18:10, 14.

<sup>3</sup> Deut. 21:15.

mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion."<sup>1</sup> 16 So then *it is* not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that showeth mercy. 17 For the scripture saith unto Pharaoh, "Even<sup>2</sup> for this same purpose have I raised thee up, that I might show my power in thee, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth." 18 Therefore hath he mercy on whom he will *have mercy*, and whom he will he hardeneth.

### c. The Fulfilment of the Promise

19 Thou wilt say then unto me, Why doth he yet find fault? For who hath resisted his will? 20 Nay but, O man, who art thou that repliest against God? Shall the thing formed say to him that formed it, Why hast thou made me thus? 21 Hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honour, and another unto dishonour? 22 *What* if God, willing to show *his* wrath, and to make his power known, endured with much longsuffering the vessels of wrath fitted to destruction; 23 and that he might make known the riches of his glory on the vessels of mercy, which he had before prepared unto glory, 24 even us, whom he hath called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles? 25 As he saith also in Hosea:

\* \* \*

"I will call them my people, who were not my people;  
And her beloved, who was not beloved."<sup>3</sup>  
26 And it shall come to pass, *that* in the place where  
it was said unto them, 'You *are* not my people,'  
There shall they be called the children of the  
living God."<sup>4</sup>

\*

27 Isaiah also cried concerning Israel,<sup>5</sup> "Though the number of the children of Israel be as the sand of the sea, a remnant shall be saved: 28 for he will finish the work, and cut *it* short in righteousness: because a short work will the Lord make upon the earth." 29 And as Isaiah said before,

\* \* \*

"Except the Lord of Sabaoth had left us a seed,  
We had been as Sodom, and been made like unto  
Gomorrah."<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 33:19.

<sup>2</sup> Ex. 9:16.

<sup>3</sup> Hos. 2:23.

<sup>4</sup> Hos. 1:10.

<sup>5</sup> Isa. 10:22.

<sup>6</sup> Isa. 1:9.

### III. THE PRESENT AND THE PLACE OF ISRAEL

#### a. The Error of Israel Concerning Christ

30 What shall we say then? That the Gentiles, who followed not after righteousness, have attained to righteousness, even the righteousness which is of faith: 31 but Israel, who followed after the law of righteousness, hath not attained to the law of righteousness. 32 Wherefore? Because *they sought it* not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone; 33 as it is written:

\* \* \*

“Behold, I lay in Zion a stumblingstone  
and rock of offence:  
And whosoever believeth on him  
shall not be ashamed.”<sup>1</sup>

#### b. The Seriousness of Israel's Error

10:1 Brethren, my heart's desire and prayer to God for Israel is, that they might be saved. 2 For I bear them record that they have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge. 3 For they being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God. 4 For Christ *is* the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth. 5 For Moses describeth the righteousness which is of the law, “That the man that doeth those things shall live by them.”<sup>2</sup> 6 But the righteousness which is of faith speaketh on this wise, “Say not in thy heart, Who shall ascend into heaven?” [that is, to bring Christ down *from above*.] 7 or, “Who shall descend into the deep?”<sup>3</sup> [that is, to bring Christ up from the dead.] 8 But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, *even* in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach; 9 that if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thy heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. 10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation. 11 For the scripture saith, “Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.”<sup>4</sup> 12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him. 13 For, “Whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.”<sup>5</sup> 14 How shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 118:22.

<sup>2</sup> Lev. 18:5.

<sup>3</sup> Deut. 30:12, 13.

<sup>4</sup> Isa. 28:16.

<sup>5</sup> Joel 2:32.

him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher? 15 and how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written:

\* \* \*

“How beautiful are the feet of them that preach  
the gospel of peace,  
And bring glad tidings of good things!”<sup>1</sup>

#### c. The Responsibility of Israel

16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Isaiah saith, “Lord, who hath believed our report?”<sup>2</sup> 17 So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God. 18 But I say, Have they not heard? Yea, verily:

\* \* \*

“Their sound went into all the earth,  
And their words unto the ends of the world.”<sup>3</sup>

\*

19 But I say, Did not Israel know? First Moses saith:

\* \* \*

“I will provoke you to jealousy by *them that*  
*are* no people,  
And by a foolish nation I will anger you.”<sup>4</sup>

\*

20 But Isaiah is very bold, and saith,

\* \* \*

“I was found of them that sought me not;  
I was made manifest unto them that asked not  
after me.”<sup>5</sup>

\*

21 But to Israel he saith, “All day long have I stretched forth my hands unto a disobedient and gainsaying people.”<sup>6</sup>

### IV. THE FUTURE AND THE REJECTION OF ISRAEL

#### a. The Partial Rejection of Israel

11:1 I say then, Hath God cast away his people? God forbid. For I also am an Israelite, of the seed of Abraham, of the tribe of Benjamin. 2 God hath not cast away his people whom he foreknew. Know you not what the scripture saith of Elijah? how he maketh intercession to God against Israel, saying,<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 52:7.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. 53:1.

<sup>3</sup> Ps. 19:4.

<sup>4</sup> Deut. 32:21.

<sup>5</sup> Isa. 65:1.

<sup>6</sup> Isa. 65:2.

<sup>7</sup> I. Kings 19:10, 14.



3 "Lord, they have killed thy prophets, and digged down thine altars; and I am left alone, and they seek my life." 4 But what saith the answer of God unto him? "I have reserved to myself seven thousand men, who have not bowed the knee to *the image* of Baal." 5 Even so at this present time there is a remnant according to the election of grace. 6 And if by grace, then *is it* no more of works: otherwise grace is no more grace. But if *it be* of works, then is it no more grace: otherwise work is no more work. 7 What then? Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded, 8 [According as it is written,<sup>1</sup> "God hath given them the spirit of slumber, eyes that they should not see, and ears that they should not hear."] unto this day. 9 And David saith:

\* \* \*

"Let their table be made a snare, and a trap,  
And a stumblingblock, and a recompense unto  
them:

10 Let their eyes be darkened, that they may not see,  
And bow down their back always."<sup>2</sup>

#### b. The Temporary Rejection of Israel

11 I say then, Have they stumbled that they should fall? God forbid: but *rather* through their fall salvation *is come* unto the Gentiles, to provoke them to jealousy. 12 Now if the fall of them *be* the riches of the world, and the diminishing of them the riches of the Gentiles, how much more their fulness? 13 For I speak to you Gentiles, inasmuch as I am the apostle of the Gentiles, I magnify my office: 14 If by any means I may provoke to emulation *them that are* my flesh, and might save some of them. 15 For if the casting away of them *be* the reconciling of the world, what *shall* the receiving *of them be*, but life from the dead? 16 For if the firstfruit *be* holy, the lump is also *holy*: and if the root *be* holy, so *are* the branches. 17 And if some of the branches be broken off, and thou, being a wild olive tree, were grafted in among them, and with them partakest of the root and fatness of the olive tree; 18 boast not against the branches. But if thou boast, thou bearest not the root, but the root thee. 19 Thou wilt say then, The branches were broken off, that I might be grafted in. 20 Well; because of unbelief they were broken off, and thou standest by faith. Be not highminded, but fear: 21 for if God spared not the natural branches, *take heed* lest he also spare not thee. 22 Behold therefore the good-

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 29:10.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 69:22.

ness and severity of God: on them that fell, severity; but toward thee, goodness; if thou continue in *his* goodness: otherwise thou also shalt be cut off. 23 And they also, if they abide not still in unbelief, shall be grafted in: for God is able to graft them in again. 24 For if thou wert cut out of the olive tree which is wild by nature, and were grafted contrary to nature into a good olive tree: how much more shall these, which are the natural *branches*, be grafted into their own olive tree?

#### c. The Restoration of Israel through Christ

25 For I would not, brethren, that you should be ignorant of this mystery, lest you should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in. 26 And so all Israel shall be saved; as it is written:

\* \* \*

“There shall come out of Zion the Deliverer,  
And shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:  
27 For this *is* my covenant with them,  
When I shall take away their sins.”<sup>1</sup>

\*

28 As concerning the gospel, *they are* enemies for your sakes: but as touching the election, *they are* beloved for the fathers' sakes. 29 For the gifts and calling of God *are* without repentance. 30 For as you in times past have not believed God, yet have now obtained mercy through their unbelief: 31 even so have these also now not believed, that through your mercy they also may obtain mercy. 32 For God hath concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all.

#### d. The Seven-Fold Doxology

33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!

How unsearchable *are* his judgments,  
And his ways past finding out.

34 For who hath known the mind of the Lord?  
Or who hath been his counsellor?

35 Or who hath first given to him, and it shall be recompensed unto him again?

36 For of him, and through him, and to him *are* all things: to whom *be* the glory for ever. Amen.

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 14:7.

## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION FOR THE ROMANS

---

#### §1. THE CHRISTIAN IN SOCIETY

##### I. THE DUTY OF THE CHRISTIAN IN DAILY LIFE

###### a. The Call to Personal Consecration

I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable<sup>1</sup> unto God, *which is* your reasonable<sup>2</sup> service. 2 And be not conformed to the world, but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what *is* that good and acceptable and perfect will of God.

---

###### b. The Seven-Fold Individual Responsibility

3 For I say through the grace given unto me, to every man that is among you, not to think of *himself* more highly than he ought to think; but to think soberly, according as God hath dealt to every man the measure of faith. 4 For as we have many members in one body, and all members have not the same office, 5 so we *being* many, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another. 6 Having then gifts differing according to the grace that is given unto us:

\* \* \*

Whether prophecy, *let us prophesy* according to the proportion of faith;

7 Or ministry, *let us wait* on our ministering;

Or he that teacheth, on teaching;

8 Or he that exhorteth, on exhortation;

He that giveth, *let him do it* with simplicity;

He that ruleth, with diligence;

He that showeth mercy, with cheerfulness.

---

###### c. The Seven-Fold Triplicate Social Obligation

9 *Let* love be without dissimulation.

Abhor that which is evil and cleave to that which is good.

---

<sup>1</sup> Greek—well-pleasing.

<sup>2</sup> Or—spiritual.

10 *Be* kindly affectioned one to another with brotherly love, in honour preferring one another.

\* \*

11 Not slothful in business;  
Fervent in spirit;  
Serving the Lord.

\* \* \*

12 Rejoicing in hope;  
Patient in tribulation;  
Continuing instant in prayer.

\*\* \*\*

13 Distributing to the necessity of saints; given to hospitality.

14 Bless them that persecute you: bless and curse not.

15 Rejoice with them that do rejoice, and weep with them that weep.

\*\*\* \*\*

16 *Be* of the same mind one toward another.

Mind not high things, but condescend to men of low estate.

Be not wise in your own conceits.

\*\*\* \*\*

17 Recompense to no man evil for evil;

Provide things honest in the sight of all men;

18 If it be possible, as much as lieth in you live peaceably with all men.

\*\*\* \*\*

19 Dearly beloved, *avenge* not yourselves, but *rather* give place unto wrath: for it is written,<sup>1</sup> "Vengeance *is* mine; I will repay," saith the Lord.

20 Therefore,

\* \* \*

"If thine enemy hunger, feed him;

If he thirst, give him drink;

For in so doing thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head."<sup>2</sup>

\*

21 Be not overcome of evil, but overcome evil with good.

<sup>1</sup> Deut. 32:35.

<sup>2</sup> Prov. 25:21.



## II. THE DUTY OF THE CHRISTIAN IN THE STATE

### The Divine Authority of Government

13:1 Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. 2 Whosoever therefore resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God: and they that resist shall receive to themselves damnation. 3 For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. Wilt thou then not be afraid of the power? do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise of the same: 4 for he is the minister of God to thee for good. But if thou do that which is evil, be afraid; for he beareth not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to *execute* wrath upon him that doeth evil. 5 Wherefore *you* must needs be subject, not only for wrath, but also for conscience sake. 6 For this cause pay ye tribute also: for they are God's ministers, attending continually upon this very thing. 7 Render therefore to all their dues: tribute to whom tribute *is due*; custom to whom custom: fear to whom fear; honour to whom honour.

## III. THE SUMMARY OF THE SITUATION

### a. The Law of Brotherly Love

8 Owe no man anything, but to love one another: for he that loveth another hath fulfilled the law. 9 For this—

\* \* \*

"Thou shalt not commit adultery,  
Thou shalt not kill,  
Thou shalt not steal,  
Thou shalt not bear false witness,  
Thou shalt not covet;"<sup>1</sup>

\*

and if *there be* any other commandment, it is briefly comprehended in this saying, namely,

\* \* \*

"Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself."<sup>2</sup>

\*

10 Love worketh no ill to his neighbor: therefore love is the fulfilling of the law.

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 20:14.

<sup>2</sup> Lev. 19:18.

## b. The Duty of the Hour

11 And that, knowing the time, that now *it is* high time to wake out of sleep: for now *is* our salvation nearer than when we believed. 12 The night is far spent, the day is at hand: let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armour of light. 13 Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying. 14 But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to *fulfil* the lusts *thereof*.

## §2. THE CHRISTIAN IN THE CHURCH

## I. THE DUTY OF THE STRONG TOWARD THE WEAK

## a. The Duty of Christian Forbearance

14:1 Him that is weak in the faith receive ye, *but* not to doubtful disputations. 2 For one believeth that he may eat all things: another, who is weak, eateth herbs. 3 Let not him that eateth despise him that eateth not; and let not him that eateth not judge him that eateth: for God hath received him. 4 Who art thou that judgest another man's servant? to his own master he standeth or falleth. Yea, he shall be holden up: for God is able to make him stand. 5 One man esteemeth one day above another: another esteemeth every day *alike*. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind. 6 He that regardeth the day, regardeth *it* unto the Lord: and he that regardeth not the day, to the Lord he doth not regard *it*. He that eateth, eateth to the Lord, for he giveth God thanks; and he that eateth not, to the Lord he eateth not, and giveth God thanks. 7 For none of us liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself. 8 For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore or die, we are the Lord's. 9 For to this end Christ both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living. 10 But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at naught thy brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. 11 For it is written:

\* \* \*

"As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall  
bow to me,  
And every tongue shall confess to God."<sup>1</sup>

\*

12 So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God.

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 45:23.

## b. The Duty of Christian Self-Denial

13 Let us not therefore judge one another any more: but judge this rather, that no man put a stumblingblock or an occasion to fall in *his* brother's way. 14 I know, and am persuaded by the Lord Jesus, that *there is* nothing unclean of itself: but to him that esteemeth any thing to be unclean, to him *it is* unclean. 15 But if thy brother be grieved with thy meat, now walkest thou not charitably. Destroy not him with thy meat, for whom Christ died. 16 Let not then your good be evil spoken of: 17 for the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Spirit. 18 For he that in these things serveth Christ *is* acceptable to God, and approved of men. 19 Let us therefore follow after the things that make for peace, and things wherewith one may edify another. 20 For meat destroy not the work of God. All things indeed *are* pure; but *it is* evil for that man who eateth with offence. 21 *It is* good neither to eat flesh, nor to drink wine, nor *any thing* whereby thy brother stumbleth, or is offended, or is made weak. 22 Hast thou faith? have *it* to thyself before God. Happy *is* he that condemneth not himself in that thing which he alloweth. 23 And he that doubteth is damned if he eat, because *he eateth* not of faith: for whatsoever *is* not of faith is sin.

## II. THE RELATION OF JEW AND GENTILE

## The Unity in Jesus Christ

15:1 We then that are strong ought to bear the infirmities of the weak, and not to please ourselves. 2 Let every one of us please *his* neighbor for his good to edification. 3 For even Christ pleased not himself; but, as it is written, "The reproaches of them that reproached thee fell on me." 4 For whatsoever things were written aforetime were written for our learning, that we through patience and comfort of the scriptures might have hope. 5 Now the God of patience and consolation grant you to be likeminded one toward another according to Christ Jesus: 6 that you may with one mind *and* one mouth glorify God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ. 7 Wherefore receive ye one another, as Christ also received us, to the glory of God. 8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises *made* unto the fathers: 9 and that the Gentiles might glorify God for *his* mercy; as it is written:

\* \* \*

"For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles,

Chapter 14:13-15:9

And sing unto thy name."<sup>1</sup>

\*

10 And again he saith, "Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people."<sup>2</sup>

11 And again:

\* \* \*

"Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles;  
And laud him, all ye people."<sup>3</sup>

\*

12 And again, Isaiah saith:

\* \* \*

"There shall be a root of Jesse,  
And he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles,  
In him shall the Gentiles trust."<sup>4</sup>

---

#### The Benediction

13 Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that you may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Spirit.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 18:49.

<sup>2</sup> Deut. 32:43.

<sup>3</sup> Ps. 117:1.

<sup>4</sup> Isa. 9:6, 7; 11:1.



## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE APOSTLE AND THE ROMANS

##### I. THE MINISTRY OF PAUL

##### a. The Personal Word with the Romans

And I myself also am persuaded of you, my brethren, that you also are full of goodness, filled with all knowledge, able also to admonish one another. 15 Nevertheless, brethren, I have written the more boldly unto you in some sort, as putting you in mind, because of the grace that is given to me of God, 16 that I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of God, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Spirit. 17 I have therefore whereof I may glory through Jesus Christ in those things that pertain to God. 18 For I will not dare to speak of any of those things which Christ hath not wrought by me, to make the Gentiles obedient, by word and deed, 19 through mighty signs and wonders, by the power of the Spirit of God; so that from Jerusalem, and roundabout unto Illyricum, I have fully preached the gospel of Christ. 20 Yea, so have I striven to preach the gospel, not where Christ was named, lest I should build upon another man's foundation: 21 but as it is written:

\* \* \*

"To whom he was not spoken of, they shall see,  
And they that have not heard shall understand."<sup>1</sup>

---

##### b. The Missionary Plans of Paul

22 For which cause also I have been much hindered from coming to you. 23 But now having no more place in these parts, and having a great desire these many years to come unto you, 24 whensoever I take my journey into Spain, I will come to you: for I trust to see you in my journey, and to be brought on my way thitherward by you, if first I be somewhat filled with your *company*. 25 But now I go unto Jerusalem to minister unto the saints. 26 For it hath pleased them of Macedonia and

---

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 52:15.

Achaia to make a certain contribution for the poor saints that are at Jerusalem. 27 It hath pleased them verily; and their debtors they are. For if the Gentiles have been made partakers of their spiritual things, their duty is also to minister unto them in carnal things. 28 When therefore I have performed this, and have sealed to them this fruit, I will come by you into Spain. 29 And I am sure that, when I come unto you, I shall come in the fulness of the blessing of the gospel of Christ.

---

### c. The Request for Prayer

30 Now I beseech you, brethren, for the Lord Jesus Christ's sake, and for the love of the Spirit, that you strive together with me in *your* prayers to God for me; 31 that I may be delivered from them that do not believe in Judæa; and that my service which *I have* for Jerusalem may be accepted of the saints; 32 that I may come unto you with joy by the will of God, and may with you be refreshed. 33 Now the God of peace be<sup>d</sup> with you all. Amen.

---

## II. THE SALUTATIONS AND BENEDICTION

### a. The Commendation of Phoebe

16:1 I commend unto you Phoebe our sister, who is a servant of the church which is at Cenchræa: 2 that you receive her in the Lord, as becometh saints, and that you assist her in whatsoever business she hath need of you: for she hath been a succourer of many, and of myself also.

---

### b. The Salutations of the Apostle

3 Greet Priscilla and Aquila my helpers in Christ Jesus, 4 who for my life laid down their own necks: unto whom not only I give thanks, but also all the churches of the Gentiles.

5 Likewise *greet* the church that is in their house.

Salute my well beloved Epænetus, who is the first-fruits of Achaia unto Christ.

6 Greet Mary, who bestowed much labour on us.

7 Salute Andronicus and Junia, my kinsmen, and my fellowprisoners, who are of note among the apostles, who also were in Christ before me.

8 Greet Amplias my beloved in the Lord.

9 Salute Urbane, our helper in Christ, and Stachys my beloved.

Chapter 15:27-16:9

10 Salute Apelles, approved in Christ.

Salute them that are of Aristobulus' *household*.

11 Salute Herodion my kinsman.

Greet them that are of the *household* of Narcissus, that are in the Lord.

12 Salute Tryphena and Tryphosa, who labour in the Lord.

Salute the beloved Persis, who laboured much in the Lord,

13 Salute Rufus, chosen in the Lord, and his mother and mine.

14 Salute Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermas, Patrobas, Hermes, and the brethren that are with them.

15 Salute Philologus, and Julia, Mereus, and his sister, and Olympas, and all the saints that are with them.

\*

16 Salute one another with a holy kiss.

\*

The churches of Christ salute you.

---

#### c. The Closing Admonition to Unity

17 Now I beseech you, brethren, mark them that cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which you have learned; and avoid them. 18 For they that are such serve not our Lord Jesus Christ, but their own selves; and by good words and fair speeches deceive the hearts of the simple. 19 For your obedience is come abroad unto all men. I am glad therefore on your behalf: but yet I would have you wise unto that which is good, and simple concerning that which is evil. 20 And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you. Amen.

---

#### d. The Salutations of Paul's Companions

21 Timotheus my workfellow, and Lucius, and Jason, and Sosipater, my kinsmen, salute you.

\*

22 I Tertius, who wrote *this* epistle, salute you in the Lord.

\*

23 Gaius my host, and of the whole church, saluteth you.

Erastus, the chamberlain of the city, saluteth you, and Quartus a brother.

\*

24 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you all. Amen.

*Chapter 16:10-24*

**f. The Closing Benediction**

25 Now to him that is of power to establish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began, 26 but now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith: 27 to God only wise, *be* glory through Jesus Christ for ever. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*



# The First Epistle to the Corinthians



## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE COMMENDATION OF THE CORINTHIANS

##### THE SALUTATION AND THANKSGIVING

###### a. The Salutation

Paul, called *to be* an apostle of Jesus Christ through the will of God, and Sosthenes *our* brother, 2 unto the church of God which is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called *to be* saints, with all them that in every place call upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both theirs and ours: 3 Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from God our Father, and *from* the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

###### b. The Thanksgiving

4 I thank my God always on your behalf, for the grace of God which is given you by Jesus Christ; 5 that in every thing you are enriched by him, in all utterance, and *in* all knowledge; 6 even as the testimony of Christ was confirmed in you; 7 so that you come behind in no gift; waiting for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ: 8 who shall confirm you unto the end, *that you may be* blameless in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ. 9 God *is* faithful by whom you were called unto the fellowship of his Son Jesus Christ our Lord.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written from Ephesus early in the third missionary journey.





## Part Two

# THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE CORINTHIANS CONCERNING REPORTS

---

### §1. THE REPORT OF DIVISIONS IN THE CHURCH

#### I. THE PARTY SPIRIT AND THE GOSPEL

##### a. The Unity of the Gospel

Now I beseech you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you all speak the same thing, and *that* there be no divisions among you; but *that* you be perfectly joined together in the same mind in the same judgment. 11 For it hath been declared unto me of you, my brethren, by them *that are of the house* of Chloe, that there are contentions among you. 12 Now this I say, that every one of you saith, "I am of Paul;" and, "I of Apollos;" and, "I of Cephas;" and, "I of Christ." 13 Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were you baptized in the name of Paul? 14 I thank God that I baptized none of you, but Crispus and Gaius; 15 lest any should say that I had baptized in my own name. 16 And I baptized also the household of Stephanus; besides, I know not whether I baptized any other.

---

##### b. The Wisdom of Gospel Preaching

17 For Christ sent me not to baptize, but to preach the gospel; not with wisdom of words, lest the cross of Christ should be made of no effect. 18 For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us that are saved it is the power of God. 19 For it is written:

\* \* \*

"I will destroy the wisdom of the wise,  
And will bring to nothing the understanding of  
the prudent."<sup>1</sup>

\*

20 Where *is* the wise? where *is* the scribe? where *is* the disputer of this world? hath not God made foolish the wisdom of this

---

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 29:14.

world? 21 For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe. 22 For the Jews require a sign,<sup>1</sup> and the Greeks seek after wisdom: 23 but we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock,<sup>2</sup> and unto the Greeks foolishness; 24 but unto them that are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God and the wisdom of God. 25 Because the foolishness of God is wiser than men; and the weakness of God is stronger than men.

---

#### c. The Humble Body of Disciples at Corinth

26 For you see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men after the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, *are called*: 27 but God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise; and God hath chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things that are mighty; 28 and base things of the world, and things that are despised, hath God chosen, *yea*, and things that are not, to bring to naught things that are: 29 that no flesh should glory in his presence. 30 But of him are you in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption: 31 that according as it is written, "He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord."<sup>3</sup>

---

#### d. The Wisdom of Paul's Ministry

2:1 And I, brethren, when I came to you, came not with excellency of speech or of wisdom, declaring unto you the testimony of God. 2 For I determined not to know any thing among you, save Jesus Christ, and him crucified. 3 And I was with you in weakness, and in fear, and in much trembling. 4 And my speech and my preaching *were* not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power: 5 that your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of God.

---

#### e. The Spiritual Message of Paul

6 Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to naught: 7 but we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, *even* the hidden *wisdom*, that God ordained before the world unto our glory: 8 which none of the princes of this world

---

<sup>1</sup> Luke 11:16.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. 8:14.

<sup>3</sup> Jer. 9:23.

knew: for had they known *it*, they would not have crucified the Lord of Glory. 9 But as it is written,

\* \* \*

“Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard,  
Neither hath entered into the heart of man,  
The things that God hath prepared for them that  
love him.”<sup>1</sup>

\*

10 But God hath revealed *them* unto us by his spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. 11 For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man that is in him? even so, the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. 12 Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit that is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. 13 Which things also we speak, not in the words which man’s wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Spirit teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. 14 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned. 15 But he that is spiritual judgeth all things, yet he himself is judged of no man. 16 For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ.

## II. THE PARTY SPIRIT AND THE CHURCH

### a. The Spiritual Life of the Corinthians

3:1 And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, *even* as unto babes in Christ. 2 I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto you were not able *to bear it*, neither yet now are you able. 3 For you are yet carnal: for whereas *there is* among you envying, and strife, and divisions, are you not carnal, and walk as men? 4 For while one saith, “I am of Paul;” and another, “I *am* of Apollos;” are you not carnal? 5 Who then is Paul? and who *is* Apollos, but ministers by whom you believed, even as the Lord gave to every man? 6 I have planted, Apollos watered; but God gave the increase. 7 So then neither is he that planteth anything, neither he that watereth; but God that giveth the increase. 8 Now he that planteth and he that watereth are one: and every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labours. 9 For we are labourers together with God: you are God’s husbandry, *ye are* God’s building.

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 64:4.

### b. The Foundation of the Corinthian Church

10 According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon. 11 For other foundation can no man lay than what is laid, which is Jesus Christ. 12 Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble; 13 every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is. 14 And if any man's work abide that he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward. 15 If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.

### c. The Church the Temple of God

16 Know you not that you are the temple of God, and *that* the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? 17 If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which *temple* you are.

### d. The Inheritance of the Church

18 Let no man deceive himself. If any man among you seemeth to be wise in this world, let him become a fool, that he may be wise. 19 For the wisdom of this world is foolishness with God. For it is written, "He taketh the wise in their own craftiness;"<sup>1</sup> 20 and again:

\* \* \*

"The Lord knoweth the thoughts of the wise,  
That they are vain."<sup>2</sup>

\*

21 Therefore let no man glory in men. For all things are yours; 22 whether Paul, or Apollos, or Cephas, or the world, or life, or death, or things present, or things to come; all are yours; 23 and you are Christ's; and Christ is God's.

## III. THE PARTY SPIRIT AND THE MINISTER

### a. The Minister and the Church

4:1 Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of Christ, and stewards of the mysteries of God. 2 Moreover it is required in stewards, that a man be found faithful. 3 But with me it

<sup>1</sup> Job 5:13.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 94:11.



is a very small thing that I should be judged of you, or of man's judgment: yea, I judge not my own self. 4 For I know nothing by myself; yet am I not hereby justified; but he that judgeth me is the Lord. 5 Therefore judge nothing before the time, until the Lord come, who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the heart: and then shall every man have praise of God.

---

#### b. The Minister's Lot in the World

6 And these things, brethren, I have in a figure transferred to myself and to Apollos for your sakes; that you might learn in us not to think of *men* above that which is written, that no one of you be puffed up for one against another. 7 For who maketh thee to differ *from another*? And what hast thou that thou didst not receive? Now if thou didst receive *it*, why dost thou glory, as if thou hadst not received *it*? 8 Now you are full, now you are rich; you have reigned as kings without us: and I would to God you did reign, that we also might reign with you. 9 For I think that God hath set forth us the apostles last, as it were appointed to death: for we are made a spectacle unto the world, and to angels, and to men. 10 *We are* fools for Christ's sake, but you are wise in Christ; we *are* weak, but you *are* strong; you *are* honourable, but we *are* despised. 11 Even unto this present hour we both hunger, and thirst, and are naked, and are buffeted, and have no certain dwellingplace; 12 and labour, working with our own hands: being reviled, we bless; being persecuted, we suffer it: 13 being defamed, we intreat: we are made as the filth of the world, *and are* the offscouring of all things unto this day.

---

#### c. The Minister's Authority in the Church

14 I write not these things to shame you, but as my beloved sons I warn *you*. 15 For though you have ten thousand instructors in Christ, yet *have you* not many fathers: for in Christ Jesus I have begotten you through the gospel.<sup>1</sup> 16 Wherefore I beseech you, be ye followers of me. 17 For this cause have I sent unto you Timothy, who is my beloved son, and faithful in the Lord, who shall bring you into remembrance of my ways that are in Christ, as I teach everywhere in every church. 18 Now some are puffed up, as though I would not come to you. 19 But I will come to you shortly, if the Lord will, and will know, not the speech of them that are puffed up, but the power.

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 18:1f.

20 For the kingdom of God *is* not in word, but in power. 21 What will ye? shall I come unto you with a rod, or in love, and *in* the spirit of meekness?

---

## §2. THE REPORT OF IMMORALITY AT CORINTH

### I. THE LUST IN THE CONGREGATION

#### a. The Duty of the Church Toward the Offender

5:1 It is reported commonly *that there is* fornication among you, and such fornication as is not so much as named among the Gentiles, that one should have his father's wife. 2 And you are puffed up, and have not rather mourned, that he that hath done this deed might be taken away from among you. 3 For I verily, as absent in body, but present in spirit, have judged<sup>1</sup> already, as though I were present, *concerning* him that hath done this deed, 4 in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, when you are gathered together, and my spirit, with the power of our Lord Jesus Christ, 5 to deliver such a one unto Satan, for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ. 6 Your glorying *is* not good. Know you not that a little leaven leaveneth the whole lump? 7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, as you are unleavened. For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us: 8 therefore let us keep the feast, not with old leaven, neither with the leaven of malice and wickedness; but with the unleavened *bread* of sincerity and truth.

---

#### b. The Duty of the Corinthians

9 I wrote<sup>2</sup> unto you in an epistle not to *have* company with fornicators; 10 not yet altogether with the fornicators of this world, or with the covetous, or extortioners, or with idolaters; for then must you needs go out of the world. 11 But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolater, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such a one no not to eat. 12 For what have I to do to judge them also that are without? do not you judge them that are within? 13 But them that are without God judgeth. Therefore put away from among yourselves that wicked person.

---

<sup>1</sup> Paul seems to have assembled the congregation in spirit as a court, himself in spirit presiding as judge and passing sentence of expulsion upon the offender.

<sup>2</sup> This Epistle is believed by some to be included in 2 Cor. 6:14-7:1.

## II. THE LITIGATION OF THE CORINTHIANS

### The Recommendation of Arbitration

6:1 Dare any of you, having a matter against another, go to law before the unjust, and not before the saints? 2 Do you not know that the saints shall judge the world? and if the world shall be judged by you, are you unworthy to judge the smallest matters? 3 Know you not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life? 4 If then you have judgments of things pertaining to this life, set them to judge who are least esteemed in the church. 5 I speak to your shame. Is it so, that there is not a wise man among you? no, not one that shall be able to judge between his brethren? 6 But brother goeth to law with brother, and that before the unbelievers. 7 Now therefore there is utterly a fault among you, because you go to law one with another. Why do you not rather take wrong? why do you not rather *suffer yourselves to be defrauded*? 8 Nay, you do wrong, and defraud, and that *your* brethren. 9 Know you not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind, 10 nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God. 11 And such were some of you: but you are washed, but you are sanctified, but you are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.

---

## III. THE HIGHER SPIRITUAL LAW

### The Human Body a Temple of the Holy Spirit

12 All things are lawful unto me, but all things are not expedient:<sup>1</sup> all things are lawful for me, but I will not be brought under the power of any. 13 Meats for the belly, and the belly for meats: but God shall destroy both it and them. Now the body is not for fornication, but for the Lord; and the Lord for the body. 14 And God hath both raised up the Lord, and will also raise us up by his own power. 15 Know you not that your bodies are the members of Christ? shall I then take the members of Christ, and make *them* the members of a harlot? God forbid. 16 What? know you not that he that is joined to a harlot is one body? "For two," saith he, "shall be one flesh."<sup>2</sup> 17 But he that is joined unto the Lord is one spirit. 18 Flee fornication.

<sup>1</sup> Or, profitable.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. 2:24.

Every sin that a man doeth is without the body: for he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body. 19 What? know you not that your body is the temple of the Holy Spirit *which is* in you, which you have of God, and you are not your own? 20 For you are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.

*Chapter 1:19-20*



## Part Three

# THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE CORINTHIANS IN REPLY TO INQUIRIES

---

### §1. THE INQUIRY CONCERNING MARRIAGE

#### I. THE IMPORTANCE OF MARRIAGE

##### The Recommendation to Husbands and Wives

Now concerning the things whereof you wrote<sup>1</sup> unto me: *It is good for a man not to touch a woman.* 2 Nevertheless, *to avoid* fornication, let every man have his own wife, and let every woman have her own husband. 3 Let the husband render unto the wife due benevolence: and likewise also the wife unto the husband. 4 The wife hath not power of her own body, but the husband; and likewise also the husband hath not power of his own body, but the wife. 5 Defraud ye not one the other, except *it be* with consent for a time, that you may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again, that Satan tempt you not for your incontinency. 6 But I speak this by permission, *and* not of commandment. 7 For I would that all men were even as I myself. But every man hath this proper gift of God, one after this manner, and another after that.

---

#### II. THE GOSPEL OF MARRIAGE

##### a. The Word of the Lord Concerning Marriage

8 I say therefore to the unmarried and widows, *It is good for them if they abide even as I.* 9 But if they cannot contain, let them marry: for it is better to marry than to burn. 10 And unto the married I command, *yet* not I, but the Lord,<sup>2</sup> Let not the wife depart from *her* husband: 11 but if she depart, let her remain unmarried, or be reconciled to *her* husband, and let not the husband put away *his* wife.

---

<sup>1</sup> This letter was doubtless brought from Corinth by Stephanas, Fortunatus and Achaicus. See Ch. 16:17.

<sup>2</sup> Matt. 19:3f.

## b. The Recommendation of Paul

12 But to the rest speak I, not the Lord: If any brother hath a wife that believeth not, and she be pleased to dwell with him, let him not put her away. 13 And the woman that hath a husband that believeth not, and if he be pleased to dwell with her, let her not leave him. 14 For the unbelieving husband is sanctified by the wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified by the husband: else were your children unclean; but now are they holy. 15 But if the unbelieving depart, let him depart. A brother or sister is not under bondage in such cases: but God hath called us to peace. 16 For what knowest thou, O wife, whether thou shalt save *thy* husband? or how knowest thou, O man, whether thou shalt save *thy* wife? 17 But as God hath distributed to every man, as the Lord hath called every one, so let him walk.

## c. The Usage in all the Churches

And so ordain I in all the churches. 18 Is any man called being circumcised? let him not become uncircumcised. Is any man called in uncircumcision, let him not be circumcised. 19 Circumcision is nothing, and uncircumcision is nothing, but the keeping of the commandments of God. 20 Let every man abide in the same calling wherein he was called. 21 Art thou called *being* a servant? <sup>1</sup> care not for it: but if thou mayest be made free, use *it* rather. 22 For he that is called in the Lord, *being* a servant, is the Lord's freeman: likewise also he that is called, *being* free, is Christ's servant. 23 You are bought with a price; be not ye the servants of men. 24 Brethren, let every man, wherein he is called, therein abide with God.

## III. THE CARE OF VIRGINS IN THE CHURCH

## The Apostle's Recommendation

25 Now concerning virgins, I have no commandment of the Lord: yet I give my judgment, as one that hath obtained mercy of the Lord to be faithful. 26 I suppose therefore that this is good for the present distress, <sup>2</sup> *I say*, that *it is* good for a man so to be. 27 Art thou bound unto a wife? seek not to be loosed. Art thou loosed from a wife? seek not a wife. 28 But if thou marry, thou hast not sinned; and if a virgin marry, she hath not sinned. Nevertheless such shall have trouble in the flesh: but I spare you. 29 But this I say, brethren, The time *is* short: it remaineth, that both they that have wives be as though they

<sup>1</sup> A slave.<sup>2</sup> Or, necessity.

had none; 30 and they that weep as though they rejoiced not; and they that buy, as though they possessed not; 31 and they that use this world, as not abusing *it*; for the fashion of this world passeth away. 32 But I would have you without carefulness. He that is unmarried careth for the things that belong to the Lord, how he may please the Lord; 33 but he that is married careth for the things that are of the world, how he may please *his* wife. 34 There is a difference *also* between a wife and a virgin. The unmarried woman careth for the things of the Lord, that she may be holy both in body and in spirit: but she that is married careth for the things of the world, how she may please *her* husband. 35 And this I speak for your own profit; not that I may cast a snare upon you, but for that which is comely, and that you may attend unto the Lord without distraction. 36 But if any man think that he behaveth himself uncomely toward his virgin, if she pass the flower of *her* age, and need so require, let him do what he will, he sinneth not: let them marry. 37 Nevertheless he that standeth stedfast in his heart, having no necessity, but hath power over his own will, and hath so decreed in his heart that he will keep his virgin, doeth well. 38 So then he that giveth *her* in marriage doeth well; but he that giveth *her* not in marriage doeth better. 39 The wife is bound by the law as long as the husband liveth; but if her husband be dead, she is at liberty to be married to whom she will, only in the Lord. 40 But she is happier if she so abide, after my judgment: and I think also that I have the Spirit of God.

---

## §2. THE INQUIRY CONCERNING SACRIFICIAL MEATS<sup>1</sup>

### I. THE APOSTLE'S INSTRUCTION

#### a. The Duty and Example of the Christian Church

8:1 Now concerning things offered unto idols, we know that we all have knowledge. Knowledge puffeth up, but charity edifieth. 2 And if any man think that he knoweth anything, he knoweth nothing yet as he ought to know. 3 But if any man love God, the same is known of him. 4 As concerning therefore the eating of those things that are offered in sacrifice unto idols, we know that an idol *is* nothing in the world, and that *there is* no other God but one. 5 For though there be that are called Gods, whether in heaven or in earth [as there are gods many and lords many], 6 but to us *there is but* one God, the Father, of whom *are* all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom *are* all things, and we by him. 7 Howbeit *there is* not in every man that knowledge; for some with conscience of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Meats offered to idols and then sold in the marketplaces.



idol unto this hour eat it as a thing offered unto an idol; and their conscience being weak is defiled. 8 But meat commendeth us not to God: for neither if we eat are we the better, neither if we eat not are we the worse. 9 But take heed lest by any means this liberty of yours become a stumblingblock to them that are weak. 10 For if any man see thee that hast knowledge sit at meat in the idol's temple, shall not the conscience of him that is weak be emboldened to eat those things that are offered to idols; 11 and through thy knowledge shall the weak brother perish, for whom Christ died? 12 But when you sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, you sin against Christ. 13 Wherefore, if meat make my brother to offend, I will eat no flesh while the world standeth, lest I make my brother to offend.

---

#### b. The Example of Paul and Others

9:1 Am I not an apostle? am I not free? have I not seen<sup>1</sup> Jesus Christ our Lord? are not you my work in the Lord? 2 If I am not an apostle unto others, yet doubtless I am to you: for the seal of my apostleship are you in the Lord. 3 My answer to them that do examine me is this, 4 Have we not power to eat and to drink? 5 Have we not power to lead about a sister, a wife, as well as other apostles, and as the brethren of the Lord, and Cephas? 6 Or I only and Barnabas, have we not power to forbear working? 7 Who goeth a warfare any time at his own charges? who planteth a vineyard, and eateth not of the fruit thereof? or who feedeth a flock, and eateth not of the milk of the flock?

---

#### c. The Instruction of the Law of Moses

8 Say I these things as a man? or saith not the law the same also? 9 For it is written in the law of Moses,<sup>2</sup> "Thou shalt not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn." Doth God take care for oxen? 10 or saith he *it* altogether for our sakes? For our sakes, no doubt, *this* is written: that he that ploweth should plow in hope; and that he that thresheth in hope should be partaker of his hope. 11 If we have sown unto you spiritual things, *is it* a great thing if we shall reap your carnal things? 12 If others be partakers of *this* power over you, *are* not we rather? Nevertheless we have not used this power; but suffer all things, lest we should hinder the gospel of Christ. 13 Do you not know that they that minister about holy things

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 9:3f.

<sup>2</sup> Deut. 25:4.



live of *the things* of the temple? and they that wait at the altar are partakers with the altar? 14 Even so hath the Lord ordained that they that preach the gospel should live of the gospel.

---

#### d. The Principle of Paul's Preaching

15 But I have used none of these things; neither have I written these things, that it should be so done unto me: for *it were* better for me to die, than that any man should make my glorying void. 16 For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yea, woe is unto me if I preach not the gospel! 17 For if I do this thing willingly, I have a reward: but if against my will, a dispensation *of the gospel* is committed unto me. 18 What is my reward then? *Verily* that, when I preach the gospel, I may make the gospel of Christ without charge, that I abuse not my power in the gospel.

---

#### e. The Practice of Paul in His Ministry

19 For though I am free from all *men*, yet have I made myself *a* servant unto all, that I might gain the more. 20 And unto the Jews I became as a Jew, that I might gain the Jews; to them that are under the law, as under the law, that I might gain them that are under the law; 21 to them that are without law, as without law, (being not without law to God, but under the law to Christ) that I might gain them that are without law. 22 To the weak became I as weak, that I might gain the weak: I am made all things to all *men*, that I might by all means save some. 23 And this I do for the gospel's sake, that I might be partaker thereof with *you*. 24 Know you not that they that run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that you may obtain. 25 And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they *do it* to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible. 26 I therefore so run, not as uncertainly; so fight I, not as one that beateth the air: 27 but I keep under my body, and bring *it* into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

---

#### f. The Example of Israel

10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that you should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea; 2 and were baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea; 3 and did all eat the same spiritual

*Chapter 9:14-10:3*

meat; 4 and did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ. 5 But with many of them God was not well pleased; for they were overthrown in the wilderness. 6 Now these things were our examples, to the intent *that* we should not lust after evil things, as they also lusted. 7 Neither be ye idolaters, as *were* come of them; as it is written,<sup>1</sup> "The people sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to play." 8 Neither let us commit fornication, as some of them committed and fell in one day three and twenty thousand.<sup>2</sup> 9 Neither let us tempt Christ, as some of them also tempted, and were destroyed of serpents.<sup>3</sup> 10 Neither murmur ye, as some of them also murmured, and were destroyed of the destroyer. 11 Now all these things happened unto them for examples: and they are written for our admonition, upon whom the ends of the world are come. 12 Wherefore let him that thinketh he standeth take heed lest he fall. 13 There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God *is* faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that you are able; but will with the temptation make a way of escape, that you may be able to bear *it*.

## II. THE EXHORTATION CONCERNING IDOLATRY

### a. The Truth of the Gospel of Christ

14 Wherefore, my dearly beloved, flee from idolatry. 15 I speak as to wise men; judge ye what I say. 16 The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ? 17 For we *being* many are one bread, *and* one body: for we are all partakers of that one bread. 18 Behold Israel after the flesh: are not they who eat of the sacrifices partakers of the altar? 19 What say I then? that the idol is anything, or that which is offered in sacrifice to idols any thing? 20 But *I say*, that the things which the Gentiles sacrifice, they sacrifice to devils, and not to God: and I would not that you should have fellowship with devils. 21 You cannot drink the cup of the Lord, and the cup of devils: you cannot be partakers of the Lord's table, and of the table of devils. 22 Do we provoke the Lord to jealousy? are we stronger than he?

### b. The Responsibility of the Gospel

23 All things are lawful for me, but all things are not expedient: all things are lawful for me, but all things edify not. 24 Let

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 32:6.

<sup>2</sup> Num. 25:1.

<sup>3</sup> Ex. 17:2.

no man seek his own, but every man another's *wealth*. 25 Whatsoever is sold in the shambles, *that* eat, asking no question for conscience sake: 26 for "The earth is the Lord's, and the fulness thereof."<sup>1</sup> 27 If any of them that believe not bid you *to a feast*, and you be disposed to go; whatever is set before you, eat, asking no question for conscience sake. 28 But if any man say unto you, This is offered in sacrifice unto idols, eat not for his sake that showed it, and for conscience sake: for "The earth is the Lord's and the fulness thereof;"<sup>1</sup> 29 conscience, I say, not thine own, but of the other: for why is my liberty judged by another *man's* conscience? 30 For if I by grace be a partaker, why am I evil spoken of for that for which I give thanks? 31 Whether therefore you eat, or drink, or whatsoever you do, do all to the glory of God. 32 Give no offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the church of God: 33 even as I please all *men* in all *things*, not seeking my own profit, but the *profit* of many, that they may be saved. 11:1 Be ye followers of me, even as I also *am* of Christ.

### §3. THE INQUIRY CONCERNING PUBLIC WORSHIP

#### I. THE PLACE OF MEN AND WOMEN IN THE CONGREGATION

##### The Importance of Head-Covering for the Women

2 Now I praise you, brethren, that you remember me in all things, and keep the ordinances, as I delivered *them* to you. 3 But I would have you know that the head of every man is Christ; and the head of the woman *is* the man; and the head of Christ *is* God. 4 Every man praying or prophesying, having *his* head covered, dishonoureth his head. 5 But every woman that prayeth or prophesieth with *her* head uncovered dishonoureth her head: for that is even all one as if she were shaven. 6 For if the woman is not covered, let her also be shorn: but if it be a shame for a woman to be shorn or shaven, let her be covered. 7 For a man indeed ought not to cover *his* head, forasmuch as he is the image and glory of God: but the woman is the glory of the man. 8 For the man is not of the woman; but the woman of the man. 9 Neither was the man created for the woman; but the woman for the man. 10 For this cause ought the woman to have power<sup>2</sup> on *her* head because of the angels. 11 Nevertheless neither is the man without the woman, nor the woman without the man, in the Lord. 12 For as the woman *is* of the man, even so *is* the man also by the woman; but all things of

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 24:1.

<sup>2</sup> That is, a covering as a sign that she is under the power of her husband.



God. 13 Judge in yourselves: Is it comely that a woman pray unto God uncovered? 14 Doth not even nature itself teach you that if a man have long hair, it is a shame unto him? 15 But if a woman have long hair, it is a glory to her: for *her* hair is given her for a covering. 16 But if any man seem to be contentious, we have no such custom, neither the churches of God.

## II. THE OBSERVANCE OF THE COMMUNION

### The Words of the Lord

17 Now in this that I declare *unto you* I praise *you* not, that you come together not for the better, but for the worse. 18 For first of all, when you come together in the church, I hear that there are divisions among you; and I partly believe it. 19 For there must be also heresies among you, that they that are approved may be made manifest among you. 20 When you come together therefore into one place, *this* is not to eat the Lord's supper. 21 For in eating every one taketh before the *other* his own supper: and one is hungry, and another's drunken. 22 What, have you not houses to eat and to drink in? or despise ye the church of God? and shame them that have not? What shall I say to you? shall I praise you in this? I praise *you* not. 23 For I have received of the Lord that which I also delivered unto you, That the Lord Jesus the *same* night in which he was betrayed took bread; 24 and when he had given thanks, he brake *it*, and said, "Take eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me." 25 After the same manner also *he took* the cup, when he had supped, saying, "This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as you drink *it*, in remembrance of me." 26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come. 27 Wherefore whosoever shall eat this bread, and drink *this* cup of the Lord unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. 28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of *that* bread, and drink of *that* cup. 29 For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body. 30 For this cause many *are* weak and sickly among you, and many sleep. 31 For if you would judge yourselves, we should not be judged. 32 But when we are judged, we are chastened of the Lord, that we should not be condemned with the world. 33 Wherefore, my brethren, when you come together to eat, tarry one for another. 34 And if any man hunger, let him eat at home; that you come not together unto damnation. And the rest will I set in order when I come.



### III. THE GIFTS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

#### a. The Knowledge of Jesus Christ by the Holy Spirit

12:1 Now concerning spiritual *gifts*, brethren, I would not have you ignorant. 2 You know that you were Gentiles, carried away unto those dumb idols, even as you were led. 3 Wherefore I give you to understand, that no man speaking by the Spirit of God calleth Jesus accursed; and *that* no man can say that Jesus is Lord, but by the Holy Spirit.

---

#### b. The Various Gifts of the Spirit

4 Now there are diversities of gifts, but<sup>1</sup> the same Spirit. 5 And there are diversities of administrations, but the same Lord. 6 And there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God who worketh all in all. 7 But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal:

\* \* \*

8 For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom;

To another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

9 To another faith by the same Spirit;

To another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

10 To another the working of miracles;

To another prophecy;

To another discerning of spirits;

To another *divers* kinds of tongues;

To another the interpretation of tongues.

\*

11 But all these worketh together that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will.

---

#### c. The Unity of Spiritual Gifts

12 For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also *is* Christ. 13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether *we are* Jews or Gentiles, whether *we are* bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit. 14 For the body is not one member, but many. 15 If the foot

---

<sup>1</sup> Eph. 4:11.

shall say, Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? 16 And if the ear shall say, Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? 17 If the whole body *were* an eye, where were the hearing? If the whole *were* hearing, where *were* the smelling? 18 But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased him. 19 And if they were all one member, where *were* the body? 20 But now *are they* many members, yet but one body. 21 And the eye cannot say unto the hand, I have no need of thee: nor again the head to the feet, I have no need of you. 22 Nay, much more those members of the body, which seem to be more feeble, are necessary: 23 and those *members* of the body, which we think to be less honourable, upon these we bestow more abundant honour; and our uncomely *parts* have more abundant comeliness. 24 For our comely *parts* have no need: but God hath tempered the body together, having given more abundant honour to that *part* which lacked: 25 that there should be no schism in the body; but *that* the members should have the same care one for another. 26 And whether one member suffer, all the members suffer with it; or one member be honoured, all the members rejoice with it. 27 Now you are the body of Christ, and members in particular. 28 And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healing, helps, governments, diversities of tongues. 29 *Are* all apostles? *are* all prophets? *are* all teachers? *are* all workers of miracles? 30 have all the gifts of healing? do all speak with tongues? do all interpret? 31 But covet earnestly the best gifts: and yet I show unto you a more excellent way.

#### IV. THE GREAT GLORY OF ALL GIFTS

##### The Apostle's Ode to Love

13:1 Though I speak with the tongues of men,  
And of angels,  
And have not charity,<sup>1</sup>  
I am become *as* sounding brass, or a  
tinkling cymbal.

\*

2 And though I have *the gift of* prophecy,  
And understand all mysteries,  
And all knowledge;  
And though I have all faith,

---

<sup>1</sup> Love: so in revised versions.

So that I could remove mountains,  
And have not charity,<sup>1</sup>  
I am nothing.

\*

- 3 And though I bestow all my goods  
to feed *the poor*,  
And though I give my body to be burned,  
And have not charity,<sup>1</sup>  
It profiteth me nothing.

\* \*

- 4 Charity<sup>1</sup> suffereth long, *and* is kind;  
Charity<sup>1</sup> envieth not;  
Charity<sup>1</sup> vaunteth not itself,  
Is not puffed up,

- 5 Doth not behave itself unseemly,  
Seeketh not her own,  
Is not easily provoked,  
Thinketh no evil;

- 6 Rejoiceth not in iniquity,  
But rejoiceth in the truth;

- 7 Beareth all things,  
Believeth all things,  
Hopeth all things,  
Endureth all things.

\* \* \*

- 8 Charity<sup>1</sup> never faileth:  
But whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail;  
Whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease;  
Whether *there be* knowledge, it shall vanish  
away.

\* \* \*

- 9 For we know in part,  
And we prophesy in part.  
10 But when that which is perfect is come,  
Then that which is in part shall be done away.

\* \* \* \*

- 11 When I was a child,  
I spoke as a child,  
I understood as a child,  
I thought<sup>2</sup> as a child;  
But when I became a man,  
I put away childish things.

\*\*\* \*\*

- 12 For now we see through a glass darkly,  
But then face to face;

<sup>1</sup> Love: so in revised versions.

<sup>2</sup> Reasoned.

Now I know in part;  
But then shall I know as also I am known.

\*\*\* \* \*\*\*

13 And now abideth faith, hope, charity,<sup>1</sup>  
these three;  
But the greatest of these *is* charity.<sup>1</sup>

## V. THE MINISTRY OF PROPHECY

### a. The Ministry of Prophecy to Believers

14:1 Follow after charity, and desire spiritual *gifts*, but rather that you may prophesy. 2 For he that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue speaketh not unto men, but unto God: for no man understandeth *him*; howbeit in the spirit he speaketh mysteries. 3 But he that prophesieth speaketh unto men *to* edification, and exhortation, and comfort. 4 He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church. 5 I would that you all spoke with tongues, but rather that you prophesied: for greater *is* he that prophesieth than he that speaketh with tongues, except he interpret, that the church may receive edifying. 6 Now, brethren, if I come unto you speaking with tongues, what shall I profit you, except I shall speak to you either by revelation, or by knowledge, or by prophesying, or by doctrine? 7 And even things without life giving sound, whether pipe or harp, except they give a distinction in the sounds, how shall it be known what is piped or harped? 8 For if the trumpet shall give an uncertain sound, who shall prepare himself to the battle? 9 So likewise ye, except you utter by the tongue words easy to be understood, how shall it be known what is spoken? for ye shall speak into the air. 10 There are, it may be, so many kinds of voices in the world, and none of them *is* without signification. 11 Therefore if I know not the meaning of the voice, I shall be unto him that speaketh a barbarian, and he that speaketh *shall be* a barbarian unto me. 12 Even so ye, forasmuch as ye are zealous of spiritual *gifts*, seek that you may excel to the edifying of the church. 13 Wherefore let him that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue pray that he may interpret. 14 For if I pray in an *unknown* tongue, my spirit prayeth, but my understanding is unfruitful. 15 What is it then? I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also; I will sing with the spirit, and I will sing with the understanding also. 16 Else when thou shalt bless with the spirit, how shall he that occupieth the room of the unlearned say "Amen" at thy giving of thanks? seeing he understandeth not what thou sayest. 17 For thou

<sup>1</sup> Love: so in revised versions.



verily givest thanks well, but the other is not edified. 18 I thank my God, I speak with tongues more than you all: 19 yet in the church I had rather speak five words with my understanding, than *by my voice* I might teach others also, than ten thousand words in an *unknown* tongue.

---

**b. The Ministry of Prophecy to Unbelievers**

20 Brethren, be not children in understanding: howbeit in malice be ye children, but in understanding be men. 21 In the law it is written, "With *men* of other tongues and other lips will I speak unto this people; and yet for all that will they not hear me, saith the Lord."<sup>1</sup> 22 Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe but to them that believe not: but prophesying *serveth* not for them that believe not, but for them that believe. 23 If therefore the whole church be come together in one place, and all speak with tongues, and there come in *those that are* unlearned, or unbelievers, will they not say that you are mad? 24 But if all prophesy, and there come in one that believeth not, or *one* unlearned, he is convinced of all, he is judged of all: 25 and thus are the secrets of his heart made manifest; and so falling down on *his* face he will worship God, and report that God is in you of a truth.

---

**c. The Concluding Instruction**

26 What is it then, brethren? when ye come together, every one of you hath a psalm, hath a doctrine, hath a tongue, hath a revelation, hath an intrepertation. Let all things be done unto edifying. 27 If any man speak in an *unknown* tongue, *let it be* by two, or at the most *by* three, and that by course; and let one interpret. 28 But if there be no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church; and let him speak to himself, and to God. 29 Let the prophets speak two or three, and let the other judge. 30 If *any thing* be revealed to another that sitteth by, let the first hold his peace. 31 For you may all prophesy one by one, that all may learn, and all may be comforted. 32 And the spirits of the prophets are subject to the prophets. 33 For God is not *the author* of confusion, but of peace, as in all the churches of the saints. 34 Let your women keep silence in the churches: for it is not permitted unto them to speak; but *they are commanded* to be under obedience, as also saith the law.<sup>2</sup> 35 And if they will learn anything, let them ask their husbands at home; for it is a shame for women to speak in the church. 36 What? came the word of God out from you? or came it unto you

---

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 28:11.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. 3:16.

only? 37 If any man think himself to be a prophet, or spiritual, let him acknowledge that the things that I write unto you are the commandments of the Lord. 38 But if any man be ignorant, let him be ignorant. 39 Wherefore, brethren, covet to prophesy, and forbid not to speak with tongues. 40 Let all things be done decently and in order.

#### §4. THE INQUIRY CONCERNING THE RESURRECTION

##### I. THE DOCTRINE OF THE RESSURECTION

###### a. The Resurrection of Christ

15:1 Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also you have received, and wherein you stand; 2 by which also you are saved, if you keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless you have believed in vain. 3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received:

\* \* \*

That Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures;<sup>1</sup> 4 and that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day, according to the scriptures:<sup>2</sup>

5 And that he was seen of Cephas,<sup>3</sup>  
Then of the twelve;

6 After that he was seen of above five hundred brethren at once; of whom the greater part remain unto this present, but some have fallen asleep.

7 After that he was seen of James;<sup>4</sup>  
Then of all the apostles.

8 And last of all he was seen of me also,<sup>5</sup> as of one born out of due time.

\*

9 For I am the least of the apostles, that am not meet to be called an apostle, because I persecuted<sup>6</sup> the church of God. 10 But by the grace of God I am what I am: and his grace which was bestowed upon me was not in vain; but I laboured more abundantly than they all; yet not I, but the grace of God which was with me. 11 Therefore whether it were I or they, so we preach, and so you believe.

###### b. The Importance of the Resurrection

12 Now if Christ be preached that he rose from the dead, how say some among you that there is no resurrection of the dead? 13 But if there be no resurrection of the dead, then is Christ

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 3:15; Ps. 22:15; Isa. 53:5; Dan. 9:26; Zech. 13:7.    <sup>2</sup> Ps. 2:7; 16:10; Isa. 53:10; Hos. 6:2.    <sup>3</sup> Simon Peter.    <sup>4</sup> The head of the church in Jerusalem A. D. Circa 42-63.    <sup>5</sup> Acts 9:4.    <sup>6</sup> Acts 8:3.

not risen: 14 and if Christ be not risen, then *is* our preaching vain, and your faith *is* also vain. 15 Yea, and we are found false witnesses of God; because we have testified of God that he raised up Christ: whom he raised not up, if so be that the dead rise not. 16 For if the dead rise not, then is not Christ raised: 17 and if Christ be not raised, your faith *is* vain; you are yet in your sins. 18 Then they also that are fallen asleep in Christ are perished. 19 If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable. 20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, *and* become the firstfruits of them that slept.

---

#### c. The Glory of the Resurrection

21 For since by man *came* death, by man *came* also the resurrection of the dead. 22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive. 23 But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming. 24 Then *cometh* the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power. 25 For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet. 26 The last enemy *that* shall be destroyed is death. 27 For he hath put all things under his feet. But when he saith all things are put under *him*, *it is* manifest that he is excepted, who did put all things under him. 28 And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all.

---

#### d. The Seriousness of the Resurrection

29 Else what shall they do that are baptized for the dead, if the dead rise not at all? why are they then baptized for the dead? 30 And why stand we in jeopardy every hour? 31 I protest by your rejoicing which I have in Christ Jesus our lord, I die daily. 32 If after the manner of men I have fought with beasts at Ephesus, what advantageth it me, if the dead rise not? let us eat and drink; for tomorrow we die. 33 Be not deceived: evil communications corrupt good manners. 34 Awake to righteousness, and sin not; for some have not the knowledge of God: I speak *this* to your shame.

---

## II. THE NATURE OF THE RESURRECTION

### a. The Glory of the Resurrection Body

35 But some *man* will say, How are the dead raised up? and with what body do they come? 36 *Thou* fool, that which thou

*Chapter 15:14-36*



sowest is not quickened, except it die; 37 and that which thou sowest, thou sowest not that body which shall be, but a bare grain, it may chance of wheat, or of some other *grain*: 38 but God giveth it a body as it hath pleased him, and to every seed its own body. 39 All flesh *is* not the same flesh: but *there is one kind of* flesh of men, another flesh of beasts, another of fishes, and another of birds. 40 *There are* also celestial bodies, and bodies terrestrial: but the glory of the celestial *is* one, and the glory of the terrestrial *is* another. 41 *There is* one glory of the sun, and another glory of the moon, and another glory of the stars: for *one* star differeth from *another* star in glory. 42 So also *is* the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption; it is raised in incorruption; 43 it is sown in dishonour: it is raised in glory; it is sown in weakness: it is raised in power; 44 it is sown a natural body: it is raised a spiritual body. There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body. 45 And so it is written,<sup>1</sup> "The first Adam was made a living soul;" the last Adam *was made* a quickening spirit. 46 Howbeit that *was* not first which is spiritual, but that which is natural; and afterward that which is spiritual. 47 The first man *is* of the earth, earthy; the second man *is* the Lord from heaven. 48 As *is* the earthy, such *are* they also that are earthy; and as *is* the heavenly, such *are* they also that are heavenly. 49 And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.

#### b. The Glory of the Resurrection Triumph

50 Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God; neither doth corruption inherit incorruption. 51 Behold, I show you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, 52 in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump; for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. 53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal *must* put on immortality. 54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, "Death is swallowed up in victory."<sup>2</sup> 55 O death, where *is* thy sting? O grave, where *is* thy victory? 56 The sting of death *is* sin, and the strength of sin *is* the law. 57 But thanks *be* to God, who giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ. 58 Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye stedfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as you know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 2:7.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. 25:8.



## Part Four

# THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

### THE APOSTLE'S PLANS, EXHORTATIONS AND SALUTATIONS

#### I. THE COLLECTION FOR THE SAINTS

##### The Plan of Giving unto the Lord

Now concerning the collection for the saints, as I gave order to the churches of Galatia, so also do ye. 2 Upon the first day of the week, let each one of you lay by him in store, as *God* hath prospered him, that there be no gatherings when I come. 3 And when I arrive, whomsoever you shall approve by your letters, them will I send to bring your liberality unto Jerusalem. 4 And if it be meet that I go also, they shall go with me.

---

#### II. THE PLAN OF PAUL TO VISIT CORINTH

##### The Stay at Ephesus until Pentecost

5 Now I will come unto you, when I shall pass through Macedonia: for I do pass through Macedonia. 6 And it may be that I will abide, yea, and winter with you, that you may bring me on my journey whithersoever I go. 7 For I will not see you now by the way; but I trust to tarry a while with you, if the Lord permit. 8 But I will tarry at Ephesus until Pentecost. 9 For a great and effectual door is opened unto me, and *there are* many adversaries.

---

#### III. THE PLANS OF TIMOTHY AND APOLLOS

##### The Recommendations of Paul

10 Now if Timothy come, see that he be with you without fear; for he worketh the work of the Lord, as I also *do*: 11 let no man therefore despise him: but conduct him forth in peace, that he may come unto me: for I look for him with the brethren. 12 As touching *our* brother Apollos, I greatly desired him to come unto you with the brethren: but his will was not at all to come at this time; but he will come when he shall have a convenient time.

## IV. THE CLOSING EXHORTATIONS

## The Welcome of the Messengers from Corinth

13 Watch ye, stand fast in the faith, quit you like men, be strong. 14 Let all your things be done with charity. 15 I beseech you, brethren [you know the house of Stephanas, that it is the firstfruits of Achaia, and *that* they have addicted themselves to the ministry of the saints], 16 that you submit yourselves unto such, and to every one that helpeth with *us*, and laboureth. 17 I am glad of the coming of Stephanas and Fortunatus and Achaicus: for that which was lacking on your part they have supplied. 18 For they have refreshed my spirit and yours: therefore acknowledge ye them that are such.

---

## V. THE SALUTATIONS AND BENEDICTION

## a. The Closing Salutations

19 The churches of Asia salute you. Aquila and Priscilla salute you much in the Lord, with the church that is in their house. 20 All the brethren greet you. Greet ye one another with a holy kiss.

---

## b. The Autograph Salutation of Paul

21 The salutation of *me* Paul with my own hand. 22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be anathema. Marana tha.

---

## c. The Benediction

23 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you. 24 My love *be* with you all in Christ Jesus. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*

# The Second Epistle to the Corinthians





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE COMFORT OF THE GOSPEL THE SALUTATION AND THANKSGIVING

##### a. The Salutation

Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, and Timothy *our* brother, unto the church of God which is at Corinth, with all the saints that are in all Achaia: 2 Grace *be* to you and peace from God our Father, and *from* the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

##### b. The Thanksgiving

3 Blessed *be* God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies, and the God of all comfort; 4 who comforteth us in all our tribulation, that we may be able to comfort them that are in any trouble, by the comfort wherewith we ourselves are comforted of God. 5 For as the sufferings of Christ abound in us, so our consolation also aboundeth by Christ. 6 And whether we be afflicted, *it is* for your consolation and salvation, which is effectual in the enduring of the same sufferings which we also suffer: or whether we be comforted, *it is* for your consolation and salvation. 7 And our hope of you *is* stedfast, knowing, that as you are partakers of the sufferings, so *shall you be* also of the consolation. 8 For we would not, brethren, have you ignorant of our trouble which came to us in Asia, that we were pressed out of measure, above strength, insomuch that we despaired even of life: 9 but we had the sentence of death in ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God who raiseth the dead: 10 who delivereth us from so great a death, and doth deliver: in whom we trust that he will yet deliver *us*; 11 you also helping together by prayer for us, that for the gift *bestowed* upon us by the means of many persons thanks may be given by many on our behalf.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written probably from Asia and Macedonia, and may be a collection of correspondence rather than a single letter.



## Part Two

# THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE CORINTHIANS CONCERNING THE CHURCH

---

### §1. THE APOSTLE AND THE CORINTHIANS

#### THE RELATIONS WITH THE CHURCH

##### a. The Personal Sincerity of Paul

For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and Godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly toward you. 13 For we write no other things unto you, than what you read or acknowledge; and I trust you shall acknowledge even to the end; 14 as also you have acknowledged us in part, that we are your rejoicing, even as you also *are* ours in the day of the Lord Jesus.

---

##### b. The Corinthian Situation

15 And in this confidence I was minded to come unto you before, that you might have a second benefit; 16 and to pass by you into Macedonia, and to come again out of Macedonia unto you, and by you to be brought on my way toward Judæa. 17 When I therefore was thus minded, did I use lightness? or the things that I purpose, do I purpose according to the flesh, that with me there may be yea, yea, and nay, nay? 18 But *as* God *is* true, our word<sup>1</sup> toward you was not yea and nay. 19 For the Son of God, Jesus Christ, who was preached among you by us, *even* by me and Sylvanus and Timothy, was not yea and nay, but in him was yea. 20 For all the promises of God in him were yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us. 21 Now he that establisheth us with you in Christ, and hath anointed us, *is* God; 22 who hath also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts. 23 Moreover I call God for a record upon my soul, that to spare you I came not as yet unto Corinth. 24 Not that we have dominion over your faith, but are helpers of your joy: for by faith you stand. 2:1 But I determined this

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, preaching.

with myself, that I would not come again to you in heaviness. 2 For if I make you sorry, who is he that maketh me glad, but the same that is made sorry by me? 3 And I wrote this same unto you, lest, when I came, I should have sorrow from them of whom I ought to rejoice; having confidence in you all, that my joy is *the joy* of you all. 4 For out of much affliction and anguish of heart I wrote unto you with many tears: not that you should be grieved, but that you might know the love which I have more abundantly unto you. 5 But if any have caused grief, he hath not grieved me, but in part: that I may not overcharge you all. 6 Sufficient to such a man *is* this punishment, which *was inflicted* of many. 7 So that contrariwise you *ought* rather to forgive him, and comfort *him*, lest perhaps such a one should be swallowed up with overmuch sorrow. 8 Wherefore I beseech you that you would confirm *your* love toward him. 9 For to this end did I write, that I might know the proof of you, whether you are obedient in all things. 10 To whom you forgive any thing, I *forgive* also: for if I forgave any thing to whom I forgave *it*, for your sakes *forgave I it* in the person<sup>1</sup> of Christ; 11 lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices.

---

#### e. The Anxiety of Paul for the Corinthians

12 Furthermore, when I came to Troas to *preach* Christ's gospel, and a door was opened to me of the Lord, 13 I had no rest in my spirit, because I found not Titus<sup>2</sup> my brother: but taking my leave of them, I went from thence into Macedonia.

---

## §2. THE APOSTLESHIP OF PAUL

### I. THE OFFICE OF AN APOSTLE OF JESUS CHRIST

#### a. The Blessedness of the Christian Ministry

14 Now thanks *be* unto God, who always causeth us to triumph in Christ, and maketh manifest the savour of his knowledge by us in every place. 15 For we are unto God a sweet savour of Christ, in them that are saved, and in them that perish: 16 to the one *we are* a savour of death unto death; and to the other the savour of life unto life. And who *is* sufficient for these things? 17 For we are not as many, that corrupt the word of God: but as of sincerity, but as of God, in the sight of God speak we in Christ.

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, in the sight of Christ.

<sup>2</sup> Titus had been sent from Ephesus to Corinth to reconcile and harmonize the church.



---

**b. The Ministry of Paul at Corinth**

3:1 Do we begin again to commend ourselves? or need we, as some *others*, epistles of commendation to you, or *letters* of commendation from you? 2 You are our epistle written in our hearts, known and read of all men: 3 *forasmuch as you are* manifestly declared to be the epistle of Christ ministered by us, written not with ink, but with the Spirit of the living God; not in tables of stone, but in fleshly tables of the heart.

---

**c. The Old Ministry and the New**

4 And such trust have we through Christ toward God: 5 not that we are sufficient of ourselves to think any thing as of ourselves; but our sufficiency *is* of God; 6 who also hath made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life. 7 But if the ministration of death, written *and* engraved in stones, was glorious, so that the children of Israel could not stedfastly behold the face of Moses for the glory of his countenance; which *glory* was to be done away: 8 how shall not the ministration of the spirit be rather glorious? 9 For if the ministration of condemnation *be* glory, much more doth the ministration of righteousness exceed in glory. 10 For even that which was made glorious had no glory in this respect, by reason of the glory that excelleth. 11 For if that which is done away *was* glorious, much more that which remaineth *is* glorious. 12 Seeing then that we have such hope, we use great plainness of speech: 13 and not as Moses, *who* put a veil over his face, that the children of Israel could not stedfastly look to the end of that which is abolished: 14 but their minds were blinded: for until this day remaineth the same veil untaken away in the reading of the old testament; which *veil* is done away in Christ. 15 But even unto this day, when Moses is read, the veil is upon their heart. 16 Nevertheless when it shall turn to the Lord, the veil shall be taken away. 17 Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord *is*, there is liberty. 18 But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, *even* as by the Spirit of the Lord.

---

**d. The Purpose of Paul in the Ministry**

4:1 Therefore seeing we have this ministry, as we have received mercy, we faint not: 2 but have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the word of God deceitfully; but by manifestation of the truth, commending

Chapter 3:1-4:2

ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of God. 3 But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: 4 in whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them that believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them. 5 For we preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus the Lord; and ourselves your servants for Jesus' sake. 6 For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to *give* the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.

## II. THE SUFFERINGS OF AN APOSTLE

### a. The Heroism of the Ministry

7 But we have this treasure in earthen vessels, that the excellency of the power may be of God, and not of us. 8 *We are* troubled on every side, yet not distressed; *we are* perplexed, but not in despair; 9 persecuted, but not forsaken; cast down, but not destroyed; 10 always bearing about in the body the dying of the Lord Jesus, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our body. 11 For we that live are always delivered unto death for Jesus' sake, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our mortal flesh. 12 So then death worketh in us, but life in you. 13 We having the same spirit of faith, according as it is written,

\* \* \*

"I believed, and therefore have I spoken,"<sup>1</sup>

\*

we also believe, and therefore speak; 14 knowing that he that raised up the Lord Jesus shall raise up us also by Jesus, and shall present *us* with you. 15 For all things *are* for your sakes, that the abundant grace might through the thanksgiving of many redound to the glory of God.

### b. The Great Hope of the Apostle

16 For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward *man* is renewed day by day. 17 For our light affliction, which is for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding *and* eternal weight of glory: 18 while we look not at the things that are seen, but at the things that are not seen; for the things that are seen *are* temporal; but the things that are not seen *are* eternal. 5:1 For we know that if our earthly house of *this* tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. 2 For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 116:10.

with our house which is from heaven: 3 if so be that being clothed we shall not be found naked. 4 For we that are in *this* tabernacle do groan, being burdened: not that we would be unclothed, but clothed upon, that mortality might be swallowed up of life. 5 Now he that hath wrought us for the selfsame thing *is* God, who also hath given unto us the earnest of the Spirit.

---

#### c. The Glory of the Life to Come

6 Therefore *we are* always confident, knowing that, while we are at home in the body, we are absent from the Lord: 7 for we walk by faith, and not by sight: 8 we are confident, *I say*, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord. 9 Wherefore we labour, that, whether present or absent, we may be accepted of him. 10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he hath done, whether *it be* good or bad.

---

### III. THE LIFE OF AN APOSTLE

#### a. The Supreme Motive of the Christian Ministry

11 Knowing therefore the terror of the Lord, we persuade men; but we are made manifest unto God; and I trust also are made manifest in your consciences. 12 For we commend not ourselves again unto you, but give you occasion to glory on our behalf, that ye may have somewhat to *answer* them that glory in appearance, and not in heart. 13 For whether we be beside ourselves, *it is* to God: or whether we be sober, *it is* for your cause. 14 For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died, for all, then were all dead: 15 and *that* he died for all, that they that live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him that died for them, and rose again.

---

#### b. The Basis of the Ministry

16 Wherefore henceforth know we no man after the flesh: yea, though we have known Christ after the flesh, yet now henceforth know we *him* no more. 17 Therefore if any man *be* in Christ Jesus, *he is* a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new. 18 And all things *are* of God, who hath reconciled to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation; 19 to wit, that God

was in Christ reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation. 20 Now then we are ambassadors for Christ, as though God did beseech *you* by us: we pray you in Christ's stead, be ye reconciled to God. 21 For he hath made him *to be* sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him. 6:1 We then, *as* workers together *with him*, beseech *you* also that you receive not the grace of God in vain. 2 For he saith:

\* \* \*

"I have heard thee in a time accepted,  
And in the day of salvation have I succoured thee."<sup>1</sup>

\*

Behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.

#### c. The Credentials of the Ministry

3 Giving no offence in anything, that the ministry be not blamed: 4 but in all *things* approving ourselves as the ministers of God, in much patience, in afflictions, in necessities, in distresses, 5 in stripes, in imprisonments, in tumults,<sup>2</sup> in labours, in watchings, in fastings; 6 by pureness, by knowledge, by longsuffering, by kindness, by the Holy Spirit, by love unfeigned, 7 by the word of truth, by the power of God, by the armour of righteousness on the right hand and on the left, 8 by honour and dishonour, by evil report and good report: as deceivers, and *yet* true; 9 as unknown, and *yet* well known; as dying, and behold, we live; as chastened, and not killed; 10 as sorrowful, yet always rejoicing; as poor, yet making many rich; as having nothing, and *yet* possessing all things.

### §3. THE APPEAL TO THE CORINTHIANS

#### THE PLEA OF A GREAT HEART

##### a. The Call of the Apostle

11 O ye Corinthians, our mouth is open unto you, our heart is enlarged. 12 You are not straitened in us, but *you* are straitened in your own affections.<sup>3</sup> 13 Now for a recompense in the same, I speak as unto my children, be ye also enlarged.

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 49:8.

<sup>2</sup> Or, tossing to and fro.

<sup>3</sup> Revised Version.



## b. The Great Appeal to the Church

14 Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness? 15 And what concord hath Christ with Belial? or what part hath he that believeth with an infidel? 16 And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for you are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, "I will dwell in them, and walk in *them*; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people."<sup>1</sup> 17 Wherefore,<sup>2</sup>

\* \* \*

"Come out from among them, and be ye separate,  
saith the Lord,

And touch not the unclean *thing*;

And I will receive you,

18 And will be a Father unto you,

And you shall be my sons and daughters, saith  
the Lord Almighty."

\*

7:1 Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.<sup>3</sup>

## c. The Apostle's Declaration of Love

2 Receive us; we have wronged no man, we have corrupted no man, we have defrauded no man. 3 I speak not *this* to condemn *you*: for I have said before, that you are in our hearts to die and to live with *you*. 4 Great *is* my boldness of speech toward you, great *is* my glorying of you; I am filled with comfort, I am exceeding joyful in all our tribulation.

## §4. THE COMPLETION OF THE RECONCILIATION

## THE MISSION OF TITUS TO CORINTH

## a. The Corinthian Report of Titus

5 For, when we were come into Macedonia, our flesh had no rest, but we were troubled on every side; without *were* fightings, within *were* fears. 6 Nevertheless God, that comforteth those

<sup>1</sup> Lev. 26:12.<sup>2</sup> Isa. 52:11.

<sup>3</sup> Chapter 6:14—7:1—This is believed with great probability to be a letter formerly addressed to Corinth and later inserted here, possibly by Paul himself. Paul refers to just such a letter in I. Cor. 5:9.

that are cast down, comforted us by the coming of Titus; 7 and not by his coming only, but by the consolation wherewith he was comforted in you, when he told us your earnest desire, your mourning, your fervent mind toward me; so that I rejoiced the more.

---

#### b. The Previous Correspondence

8 For though I made you sorry with a letter, I do not repent, though I did repent: for I perceive that the same epistle hath made you sorry, though *it were* but for a season. 9 Now I rejoice, not that you were made sorry, but that you sorrowed to repentance: for you were made sorry after a godly manner, that you might receive damage by us in nothing. 10 For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of: but the sorrow of the world worketh death. 11 For behold this self-same thing, that you sorrowed after a godly sort, what carefulness it wrought in you, yea, *what* clearing of yourselves, yea, *what* indignation, yea, *what* fear, yea, what vehement desire, yea, *what* zeal, yea, *what* revenge. In all *things* you have approved yourselves to be clear in this matter. 12 Wherefore, though I wrote unto you, *I did it* not for his cause that had done the wrong, nor for his cause that suffered wrong, but that our care for you in the sight of God might appear unto you.

---

#### c. The Triumph of Titus at Corinth

13 Therefore we were comforted in your comfort: yea, and exceedingly the more joyed we for the joy of Titus, because his spirit was refreshed by you all. 14 For if I have boasted any thing to him of you, I am not ashamed; but as we spoke all things to you in truth, even so our boasting, which *I made* before Titus, is found a truth. 15 And his inward affection is more abundant toward you, whilst he remembereth the obedience of you all, how with fear and trembling you received him. 16 I rejoice therefore that I have confidence in you in all *things*.

Chapter 7:7-16

## Part Three

# THE INSTRUCTION CONCERNING THE COLLECTION

---

### THE COLLECTION FOR THE POOR AT JERUSALEM

#### THE GOSPEL OF GIVING AND RECEIVING

##### a. The Example of Macedonia

Moreover, brethren, we do you to wit of the grace of God bestowed on the churches of Macedonia;<sup>1</sup> 2 how that in a great trial of affliction the abundance of their joy and their deep poverty abounded unto the riches of their liberality. 3 For *to their* power, I bear record, yea, and beyond *their* power *they were* willing of themselves; 4 praying us with much intreaty that we would receive the gift, and *take upon us* the fellowship of the ministering to the saints. 5 And *this they did*, not as we hoped, but first gave their own selves to the Lord, and unto us by the will of God. 6 Insomuch that we desired Titus, that as he had begun, so he would also finish in you the same grace also. 7 Therefore, as you abound in every *thing*, *in* faith, and utterance, and knowledge, and *in* all diligence, and *in* your love to us, *see* that you abound in this grace also.

---

##### b. The Example of our Lord Jesus Christ

8 I speak not by commandment, but by occasion of the forwardness of others, and to prove the sincerity of your love. 9 For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that, though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, that you through his poverty might be rich. 10 And herein I give *my* advice: for this is expedient for you, who have begun before, not only to do, but also to be forward a year ago. 11 Now therefore perform the doing of *it*; that as *there was* a readiness to will, so *there may be* a performance also out of that which you have. 12 For if there be first a willing mind, *it is* accepted according to that a man

---

<sup>1</sup> At Philippi, Thessalonica and Berea, founded by Paul on his second Missionary Journey.

hath, *and* not according to that he hath not. 13 For *I mean* not that other men be eased, and you burdened: 14 but by an equality, *that* now at this time your abundance *may be a supply* for their want, that their abundance also may be *a supply* for your want: that there may be equality: 15 as it is written:

\* \* \*

"He that *had gathered* much had nothing over;  
And he that *had gathered* little had no lack."<sup>1</sup>

#### c. The Mission of Titus and the Brother

16 But thanks *be* to God, who put the same earnest care into the heart of Titus for you. 17 For indeed he accepted the exhortation; but being more forward, of his own accord he went unto you. 18 And we have sent with him the brother,<sup>2</sup> whose praise *is* in the gospel throughout all the churches; 19 and not *that* only, but who was also chosen of the churches to travel with us with this grace, which is administered by us to the glory of the same Lord, and *declaration of* your ready mind: 20 avoiding this, that no man should blame us in this abundance which is administered by us: 21 providing for honest things, not only in the sight of the Lord, but also in the sight of men. 22 And we have sent with them our brother, whom we have oftentimes proved diligent in many things, but now much more diligent, upon the great confidence which *I have* in you. 23 Whether *any do inquire* of Titus, *he is* my partner and fellowhelper concerning you: or our brethren *be inquired of*, *they are* the messengers of the churches, *and* the glory of Christ. 24 Wherefore show ye to them, and before the churches, the proof of your love, and of our boasting on your behalf.

#### d. The Importance of the Collection

9:1 For as touching the ministering to the saints, it is superfluous for me to write to you: 2 for I know the forwardness of your mind, for which I boast of you to them of Macedonia, that Achaia was ready a year ago; and your zeal hath provoked very many. 3 Yet have I sent the brethren, lest our boasting of you should be in vain in this behalf; that as I said, you may be ready: 4 lest haply if they of Macedonia come with me, and find you unprepared, we [that we say not, you] should be ashamed in this same confident boasting. 5 Therefore I thought it necessary to exhort the brethren, that they would go before unto you, and

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 16:18.

<sup>2</sup> Probably Luke.



make up beforehand your bounty, whereof you had notice before, that the same might be ready, as *a matter of* bounty, and not as of covetousness.

#### e. The Gospel of Giving

6 But this *I say*, He that soweth sparingly shall reap also sparingly; and he that soweth bountifully shall reap also bountifully. 7 Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, *so let him give*; nor grudgingly, or of necessity: for God loveth a cheerful giver. 8 And God *is* able to make all grace abound toward you; that you, always having all sufficiency in all *things*, may abound to every good work, 9 [As it is written:

\* \* \*

"He hath dispersed abroad; he hath given  
to the poor:  
His righteousness remaineth for ever,"<sup>1</sup>

\*

10 Now he that ministereth seed to the sower both minister bread for *your* food, and multiply your seed sown, and increase the fruits of your righteousness]; 11 being enriched in every thing to all bountifulness, which causeth through us thanksgiving to God. 12 For the administration of this service not only supplieth the want of the saints, but is abundant also by many thanksgivings unto God; 13 while by the experiment of this ministration they glorify God for your professed subjection unto the gospel of Christ, and for *your* liberal distribution unto them, and unto all *men*; 14 and by their prayer for you, who long after you for the exceeding grace of God in you. 15 Thanks *be* unto God for his unspeakable gift.

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 112:9.

## Part Four

# THE INSTRUCTION CONCERNING THE MINISTRY OF PAUL

---

## THE GREAT APOLOGY OF PAUL

### THE APOSTLE'S DEFENCE OF HIS MINISTRY

#### a. The Authority of Paul as an Apostle

Now I Paul myself beseech you by the meekness and gentleness of Christ, who in presence<sup>1</sup> *am* base among you, but being absent *am* bold toward you: 2 but I beseech *you*, that I may not be bold when I *am* present with that confidence, where-with I think to be bold against some, who think of us as if we walked according to the flesh. 3 For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh 4 [For the weapons of our warfare *are* not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strongholds]: 5 casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ; 6 and having in a readiness to revenge all disobedience, when your obedience is fulfilled. 7 Do you look on things after the outward appearance? If any man trust to himself that he is Christ's, let him of himself think this again, that, as he *is* Christ's, even so *are* we Christ's. 8 For though I should boast somewhat more of our authority, which the Lord hath given us for edification, and not for your destruction, I should not be ashamed: 9 that I may not seem as if I would terrify you with letters. 10 "For *his* letters," say they, "*are* weighty and powerful; but *his* bodily presence *is* weak, and *his* speech contemptible." 11 Let such a one think this, that, such as we are in word by letters, when we are absent, such *will we be* also in deed when we are present. 12 For we dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with some that commend themselves: but they measuring themselves by themselves, and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise.

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, in outward appearance.

### b. The Area of Paul's Ministry

13 But we will not boast of things without *our* measure, but according to the measure of the rule which God hath distributed to us, a measure to reach even unto you. 14 For we stretch not ourselves beyond *our measure*, as though we reached not unto you: for we are come as far as to you also in *preaching* the gospel of Christ: 15 not boasting of things without *our* measure, *that is*, of other men's labours; but having hope, when your faith is increased, that we shall be enlarged by you according to our rule abundantly, 16 to preach the gospel in the *regions* beyond you, *and* not to boast in another man's line of things made ready to our hand. 17 But he that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord. 18 For not he that commendeth himself is approved, but whom the Lord commendeth.

---

### c. The Loyalty of Paul to Christ

11:1 Would to God you could bear with me a little in *my* folly: and indeed bear<sup>1</sup> with me. 2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present *you* as a chaste virgin to Christ. 3 But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ. 4 For if he that cometh preacheth another Jesus, whom we have not preached, or *if* you receive another spirit, which you have not received, or another gospel, which you have not accepted, you might well bear with *him*.<sup>2</sup> 5 For I suppose I was not a whit behind the very chiefest apostles. 6 But though *I be* rude in speech, yet not in knowledge; but we have been thoroughly made manifest among you in all things.

---

### d. The Self-Support of Paul

7 Have I committed an offence in abasing myself that you might be exalted, because I have preached to you the gospel of God freely? 8 I robbed other churches, taking wages *of them*, to do you service. 9 And when I was present with you, and wanted, I was chargeable to no man: for that which was lacking to me the brethren that came from Macedonia supplied: and in all *things* I have kept myself from being burdensome unto you, and *so* will I keep *myself*. 10 As the truth of Christ is in me, no man shall stop me of this boasting<sup>3</sup> in the regions

<sup>1</sup> Or, you do bear with me.

<sup>2</sup> Or, with me.

<sup>3</sup> This boasting shall not be stopped in me.

of Achaia. 11 Wherefore? because I love you not? God knoweth. 12 But what I do, that I will do, that I may cut off occasion from them that desire occasion; that wherein they glory, they may be found even as we. 13 For such *are* false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ. 14 And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. 15 Therefore *it is* no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.

#### e. The Record of Paul's Heroism

16 I say again, let no man think me a fool; if otherwise, yet as a fool receive me, that I may boast myself a little. 17 That which I speak, I speak *it* not after the Lord, but as it were foolishly, in this confidence of boasting. 18 Seeing that many glory after the flesh, I will glory also. 19 For you suffer fools gladly, seeing that you *yourselves* are wise. 20 For you suffer, if a man bring you into bondage, if a man devour *you*, if a man take of *you*, if a man exalt himself, if a man smite you on the face. 21 I speak concerning reproach, as though we had been weak. Howbeit whereinsoever any is bold, I speak foolishly, I am bold also:

\* \* \*

22 Are they Hebrews? So *am* I.  
Are they Israelites? So *am* I.  
Are they the seed of Abraham? So *am* I.

\* \*

23 Are they ministers of Christ? I speak foolishly, I *am* more:  
In labours more abundant,  
In stripes above measure,  
In prisons more frequent,  
In deaths oft.

\* \* \*

24 Of the Jews five times received I forty *stripes*  
save one.

25 Thrice was I beaten with rods,  
Once was I stoned.

\*\* \*\*

Thrice I suffered shipwreck,  
A night and a day I have been in the deep;

Chapter 10:11-25



\* \* \*

- 26 *In* journeyings often:  
*In* perils of waters,  
*In* perils of robbers,  
*In* perils by my own countrymen,  
*In* perils by the heathen,  
*In* perils in the city,  
*In* perils in the wilderness,  
*In* perils in the sea,  
*In* perils among false brethren;

\* \* \*

- 27 *In* weariness and painfulness,  
*In* watchings often,  
*In* hunger and thirst,  
*In* fastings often,  
*In* cold and nakedness.

\* \* \*

28 Beside those things that are without, that which cometh upon me daily, the care of all the churches.

- 29 Who is weak, and I am not weak?  
 Who is offended, and I burn not?

30 If I must needs glory, I will glory of the things that concern my infirmities.

31 The God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who is blessed for ever more, knoweth that I lie not.

32 In Damascus the governor under Aretas the king kept the city of the Damascenes, with a garrison, desirous to apprehend me: 33 and through a window in a basket was I let down by the wall, and escaped his hands.<sup>1</sup>

#### f. The Transfiguration of Paul

12:1 It is not expedient for me doubtless to glory. I<sup>2</sup> will come to visions and revelations of the Lord. 2 I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth, such an one caught up to the third heaven.<sup>3</sup> 3 And I knew such a man, whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth, 4 how that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful<sup>4</sup> for a man to utter. 5 Of such a one will I glory: yet of myself I will not glory, but in my infirmities. 6 For though I would desire to glory, I shall not be a fool; for I will say the truth: but *now* I

<sup>1</sup> Acts 9:24.

<sup>2</sup> For I will come.

<sup>3</sup> See Acts 22:17.

<sup>4</sup> Or, possible.

forbear, lest any man should think of me above that which he seeth me *to be*, or *that* he heareth of me. 7 And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn<sup>1</sup> in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure. 8 For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me. 9 And he said unto me, "My grace is sufficient for thee: for my strength is made perfect in weakness." Most gladly therefore will I rather glory in my infirmities, that the power of God may rest upon me. 10 Therefore I take pleasure in infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses for Christ's sake: for when I am weak, then am I strong.

---

g. The Ministry of Paul at Corinth

11 I am become a fool in glorying; you have compelled me: for I ought to have been commended of you: for in nothing am I behind the very chiefest apostles, though I am nothing. 12 Truly the signs of an apostle were wrought among you<sup>2</sup> in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds. 13 For what is it wherein you were inferior to other churches, except *it be* that I myself was not burdensome to you? forgive me this wrong. 14 Behold, the third time I am ready to come to you; and I will not be burdensome to you: for I seek not yours, but you: for the children ought not to lay up for the parents, but the parents for the children. 15 And I will very gladly spend and be spent for you; though the more abundantly I love you, the less I am loved. 16 But be it so, I did not burden you: nevertheless, being crafty, I caught you with guile. 17 Did I make a gain of you by any of them whom I sent unto you? 18 I desired Titus, and with *him* I sent a brother. Did Titus make a gain of you? walked we not in the same spirit? *walked we not in the same steps?*

---

<sup>1</sup> Gal. 4:13.

<sup>2</sup> Acts 18:1f.

## Part Five

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE WARNINGS, SALUTATIONS AND BENEDICTION

##### I. THE WARNINGS OF THE APOSTLE

###### a. The Sin in the Church

Again, think you that we excuse ourselves unto you? we speak before God in Christ: but *we do* all things, dearly beloved, for your edifying. 20 For I fear, lest when I come, I shall not find you as I would, and *that* I shall be found unto you such as you would not: lest *there be* debates, envyings, wraths, strifes, back-bitings, whisperings, swellings, tumults: 21 *and* lest, when I come again, my God will humble me among you, and *that* I shall bewail many that have sinned already, and have not repented of the uncleanness and fornication and lasciviousness which they have committed.

---

###### b. The Righteousness in the Church

13:1 This *is* the third *time* I am coming to you. In the mouth of two or three witnesses shall every word be established. 2 I told you before, and foretell you, as if I were present, the second time; and being absent now I write to them that heretofore have sinned, and to all others, that, if I come again, I will not spare: 3 since you seek a proof of Christ speaking in me, who toward you is not weak, but is mighty in you. 4 For though he was crucified through weakness, yet he liveth by the power of God. For we also are weak in him, but we shall live with him by the power of God toward you. 5 Examine yourselves, whether you are in the faith; prove your own selves. Know you not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except you are reprobates? 6 But I trust that you shall know that we are not reprobates. 7 Now I pray to God that you do no evil; not that we should appear approved, but that you should do that which is honest, though we are as reprobates. 8 For we can do nothing against the truth, but for the truth. 9 Now we are glad, when we are weak, and you are strong; and this also we wish, *even* your perfection. 10 Therefore I write these things, being absent, lest

being present I should use sharpness, according to the power that the Lord hath given me to edification, and not to destruction.

---

## II. THE SALUTATIONS AND BENEDICTION

### a. The Salutations for the Corinthians

11 Finally, brethren, farewell. Be perfect, be of good comfort, be of one mind, live in peace; and the God of love and peace shall be with you.

\*

12 Greet one another with a holy kiss.

\*

13 All the saints salute you.

---

### b. The Apostolic Benediction

14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Spirit, *be* with you all. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*



# The Epistle to the Galatians



## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION

---

#### THE DIVINE APOSTLESHIP OF PAUL

##### THE SALUTATION

##### The Salvation through Jesus Christ

Paul, an apostle [not of men, neither by man, but by Jesus Christ, and God the Father, who raised him from the dead], 2 and all the brethren that are with me,<sup>1</sup> unto the churches of Galatia:<sup>2</sup> 3 Grace *be* to you and peace from God the Father, and *from* our Lord Jesus Christ, 4 who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of God and our Father: 5 to whom *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Lord Ramsay and Prof. McGiffert say at Antioch in Syria.

<sup>2</sup> The churches in Antioch of Pisidia, Iconium, Lystra, Derbe, etc. Acts 13:12f.

*Chapter 1:1-5*





## Part Two

### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE GALATIANS

---

#### §1. THE AUTHORITY OF PAUL AS AN APOSTLE

##### I. THE DIVINE CALL TO THE MINISTRY

###### a. The True Gospel of Christ

I marvel that you are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel: 7 which is not another; but there are some<sup>1</sup> that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ. 8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. 9 As we said before, so say I now again, "If any *man* preach any other gospel unto you than that you have received, let him be accursed."

---

###### b. The Call of Paul at Damascus

10 For do I now persuade men, or God? or do I seek to please men? for if I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ. 11 But I certify unto you, brethren, that the gospel which was preached by me is not after man. 12 For I neither received it of man, neither was I taught *it*, but by the revelation of Jesus Christ. 13 For you have heard of my conversation in time past in the Jews' religion, how that beyond measure I persecuted the church of God, and wasted it: 14 and profited in the Jews' religion above many of my equals in my own nation, being more exceedingly zealous of the traditions of my fathers. 15 But when it pleased God, who separated me from my birth, and called *me* by his grace, 16 to reveal his Son in me,<sup>2</sup> that I might preach him among the heathen; immediately I conferred not with flesh and blood: 17 neither went I up to Jerusalem to them that were apostles before me; but I went into Arabia, and returned again unto Damascus.

---

<sup>1</sup> Judaic missionaries, such as caused the controversy at Antioch. See Acts 15:1f.

<sup>2</sup> See "The Conversion of Saul of Tarsus," Acts 9:1f.

### c. The Visit with Peter at Jerusalem

18 Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to see Peter, and abode with him fifteen days. 19 But other of the apostles saw I none, save James the Lord's brother. 20 Now the things which I write unto you, behold, before God, I lie not. 21 Afterwards I came into the regions of Syria and Cilicia;<sup>1</sup> 22 and was unknown by face unto the churches of Judæa that were in Christ: 23 but they had heard only, That he that persecuted us in times past now preacheth the faith which once he destroyed. 24 And they glorified God in me.

## II. THE AGREEMENT WITH THE APOSTLES

### a. The Action of James, Peter and John

2:1 Then fourteen years after I went up again to Jerusalem with Barnabas, and took Titus with *me* also. 2 And I went up by revelation, and communicated unto them that gospel which I preach among the Gentiles, but privately to them that were of reputation, lest by any means I should run, or had run, in vain. 3 But neither Titus, who was with me, being a Greek, was compelled to be circumcised: 4 and that because of false brethren unawares brought in, who came in privily to spy out our liberty which we have in Christ Jesus, that they might bring us into bondage: 5 to whom we gave place by subjection, no, not for an hour; that the truth of the gospel might continue with you. 6 But of these who seemed to be somewhat [whatsoever they were, it maketh no matter to me: God accepteth no man's person]—for they who seemed *to be somewhat* in conference added nothing to me: 7 but contrariwise, when they saw that the gospel of the uncircumcision was committed unto me, as *the gospel* of the circumcision *was* unto Peter 8 [For he that wrought effectually in Peter to the apostleship of the circumcision, the same was mighty in me toward the Gentiles]—9 and when James, Cephas, and John, who seemed to be pillars, perceived the grace that was given unto me, they gave to me and Barnabas the right hands of fellowship; that we *should go* unto the heathen, and they unto the circumcision. 10 Only *they would* that we should remember the poor; the same which I also was forward to do.

### b. The Failure of Peter at Antioch

11 But when Peter was come to Antioch, I withstood him to the face, because he was to be blamed. 12 For before that

<sup>1</sup> Acts 9:30.

certain came from James, he did eat with the Gentiles: but when they were come, he withdrew and separated himself, fearing them that were of the circumcision. 13 And the other Jews dissembled likewise with him; insomuch that Barnabas also was carried away with their dissimulation. 14 But when I saw that they walked not uprightly according to the truth of the gospel, I said unto Peter before *them* all, "If thou, being a Jew, livest after the manner of Gentiles, and not as do the Jews, why compellest thou the Gentiles to live as do the Jews?" 15 We *who are* Jews by nature, and not sinners of the Gentiles, 16 knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified. 17 But if, while we seek to be justified by Christ, we ourselves also are found sinners, *is* therefore Christ the minister of sin? God forbid. 18 For if I build again the things which I destroyed, I make myself a transgressor. 19 For I through the law am dead to the law, that I might live unto God. 20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life that I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me. 21 I do not frustrate the grace of God: for if righteousness *come* by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.

## §2. THE DOCTRINE OF SALVATION BY FAITH

### THE GOSPEL IN THE COVENANT AND LAW

#### a. The Covenant with Abraham

3:1 O foolish Galatians, who hath bewitched you, that you should not obey the truth, before whose eyes Jesus Christ hath been evidently set forth, crucified among you? 2 This only would I learn of you, Received ye the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith? 3 Are you so foolish? having begun in the Spirit, are you now made perfect by the flesh? 4 Have you suffered so many things in vain? if *it be* yet in vain. 5 He therefore that ministereth to you the Spirit, and worketh miracles among you, *doeth he it* by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith? 6 Even as Abraham believed God, and it was accounted to him for righteousness. 7 Know ye therefore that they that are of faith, the same are the children of Abraham. 8 And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, *saying*, "In thee shall all nations be blessed." 9 So then they that are of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham.

Chapter 2:13-3:9



10 For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things that are written in the book of the law to do them."<sup>1</sup> 11 But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, *is* evident: for "The just shall live by faith."<sup>2</sup> 12 And the law is not of faith: but, "The man that doeth them shall live in them."<sup>3</sup> 13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, "Cursed *is* every one that hangeth on a tree."<sup>4</sup> 14 that the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

#### b. The Confirmation of the Covenant

15 Brethren, I speak after the manner of men: Though *it be* but a man's covenant, yet *if it be* confirmed, no man disannulleth *it*, or addeth thereto. 16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, "And to thy seed,"<sup>5</sup> which is Christ. 17 And this I say, *that* the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect. 18 For if the inheritance *be* of the law, *it is* no more of promise: but God gave *it* to Abraham by promise. 19 Wherefore then *serveth* the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made: *and it was* ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator. 20 Now a mediator is not *a mediator* of one, but God is one. 21 *Is* the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law. 22 But the scripture hath concluded all under sin, that the promise by faith of Jesus Christ might be given to them that believe.

#### c. The Purpose of the Mosaic Law

23 But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed. 24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster *to bring us* unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith. 25 But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster. 26 For you are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus. 27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on

<sup>1</sup> Deut. 27:26.

<sup>2</sup> Hab. 2:4.

<sup>3</sup> Lev. 18:5.

<sup>4</sup> Deut. 21:23.

<sup>5</sup> Gen. 13:15.



Christ. 28 There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither bond nor free, there is neither male nor female: for you are all one in Christ Jesus. 29 And if you are Christ's, then are you Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise.

---

#### d. The Children of God

4:1 Now I say, *That* the heir, as long as he is a child, differeth nothing from a servant, though he be lord of all; 2 but is under tutors and governors until the time appointed of the father. 3 Even so we, when we were children, were in bondage under the elements of the world: 4 but when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, 5 to redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. 6 And because you are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, "Abba, Father." 7 Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ.

---

### §3. THE DECLINE OF THE GALATIAN CHURCHES

#### THE INFLUENCE OF JUDAIZING MISSIONARIES

##### a. The Bondage of the Mosaic Law

8 Howbeit then, when you knew not God, you did service unto them that by nature are no gods. 9 But now, after that you have known God, or rather are known of God, how turn you again to the weak and beggarly elements, whereunto you desire again to be in bondage? 10 You observe days, and months, and times, and years. 11 I am afraid of you, lest I have bestowed upon you labour in vain.

---

##### b. The Danger of False Teachers

12 Brethren, I beseech you, be as I *am*; for I *am* as you *are*: you have not injured me at all. 13 You know how through infirmity of the flesh I preached the gospel unto you at the first. 14 And my temptation which was in my flesh you despised not, nor rejected; but received me as an angel of God, *even* as Christ Jesus. 15 Where is then the blessedness you spoke of? for I bear you record, that if *it had been* possible, you would have plucked out your own eyes, and have given them to me. 16 Am I therefore become your enemy, because I tell you the truth? 17 They zealously affect you, *but* not well; yea, they would exclude you, that you might affect them. 18

*Chapter 3:28-4:18*

But *it is* good to be zealously affected always in a good *thing*, and not only when I am present with you. 19 My little children, of whom I travail in birth again until Christ be formed in you, 20 I desire to be present with you now, and to change my voice; for I stand in doubt of you.

### c. The Allegory of Isaac and Ishmael

21 Tell me, you that desire to be under the law, do you not hear the law? 22 For it is wirtten, that Abraham had two sons, the one by a bondmaid, the other by a freewoman. 23 But he *who was* of the bondwoman was born after the flesh; but he of the freewoman *was* by promise. 24 Which things are an allegory: for these are the two covenants; the one from mount Sinai, which gendereth to bondage, which is Hagar. 25 For this Hagar is mount Sinai in Arabia, and answereth to Jerusalem which now is, and is in bondage with her children. 26 But Jerusalem which is above is free, which is the mother of us all. 27 For it is written:

\* \* \*

“Rejoice, *thou* barren that bearest not;  
Break forth and cry, thou that travailest not:  
For the desolate hath many more children  
Than she hath who hath a husband.”<sup>1</sup>

\*

28 Now we, brethren, as Isaac was, are the children of promise. 29 But as then he that was born after the flesh persecuted him *that was born* after the Spirit, even so *it is* now. 30 Nevertheless, what saith the scripture? “Cast out the bondwoman and her son: for the son of the bondwoman shall not be heir with the son of the freewoman.”<sup>2</sup> 31 So then, brethren, we are not children of the bondwoman, but of the free.

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 54:1.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. 21:10f.

## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION FOR THE GALATIANS

---

#### THE FREEDOM AND RESPONSIBILITY OF THE GOSPEL

##### I. THE LIBERTY THAT IS IN JESUS CHRIST

###### The Ministry of the Holy Spirit

Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free, and be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage. 2 Behold, I Paul say unto you, that if you be circumcised, Christ shall profit you nothing. 3 For I testify again to every man that is circumcised, that he is a debtor to do the whole law. 4 Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; you are fallen from grace. 5 For we through the Spirit wait for the hope of righteousness by faith. 6 For in Jesus Christ neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision; but faith that worketh by love. 7 You did run well; who did hinder you that you should not obey the truth? 8 This persuasion *cometh* not of him that calleth you. 9 A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump. 10 I have confidence in you through the Lord, that you will not be otherwise minded: but he that troubleth you shall bear his judgment, whosoever he be. 11 And I, brethren, if I yet preach circumcision, why do I yet suffer persecution? then has the offence of the cross ceased. 12 I would that they were even cut off that trouble you.

---

##### II. THE DUTIES OF THE CHURCH

###### a. The Right Use of Freedom

13 For, brethren, you have been called unto liberty; only *use* not liberty for an occasion to the flesh, but by love serve one another. 14 For all the law is fulfilled in one word, *even* in this: "Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself."<sup>1</sup> 15 But if you bite and devour one another, take heed that you be not consumed one of another.

---

<sup>1</sup> Lev. 19:18.

**b. The Works of the Flesh and of the Spirit**

16 *This* I say then, walk in the Spirit, and you shall not fulfil the lusts of the flesh. 17 For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that you cannot do the things that you would. 18 But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the law. 19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*: adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, 20 idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, 21 envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they that do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, 23 meekness, temperance: against such there is no law. 24 And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts. 25 If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit. 26 Let us not be desirous of vain glory, provoking one another, envying one another.

---

**c. The Duty of Christian Charity**

6:1 Brethren, if a man be overtaken in a fault, you that are spiritual, restore such a one in the spirit of meekness; considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted. 2 Bear ye one another's burdens, and so fulfil the law of Christ. 3 For if a man think himself to be something, when he is nothing, he deceiveth himself. 4 But let every man prove his own work, and then shall he have rejoicing in himself alone, and not in another. 5 For every man shall bear his own burden.

---

**d. The Law of the Harvest**

6 Let him that is taught in the word communicate unto him that teacheth in all good things. 7 Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. 8 For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting. 9 And let us not be weary in well doing; for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not. 10 As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good unto all *men*, especially unto them who are of the household of faith.

*Chapter 5:16-6:10*



## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE GLORY OF PAUL IN THE CROSS OF CHRIST

##### THE AUTOGRAPH AND BENEDICTION

###### a. The Autograph of Paul

You see how large a letter I have written unto you with my own hand.

\*

12 As many as desire to make a fair show in the flesh, they constrain you to be circumcised; only lest they should suffer persecution for the cross of Christ. 13 For neither they themselves who are circumcised keep the law; but desire to have you circumcised, that they may glory in your flesh.

\*

14 But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world. 15 For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth anything, nor uncircumcision, but a new creature.

\*

16 And as many as walk according to this rule, peace *be* on them, and mercy, and upon the Israel of God.

\*

17 From henceforth let no man trouble me: for I bear in my body the marks of the Lord Jesus.

---

###### b. The Apostle's Benediction

18 Brethren, the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with your spirit. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*



## The Epistle to the Ephesians





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION

---

#### THE GREAT SAVIOUR OF THE WORLD THE SALUTATION, THANKSGIVING AND PRAYER

##### a. The Salutation

Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, to the saints that are at Ephesus,<sup>1</sup> and to the faithful in Christ Jesus: 2 Grace *be* to you, and peace, from God our Father, and *from* the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

##### b. The Seven-Fold Thanksgiving

3 Blessed *be* the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly *places* in Christ:

\*

4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

\*

5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, 6 to the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the Beloved:

\*

7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace; 8 wherein he hath abounded toward us in all wisdom and prudence; 9 having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he hath purposed in himself:

\*

10 That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both that are in heaven, and that are on earth; *even* in him; 11 in whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the

---

<sup>1</sup> Some very ancient authorities omit *at Ephesus*. The letter was written by Paul during his first Roman imprisonment.—A. D. 59-61.

purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will;

\*

12 That we should be to the praise of his glory, who first trusted in Christ; 13 in whom you also *trusted*, after that you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation:

\*

In whom also after that you believed, you were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise, 14 which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory.

---

#### c. The Prayer for the Ephesians

15 Wherefore I also, after I heard of your faith in the Lord Jesus, and love unto all the saints, 16 cease not to give thanks for you, making mention of you in my prayers; 17 that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him: 18 the eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that you may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints, 19 and what is the exceeding greatness of his power toward us who believe, according to the working of his mighty power, 20 which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set *him* at his own right hand in the heavenly *places*, 21 far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come: 22 and hath put all *things* under his feet, and gave him *to be* the head over all *things* to the church, 23 which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all.

*Chapter 1:12-23*

## Part Two

### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE EPHESIANS

---

#### THE SALVATION OF THE GENTILES

##### I. THE DOCTRINE OF JUSTIFICATION BY FAITH

###### a. The Salvation of Men from Sin

And you *hath he quickened*, who were dead in trespasses and sins; 2 wherein in time past you walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: 3 among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others. 4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, 5 even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ [by grace are you saved], 6 and hath raised *us* up together, and made *us* to sit together in heavenly *places* in Christ Jesus: 7 that in the ages to come he might show the exceeding riches of his grace in *his* kindness toward us through Christ Jesus. 8 For by grace are you saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: *it is* the gift of God: 9 not of works, lest any man should boast. 10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.

---

###### b. The Salvation of Men unto Righteousness

11 Wherefore remember, that you *being* in time past Gentiles in the flesh, who are called Uncircumcision by that which is called the Circumcision in the flesh made by hands; 12 that at that time you were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenant of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world: 13 but now in Christ Jesus you who sometimes were afar off are made nigh by the blood of Christ. 14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition *between us*; 15 having abolished in the flesh the enmity, *even* the law of commandments *contained* in ordinances; for to

make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace; 16 and that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby: 17 and came and preached peace to you that were afar off, and to them that were nigh. 18 For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father. 19 Now therefore you are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow-citizens with the saints, and of the household of God; 20 and are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone; 21 in whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto a holy temple in the Lord: 22 in whom you also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.

## II. THE DOCTRINE OF SANCTIFICATION BY THE SPIRIT

### The Ministry of Paul to the Ephesians

3:1 For this cause I Paul, the prisoner of Jesus Christ for you Gentiles,<sup>1</sup>—2 if you have heard of the dispensation<sup>2</sup> of the grace of God which is given me toward you: 3 how that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery [as I wrote before in few words, 4 whereby, when you read, you may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ], 5 which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit; 6 that the Gentiles should be fellow-heirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel: 7 whereof I was made a minister, according to the gift of the grace of God given unto me by the effectual working of his power. 8 Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ; 9 and to make all *men* see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ: 10 to the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly *places* might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God, 11 according to the eternal purpose which he purposed in Christ Jesus our Lord: 12 in whom we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of him. 13 Wherefore I desire that you faint not at my tribulations for you, which is your glory.—14 For this cause I bow my knees unto the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, 15 of whom the whole family in heaven and earth is named, 16 that he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; 17 that Christ may dwell in your

<sup>1</sup> This sentence is resumed at Verse 14.

<sup>2</sup> Or, stewardship.



hearts by faith; that you, being rooted and grounded in love, 18 may be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height; 19 and to know the love of Christ, that passeth knowledge, that you might be filled with all the fulness of God.

---

**b. The Doxology**

20 Now unto him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us, 21 unto him *be* glory in the church by Christ Jesus throughout all ages, world without end. Amen.



## Part Three

# THE EXHORTATION FOR THE EPHESIANS

---

### THE GRACIOUS APPEAL OF PAUL

#### I. THE APPEAL TO THE ENTIRE BODY OF BELIEVERS

##### a. The Importance of Christian Unity

I therefore, the prisoner of the Lord, beseech you that you walk worthy of the vocation wherewith you are called, 2 with all lowliness and meekness, with longsuffering, forbearing one another with love; 3 endeavoring to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace. 4 *There is* one body, and one Spirit, even as you are called in one hope of your calling; 5 one Lord, one faith, one baptism, 6 one God and Father of all, who *is* above all, and through all, and in you all. 7 But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the gift of Christ. 8 Wherefore he saith:

\* \* \*

“When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive,  
And gave gifts unto men.”<sup>1</sup>

\*

9 [Now he that ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth? 10 He that descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens, that he might fill all things.] 11 And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; 12 for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ: 13 till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ: 14 that we *henceforth* be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, *and* cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive: 15 but speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, who is the head, *even* Christ: 16 from whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 68:18.

that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.

---

**b. The Importance of the Spiritual Life**

17 This I say therefore, and testify in the Lord, that you henceforth walk not as other Gentiles walk, in the vanity of their mind, 18 having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart: 19 who being past feeling have given themselves over unto lasciviousness, to work all uncleanness with greediness. 20 But you have not so learned Christ; 21 if so be that you have heard him, and have been taught by him, as the truth is in Jesus: 22 that you put off concerning the former conversation the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts; 23 and be renewed in the spirit of your mind; 24 and that you put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.

---

**c. The Importance of the Moral and Social Life**

25 Wherefore putting away lying, speak every man the truth with his neighbor: for we are members one of another. 26 Be ye angry, and sin not: let not the sun go down upon your wrath; 27 neither give place to the devil. 28 Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with *his* hands the thing that is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth. 29 Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth, but that which is good to the use of edifying, that it may minister grace unto the hearers. 30 And grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, whereby you are sealed unto the day of redemption. 31 Let all bitterness, and wrath, and anger, and clamour, and evil speaking, be put away from you, with all malice: 32 and be ye kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ's sake hath forgiven you.

---

**d. The Importance of the Christian Virtues**

5:1 Be ye therefore followers of God, as dear children; 2 and walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savor. 3 But fornication, and all uncleanness, and covetousness, let it not be once named among you, as becometh saints; 4 neither filthiness, nor foolish talking, nor jesting, which are not

*Chapter 4:17-5:4*



convenient: but rather giving of thanks. 5 For this you know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person, nor covetous man who is an idolater, hath any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God. 6 Let no man deceive you with vain words: for because of these things cometh the wrath of God upon the children of disobedience. 7 Be not ye therefore partakers with them. 8 For you were sometimes darkness, but now *are you* light in the Lord; walk as children of light 9 [For the fruit of the Spirit *is* in all goodness and righteousness and truth]: 10 proving what is acceptable unto the Lord. 11 And have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove *them*. 12 For it is a shame even to speak of those things that are done by them in secret. 13 But all things that are reprov'd are made manifest by the light: for whatsoever doth make manifest is light. 14 Wherefore he saith:

\* \* \*

"Awake thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead,  
And Christ shall give thee light."<sup>1</sup>

#### e. The Duty of the Hour

15 See then that you walk circumspectly, not as fools, but as wise, 16 redeeming the time,<sup>2</sup> because the days are evil. 17 Wherefore be ye not unwise, but understanding what the will of the Lord *is*. 18 Be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit; 19 speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord; 20 giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ; 21 submitting yourselves one to another in the fear of God.

## II. THE APPEAL TO VARIOUS CLASSES IN THE CHURCH

### a. The Duties of Husbands and Wives

22 Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord. 23 For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the saviour of the body. 24 Therefore as the church is subject unto Christ, so *let the wives be* to their husbands in every thing. 25 Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it; 26 that he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, 27 that he might

<sup>1</sup> Isa. 60:1.

<sup>2</sup> Greek: Buying up the opportunity.

present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish. 28 So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. He that loveth his wife loveth himself. 29 For no man ever yet hated his own flesh; but nourisheth and cherisheth it, even as the Lord the church: 30 for we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones. 31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh. 32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church. 33 Nevertheless let every one of you in particular so love his wife even as himself; and the wife *see* that she reverence *her* husband.

---

#### b. The Duties of Parents and Children

6:1 Children obey your parents in the Lord: for this is right. 2 Honour thy father and mother; which is the first commandment with promise; 3 that it may be well with thee, and thou mayest live long on the earth. 4 And, ye fathers, provoke not your children to wrath: but bring them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord.

---

#### c. The Duties of Masters and Slaves

5 Servants, be obedient to them that are *your* masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in singleness of your heart, as unto Christ; 6 not with eyeservice, as menpleasers; but as the servants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart; 7 with good will doing service, as to the Lord, and not to men: 8 knowing that whatsoever good things any man doeth, the same shall he receive of the Lord, whether *he be* bond or free. 9 And, ye masters, do the same thing unto them, forbearing threatening: knowing that your Master also is in heaven; neither is there respect of persons with him.

---

### III. THE APPEAL TO THE CHURCH AS AN ARMY

#### The Christian in Seven-Fold Armor

10 Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. 11 Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. 12 For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high *places*. 13

*Chapter 5:28-6:13*

Wherefore take unto you the whole armor of God, that you may be able to withstand in the evil days, and having done all, to stand.

\* \* \*

14 Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth,

\*

And having on the breastplate of righteousness;

\*

15 And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace:

\*

16 Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith you shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked.

\*

17 And take the helmet of salvation;

\*

And the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God:

\*

18 Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints; 19 and for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, and to make known the mystery of the gospel, 20 for which I am an ambassador in bonds: that therein I may speak boldly, as I ought to speak.

*Chapter 6: 14-20*





## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE SITUATION OF PAUL AT ROME

#### THE COMMENDATION, SALUTATION AND BENEDICTION

##### a. The Commendation of Tychicus

But that you also may know my affairs, *and* how I do, Tychicus, a beloved brother and faithful minister in the Lord, shall make known to you all things: 22 whom I have sent unto you for the same purpose, that you might know our affairs, and *that* he might comfort your hearts.

---

##### b. The Apostle's Salutation

23 Peace *be* to the brethren, and love with faith, from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

##### c. The Benediction

24 Grace *be* with all them that love our Lord Jesus Christ in sincerity. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*



## The Epistle to the Philippians





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE GREAT LOVE OF PAUL FOR THE PHILIPPIANS

##### THE SALUTATION, THANKSGIVING AND PRAYER

###### a. The Salutation

Paul and Timothy, the servants of Jesus Christ, to all the saints in Christ Jesus that are at Philippi, with the bishops and deacons: 2 Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from God our Father, and *from* the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

###### b. The Thanksgiving

3 I thank my God upon every remembrance of you, 4 always in every prayer of mine for you all making request with you, 5 for your fellowship in the gospel from the first day until now; 6 being confident of this very thing, that he that hath begun a good work in you will perform *it* until the day of Jesus Christ: 7 even as it is meet for me to think this of you all, because I have you in my heart; inasmuch as both in my bonds, and in the defence and confirmation of the gospel, you all are partakers of my grace. 8 For God is my witness, how greatly I long after you all in the tender mercies of Jesus Christ.

---

###### c. The Apostle's Prayer

9 And this I pray, that your love may abound yet more and more in knowledge and *in* all judgment; 10 that you may approve things that are excellent; that you may be sincere and without offence till the day of Christ; 11 being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written toward the close of the first Roman imprisonment of Paul.



## Part Two

# THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE PHILIPPIANS

---

## THE HUMBLE MIND OF JESUS CHRIST

### I. THE MINISTRY OF PAUL IN ROME

#### a. The Providential Furtherance of the Gospel in Rome

But I would that you should understand, brethren, that the things *that happened* unto me have fallen out rather unto the furtherance of the gospel; 13 so that my bonds in Christ are manifest in all the palace, and in all other *places*; 14 and many of the brethren in the Lord, waxing confident by my bonds, are much more bold to speak the word without fear. 15 Some indeed preach Christ even of envy and strife; and some also of good will: 16 the one preach Christ of contention, not sincerely, supposing to add affliction to my bonds; 17 but the other of love, knowing that I am set for the defence of the gospel. 18 What then? notwithstanding, every way, whether in pretence, or in truth, Christ is preached; and I therein do rejoice, yea, and will rejoice. 19 For I know that this shall turn to my salvation through your prayer, and the supply of the Spirit of Jesus Christ, 20 according to my earnest expectation and *my* hope, that in nothing I shall be ashamed, but *that* with all boldness, as always, so now also Christ shall be magnified in my body, whether *it be* by life or by death. 21 For to me to live *is* Christ, and to die *is* gain. 22 But if I live in the flesh, this *is* the fruit of my labour: yet what I shall choose I know not.

---

#### b. The Mind of the Apostle Paul

23 For I am in a strait betwixt two, having a desire to depart, and to be with Christ; which is far better: 24 nevertheless to abide in the flesh *is* more needful for you. 25 And having this confidence, I know that I shall abide and continue with you all for your furtherance and joy of faith; 26 that your rejoicing may be more abundant in Christ for me by my coming to you again. 27 Only let your conversation be as it becometh the gospel of Christ: that whether I come and see you, or else be absent, I may hear of your affairs, that you stand fast in one spirit, with

one mind striving together for the faith of the gospel; 28 and in nothing terrified by your adversaries: which is to them an evident token of perdition, but to you of salvation, and that of God. 29 For unto you it is given in the behalf of Christ, not only to believe on him, but also to suffer for his sake; 30 having the same conflict which you saw in me, and now hear *to be* in me.

---

#### c. The Humble Mind of Christ

2:1 If *there be* therefore any consolation in Christ, if any comfort of love, if any fellowship of the Spirit, if any tender mercies and compassions, 2 fulfil ye my joy, that you be likeminded, having the same love, *being* of one accord, of one mind. 3 *Let nothing be done* through strife or vainglory; but in lowliness of mind let each esteem others better than themselves. 4 Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others. 5 Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus; 6 who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: 7 but made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: 8 and being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross. 9 Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name that is above every name: 10 that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of *things* in heaven, and *things* in earth, and *things* under the earth; 11 and *that* every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

---

#### d. The Mind of the Philippians

12 Wherefore, my beloved, as you have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. 13 For it is God who worketh in you both to will and to do of *his* good pleasure. 14 Do all things without murmuring and disputing: 15 that you may be blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom you shine as lights in the world; 16 holding forth the word of life; that I may rejoice in the day of Christ, that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain. 17 Yea, and if I be offered<sup>1</sup> upon the sacrifice and service of your faith, I joy, and rejoice with you all. 18 For the same cause also do you joy, and rejoice with me.

---

<sup>1</sup> Poured forth.



**II. THE MISSIONARY PLANS FOR PHILIPPI****a. The Mission of Timothy**

19 But I trust in the Lord Jesus to send Timothy shortly unto you, that I also may be of good comfort, when I know your state. 20 For I have no man likeminded, who will naturally care for your state. 21 For all seek their own, not the things that are Jesus Christ's. 22 But you know the proof of him, that, as a son with the father, he hath served with me in the gospel. 23 Him therefore I hope to send presently, as soon as I shall see how it will go with me. 24 But I trust in the Lord that I also myself will come shortly.

---

**b. The Return of Epaphroditus to Philippi**

25 Yet I supposed it necessary to send to you Epaphroditus my brother, and companion in labour, and fellowsoldier, but your messenger, and he that ministered to my wants. 26 For he longed after you all, and was full of heaviness, because you had heard that he had been sick. 27 For indeed he was sick nigh unto death: but God had mercy on him; and not on him only, but on me also, lest I should have sorrow upon sorrow. 28 I sent him therefore the more carefully, that, when you see him again, you may rejoice, and that I may be the less sorrowful. 29 Receive him therefore in the Lord with all gladness; and hold such in reputation: 30 because for the work of Christ he was nigh unto death, not regarding his life, to supply your lack of service toward me.

*Chapter 2:19-30*



## Part Three

# THE EXHORTATION FOR THE PHILIPPIANS

---

### THE HUMBLE MIND OF THE APOSTLE

#### I. THE LOSS AND GAIN IN CHRIST

##### a. The Great Renunciation and Ambition of Paul

Finally, my brethren, rejoice in the Lord. To write the same things to you, to me indeed is not grievous, but for you *it is* safe. 2 Beware of dogs, beware of evil workers, beware of the concision. 3 For we are the circumcision, who worship God in the Spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh. 4 Though I might also have confidence in the flesh. If any other man thinketh that he hath whereof he might trust in the flesh, I more:

\* \* \*

- 5 Circumcised the eighth day,  
Of the tribe of Benjamin,  
A Hebrew of the Hebrews,  
As touching the law, a Pharisee;  
6 Concerning zeal, persecuting the church;  
Touching the righteousness which is in the  
law, blameless.  
7 But what things were gain to me, those  
I counted loss for Christ.

\*

8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things *but* loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them *but* dung, that I may win Christ, 9 and be found in him, not having my own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness that is of God by faith: 10 that I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death; 11 if by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead; 12 Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus. 13 Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but *this* one thing I *do*, forgetting those things that are behind, and reaching forth unto

those things that are before, 14 I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus. 15 Let us therefore, as many as be perfect, be thus minded: for if in any thing you be otherwise minded, God shall reveal even this unto you. 16 Nevertheless, whereto we have already attained, let us walk by the same rule, let us mind the same thing.

---

#### b. The Example of Paul

17 Brethren, be followers together of me, and mark them that walk so as you have us for an example. 18 (For many walk, of whom I have told you often, and now tell you even weeping, *that they are* the enemies of the cross of Christ: 19 whose end is destruction, whose god *is their* belly, and *whose* glory is in their shame, who mind earthly things). 20 For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ: 21 who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

---

#### c. The Importance of Stedfastness

4:1 Therefore, my brethren dearly beloved, and longed for, my joy and crown, so stand fast in the Lord, *my* dearly beloved.

---

## II. THE LIFE AND WORK OF THE CHURCH

#### a. The Appeal for Harmony and Co-operation

2 I beseech Euodias, and beseech Syntyche, that they be of the same mind in the Lord. 3 And I intreat thee also, true yokefellow, help those women that labour with me in the gospel, with Clement also, and *with* other my fellowlabourers, whose names *are* in the book of life.

---

#### b. The Care of the Spiritual Life

4 Rejoice in the Lord always: *and* again I say, Rejoice. 5 Let your moderation be known unto all men. The Lord *is* at hand. 6 Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God.

---

#### c. The Doxology

7 And the peace of God that passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.

*Chapter 3:13-4:7*



## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE PERSONAL WORD OF THE APOSTLE

##### THE GENEROSITY OF THE PHILIPPIANS

###### a. The Seven-Fold Excellence

Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true,

\*

Whatsoever things *are* honest,

\*

Whatsoever things *are* just,

\*

Whatsoever things *are* pure,

\*

Whatsoever things *are* lovely,

\*

Whatsoever things *are* of good report,

\*

If *there be* any virtue, and if *there be* any praise, think on these things. 9 Those things that you have both learned, and received, and heard, and seen in me, do; and the God of peace shall be with you.

---

###### b. The Generosity of the Philippians

10 But I rejoiced in the Lord greatly, that now at the last your care of me hath flourished again; wherein you were also careful, but you lacked opportunity. 11 Not that I speak in respect of want: for I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, *therewith* to be content. 12 I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound: every where and in all things I am instructed both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need. 13 I can do all things through Christ who strengtheneth me. 14 Notwithstanding you have well done, that you did communicate with my affliction. 15 Now you Philippians

know also, that in the beginning of the gospel, when I departed from Macedonia, no church communicated with me as concerning giving and receiving, but you only. 16 For even in Thessalonica you sent once and again unto my necessity. 17 Not because I desire a gift: but I desire fruit that may abound to your account. 18 But I have all, and abound: I am full, having received of Epaphroditus the things *that were sent* from you, an odour of a sweet smell, a sacrifice acceptable, wellpleasing to God. 19 But my God shall supply all your need according to his riches in glory by Christ Jesus.

---

### c. The Doxology

20 Now unto God and our Father *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.

---

## II. THE SALUTATIONS AND BENEDICTION

### a. The Salutations

21 Salute every saint in Christ Jesus.

\*

The brethren that are with me greet you.

\*

22 All the saints salute you, chiefly they that are of Cæsar's household.

---

### b. The Benediction

23 The Grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you all. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*

# The Epistle to the Colossians





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE REPORT OF EPAPHRAS

##### THE SALUTATION, THANKSGIVING AND PRAYER

###### a. The Salutation

Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, and Timothy *our* brother, 2 to the saints and faithful brethren in Christ who are at Colossæ: Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

###### b. The Thanksgiving

3 We gave thanks to God and the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, praying always for you, 4 since we heard of your faith in Christ Jesus, and of the love *which you have* to all the saints, 5 for the hope which is laid up for you in heaven, whereof you heard before in the word of the truth of the gospel; 6 which is come unto you, as *it is* in all the world; and bringeth forth fruit, as *it doth* also in you, since the day you heard of *it*, and knew the grace of God in truth: 7 as you also learned of Epaphras our dear fellowservant, who is for you a faithful minister of Christ; 8 who also declared unto us your love in the Spirit.

---

###### c. The Prayer of the Apostle

9 For this cause we also, since the day we heard *it*, do not cease to pray for you, and to desire that you might be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding; 10 that you might walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God; 11 strengthened with all might, according to his glorious power, unto all patience and longsuffering with joyfulness; 12 giving thanks unto the Father, who hath made

---

<sup>1</sup> Written during the first Roman imprisonment of Paul, A. D. 59-61.

us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light;  
13 who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath  
translated *us* into the kingdom of his dear Son:<sup>1</sup> 14 in whom we  
have redemption through his blood, *even* the forgiveness of sins:  
15 who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every  
creature.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Son of his love.

## Part Two

### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE COLOSSIANS

---

#### THE DOCTRINE OF CHRIST

##### I. THE PRE-EMINENCE OF JESUS CHRIST

###### a. The Pre-Eminence of Christ in the Universe

For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether *they be* thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him: 17 and he is before all things, and by him all things consist.

---

###### b. The Pre-Eminence of Christ in the Church

18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all *things* he might have the pre-eminence. 19 For it pleased *the Father* that in him should all fulness dwell; 20 and, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, *I say*, whether *they be* things in earth, or things in heaven. 21 And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in *your* mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled 22 in the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unreprouvable in his sight: 23 if you continue in the faith grounded and settled, and *be* not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which you have heard, *and* which was preached to every creature that is under heaven.

---

##### II. THE MINISTRY OF PAUL

###### a. The Rejoicing of Paul for the Colossians

Whereof I Paul am made a minister; 24 who now rejoice in my sufferings for you, and fill up that which is behind of the afflictions of Christ in my flesh for his body's sake, which is the church: 25 whereof I am made a minister, according to the dispensation of God which is given to me for you, to fulfil<sup>1</sup> the

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, fully to preach the word of God.

word of God; 26 *even* the mystery that hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints: 27 to whom God would make known what *is* the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory: 28 whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus: 29 whereunto I also labour, striving according to his working, which worketh in me mightily.

---

**b. The Knowledge of the Mystery of Christ**

2:1 For I would that you knew what great conflict<sup>1</sup> I have for you, and *for* them at Laodicea, and *for* as many as have not seen my face in the flesh; 2 that their hearts may be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgment of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ; 3 in whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. 4 And this I say, lest any man should beguile you with enticing words. 5 For though I be absent in the flesh, yet am I with you in the spirit, joying and beholding your order, and the stedfastness of your faith in Christ.

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, care.



## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION FOR THE COLOSSIANS

---

#### THE LIFE IN CHRIST

##### 1. THE DOCTRINAL CIRCUMSPECTION

###### a. The Daily Life in Christ

As you have therefore received Jesus Christ the Lord, *so* walk ye in him: 7 rooted and built up in him, and established in the faith, as you have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving.

---

###### b. The Effectual Atonement of Christ

8 Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ. 9 For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the godhead bodily. 10 And you are complete in him, who is the head of all principality and power: 11 in whom also you are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ: 12 buried with him in baptism, wherein also you are risen with *him* through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead. 13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses; 14 blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, that was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross: 15 *and* having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a show of them openly, triumphing over them in it.<sup>1</sup>

---

###### c. The Failure of Jewish Ordinances

16 Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of a holyday, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath days: 17 which are a shadow of things to come; but the body *is* of Christ. 18 Let no man beguile you of your reward in a

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, in himself.

voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he hath not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind, 19 and not holding the Head, from which all the body by joints and bands having nourishment ministered, and knit together, increaseth with the increase of God.

#### d. The Failure of Human Wisdom

20 Wherefore if you are dead with Christ from the rudiments of the world, why, as though living in the world, are you subject to ordinances 21 [Touch not, taste not, handle not; 22 which all are to perish with the using], after the commandments and doctrines of men? 23 Which things have indeed a show of wisdom in will worship, and humility, and neglecting<sup>1</sup> of the body; not in any honour to the satisfying of the flesh.

#### e. The Importance of Consecration

3:1 If you then are risen with Christ, seek those things that are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. 2 Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth. 3 For you are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God. 4 When Christ, *who is* our life, shall appear, then shall you also appear with him in glory.

### II. THE MORAL CIRCUMSPECTION

#### a. The Old Man and the New

5 Mortify therefore your members which are upon the earth: fornication, uncleanness, inordinate affection, evil concupiscence, and covetousness, which is idolatry; 6 for which things' sake the wrath of God cometh on the children of disobedience: 7 in the which you also walked some time, when you lived in them. 8 But now you also put off all these: anger, wrath, malice, blasphemy, filthy communication out of your mouth. 9 Lie not one to another, seeing that you have put off the old man with his deeds; 10 and have put on the new *man*, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him: 11 where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, barbarian, Scythian, bond *nor* free: but Christ *is* all, and in all.

#### b. The Putting on of Christ

12 Put on therefore, as the elect of God, holy and beloved, a heart of compassion,<sup>2</sup> kindness, humbleness of mind, meekness,

<sup>1</sup> Or, punishment.

<sup>2</sup> A. V. bowels of mercies.

longsuffering; 13 forbearing one another, and forgiving one another, if any man have a quarrel against any: even as Christ forgave you, so also *do* ye. 14 And above all these things *put on* charity, which is the bond of perfectness. 15 And let the peace of God rule in your hearts, to the which also you are called in one body; and be ye thankful. 16 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord. 17 And whatsoever you do in word or deed, *do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

### III. THE SOCIAL CIRCUMSPECTION

#### The Duties of the Family

18 Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as it is fit in the Lord. 19 Husbands, love *your* wives, and be not bitter against them. 20 Children, obey *your* parents in all things: for this is well pleasing unto the Lord. 21 Fathers, provoke not your children to *anger*, lest they be discouraged.

#### b. The Duties of Masters and Slaves

22 Servants, obey in all things *your* masters<sup>1</sup> according to the flesh; not with eyeservice, as menpleasers; but in singleness of heart, fearing God: 23 and whatsoever you do, *do it* heartily,<sup>2</sup> as to the Lord, and not unto men; 24 knowing that of the Lord you shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for you serve the Lord Christ. 25 But he that doeth wrong shall receive for the wrong that he hath done: and there is no respect of persons. 4:1 Masters, give unto *your* servants that which is just and equal; knowing that you also have a Master in heaven.

### IV. THE CONCLUDING EXHORTATION

#### The Duty to God and Man

2 Continue in prayer, and watch in the same with thanksgiving; 3 withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds: 4 that I may make it manifest, as I ought to speak. 5 Walk in wisdom toward them that are without, redeeming the time.<sup>3</sup> 6 Let your speech *be* always with grace, seasoned with salt, that you may know how you ought to answer every man.

<sup>1</sup> Greek: lords.

<sup>2</sup> Greek: from the soul.

<sup>3</sup> Greek: buying up the opportunity.





## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE SITUATION OF PAUL AT ROME

#### THE COMMENDATIONS, SALUTATIONS AND BENEDICTION

##### a. The Commendation of Tychicus and Onesimus

All my state shall Tychicus declare unto you, *who is* a beloved brother, and a faithful minister and fellowservant in the Lord: 8 whom I have sent unto you for the same purpose, that he might know your estate, and comfort your hearts; 9 with Onesimus, a faithful and beloved brother, who is *one* of you. They shall make known unto you all things that *are done* here.

---

##### b. The Salutation of Paul's Companions

10 Aristarchus my fellowprisoner saluteth you, and Mark, sister's son to Barnabas [touching whom you received commandments: if he come unto you, receive him], 11 and Jesus who is called Justus, who are of the circumcision. These only *are my* fellowworkers unto the kingdom of God, who have been a comfort unto me. 12 Epaphras, who is *one* of you, a servant of Christ, saluteth you, always labouring fervently for you in prayers, that you may stand perfect and complete in all the will of God. 13 For I bear him record that he hath a great zeal for you, and them *that are* in Laodicea, and them in Hierapolis. 14 Luke, the beloved physician, and Demas, greeteth you.

---

##### c. The Salutations for the Laodiceans

15 Salute the brethren that are in Laodicea, and Nymphas,<sup>1</sup> and the church that is in his<sup>2</sup> house. 16 And when this epistle is read among you, cause that it be read also in the church of the Laodiceans; and that you likewise read the *epistle* from Laodicea.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Greek may be *Nympha*.

<sup>2</sup> Some ancient authorities read *her*.

**d. The Word for Archippus**

17 And say to Archippus, Take heed to the ministry which thou hast received in the Lord, that thou fulfil it.

---

**e. The Autograph Salutation of Paul**

18 The salutation by the hand of me Paul. Remember my bonds.

---

**f. The Benediction**

Grace *be* with you. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*

The First Epistle to the  
Thessalonians





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE FAITH OF THE THESSALONIANS

##### THE SALUTATION AND THANKSGIVING

###### a. The Salutation

Paul, and Silvanus, and Timothy, unto the church of the Thessalonians *which is* in God the Father and *in* the Lord Jesus Christ: Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

###### b. The Thanksgiving

2 We give thanks to God always for you all, making mention of you in our prayers; 3 remembering without ceasing your work of faith, and labour of love, and patience of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ, in the sight of God and our Father; 4 knowing, brethren beloved, your election of God. 5 For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance; as you know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. 6 And you became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Spirit: 7 so that you were examples to all that believe in Macedonia and Achaia. 8 For from you sounded out the word of the Lord not only in Macedonia and Achaia, but also in every place your faith toward God is spread abroad; so that we need not to speak any thing. 9 For they themselves show of us what manner of entering in we had unto you, and how you turned to God from idols to serve the living and true God; 10 and to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead, *even* Jesus, who delivered us from the wrath to come.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written from Corinth during the second missionary journey.



## Part Two

### THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE THESSALONIANS

---

#### §1. THE ANXIETY OF PAUL FOR THE THESSALONIANS

##### I. THE PERSONAL RELATIONS WITH THE CHURCH

###### a. The Ministry of Paul at Thessalonica

For yourselves, brethren, know our entrance in unto you, that it was not in vain: 2 but even after that we had suffered before, and were shamefully treated, as you know, at Philippi,<sup>1</sup> we were bold in our God to speak unto you the gospel of God with much contention. 3 For our exhortation *was* not of deceit, nor of uncleanness, nor in guile: 4 but as we were allowed of God to be put in trust with the gospel, even so we speak; not as pleasing men, but God, who trieth our hearts. 5 For neither at any time used we flattering words as you know, nor a cloke of covetousness; God *is* witness: 6 nor of men sought we glory, neither of you, nor *yet* of others, when we might have been burdensome,<sup>2</sup> as the apostles of Christ. 7 But we were gentle among you, even as a nurse cherisheth her children: 8 so being affectionately desirous of you, we were willing to have imparted unto you, not the gospel of God only, but also our own souls, because you were dear unto us. 9 For you remember, brethren, our labour and travail: for labouring night and day, because we would not be chargeable unto any of you, we preached unto you the gospel of God. 10 You *are* witnesses, and God *also*, how holily and justly and unblameably we behaved ourselves among you that believe: 11 as you know how we exhorted and comforted and charged every one of you, as a father *doth* his children, 12 that you would walk worthy of God, who hath called you unto his kingdom and glory.

---

###### b. The Truth in Christ Jesus

13 For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when you received the word of God, which you heard of us,

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 16:22.

<sup>2</sup> Or, used authority.

you received *it* not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe. 14 For you, brethren, became followers of the churches of God which in Judæa are in Christ Jesus: for you also have suffered like things of your own countrymen, even as they *have* of the Jews: 15 who both killed the Lord Jesus, and their own prophets, and have persecuted us; and they please not God, and are contrary to all men: 16 forbidding us to speak to the Gentiles that they might be saved, to fill up their sins always; for the wrath is come upon them to the uttermost.

---

#### c. The Attempts to Return to Thessalonica

17 But we, brethren, being taken from you for a short time in presence, not in heart, endeavored the more abundantly to see your face with great desire. 18 Wherefore we would have come unto you, even I Paul, once and again; but Satan hindered us. 19 For what *is* our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? *Are* not even you in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at his coming? 20 For you are our glory and joy.

---

#### d. The Mission of Timothy to Thessalonica

3:1 Wherefore when we could no longer forbear, we thought it good to be left at Athens alone; 2 and sent Timothy, our brother, and minister of God, and our fellowlabourer in the gospel of Christ, to establish you, and to comfort you concerning your faith: 3 that no man should be moved by these afflictions: for yourselves know that we are appointed thereunto. 4 For verily, when we were with you,<sup>1</sup> we told you before that we should suffer tribulation; even as it came to pass,<sup>2</sup> and you know. 5 For this cause, when I could no longer forbear, I sent to know your faith, lest by some means the tempter have tempted you, and our labour be in vain. 6 But now when Timothy came from you unto us, and brought us good tidings of your faith and charity, and that you have good remembrance of us always, desiring greatly to see us, as we also *to see* you: 7 therefore, brethren, we were comforted over you in all our affliction and distress by your faith: 8 and now we live, if you stand fast in the Lord. 9 For what thanks can we render to God again for you, for all the joy wherewith we joy for your sakes before our God; 10 night and day praying exceedingly that we might see your face, and might perfect that which is lacking in your faith?

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 17:1f.

<sup>2</sup> Acts 17:5f.



### e. The Two Desires of the Apostle

11 Now God himself and our Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, direct our way unto you. 12 And the Lord make you to increase and abound in love one toward another, and toward all *men*, even as we *do* toward you: 13 to the end that he may establish your hearts unblameable in holiness before God, even our Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ with all his saints.

---

## II. THE SOCIAL LIFE OF THE CHURCH

### a. The Moral Purity of the Congregation

4:1 Furthermore then we beseech you, brethren, and exhort *you* by the Lord Jesus, that as you have received of us how you ought to walk and to please God, *so* you would abound more and more. 2 For you know what commandments we gave you by the Lord Jesus. 3 For this is the will of God, *even* your sanctification, that you should abstain from fornication: 4 that every one of you should know how to possess himself in sanctification and honour; 5 not in the lust of concupiscence, even as the Gentiles who know not God: 6 that no *man* go beyond and defraud<sup>1</sup> his brother in *any* matter: because that the Lord *is* the avenger of all such, as we also have forewarned you and testified. 7 For God hath not called us unto uncleanness, but unto holiness. 8 He therefore that despiseth, despiseth not man, but God, who hath also given unto us his Holy Spirit.

---

### b. The Duties of Christian Society

9 But as touching brotherly love you need not that I write unto you: for you yourselves are taught of God to love one another. 10 And indeed you do it toward all the brethren that are in all Macedonia: but we beseech you, brethren, that you increase more and more; 11 and that you study to be quiet, and to do your own business, and to work with your own hands, as we commanded you; 12 that you may walk honestly toward them that are without, and *that* you may have lack of nothing.

---

## §2. THE SECOND COMING OF JESUS CHRIST

### THE MANNER AND TIME OF JESUS' RETURN

#### a. The Manner of the Lord's Return

13 But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them that are asleep, that you sorrow not, even as others

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, oppress or overreach.

who have no hope. 14 For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also that sleep in Jesus will God bring with him. 15 For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we that are alive *and* remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not precede them that are asleep. 16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: 17 then we that are alive *and* remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord. 18 Wherefore comfort one another with these words.

---

**b. The Time of the Lord's Return**

5:1 But of the times and the seasons, brethren, you have no need that I write unto you. 2 For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night. 3 For when they shall say, "Peace and safety," then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape. 4 But you, brethren, are not in darkness, that that day should overtake you as a thief. 5 You are all the children of light, and the children of the day: we are not of the night, nor of darkness. 6 Therefore let us not sleep, as *do* others; but let us watch and be sober. 7 For they that sleep sleep in the night; and they that are drunken are drunken in the night. 8 But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for a helmet, the hope of salvation. 9 For God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation of our Lord Jesus Christ, 10 who died for us, that whether we wake or sleep, we should live together with him. 11 Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also you do

*Chapter 4:14-5:11*

## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION FOR THE THESSALONIANS <sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE DUTIES OF THE THESSALONIANS

##### THE CARE OF THE CHURCH

###### a. The Duties to the Ministers

And we beseech you, brethren, to know them that labour among you, and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you; 13 and to esteem them very highly in love for their work's sake.

---

###### b. The Duties Toward One Another

*And* be at peace among yourselves. 14 Now we exhort you, brethren, warn them that are unruly, comfort the feebleminded, support the weak, be patient toward all *men*. 15 See that none render evil for evil unto any *man*; but ever follow that which is good, both among yourselves, and to all men.

---

###### c. The Duties Toward God

16 Rejoice evermore. 17 Pray without ceasing. 18 In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you.

---

###### d. The Duties Toward the Truth

19 Quench not the Spirit. 20 Despise not prophesyings. 21 Prove all things; hold fast that which is good. 22 Abstain from all appearance of evil.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Ramsay's "Pictures of the Apostolic Church."





## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE APOSTLE'S CLOSING WORD

##### THE BLESSING, SALUTATION AND BENEDICTION

###### a. The Blessing

And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless, unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. 24 Faithful *is* he that calleth you, who also will do *it*.

\*

25 Brethren, pray for us.

---

###### b. The Salutation

26 Salute all the brethren with a holy kiss.

---

###### c. The Charge

27 I charge you by the Lord that this epistle be read unto all the holy brethren.

---

###### d. The Benediction

28 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*



The Second Epistle to the  
Thessalonians





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE APOSTLE AND THE THESSALONIANS

##### THE SALUTATION AND THANKSGIVING

###### a. The Salutation

Paul, and Silvanus, and Timothy, unto the church of the Thessalonians in God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ: 2 Grace unto you, and peace, from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

###### b. The Thanksgiving

3 We are bound to thank God always for you, brethren, as it is meet, because your faith groweth exceedingly, and the charity of every one of you toward each other aboundeth; 4 so that we ourselves glory in you in the churches of God for your patience and faith in all your persecutions and tribulations that ye endure: 5 *which is* a manifest token of the righteous judgment of God, that you may be counted worthy of the kingdom of God, for which you also suffer: 6 seeing *it is* a righteous thing with God to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you; 7 and to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, 8 in flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ: 9 who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power; 10 when he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that believe [because our testimony among you was believed] in that day. 11 Wherefore also we pray always for you, that our God would count you worthy of this calling, and fulfil all the good pleasure of *his* goodness, and the work of faith with power: 12 that the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified in you, and you in him, according to the grace of our God and the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written from Corinth during the second missionary journey.



## Part Two

# THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE THESSALONIANS

---

### THE SECOND COMING OF JESUS CHRIST

#### THE CONDITIONS OF CHRIST'S RETURN

##### a. The Instruction for the Thessalonians

Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him, 2 that you be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word,<sup>1</sup> nor by letter as from us, as that the day of Christ is at hand. 3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for *that day shall not come*, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; 4 who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God. 5 Remember you not, that, when I was yet with you,<sup>2</sup> I told you these things? 6 And now you know what withholdeth that he might be revealed in his time. 7 For the mystery of iniquity doth already work: only he who now letteth *will let*, until he be taken out of the way. 8 And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming: 9 *even him*, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, 10 and with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. 11 And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: 12 that they all might be damned who believe not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

---

##### b. The Value of Christian Doctrine

13 But we are bound to give thanks always to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit

---

<sup>1</sup> Saying of Jesus.

<sup>2</sup> Acts 17:1f.

and belief of the truth: 14 whereunto he called you by our gospel, to the obtaining of the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ. 15 Therefore, brethren, stand fast, and hold the traditions which you have been taught, whether by word, or our epistle.

---

**c. The Apostle's Benediction**

16 Now our Lord Jesus Christ himself, and God, even our Father, who hath loved us, and hath given *us* everlasting consolation and good hope through grace, 17 comfort your hearts, and establish you in every good word and work.

*Chapter 2:14-17*



## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION FOR THE THESSALONIANS

---

#### THE SOCIAL LIFE OF THE CHURCH THE CIRCUMSPECTION CONCERNING EVIL-DOERS

##### a. The Danger of Evil-Doers

Finally, brethren, pray for us, that the word of the Lord may have *free* course, and be glorified, even as *it is* with you: 2 and that we may be delivered from unreasonable and wicked men: for all *men* have not faith. 13 But the Lord is faithful, who shall establish you, and keep *you* from evil. 4 And we have confidence in the Lord touching you, that you both do and will do the things that we command you. 5 And the Lord direct your hearts into the love of God, and into the patient waiting for Christ.

---

##### b. The Separation from Evil-Doers

6 Now we command you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you withdraw yourselves from every brother that walketh disorderly, and not after the tradition which he received of us. 7 For yourselves know how you ought to follow us: for we behaved not ourselves disorderly among you; 8 neither did we eat any man's bread for naught; but wrought with labour and travail night and day, that we might not be chargeable to any of you: 9 not because we have not power, but to make ourselves an example unto you to follow us. 10 For even when we were with you, this we commanded you, that if any would not work, neither should he eat. 11 For we hear that there are some that walk among you disorderly, working not at all, but are busybodies. 12 Now them that are such we command and exhort by our Lord Jesus Christ, that with quietness they work, and eat their own bread. 13 But ye, brethren, be not weary in well doing. 14 For if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed. 15 Yet count *him* not as an enemy, but admonish *him* as a brother.



## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE PEACE OF GOD

##### THE SALUTATION AND BENEDICTION

###### a. The Blessing upon the Thessalonians

Now the Lord of peace himself give you peace always by all means. The Lord *be* with you all.

---

###### b. The Autograph Salutation

17 The salutation of Paul with my own hand, which is the token in every epistle: so I write.

---

###### c. The Benediction

18 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with you all. Amen.

\* \* \*  
\* \*  
\*





## The First Epistle to Timothy



## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE MISSION OF TIMOTHY AT EPHESUS

##### THE SALUTATION AND THANKSGIVING

###### a. The Salutation

Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the commandment of God our Saviour, and Lord Jesus Christ, *who is our hope*; 2 unto Timothy, *my own son in the faith*: Grace, mercy, *and* peace, from God our Father and Jesus Christ our Lord.

---

###### b. The Exhortation

3 As I besought thee to abide still at Ephesus, when I went into Macedonia, that thou mightest charge some that they teach no other doctrine, 4 neither give heed to fables and endless genealogies, which minister questions, rather than godly edifying which is in faith; *so do*. 5 Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and *of* a good conscience, and *of* faith unfeigned: 6 from which some having swerved have turned aside unto vain jangling; 7 desiring to be teachers of the law; understanding neither what they say, nor whereof they affirm. 8 But we know that the law *is* good, if a man use it lawfully; 9 knowing this, that the law is not made for a righteous man, but for the lawless and disobedient, for the ungodly and for sinners, for unholy and profane, for murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers, for man-slayers, 10 for whoremongers, for them that defile themselves with mankind, for menstealers, for liars, for perjured persons, and if there be any other thing that is contrary to sound doctrine; 11 according to the glorious gospel of the blessed God, which was committed to my trust.

---

###### c. The Thanksgiving

12 And I thank Christ Jesus our Lord, who hath enabled me, for that he counted me faithful, putting me into the ministry;

---

<sup>1</sup> Written en route during what is known as the fourth missionary journey of Paul, A. D. about 63.

13<sup>v</sup> who was before a blasphemer, and a persecuter, and injurious: but I obtained mercy, because I did *it* ignorantly in unbelief. 14<sup>¶</sup> And the grace of our Lord was exceedingly abundant with faith<sup>¶</sup> and love which is in Christ Jesus. 15 This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that "Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners;" of whom I am chief. 16 Howbeit for this cause I obtained mercy, that in me first Jesus Christ might show forth all longsuffering, for a pattern to them that should hereafter believe on him to life everlasting.

---

**d. The Doxology**

17 Now unto the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, *be* honour and glory for ever and ever. Amen.

*Chapter 1:13-17*



## Part Two

# THE INSTRUCTION AND EXHORTATION FOR TIMOTHY

---

### §1. THE MESSAGE OF PAUL FOR THE CHURCH

#### I. THE APOSTLE'S CHARGE TO TIMOTHY

##### The Charge to Timothy as the Pastor of the Church

This charge I commit unto thee, son Timothy, according to the prophecies that went before on thee, that thou by them mightest war a good warfare; 19 holding faith, and a good conscience; which some having put away concerning faith have made shipwreck: 20 of whom is Hymenæus and Alexander; whom I have delivered unto Satan, that they may learn not to blaspheme.

---

#### II. THE DIRECTIONS FOR THE CONGREGATION

##### a. The Prayers of the Church for all Men

2:1 I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, *and* giving of thanks, be made for all men; 2 for kings, and *for* all that are in authority; that they may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. 3 For this *is* good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour; 4 who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth. 5 For *there is* one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus; 6 who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time. 7 Whereunto I am ordained a preacher, and an apostle [I speak the truth in Christ, *and* lie not], a teacher of the Gentiles in faith and verity. 8 I will therefore that men pray every where, lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting.

---

##### b. The Position of Women in the Church

9 In like manner also, that women adorn themselves in modest apparel, with shamefacedness and sobriety; not with braided hair, or gold, or pearls, or costly array; 10 but [which

becometh women professing godliness] with good works. 11 Let women learn in silence with all subjection. 12 But I suffer not a woman to teach, nor to usurp authority over the man, but to be in silence. 13 For Adam was first formed, then Eve. 14 And Adam was not deceived, but the woman being deceived, was in the transgression. 15 Notwithstanding, she shall be saved in childbearing, if they continue in faith and charity and holiness with sobriety.

---

#### c. The Character of Bishops

3:1 This is a true saying, "If a man desire the office of a bishop, he desireth a good work." 2 A bishop then must be blameless, the husband of one wife, vigilant, sober, of good behaviour, given to hospitality, apt to teach; 3 not given to wine, no striker, not greedy of filthy lucre; but patient, not a brawler, not covetous; 4 one that ruleth well his own house, having his children in subjection with all gravity 5 [For if a man know not how to rule his own house, how shall he take care of the church of God?]; 6 not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil. 7 Moreover he must have a good report of them that are without; lest he fall into reproach and the snare of the devil.

---

#### d. The Character of Deacons

8 Likewise *must* deacons *be* grave, not doubletongued, not given to much wine, not greedy of filthy lucre; 9 holding the mystery of the faith in a pure conscience. 10 And let these also first be proved; then let them use the office of a deacon, being *found* blameless. 11 Even so *must* their wives *be* grave, not slanderers, sober, faithful in all things. 12 Let the deacons be the husbands of one wife, ruling their children and their own houses well. 13 For they that have used the office of deacon well purchase to themselves a good degree, and great boldness in the faith that is in Christ Jesus.

---

#### e. The Plan to Visit Ephesus

14 These things write I unto thee, hoping to come unto thee shortly; 15 but if I tarry long, that thou mayest know how thou oughtest to behave thyself in the house of God, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth.

*Chapter 2:11-3:15*

## §2. THE MESSAGE OF PAUL FOR TIMOTHY

### I. THE CHURCH AND THE TIMES

#### a. The Seven-Fold Prologue

16 And without controversy  
Great is the mystery of godliness:  
God was manifest in the flesh,  
Justified in the Spirit,  
Seen of angels,  
Preached among the Gentiles,  
Believed on in the world,  
Received up into glory.

---

#### b. The Apostasy of Believers

4:1 Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; 2 speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron; 3 forbidding to marry, *and commanding* to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving by them that believe and know the truth. 4 For every creature of God *is* good, and nothing *is* to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving: 5 for it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer.

---

### II. THE DUTY OF TIMOTHY AS A MINISTER

#### a. The Character and Conduct of Timothy

6 If thou put the brethren in remembrance of these things, thou shalt be a good minister of Jesus Christ, nourished up in the words of faith and of good doctrine, whereunto thou hast attained. 7 But refuse profane and old wives' fables, and exercise thyself *rather* unto godliness. 8 For bodily exercise profiteth little: but godliness is profitable unto all things, having promise of the life that now is, and of that which is to come. 9 This *is* a faithful saying and worthy of all acceptance. 10 For therefore we both labour and suffer reproach, because we trust in the living God, who is the Saviour of all men, specially of those that believe. 11 These things command and teach. 12 Let no man despise thy youth; but be thou an example of the believers, in word, in conversation, in charity, in spirit, in faith, in purity. 13 Till I come, give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine. 14 Neglect not the gift that is in thee, that was given thee by prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Acts 16:3.

15 Meditate upon these things; give thyself wholly to them; that thy profiting may appear to all. 16 Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them: for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself, and them that hear thee.

---

**b. The Ministry to the Church as a Family**

5:1 Rebuke not an elder, but intreat him as a father; *and* the younger men as brothers; 2 the elder women as mothers; the younger as sisters, with all purity.

---

**c. The Order of Widows in the Church**

3 Honour widows that are widows indeed. 4 But if any widow have children or nephews, let them learn first to show piety at home, and to requite their parents: for that is good and acceptable before God. 5 Now she that is a widow indeed, and desolate, trusteth in God, and continueth in supplications and prayers night and day. 6 But she that liveth in pleasure is dead while she liveth. 7 And these things give in charge, that they may be blameless. 8 But if any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel. 9 Let not a widow be taken into the number under threescore years old, having been the wife of one man, 10 well reported of for good works; if she have brought up children, if she have lodged strangers, if she have washed the saints' feet, if she have relieved the afflicted, if she have diligently followed every good work.

---

**d. The Younger Widows in the Church**

11 But the younger widows refuse: for when they have begun to wax wanton against Christ, they will marry; 12 having damnation, because they have cast off their first faith. 13 And withal they learn *to be* idle, wandering about from house to house; and not only idle, but tattlers also and busybodies, speaking things that they ought not. 14 I will therefore that the younger women marry, bear children, guide the house, give no occasion to the adversary to speak reproachfully. 15 For some are already turned aside after Satan. 16 If any man or woman that believeth have widows, let them relieve them, and let not the church be charged; that it may relieve them that are widows indeed.

*Chapter 4:15-5:16*



#### e. The Reward and Trial of Elders

17 Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honour, especially they that labour in the word and doctrine. 18 For the scripture saith, "Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth out the corn;"<sup>1</sup> and, "The labourer is worthy of his reward."<sup>2</sup> 19 Against an elder receive not an accusation, but before two or three witnesses. 20 Them that sin rebuke before all, that others also may fear. 21 I charge *thee* before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels, that thou observe these things without preferring<sup>3</sup> one before another, doing nothing by partiality. 22 Lay hands suddenly on no man, neither be partaker of other men's sins: keep thyself pure. 23 Drink no longer water, but use a little wine for thy stomach's sake and thine often infirmities. 24 Some men's sins are open beforehand, going before to judgment; and some *men* they follow after. 25 Likewise also the good works of *some* are manifest beforehand; and they that are otherwise cannot be hid.

#### f. The Duty of Slaves to Masters

6:1 Let as many servants as are under the yoke count their own masters worthy of all honour, that the name of God and *his* doctrine be not blasphemed. 2 And they that have believing masters, let them not despise *them*, because they are brethren; but rather do *them* service, because they are faithful and beloved, partakers of the benefit. These things teach and exhort.

### III. THE DUTY OF TIMOTHY TOWARD RICHES

#### a. The Way of Godliness not Gain

3 If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome words, *even* the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine that is according to godliness; 4 he is proud, knowing nothing, but doting about questions and strifes of words, whereof cometh envy, strife, railings, evil surmisings, 5 perverse disputings of men of corrupt minds, and destitute of the truth, supposing that gain is godliness: from such withdraw thyself. 6 But godliness with contentment is great gain. 7 For we brought nothing into *this* world, and *it* is certain we can carry nothing out. 8 And having food and raiment let us be therewith content. 9 But they that will be rich fall into temptation and a snare, and *into* many foolish and hurtful lusts, which drown men in destruction and perdition. 10 For the love of money is

<sup>1</sup> Deut. 25:4.

<sup>2</sup> Deut. 24:14.

<sup>3</sup> Or, without prejudice.

the root of all evil: which while some coveted after, they have erred from the faith, and pierced themselves through with many sorrows.

---

**b. The Personal Duty of Timothy**

11 But thou, O man of God, flee these things; and follo after righteousness, godliness, faith, love, patience, meeknes. 12 Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art also called, and hast professed a good profession before many witnesses. 13 I give thee charge in the sight of God, who quickeneth all things, and *before* Christ Jesus, who before Pontius Pilate witnessed a good confession; 14 that thou keep *this* commandment without spot, unrebukeable, until the appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ: 15 who in his times he shall show who is the blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords; 16 who only hath immortality, dwelling in the light that no man can approach unto; whom no man hath seen, nor can see: to whom *be* honour and power everlasting. Amen.

---

**c. The Duty of Timothy Toward the Rich**

17 Charge them that are rich in this world, that they be not highminded, nor trust in uncertain riches, but in the living God, who giveth us richly all things to enjoy; 18 that they do good, that they be rich in good works, ready to distribute, willing to communicate; 19 laying up in store for themselves a good foundation against the time to come, that they may lay hold on eternal life.

*Chapter 6:11-19*

## Part Three

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE DUTY OF THE HOUR

#### THE CLOSING EXHORTATION AND BENEDICTION

##### a. The Exhortation to Fidelity

20 O Timothy, keep that which is committed to thy trust, avoiding profane *and* vain babblings, and oppositions of science falsely so called: 21 which some professing have erred concerning the faith.

---

##### b. The Benediction

Grace be<sup>~</sup> with thee. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*





## The Second Epistle to Timothy



## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE DESIRE OF PAUL FOR TIMOTHY

##### THE SALUTATION AND THANKSGIVING

###### a. The Salutation

Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, according to the promise of life which is in Christ Jesus, 2 to Timothy, *my* dearly beloved son: Grace, mercy *and* peace, from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

---

###### b. The Thanksgiving

3 I thank God, whom I serve from *my* forefathers with pure conscience, that without ceasing I have remembrance of thee in my prayers night and day; 4 greatly desiring to see thee, being mindful of thy tears, that I may be filled with joy; 5 when I call to remembrance the unfeigned faith that is in thee, which dwelt first in thy grandmother Lois, and thy mother Eunice; and I am persuaded that in thee also.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written from Rome during Paul's second Roman imprisonment, just before his death, A. D. about 67.

*Chapter 1:1-5*





## Part Two

# THE EXHORTATION FOR TIMOTHY

---

## THE MINISTRY OF TIMOTHY AT EPHESUS

### I. THE DUTY OF TIMOTHY IN SOCIETY

#### a. The Duty of Timothy as a Minister

Wherefore I put thee in remembrance that thou stir up the gift of God, that is in thee by the putting on my hands. 7 For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind. 8 Be not thou therefore ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, nor of me his prisoner; but be thou partaker of the afflictions of the gospel according to the power of God; 9 who hath saved us, and called us with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began, 10 but is now made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Jesus Christ, who hath abolished death, and hath brought life and immortality to light through the gospel: 11 whereunto I am appointed a minister, and an apostle, and a teacher of the Gentiles. 12 For which cause I also suffer these things; nevertheless I am not ashamed: for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto him against that day. 13 Hold fast the form of sound words, which thou hast heard of me, in faith and love which is in Christ Jesus. 14 That good thing that was committed unto thee keep by the Holy Spirit that dwelleth in us.

---

#### b. The Examples of Others

15 This thou knowest, that all they that are in Asia have turned away from me; of whom are Phygellus and Hermogenes. 16 The Lord give mercy unto the house of Onesiphorus; for he oft refreshed me, and was not ashamed of my chain: 17 but, when he was in Rome, he sought me out very diligently, and found me. 18 The Lord grant unto him that he may find mercy of the Lord in that day: and in how many things he ministered unto me at Ephesus thou knowest very well.

## c. The Personal Position of Timothy

2:1 Thou therefore, my son, be strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus. 2 And the things that thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also. 3 Thou therefore endure hardness, as a good soldier of Jesus Christ. 4 No man that warreth entangleth himself with the affairs of *this* life; that he may please him who hath chosen him to be a soldier. 5 And if a man also strive for masteries, *yet* is he not crowned, except he strive lawfully. 6 The husbandman that laboureth must be first partaker of the fruits. 7 Consider what I say; and the Lord give thee understanding in all things. 8 Remember that Jesus Christ of the seed of David was raised from the dead according to my gospel: 9 wherein I suffer trouble, as an evil doer, *even* unto bonds; but the word of God is not bound. 10 Therefore I endure all things for the elect's sakes, that they may also obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus with eternal glory. 11 *It is* a faithful saying: \* \* \*

"For if we be dead with *him*, we shall also live with *him*:

- 12 If we suffer, we shall also reign with *him*:  
If we deny *him*, he also will deny us:  
13 If we believe not, *yet* be abideth faithful:  
He cannot deny himself."

## II. THE DUTY OF TIMOTHY IN THE CHURCH

## a. The Importance of Careful Instruction

14 Of these things put *them* in remembrance, charging *them* before the Lord that they strive not about words to no profit, *but* to the subverting of the hearers. 15 Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth. 16 But shun profane *and* vain babblings: for they will increase to more ungodliness. 17 And their word will eat as doth a canker: of whom is Hymenæus and Philetus; 18 who concerning the truth have erred, saying that the resurrection is past already; and overthrow the faith of some. 19 Nevertheless the foundation of God standeth sure, having this seal, "The Lord knoweth them that are his;"<sup>1</sup> and, "Let every one that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity."<sup>2</sup> 20 But in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood and of earth; and some to honour, and some to dishonour. 21 If a man therefore purge

<sup>1</sup> Num. 26:5.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. 26:13.

himself from these, he shall be a vessel unto honour, sanctified, and meet for the master's use, *and* prepared unto every good work. 22 Flee also youthful lusts: but follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace, with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart. 23 But foolish and unlearned questions avoid, knowing that they do gender strifes. 24 And the servant of the Lord must not strive; but be gentle unto all *men*, apt to teach, patient, 25 in meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if God peradventure will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth; 26 and *that* they may recover themselves out of the snare of the devil, who are taken captive by him at his will.

#### b. The Great Danger of the Times

3:1 This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come. 2 For men shall be lovers of their own selves, covetous, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy, 3 without natural affection, trucebrakers, false accusers, incontinent, fierce, despisers of those that are good, 4 traitors, heady, highminded, lovers of pleasure more than lovers of God; 5 having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such turn away. 6 For of this sort are they that creep into houses, and lead captive silly women laden with sins, led away with divers lusts, 7 ever learning, and never able to come to a knowledge of the truth. 8 Now as Jannes and Jambres withstood Moses, so do these also resist the truth: men of corrupt minds, reprobate concerning the faith. 9 But they shall proceed no further: for their folly shall be manifest unto all *men*, as theirs also was. 10 But thou hast fully known my doctrine, manner of life, purpose, faith, longsuffering, charity, patience, 11 persecutions, afflictions, which came unto me at Antioch,<sup>1</sup> at Iconium,<sup>1</sup> at Lystra;<sup>1</sup> what persecutions I endured: but out of *them* all the Lord delivered me. 12 Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution. 13 But evil men and seducers shall wax worse and worse, deceiving and be deceived. 14 But continue thou in the things thou hast learned and hast been assured of, knowing of whom thou hast learned *them*: 15 and that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith that is in Christ Jesus.

\* \* \*

16 All scripture *is* given by inspiration of God,  
And *is* profitable for doctrine,

<sup>1</sup> Cities in Galatia visited by Paul on the first missionary journey.

For reproof,  
For correction,  
For instruction in righteousness:  
17 That the man of God may be perfect,  
Thoroughly furnished unto all good works.

---

**c. The Duty of the Hour at Ephesus**

4:1 I charge *thee* therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom; 2 preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine. 3 For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears; 4 and they shall turn away *their* ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables. 5 But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry. 6 For I am ready to be offered, and the time of my departure is at hand. 7 I have fought a good fight, I have finished *my* course, I have kept the faith: 8 henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

*Chapter 3:17-4:8*



## Part Three

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE LAST WORDS OF PAUL

##### THE PERSONAL MESSAGES OF PAUL FOR TIMOTHY

###### a. The Call of Timothy from Ephesus to Rome

Do thy diligence to come shortly unto me: 10 for Demas hath forsaken me, having loved this present world, and is departed unto Thessalonica; Crescens to Galatia, Titus unto Dalmatia. 11 Only Luke is with me. Take Mark, and bring him with thee: for he is profitable to me for the ministry. 12 And Tychicus have I sent to Ephesus.

\*

13 The cloke that I left at Troas with Carpus, when thou comest bring *with thee*, and the books, *but* especially the parchments.

\*

14 Alexander the coppersmith did me much evil: the Lord reward him according to his works: 15 of whom be thou aware also; for he hath greatly withstood our words.

\*

16 At my first answer no man stood with me, but all *men* forsook me: *I pray God* that it may not be laid to their charge. 17 Notwithstanding, the Lord stood with me, and strengthened me; that by me the preaching might be fully known, and *that* all the Gentiles might hear: and I was delivered out of the mouth of the lion. 18 And the Lord shall deliver me from every evil work, and will preserve *me* unto his heavenly kingdom: to whom *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.

---

###### b. The Apostle's Salutations

19 Salute Prisca and Aquila, and the household of Onesiphorus.

\*

20 Erastus abode at Corinth: but Trophimus have I left at Miletus sick.

Chapter 4:9-20

21 Do thy diligence to come before winter.

\*

Eubulus greeteth thee, and Pudens, and Linus, and Claudia, and all the brethren.

---

**c. The Benediction**

22 The Lord Jesus Christ *be* with thy spirit. Grace *be* with you. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*

## The Epistle to Titus





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE MANIFESTATION OF THE WORD

##### THE SALUTATION OF THE APOSTLE

###### The Child of Paul in the Gospel

Paul, a servant of God, and an apostle of Jesus Christ, according to the faith of God's elect, and the knowledge of the truth that is after godliness; 2 in hope of eternal life, which God, who cannot lie, promised before the world began; 3 but hath in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed unto me according to the commandment of God our Saviour; 4 to Titus, *my* own son after the common faith: Grace, mercy, *and* peace, from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ our Saviour.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written by Paul en route about A. D. 64.

*Chapter 1:1-4*



## Part Two

# THE INSTRUCTION FOR TITUS

---

### THE MINISTRY IN CRETE

#### I. THE APPOINTMENT OF MINISTERS IN CRETE

##### a. The Character and Appointment of Elders

For this cause I left thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting,<sup>1</sup> and ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed thee: 6 if any be blameless, the husband of one wife, having faithful children not accused of riot or unruly. 7 For a bishop must be blameless, as the steward of God; not selfwilled, not soon angry, not given to wine, no striker, not given to filthy lucre; 8 but a lover of hospitality, a lover of good men, just, holy, temperate; 9 holding fast the faithful word as he hath been taught, that he may be able by sound doctrine both to exhort and to convince the gainsayers.

---

##### b. The Duty of Titus toward Disturbers

10 For there are many unruly and vain talkers and deceivers, specially they of the circumcision: 11 whose mouths must be stopped, who subvert whole houses, teaching things that they ought not, for filthy lucre's sake. 12 One of them selves, *even* a prophet of their own, said, "The Cretians *are* always liars, evil beasts, slow bellies." 13 This witness is true. Wherefore rebuke them sharply, that they may be sound in the faith; 14 not giving heed to Jewish fables, and commandments of men, that turn from the truth. 15 Unto the pure all things *are* pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving *is* nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled. 16 They profess that they know God; but in works they deny *him*, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate.

---

#### II. THE CHARACTER OF BELIEVERS

##### a. The Conduct of the Christian in Society

2:1 But speak thou the things that become sound doctrine: 2 that the aged may be sober, grave, temperate, sound in faith,

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, left undone.

in charity, in patience. 3 The aged women likewise, that *they* be in behaviour as becometh holiness, not false accusers, not given to much wine, teachers of good things; 4 that they may teach the young women to be sober, to love their husbands, to love their children, 5 *to be* discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands, that the word of God be not blasphemed. 6 Young men likewise exhort to be sober minded. 7 In all things showing thyself a pattern of good works: in doctrine *showing* uncorruptness, gravity, sincerity, 8 sound speech, that cannot be condemned; that he that is of the contrary part may be ashamed, having no evil thing to say of you. 9 *Exhort* servants to be obedient unto their own masters, *and* to please *them* well in all *things*; not answering again; 10 not purloining, but showing all good fidelity; that they may adorn the doctrine of God our Saviour in all things. 11 For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men, 12 teaching us, that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world; 13 looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ; 14 who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works. 15 These things speak, and exhort, and rebuke with all authority. Let no man despise thee.

#### b. The Conduct of the Christian in the State

3:1 Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work, 2 to speak evil of no man, to be no brawlers, *but* gentle, showing all meekness unto all men. 3 For we ourselves also were sometimes foolish, disobedient, deceived, serving divers lusts and pleasures, living in malice and envy, hateful, *and* hating one another. 4 But after that the kindness and love of God our Saviour toward man appeared, 5 not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit, 6 which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour; 7 that being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life. 8 *This is* a faithful saying, and these things I will that thou affirm constantly, that they who have believed in God might be careful to maintain good works. These things are good and profitable unto men. 9 But avoid foolish questions, and genealogies, and contentions, and strivings about the law; for they are unprofitable and vain. 10 A man that is a heretick after the first and second admonition reject; 11 knowing that he that is such is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned of himself.

Chapter 2:3-3:11



## Part Three

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE CALL OF TITUS TO NICOPOLIS

##### THE INSTRUCTIONS, SALUTATIONS AND BENEDICTION

###### a. The Missionary Plans and Instructions

When I shall send Artemas unto thee, or Tychicus, be diligent to come unto me to Nicopolis: for I have determined there to winter. 13 Bring Zenas the lawyer and Apollos on their journey diligently, that nothing be wanting unto them.

---

###### b. The Self-Support of the Cretans

14 And let ours also learn to maintain good works<sup>1</sup> for necessary uses, that they be not unfruitful.

---

###### c. The Salutations

15 All that are with me salute thee.

\*

Salute them that love us in faith.

---

###### d. The Benediction

Grace *be* with you all. Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, profess honest trades.

\* \* \*  
\* \*  
\*



## The Epistle to Philemon





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE FAITH AND LOVE OF PHILEMON

#### THE SALUTATION AND THANKSGIVING

##### a. The Salutation

Paul, a prisoner of Jesus Christ, and Timothy *our* brother, unto Philemon *our* dearly beloved, and fellowlabourer, <sup>2</sup> and to *our* beloved Apphia, and Archippus *our* fellowsoldier, and to the church in thy house: <sup>3</sup> Grace to you, and peace, from God *our* Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

---

##### b. The Thanksgiving

<sup>4</sup> I thank my God, making mention of thee always in *my* prayers, <sup>5</sup> hearing of thy love and faith, which thou hast toward the Lord Jesus, and toward all saints; <sup>6</sup> that the communication of thy faith may become effectual by the acknowledging of every good thing which is in you in Christ Jesus. <sup>7</sup> For we have great joy and consolation in thy love, because the hearts of the saints are refreshed by thee, brother.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written from Rome during the first Roman imprisonment.



## Part Two

### THE PLEA FOR ONESIMUS

---

#### THE APPEAL TO PHILEMON

#### THE APOSTLE'S GUARANTEE FOR ONESIMUS

#### The Request for the Freedom of Onesimus

Wherefore, though I might be much bold in Christ to enjoin thee that which is convenient, 9 yet for love's sake I rather beseech *thee*, being such a one as Paul the aged, and now also a prisoner of Jesus Christ. 10 I beseech thee for my son Onesimus, whom I have begotten in my bonds; 11 who in time past was to thee unprofitable, but now profitable to thee and to me: 12 whom I have sent again: thou therefore receive him, that is, my own heart: 13 whom I would have retained with me, that in thy stead he might have ministered unto me in the bonds of the gospel: 14 but without thy mind would I do nothing; that thy benefit should not be as it were of necessity, but willingly. 15 For perhaps he therefore departed for a season, that thou shouldest receive him for ever; 16 not now as a servant, but above a servant, a brother beloved, specially to me, but how much more unto thee, both in the flesh, and in the Lord? 17 If thou count me therefore a partner, receive him as myself. 18 If he hath wronged thee, or oweth *thee* aught, put that on my account; 19 I Paul have written *it* with my own hand, I will repay *it*: albeit I do not say to thee how thou owest unto me even thine own self besides. 20 Yea, brother, let me have joy of thee in the Lord: refresh my spirit in the Lord.

*Chapter 1:8-20*





## Part Three

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE CONFIDENCE OF PAUL IN PHILEMON


##### THE SALUTATION AND BENEDICTION

###### a. The Proposed Visit to Philemon

Having confidence in thy obedience, I wrote unto thee, knowing that thou wilt also do more than I say. 22 But withal prepare me also a lodging: for I trust that through your prayers I shall be given unto you.

---

###### b. The Salutations

23 There salute thee Epaphras, my fellowprisoner in Christ Jesus; 24 Marcus, Aristarchus, Demas,  Luke, my fellow-labourers.

---

###### c. The Benediction

25 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ *be* with your spirit. Amen.

\* \* \*  
\* \*  
\*



## The Epistle to the Hebrews





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE REVELATION OF THE SON OF GOD

##### I. THE GREATNESS OF THE SON

###### The Seven-Fold Saying

\*

God who at sundry times and in divers manners  
spoke in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,  
2 hath in these last days spoken unto us by *his* Son;

\*

Whom he hath appointed heir of all things;

\*

By whom also he made the worlds;

\*

3 Who, being the brightness of *his* glory,

\*

And the express image of his person,

\*

And upholding all things by the word of  
his power,

\*

When he had by himself purged our sins, sat  
down on the right hand of the Majesty on high; 4  
being so much better than the angels, as he hath by  
inheritance obtained a more excellent name than  
they.

---

##### II. THE PRE-EMINENCE OF THE SON

###### a. The Seven-Fold Word of Scripture

5 For unto which of the angels said he at any time:<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Written, very probably, during the Judæo-Roman war—A. D. 66-70,  
and addressed to Jewish believers.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 2:7.

"Thou art my Son,  
This day have I begotten thee?"

\* \* \*

And again: <sup>1</sup>

\* \* \*

"I will be to him a Father,  
And he shall be to me a Son?"

\* \* \*

6 And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith: <sup>2</sup>

\* \* \*

"And let all the angels of God worship him."

\* \* \*

7 And of the angels he saith: <sup>3</sup>

\* \* \*

"Who maketh his angels spirits,  
And his ministers a flame of fire."

\* \* \* \*

8 But unto the Son *he saith*: <sup>4</sup>

\* \* \*

"Thy throne, O God, *is* for ever and ever:  
A sceptre of righteousness *is* the sceptre of thy kingdom.

9 Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity;  
Therefore God, *even* thy God, hath anointed thee  
With the oil of gladness above thy fellows."

\* \* \* \* \*

10 And, <sup>5</sup>

\* \* \*

"Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth;

And the heavens are the work of thy hands;

11 They shall perish; but thou remainest;

And they all shall wax old, as doth a garment;

12 And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up,

And they shall be changed:

But thou art the same,

And thy years shall not fail."

\* \* \* \* \*

13 But to which of the angels said he at any time: <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> II Sam. 7:14.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 97:7.

<sup>3</sup> Ps. 104:4.

<sup>4</sup> Ps. 45:6f.

<sup>5</sup> Ps. 102:25f.

<sup>6</sup> Ps. 110:1.

\* \* \*

"Sit thou on my right hand,  
Until I make thy enemies thy footstool?"

\*

14 Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them that shall be heirs of salvation?

#### b. The Exhortation to Obedience

2:1 Therefore we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things that we have heard, lest at any time we should let *them* slip. 2 For if the word spoken by angels was stedfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompense of reward, 3 how shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard *him*; 4 God also bearing *them* witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and the gifts of the Holy Spirit, according to his own will?

#### c. The Incarnation of the Son as High Priest

5 For unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come, whereof we speak. 6 But one in a certain place testified, saying:

\* \* \*

"What is man, that thou art mindful of him?  
Or the Son of man, that thou visitest him?  
7 Thou madest him a little lower than the angels;  
Thou crownedst him with glory and honour,  
And didst set him over the works of thy hands:  
8 Thou hast put all things in subjection under his  
feet."<sup>1</sup>

\*

For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing *that is* not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him. 9 But we see Jesus, who was "made a little lower than the angels" for the suffering of death, "crowned with glory and honour;" that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man. 10 For it became him, for whom *are* all things, and by whom *are* all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings. 11 For both he that sanctifieth, and they that are

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 8:4.

sanctified *are* all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren, saying:

\* \* \*

12 "I will declare thy name unto my brethren,  
In the midst of the church will I sing praise unto  
thee."<sup>1</sup>

\*

13 And again, "I will put my trust in him."<sup>2</sup> And again, "Behold, I and the children whom God hath given me."<sup>3</sup> 14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil; 15 and deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage. 16 For verily he took not on *himself the nature of angels*; but he took on *himself* the seed of Abraham. 17 Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto *his* brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things *pertaining* to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people. 18 For in that he himself hath suffered being tempted, he is able to succour them that are tempted.

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 22:22.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 18:2.

<sup>3</sup> Isa. 8:18.



## Part Two

# THE INSTRUCTION FOR THE HEBREWS

---

### THE NEW PRIESTHOOD AND SANCTUARY

#### I. THE HIGH PRIESTHOOD OF JESUS

##### a. The Faithfulness of Jesus to God

Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus; 2 who was faithful to him that appointed him, as also Moses *was faithful* in all his house. 3 For this *man* was counted worthy of more glory than Moses, inasmuch as he who hath builded the house hath more honour than the house. 4 For every house is builded by some *man*; but he that built all things *is* God. 5 And Moses verily *was faithful* in all his house, as a servant, for a testimony of those things that were to be spoken after; 6 but Christ as son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.

---

##### b. The Warning Against Unbelief

7 Wherefore, as the Holy Spirit saith:<sup>1</sup>

\* \* \*

- 8 "Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation,  
9 When your fathers tempted me, proved me,  
And saw my works forty years.  
10 Wherefore I was grieved with that generation,  
And said, They do always err in *their* heart;  
And they have not known my ways.  
11 So I swear in my wrath,  
They shall not enter into my rest;"

\*

12 take heed, brethren, lest there be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, in departing from the living God. 13 But exhort one another daily, while it is called To-day; lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin. 14 For we are made partakers

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 95:7-11.

of Christ, if we hold the beginning of our confidence stedfast unto the end; 15 while it is said:<sup>1</sup>

\* \* \*

“To-day if you will hear his voice,  
Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation.”

\*

16 For some, when they had heard, did provoke: howbeit not all that came out of Egypt by Moses. 17 But with whom was he grieved forty years? *was it* not with them that had sinned whose carcases fell in the wilderness? 18 And to whom sware he that they should not enter into his rest, but to them that believed not? 19 So we see that they could not enter in because of unbelief.

### c. The Admonition to Diligence

4:1 Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left *us* of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it. 2 For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard *it*. 3 For we who have believed do enter into rest, as he said:<sup>2</sup>

\* \* \*

“As I have sworn in my wrath,  
If they shall enter into my rest.”

\*

although the works were finished from the foundation of the world. 4 For he spoke in a certain place of the seventh *day* on this wise:<sup>3</sup> “And God did rest the seventh day from all his works.” 5 And in this *place* again, “If they shall enter into my rest.”<sup>4</sup> 6 Seeing therefore it remaineth that some must enter therein, and they to whom it was first preached entered not in because of unbelief: 7 again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, “Today,” after so long a time; as it is said:<sup>4</sup>

\* \* \*

“Today if you will hear his voice,  
Harden not your hearts.”

\*

8 For if Jesus had given them rest, then would he not afterwards have spoken of another day. 9 There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God. 10 For he that is entered into his rest, he also hath ceased from his own works, as God *did* from his. 11 Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 95:7.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 95:11.

<sup>3</sup> Gen. 2:2.

<sup>4</sup> Ps. 95:7.

the same example of unbelief.<sup>1</sup> 12 For the word of God *is* quick and powerful, and sharper than any twoedged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and *is* a discernor of the thoughts and intents of the heart. 13 Neither is there any creature that is not manifest in his sight: but all things *are* naked and opened unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do.

#### d. The Admonition to Boldness

14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast *our* profession. 15 For we have not a high priest who cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as *we are*, yet without sin. 16 Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.

## II. THE NATURE OF JESUS' HIGH PRIESTHOOD

### a. The Priestly Order of Melchizedek

5:1 For every high priest taken from among men is ordained for men in things *pertaining* to God, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins: 2 who can have compassion on the ignorant and on them that are out of the way; for that he himself also is compassed with infirmity. 3 And by reason hereof he ought as for the people, so also for himself, to offer for sins. 4 And no man taketh this honour unto himself, but he that is called of God, as *was* Aaron. 5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made a high priest; but he that said unto him:

\* \* \*

"Thou art my beloved Son,  
To day have I begotten thee."<sup>2</sup>

\*

6 As he saith also in another *place*:

\* \* \*

"Thou *art* a priest for ever,  
After the order of Melchizedek."<sup>3</sup>

\*

7 Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared;

<sup>1</sup> Or, disobedience.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 2:7.

<sup>3</sup> Ps. 110:4.

8 though he were yet a son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered; 9 and being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him; 10 called of God a high priest after the order of Melchizedek.

#### b. The Admonition to Advancement

11 Of whom we have many things to say, and hard to be uttered, seeing you are dull of hearing. 12 For when for the time you ought to be teachers, you have need that one teach you again what *are* the first principles of the oracles of God, and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat. 13 For every one that useth milk *is* unskilful in the word of righteousness; for he is a babe. 14 But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, *even* those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.

#### c. The Admonition Against Apostasy

6:1 Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ,

\* \* \*

Let us go on unto perfection;

\*

Not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works

\*

And of faith toward God,

\*

2 Of the doctrine of baptisms,

\*

And of laying on of hands,

\*

And of the resurrection of the dead,

\*

3 And of eternal judgment.

\*

4 For *it is* impossible for those who were once enlightened,<sup>1</sup> and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Spirit, 5 and have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come, 6 if they shall fall away,

<sup>1</sup> This is possibly a repeated seven-fold admonition.



to renew them again unto repentance; seeing they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put *him* to an open shame. 7 For the earth that drinketh in the rain that cometh oft upon it, and bringeth forth herbs meet for them by whom it is dressed, receiveth blessing from God: 8 but that which beareth thorns and briers *is* rejected, and *is* nigh unto cursing; whose end *is* to be burned.

---

#### d. The Admonition to Hopefulness

9 But, beloved, we are persuaded better things of you, and things that accompany salvation, though we thus speak. 10 For God is not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love, which you showed toward his name, in that you have ministered to the saints, and do minister. 11 And we desire that every one of you do show the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end: 12 that you be not slothful but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.

---

#### e. The Great Assurance of God

13 For when God made promise to Abraham, because he could swear by no greater, he sware by himself, 14 saying, "Surely blessing I will bless thee, and multiplying I will multiply thee."<sup>1</sup> 15 And so, after he had patiently endured, he obtained the promise. 16 For men verily swear by the greater: and an oath for confirmation *is* to them an end of all strife. 17 Wherein God, willing more abundantly to show unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed *it* by an oath: 18 that by two immutable things, in which *it was* impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us: 19 which *hope* we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and stedfast, and which entereth into that within the veil; 20 whither the forerunner is for us entered, *even* Jesus, made a high priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek.

---

### III. THE HIGH PRIESTHOOD OF MELCHIZEDEK

#### a. The Seven-Fold Character

7:1 For this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of the most high God, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, and blessed him; 2 to whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation King of righteousness, and

---

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 22:16.

after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace; 3 without father, without mother, without descent,<sup>1</sup> having neither beginning of days, nor end of life; but made like unto the Son of God, abideth a priest continually.

#### b. The Greatness of Melchizedek

4 Now consider how great this man *was*, unto whom even the patriarch Abraham gave the tenth of the spoils. 5 And verily they that are of the sons of Levi, who receive the office of the priesthood, have a commandment to take tithes of the people according to the law, that is, of their brethren, though they come out of the loins of Abraham: 6 but he whose descent<sup>2</sup> is not counted from them received tithes of Abraham, and blessed him that had the promises. 7 And without all contradiction the less is blessed of the better. 8 And here men that die receive tithes; but there he *receiveth them* of whom it is witnessed that he liveth. 9 And as I may so say, Levi also, who receiveth tithes, paid tithes in Abraham. 10 For he was yet in the loins of his father, when Melchizedek met him.

#### c. The Inferiority of Aaron

11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood [for under it the people received the law], what further need *was there* that another priest should rise after the order of Melchizedek, and not be called after the order of Aaron? 12 For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law. 13 For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance at the altar. 14 For *it is* evident that our Lord sprang out of Judah; of which tribe Moses spoke nothing concerning the priesthood. 15 And it is yet far more evident: for after the similitude of Melchizedek there ariseth another priest, 16 who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life. 17 For he testifieth:<sup>1</sup>

\* \* \*

"Thou art a priest for ever  
After the order of Melchizedek."

\*

18 For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof. 19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope *did*; by which we draw nigh unto God. 20 And inasmuch as not

<sup>1</sup> Or, pedigree.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 110:4.

without an oath *he was made priest* 21 [For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him:<sup>1</sup>

\* \* \*

"The Lord sware and will not repent,  
Thou *art* a priest for ever  
After the order of Melchizedek"]:

\*

22 by so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament. 23 And they truly were made priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death: 24 but this *man*, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood. 25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

---

#### d. The One Sufficient High Priest

26 For such a high priest became us, *who is* holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens; 27 who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself. 28 For the law maketh men high priests, that have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, *maketh* the Son who is consecrated for evermore.

---

### IV. THE BETTER COVENANT AND SANCTUARY

#### a. The New Covenant with the People

8:1 Now of the things which we have spoken *this is* the sum: We have such a high priest, who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens; 2 a minister of the sanctuary, and of the true tabernacle, which the Lord pitched, and not man. 3 For every high priest is ordained to offer gifts and sacrifices: wherefore *it is* of necessity that this man have somewhat also to offer. 4 For if he were on earth, he should not be a priest, seeing that there are priests that offer gifts according to the law: 5 who serve unto the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God when he was about to make the tabernacle: for, "See," saith he, "*that* thou make all things according to the pattern showed thee in the mount."<sup>2</sup> 6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 110:4.

<sup>2</sup> Ex. 25:40.



better promises. 7 For if that first *covenant* had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second, 8 for finding fault with them, he saith:<sup>1</sup>

\* \* \*

- “Behold, the days come, saith the Lord,  
 When I will make a new covenant with the  
 house of Israel  
 And with the house of Judah:  
 9 Not according to the covenant that I made with  
 their fathers  
 In the day when I took them by the hand  
 To lead them out of the land of Egypt;  
 Because they continued not in my covenant,  
 And I regarded them not, saith the Lord.  
 10 For this is the covenant that I will make with  
 the house of Israel  
 After those days, saith the Lord:<sup>3</sup>  
 I will put my laws into their mind,  
 And write them in their hearts:  
 And I will be to them a God,  
 And they shall be to me a people:  
 11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbor,  
 And every man his brother, saying, ‘Know the  
 Lord:’  
 For all shall know me,  
 From the least to the greatest.  
 12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness,  
 And their sins and their iniquities will I remem-  
 ber no more.”

\*

13 In that he saith, “A new *covenant*,” he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old *is* ready to vanish away.

#### b. The Passing of the Old Sanctuary

9:1 Then verily the first *covenant* had also ordinances<sup>2</sup> of divine service, and a worldly sanctuary. 2 For there was a tabernacle made; the first, wherein *was* the candlestick, and the table, and the shewbread; which is called the sanctuary. 3 And after the second veil, the tabernacle which is called the Holiest of all; 4 which had the golden censer, and the ark of the covenant overlaid round about with gold, wherein was the golden pot that had manna, and Aaron’s rod that budded, and the tables of the covenant; 5 and over it the cherubims of glory shadowing the mercy-

<sup>1</sup> Jer. 31:31-34.

<sup>2</sup> The seven-fold covenant.

<sup>3</sup> Or, ceremonies.



seat; of which we cannot now speak particularly. 6 Now when these things were thus ordained, the priests went always into the first tabernacle, accomplishing the service of God. 7 But into the second went the high priest alone once every year, not without blood, which he offered for himself, and for the errors of the people: 8 the Holy Spirit this signifying, that the way into the holiest of all was not yet made manifest, while the first tabernacle was yet standing: 9 which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience; 10 which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation.

---

#### c. The Coming of the New Sanctuary

11 But Christ being come a high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building; 12 neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us. 13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of a heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh: 14 how much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? 15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they that are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance. 16 For where a testament is, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator. 17 For a testament is of force after men are dead: otherwise it is of no strength at all while the testator liveth. 18 Whereupon neither the first testament was dedicated without blood. 19 For when Moses had spoken every precept to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves and of goats, with water, and scarlet wood, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book, and all the people, 20 saying, "This is the blood of the testament which God hath enjoined unto you." 21 Moreover he sprinkled with blood both the tabernacle, and all the vessels of the ministry. 22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without the shedding of blood there is no remission.

---

#### d. The Sacrifice of Christ for Sin

23 It was therefore necessary that the pattern of things in the heavens should be purified with these; but the heavenly things

Chapter 9:6-23

themselves with better sacrifices than these. 24 For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, *which are* the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us: 25 nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with the blood of others; 26 for then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself. 27 And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment: 28 so Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

#### e. The Insufficiency of the Law

10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come *and* not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect. 2 For then would they not have ceased to be offered? because that the worshippers once purged should have no more conscience of sins. 3 But in those *sacrifices there is* a remembrance again *made* of sins every year. 4 For *it is* not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins. 5 Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith:<sup>1</sup>

\* \* \*

"Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not,  
But a body hast thou prepared me:

6 In burnt offerings and *sacrifices* for sin thou hast  
had no pleasure.

7 Then said I, Lo, I come  
[In the volume of the book it is written of me]  
To do thy will, O God."

\*

8 Above when he said, "Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and *offering* for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure *therein*," which are offered by the law; 9 then said he, "Lo, I come to do thy will, O God." He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second. 10 By which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once *for all*. 11 And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins: 12 but this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down at the right hand of God; 13 from henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool. 14 For by one offering he

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 40:6.

hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified. 15 *Whereof* the Holy Spirit also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before:<sup>1</sup>

\* \* \*

- 16 "This *is* the covenant that I will make with them  
After those days, saith the Lord:  
I will put my laws into their hearts,  
And in their minds will I write them;  
17 And their sins and iniquities will I remember no  
more."

\*

18 Now where remission of these *is, there is* no more offering for sin.

---

<sup>1</sup> Jer. 31:33.





## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION FOR THE HEBREWS

---

#### THE GREAT DUTY OF THE HOUR

##### I. THE PERILS OF APOSTASY FROM THE FAITH

###### a. The Seven-Fold Exhortation

Having therefore, brethren, boldness<sup>1</sup> to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, 20 by a new and living way, which he hath consecrated<sup>2</sup> for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh; 21 and *having* a high priest over the house of God;

\* \* \*

22 Let us draw near with a true heart in the full assurance of faith,

Having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience,

And our bodies washed with pure water.

23 Let us hold fast the profession of *our* faith without wavering (for he *is* faithful that promised);

24 And let us consider one another to provoke unto love and good works

Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some *is*;

But exhorting *one another*, and so much the more, as you see the day approaching.

---

###### b. The Certainty of Divine Judgment

26 For if we sin wilfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, 27 but a certain looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries. 28 He that despised Moses' law died without mercy under two or three witnesses: 29 of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy

---

<sup>1</sup> Liberty.

<sup>2</sup> Or, new made.

thing, and hath done despite unto the spirit of grace? 30 For we know him that hath said,<sup>1</sup> "Vengeance *belongeth* unto me, I will recompense, saith the Lord." And again,<sup>2</sup> "The Lord shall judge his people." 31 *It is* a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God.

### c. The Importance of Boldness

32 But call to remembrance the former days, in which, after you were illuminated, you endured a great fight of afflictions; 33 partly, while you were made a gazingstock both by reproaches and afflictions; and partly, while you became companions of them that were so used. 34 For you had compassion on me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that you have in heaven a better and an enduring substance. 35 Cast not away therefore your confidence, that hath great recompense of reward. 36 For you have need [of patience, that, after you have done the will of God, you might receive the promise.<sup>3</sup>

\* \* \*

37 "For yet a little while,  
And he that shall come will come, and will  
not tarry.

38 Now the just shall live by faith;  
But if *any man* draw back, my soul shall have no  
pleasure in him."

\*

39 But we are not of them that draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul.

## II. THE MANIFOLD TRIUMPHS OF FAITH

### a. The Seven-Fold Faith of the Patriarchs

11:1 Now faith is the substance<sup>4</sup> of *things* hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.

\* \* \*

2 For by it the elders obtained a good report.

\* \*

3 Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things that are seen were not made of things that do appear.

<sup>1</sup> Deut. 32:35.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 50:4.

<sup>3</sup> Hab. 2:3f.

<sup>4</sup> Or, ground or confidence.

\* \* \*

4 By faith Abel offered unto God a more excellent sacrifice than Cain, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous, God testifying to his gifts: and by it he being dead yet speaketh.

\* \* \* \*

5 By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and was not found, because God had translated him: for before his translation he had this testimony, that he pleased God. 6 But without faith it is impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.

\* \* \* \* \*

7 By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark for the saving of his house; by which he condemned the world, and became an heir of the righteousness which is by faith

\* \* \* \* \*

8 By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place which he should after receive for an inheritance, obeyed; and he went out, not knowing whither he went. 9 By faith he sojourned in the land of promise, as *in* a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs with him of the same promise; 11 for he looked for a city that hath foundations, whose builder and maker *is* God.

\* \* \* \* \*

11 Through faith also Sarah herself received strength to conceive seed, and was delivered of a child when she was past age, because she judged him faithful who had promised. 12 Therefore sprang there even from one, and him as good as dead, as *many* as the stars of the sky in multitude, and as the sand which is by the sea shore innumerable.

\*

13 These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of *them*, and embraced *them*, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth. 14 For they that say such things declare plainly that they seek a country. 15 And truly if they had been mindful of that *country* from whence they came out, they might have had opportunity to

have returned. 16 But now they desire a better *country*, that is, a heavenly: wherefore God is not ashamed to be called their God: for he hath prepared for them a city.

#### b. The Seven-Fold Faith of Israel

17 By faith Abraham, when he was tried, offered up Isaac: and he that had received the promises offered up his only begotten *son*, 18 of whom it was said, "That in Isaac shall thy seed be called:"<sup>1</sup> 19 accounting that God was able to raise *him* up, even from the dead; from whence also he received him in a figure.

\* \*

20 By faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau concerning things to come.

\* \* \*

21 By faith Jacob, when he was dying, blessed both the sons of Joseph; and worshipped, *leaning* upon the top of his staff.

\*\* \*\*

22 By faith Joseph, when he died, made mention of the departing of the children of Israel; and gave commandment concerning his bones.

\*\* \* \*\*

23 By faith Moses, when he was born, was hid three months by his parents because they saw that *he was* a proper child; and they were not afraid of the king's commandment.

\*\* \* \* \*

24 By faith Moses,<sup>2</sup> when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; 25 choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; 26 esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt; for he had respect unto the recompense of reward. 27 By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king: for he endured, as seeing him who is invisible. 28 Through faith he kept the passover, and the sprinkling of blood, lest he that destroyed the firstborn should touch them. 29 By faith they

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 21:12.

<sup>2</sup> The seven-fold faith of Moses.



passed through the Red Sea, as by dry *land*: which the Egyptians essaying to do were drowned.

\*\*\* \* \*\*\*

30 By faith the walls of Jericho fell down, after they were compassed about seven days. 31 By faith the harlot Rahab perished not with them that believed not, when she had received the spies with peace.

### c. The Seven-Fold Triplicate Summary

32 And what shall I more say? For the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, and of Barak, and of Samson, and of Jephthæ; of David also, and Samuel, and of the prophets:

\*

33 Who through faith subdued kingdoms,  
Wrought righteousness,  
Obtained promises;

\*

Stopped the mouths of lions,  
34 Quenched the violence of fire,  
Escaped the edge of the sword;

\*

Out of weakness were made strong,  
Waxed valiant in fight,  
Turned to flight the armies of the aliens.

\*

35 Women received their dead raised to life again:  
And others were tortured, not accepting deliverance,  
that they might obtain a better resurrection:

36 And others had trial of *cruel* mockings and scourgings, yea, moreover, of bonds and imprisonments.

\*

37 They were stoned,  
They were sawn asunder,  
Were tempted, were slain with the sword;

\*

They wandered about in sheepskins and goat-skins;

Being destitute, afflicted, tormented,  
38 [Of whom the world was not worthy];

\*

They wandered in deserts,  
And *in* mountains,  
And *in* dens and caves of the earth.

Chapter 11:30-38

\*

39 And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise: 40 God having provided<sup>1</sup> something better for us, that they without us should not be made perfect.

### III. THE GREAT IMPORTANCE OF FAITHFULNESS

#### a. The Seven-Fold Duty of the Hour

12:1 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses,

\* \* \*

Let us lay aside every weight,  
And the sin that doth so easily beset *us*,  
And let us run with patience the race that is  
set before us,

2 Looking unto Jesus the author<sup>2</sup> and finisher of  
*our* faith,

Who for the joy that was set before him  
endured the cross,

Despising the shame,

And is set down at the right hand of the  
throne of God.

\*

3 For consider him that endured such contradiction against himself, lest you be wearied and faint in your minds. 4 You have not resisted unto blood, striving against sin. 5 And you have forgotten the exhortation that speaketh unto you as unto children:<sup>3</sup>

\* \* \*

"My son, despise not thou the chastening of the  
Lord,

Nor faint when thou art rebuked of him:

6 For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth,  
And scourgeth every son whom he receiveth."

\*

7 If you endure chastening, God dealeth with you as with sons; for what son is he whom the Father chasteneth not? 8 But if you are without chastisement, whereof all are partakers, then are you bastards, and not sons. 9 Furthermore we have had fathers of our flesh who corrected *us*, and we gave *them* reverence: shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, and live? 10 For they verily for a few days chastened *us*

<sup>1</sup> Or, foreseen.

<sup>2</sup> Or, beginner.

<sup>3</sup> Job 5:17.

after their own pleasure;<sup>1</sup> but he for *our* profit, that *we* might be partakers of his holiness. 11 Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them that are exercised thereby. 12 Wherefore lift up the hands that hang down, and the feeble knees: 13 and make straight<sup>2</sup> paths for your feet, lest that which is lame be turned out of the way; but let it rather be healed.

#### b. The Importance of a Holy Life

14 Follow after peace with all *men*, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord: 15 looking diligently lest any man fail<sup>3</sup> of the grace of God; lest any root of bitterness springing up trouble *you*, and thereby many be defiled; 16 lest there *be* any fornicator, or profane person, as Esau, who for one morsel of meat sold his birthright. 17 For you know how that afterward, when he would have inherited the blessing, he was rejected; for he found no place of repentance, though he sought it carefully with tears.

### IV. THE GLORY OF THE NEW DISPENSATION

#### The Seven-Fold Kingdom of God

18 For you have not come unto the mount that might be touched,

And that burned with fire,  
Nor unto blackness,  
And darkness,  
And tempest,

19 And the sound of a trumpet,  
And the voice of words;

\*

which *voice* they that heard intreated, that the word should not be spoken to them any more 20 [for they could not endure that which was commanded:<sup>4</sup> "And if so much as a beast touch the mountain, it shall be stoned, or thrust through with a dart:" 21 and so terrible was the sight, *that* Moses said, "I exceedingly fear and quake"]:

\* \* \*

22 But you are come unto Mount Zion;  
And unto the city of the living God, the  
heavenly Jerusalem;

<sup>1</sup> Or, as seemed good, or, meet to them.

<sup>2</sup> Or, even.

<sup>3</sup> Or, fall from.

<sup>4</sup> Ex. 20:19.

And, an innumerable company of angels;  
23 To the general assembly and church of the  
firstborn, that are written in heaven;  
And to God the Judge of all;  
And to the spirits of just men made perfect;  
24 And to Jesus, the mediator of the new cove-  
nant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh  
better things than *that* of Abel.

\*

25 See that you refuse not him that speaketh, For if they  
escaped not who refused him that spoke on earth, much more  
*shall not* we *escape*, if we turn away from him that *speaketh* from  
heaven: 26 whose voice then shook the earth: but now he hath  
promised, saying, "Yet once more I shake not the earth only, but  
also heaven."<sup>1</sup> 27 And this *word*, "Yet once more," signifieth  
the removing of those things that are shaken, as of things tha.  
are made, that those things that cannot be shaken may remain  
28 Wherefore we receiving a kingdom that cannot be moved, let  
us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with  
reverence and godly fear: 29 for our God *is* a consuming fire.

---

<sup>1</sup> Hag. 2:6.



## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE ADMONITIONS, SALUTATIONS AND BENEDICTION

##### I. THE SEVEN-FOLD CONCLUDING ADMONITION

###### The Practical Duties of Believers

Let brotherly love continue.

\*

2 Be not forgetful to entertain strangers; for thereby have some entertained angels unawares.

\*

3 Remember them that are in bonds, as bound with them; *and* them that suffer adversity, as being yourselves also in the body.

\*

4 Marriage *is* honorable in all, and the bed undefiled, but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge.

\*

5 *Let your* conversation *be* without covetousness; *and be* content with such things as you have: for he hath said, "I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee."<sup>1</sup> 6 So that we may boldly say,

\* \* \*

"The Lord *is* my helper, and I will not fear  
What man shall do unto me."<sup>2</sup>

\*

7 Remember them that have the rule over you, who have spoken unto you the word of God: whose faith follow, considering the end of *their* conversation. 8 Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, and to-day and for ever. 9 Be not carried away with divers and strange doctrines. For *it is* a good thing that the heart be established with grace; not with meats, that have not profited them that have been occupied therein. 10 We have an altar, whereof they have no right to eat that serve the tabernacle. 11 For the bodies of those beasts, whose blood is brought into the sanctuary by the high priest for sin, are burned without the camp.

---

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 28:15; Ps. 37:25.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. 27:1.

12 Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate. 13 Let us go forth therefore unto him without the camp, bearing his reproach. 14 For here we have no continuing city, but we seek one to come. 15 By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of *our* lips, giving thanks to his name. 16 But to do good and communicate forget not; for with such sacrifices God is well pleased. 17 Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as they that must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you.

\*

18 Pray for us: for we trust we have a good conscience, in all things willing to live honestly. 19 But I beseech *you* the rather to do this, that I may be restored to you the sooner.

## II. THE BENEDICTION AND SALUTATION

### a. The Apostolic Benediction

20 Now the God of peace, who brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great Shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, 21 make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is well pleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.

### b. The Autograph Exhortation and Salutation

22 And I beseech you, brethren, suffer the word of exhortation; for I have written a letter to you in few words.

\*

23 Know ye that *our* brother Timothy is set at liberty; with whom if he come shortly, I will see you.

\*

24 Salute all them that have the rule over you, and all the saints.

\*

They of Italy salute you.

\*

25 Grace *be* with you all. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*

## The Epistle of James





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION

---

#### THE GREETING OF JAMES

#### THE SCATTERED DISCIPLES IN PALESTINE

##### The Salutation

James,<sup>1</sup> a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes that are scattered abroad, Greeting.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> James, the brother of the Lord, became the pastor of the Church in Jerusalem A.D. 42. He suffered martyrdom in Jerusalem A.D. 63.

<sup>2</sup> Greek—wisheth joy.

*Chapter 1:1*



## Part Two

### THE INSTRUCTION OF JAMES

---

#### THE MEANING OF THE PRESENT LIFE

##### I. THE MINISTRY OF TEMPTATION

###### a. The Joy of Temptation

My brethren, count it all joy when you fall into divers temptations; 3 knowing *this*, that the trying of your faith worketh patience. 4 But let patience have *her* perfect work, that you may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.

---

###### b. The Prayer for Wisdom

5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, who giveth to all *men* liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. 6 But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea, driven with the wind and tossed. 7 For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord. 8 A doubleminded man *is* unstable in all his ways.

---

###### c. The Importance of Humility

9 Let the brother of low degree rejoice in that he is exalted: 10 but the rich, in that he is made low: because as the flower of the grass he shall pass away. 11 For the sun is no sooner risen with a burning heat, but it withereth the grass, and the flower thereof falleth, and the grace of the fashion of it perisheth: so also shall the rich man fade away in his ways.

---

###### d. The Meaning of Temptation

12 Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him. 13 Let no man say when he is tempted, I am tempted of God: for God cannot be tempted with evil, neither tempteth he any man: 14 but every man is tempted when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed. 15 Then

when lust hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin: and sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death. 16 Do not err, my beloved brethren. 17 Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning. 18 Of his own will begat he us with the word of truth, that we should be a kind of first-fruits of his creatures.

---

## II. THE MINISTRY OF THE WORD OF GOD

### The Importance of Obedience

19 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath: 20 for the wrath of man worketh not the righteousness of God. 21 Therefore lay apart all filthiness and superfluity of naughtiness, and receive with meekness the engrafted word, which is able to save your souls. 22 But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves. 23 For if any be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a glass: 24 for he beholdeth himself and goeth his way, and straightway forgetteth what manner of man he was. 25 But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth *therein*, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed. 26 If any man among you seemeth to be religious, and bridleth not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man's religion is vain. 27 Pure religion and undefiled before God and the Father is this: To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, *and* to keep himself unspotted from the world.

---

## III. THE LAW OF LOVE

### The Word of God and Respect of Persons

2:1 My brethren, have not the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, *the Lord* of glory, with respect to persons. 2 For if there come into your assembly a man with a gold ring, in goodly apparel, and there come in also a poor man in vile raiment, 3 and you have respect to him that weareth the gay clothing, and say unto him, Sit thou here in a good place; and say to the poor, Stand thou there, or, Sit here under my footstool: 4 are you not then partial in yourselves, and are become judges of evil thoughts? 5 Hearken, my beloved brethren: Hath not God chosen the poor of this world, rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom that he hath promised to them that love him? 6 But you have despised the poor. Do not rich men oppress you, and draw you before the judgment seats? 7 Do not they blaspheme that worthy name

*Chapter 1:16-2:7*



by which you are called? 8 If you fulfil the royal law according to the scripture, "Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself,"<sup>1</sup> you do well; 9 but if you have respect of persons, you commit sin, and are convinced of the law as transgressors. 10 For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one *point*, he is guilty of all. 11 For he that said, "Do not commit adultery," said also, "Do not kill."<sup>2</sup> Now if thou commit no adultery, yet if thou kill, thou art become a transgressor of the law. 12 So speak ye, and so do, as they that shall be judged by the law of liberty. 13 For he shall have judgment without mercy, that hath showed no mercy; and mercy rejoiceth against judgment.

#### IV. THE LAW OF FAITH

##### The Proving of Faith by Works

14 What *doth it* profit, my brethren, though a man say he hath faith, and have not works? Can faith save him? 15 If a brother or sister be naked, and destitute of daily food, 16 and one of you say unto them, Depart in peace, be ye warmed and filled; notwithstanding you give them not those things that are needful to the body; what *doth it* profit? 17 Even so faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone. 18 Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: show me thy faith without thy works, and I will show thee my faith by my works. 19 Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble. 20 But wilt thou know, O vain man, that faith without works is dead? 21 Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he had offered Isaac his son upon the altar? 22 Seest thou how faith wrought with his works, and by works was faith made perfect? 23 And the scripture was fulfilled which saith, "Abraham believed God, and it was imputed unto him for righteousness:"<sup>3</sup> and he was called the Friend of God.<sup>4</sup> 24 You see then how that by works a man is justified, and not by faith only. 25 Likewise also was not Rahab the harlot justified by works, when she had received the messengers, and had sent them out another way? 26 For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also.

#### V. THE WISDOM OF HUMILITY

##### The Right Use of the Tongue

3:1 My brethren, be not many masters, knowing that we shall receive the greater condemnation. 2 For in many things we offend

<sup>1</sup> Lev. 19:18.

<sup>2</sup> Ex. 20:13, 14.

<sup>3</sup> Gen. 15:6.

<sup>4</sup> Isa. 41:8.

all. If any man offend not in word, the same *is* a perfect man, *and* able also to bridle the whole body. 3 Behold, we put bits in the horses' mouths, that they may obey us; and we turn about their whole body. 4 Behold also the ships, which though *they be* so great, and *are* driven of fierce winds, yet are they turned about with a very small helm, whithersoever the governor listeth. 5 Even so, the tongue is a little member, and boasteth great things. Behold, how great a matter<sup>1</sup> a little fire kindleth! 6 And the tongue *is* a fire, a world of iniquity: so is the tongue among our members, that it defileth the whole body, and setteth on fire the course of nature; and it is set on fire of hell. 7 For every kind of beasts, and of birds, and of serpents, and of things in the sea, is tamed, and hath been tamed of mankind: 8 but the tongue can no man tame; *it is* an unruly evil, full of deadly poison. 9 Therewith bless we God, even the Father; and therewith curse we men which are made after the similitude of God. 10 Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not so to be. 11 Doth a fountain send forth at the same place sweet *water* and bitter? 12 Can the fig tree, my brethren, bear olive berries? either a vine, figs? so *can* no fountain yield both salt water and fresh.

## VI. THE LAW OF WISDOM

### The Seven-Fold Saying

13 Who is a wise man, and endued with knowledge among you? let him show out of a good conversation his works with meekness of wisdom. 14 But if you have bitter envying and strife in your hearts, glory not, and lie not against the truth. 15 This wisdom descendeth not from above, but *is* earthly, sensual, devilish.<sup>2</sup> 16 For where envying and strife are, there *is* confusion and every evil work.

\* \* \*

17 But the wisdom that is from above is first pure,  
Then peaceable,  
Gentle,  
And easy to be entreated,  
Full of mercy and good fruits,  
Without partiality,  
And without hypocrisy.

\*

18 And the fruit of righteousness is sown in peace of them that make peace.

<sup>1</sup> Or, how great a forest.

<sup>2</sup> Greek: demoniacal.

## VII. THE LAW OF SALVATION

## The Sin of Worldliness

4:1 From whence *come* wars and fightings among you? *come they* not hence, *even* of your lusts that war in your members?  
 2 You lust, and have not; you kill, and desire to have, and cannot obtain; you fight and war, yet you have not, because you ask not. 3 You ask, and receive not, because you ask amiss, that you may consume it upon your lusts. 4 You adulterers and adulteresses, know you not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? Whosoever therefore shall be a friend of the world is the enemy of God. 5 Do you think that the scripture saith in vain, "The spirit that dwelleth in us lusteth to envy?"<sup>1</sup> 6 But he giveth more grace. Wherefore he saith:

\* \* \*

"God resisteth the proud,  
 But giveth grace unto the humble."<sup>2</sup>

\*

- 7 Submit yourselves therefore to God.  
 Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.
- 8 Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you.  
 Cleanse *your* hands, *ye* sinners;  
 And purify *your* hearts, *ye* doubleminded.
- 9 Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep:  
 Let your laughter be turned to mourning,  
 And *your* joy to heaviness.
- 10 Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord,  
 And he shall lift you up.

\*

11 Speak not evil of one another, brethren. He that speaketh evil of *his* brother, and judgeth his brother, speaketh evil of the law, and judgeth the law: but if thou judge the law, thou art not a doer of the law, but a judge. 12 There is one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy: who are thou that judgest another?

<sup>1</sup> Prov. 21:10.<sup>2</sup> Prov. 3:34.





## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION OF JAMES

---

#### THE JUDGMENT TO COME

#### THE WISDOM OF THE RELIGIOUS LIFE

##### a. The Great Duty of the Hour

Go to now, you that say, To day or to morrow we will go into such a city, and continue there a year, and buy and sell, and get gain: 14 whereas you know not what *shall be* on the morrow. For what *is* your life? It is even a vapour that appeareth for a little time, and then vanisheth away. 15 For that you *ought* to say, If the Lord will, we shall live, and do this, or that, 16 But now you rejoice in your boastings: all such rejoicing is evil. 17 Therefore to him that knoweth to do good, and doeth *it* not, to him it is sin.

---

##### b. The Curse of the World

5:1 Go to now, *you* rich men, weep and howl for your miseries that shall come upon *you*. 2 Your riches are corrupted, and your garments are moth-eaten. 3 Your gold and silver are cankered; and the rust of them shall be a witness against you, and shall eat your flesh as it were fire. You have heaped treasure together for the last days. 4 Behold, the hire of the labourers who have reaped down your fields, which is of you kept back by fraud, crieth: and the cries of them that have reaped have entered into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth. 5 You have lived in pleasure on the earth, and been wanton; you have nourished your hearts, as in a day of slaughter. 6 You have condemned *and* killed the Just; *and* he doth not resist you.

---

##### c. The Approaching Coming of the Lord

7 Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain. 8 Be ye also patient; establish your hearts: for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh. 9 Grudge not one against

another, brethren, lest you be condemned: behold the judge standeth before the door. 10 Take, my brethren, the prophets, who have spoken in the name of the Lord, for an example of suffering affliction and of patience. 11 Behold, we count them happy that endure. You have heard of the patience of Job, and have seen the end of the Lord; that the Lord is very pitiful, and of tender mercy.

---

#### d. The Importance of the Serious Mind

12 But above all things, my brethren, swear not, neither by heaven, neither by the earth, neither by any other oath: but let your yea be yea; and *your* nay, nay; lest you fall into condemnation.

---

#### e. The Exhortation to Earnest Prayer

13 Is any among you afflicted? let him pray. Is any merry? let him sing psalms. 14 Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord: 15 and the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him. 16 Confess *your* faults one to another, and pray one for another, that you may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much. 17 Elijah was a man subject to like passions as we are, and he prayed earnestly that it might not rain: and it rained not on the earth by the space of three years and six months. 18 And he prayed again, and the heaven gave rain, and the earth brought forth her fruit.

*Chapter 5:10-18*

**Part Four**  
**THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE**

---

**THE DUTY TOWARD THE ERRING**

**THE SALVATION FROM DEATH**

**The Covering of Many Sins**

Brethren, if any of you do err from the truth, and one convert him; 20 let him know, that he that converteth the sinner from the error of his way shall save a soul from death, and shall hide a multitude of sins.

\* \* \*  
\* \*  
\*





## The First Epistle of Peter



## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE JEWISH BELIEVERS IN ASIA MINOR

##### THE APOSTLE'S SALUTATION

##### The Saints in Five Provinces

Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ, to the strangers scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia and Bithynia, 2 elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace be multiplied.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written from Rome, some think during the Neronian persecution—A. D. 64-68; but more probably during the Flavian persecution—A. D. 81-96.

*Chapter 1:1-2*





## Part Two

### THE INSTRUCTION OF PETER

---

#### THE GREATNESS OF CHRISTIANITY

##### I. THE GREATNESS OF THE CHRISTIAN SALVATION

###### The Living Hope in Jesus Christ

Blessed *be* the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, 4 to an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you, 5 who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time. 6 Wherein you greatly rejoice, though now for a season, if need be, you are in heaviness through manifold temptations: 7 that the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honour and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ: 8 whom having not seen, you love; in whom, though now you see him *not*, yet believing, you rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory: 9 receiving the end of your faith, *even* the salvation of *your* souls. 10 Of which salvation the prophets have inquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace *that should come* unto you: 11 searching what time, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow. 12 Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us did they minister the things, that are reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Spirit sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into.

---

##### II. THE GREATNESS OF THE CHRISTIAN LIFE

###### The Importance of the Serious Mind

13 Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, and hope to the end for the grace that is to be brought unto you at the revelation of Jesus Christ; 14 as obedient children, not fashioning yourselves according to the former lusts in your igno-

rance: 15 but as he that hath called you is holy, so be ye holy in all manner of conversation; 16 because it is written, "Be ye holy; for I am holy."<sup>1</sup> 17 And if you call on the Father, who without respect of persons judgeth according to every man's work, pass the time of your sojourning *here* in fear: 18 forasmuch as you know that you were not redeemed with corruptible things, *as* silver and gold, from your vain conversation *received* by tradition from your fathers; 19 but with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot: 20 who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you, 21 who by him do believe in God, that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory; that your faith and hope might be in God. 22 Seeing you have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit unto unfeigned love of the brethren, *see that you* love one another with a pure heart fervently: 23 being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever. 24 For,

\* \* \*

"All flesh *is* as grass,  
And all the glory of man as the flower of grass.  
The grass withereth,  
And the flower thereof falleth away;  
25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever."<sup>2</sup>

\*

And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

### III. THE GREATNESS OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH

#### The Chosen People of God

2:1 Wherefore laying aside all malice, and all guile, and hypocrisies, and envies, and all evil speakings, 2 as newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that you may grow thereby: 3 if so be that you have tasted that the Lord *is* gracious. 4 To whom coming, *as unto* a living stone, disallowed indeed of men, but chosen of God, *and* precious, 5 you also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ. 6 Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture:

\* \* \*

"Behold, I lay in Zion a chief corner stone, elect,  
precious:  
And he that believeth on him shall not be  
confounded."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Lev. 11:44.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. 40:6f.

<sup>3</sup> Isa. 28:16.

7 Unto you therefore that believe *he is* precious: but unto them that are disobedient, the stone that the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner, 8 and a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, *even to them* that stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed.

\* \* \*

9 But you *are* a chosen generation,

\*

A royal priesthood,

\*

A holy nation,

\*

A peculiar people;

\*

That you should show forth the praises of him  
Who hath called you out of darkness into his  
marvellous light;

\*

10 Who in time past *were* no people,  
But *are* now the people of God;

\*

Who had not obtained mercy,  
But now have obtained mercy.

Chapter 2:7-10





## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION OF PETER

---

#### THE CHURCH OF CHRIST IN THE WORLD

##### 1. THE BROTHERHOOD OF BELIEVERS

###### a. The Admonition to Circumspection

Dearly beloved, I beseech *you* as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, that war against the soul; 12 having your conversation honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by *your* good works, which they shall behold, glorify God in the day of visitation.

---

###### b. The Relation of Subject and Ruler

13 Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it be to the king, as supreme; 14 or unto governors, as unto them that are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of them that do well. 15 For so is the will of God, that with well doing you may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men: 16 as free, and not using *your* liberty for a cloke of maliciousness, but as the servants of God. 17 Honour all *men*. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honour the king.

---

###### c. The Relation of Slave and Master

18 Servants, *be* subject to *your* masters with all fear; not only to the good and gentle, but also to the froward. 19 For this *is* thankworthy, if a man for conscience toward God endure grief, suffering wrongfully. 20 For what glory *is it*, if, when you are buffeted for your faults, you shall take it patiently? but if, when you do well, and suffer *for it*, you take it patiently, this *is* acceptable with God. 21 For even hereunto were you called: because Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that we should follow his steps: 22 who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth: 23 who, when he was reviled, reviled

not again; when he suffered, he threatened not; but committed *himself* to him that judgeth righteously: 24 who his own self bare our sins in his body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes you were healed. 25 For you were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

---

#### d. The Relation of Wife and Husband

3:1 Likewise, ye wives, *be* in subjection to your own husbands; that, if any obey not the word, they also may without the word be won by the conversation of the wives; 2 while they behold your chaste conversation *coupled* with fear. 3 Whose adorning let it not be that outward *adorning* of plaiting the hair, and of wearing of gold, or of putting on of apparel; 4 but *let it be* the hidden man of the heart, in that which is not corruptible, *even the ornament* of a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price. 5 For after this manner in the old time the holy women also, who trusted in God, adorned themselves, being in subjection unto their own husbands: 6 even as Sarah obeyed Abraham, calling him lord: whose daughters you are, as long as you do well, and are not afraid with any amazement. 7 Likewise ye husbands, dwell with *them* according to knowledge, giving honour unto the wife, as unto the weaker vessel, as being heirs together of the grace of life; that your prayers be not hindered.

---

## II. THE CHRISTIAN CHARACTER AND CONDUCT

### a. The Importance of Harmony

8 Finally, *be ye* all of one mind, having compassion one of another, love as brethren, *be* pitiful, *be* courteous: 9 not rendering evil for evil, or railing for railing: but contrariwise blessing; knowing that you are therefore called, that you should inherit a blessing.

\* \* \*

- 10 "For he that will love life,  
And see good days,  
Let him refrain his tongue from evil,  
And his lips that they speak no guile:
- 11 Let him eschew evil and do good;  
Let him seek peace, and ensue it.
- 12 For the eyes of the Lord *are* over the righteous,  
And his ears *are open* unto their prayers:

Chapter 2:24-3:12

But the face of the Lord *is* against them that do evil."<sup>1</sup>

---

#### b. The Reward of Christian Martyrdom

13 And who *is* he that will harm you, if you are followers of that which is good? 14 But and if you suffer for righteousness' sake, happy *are you*: and be not afraid of their terror, neither be troubled; 15 but sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and *be* ready always to *give* an answer to every man that asketh you a reason for the hope that is in you with meekness and fear: 16 having a good conscience; that, whereas they speak evil of you, as of evildoers, they may be ashamed that falsely accuse your good conversation in Christ. 17 For *it is* better, if the will of God be so, that you suffer for well doing, than for evil doing. 18 For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit: 19 by which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison; 20 which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water. 21 The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God), by the resurrection of Jesus Christ: 22 who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

---

#### c. The Mind of the Suffering Christ

4:1 Forasmuch then as Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh, arm yourselves likewise with the same mind: for he that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sin; 2 that he no longer should live the rest of *his* time in the flesh to the lusts of men, but to the will of God. 3 For the time past of *our* life may suffice us to have wrought the will of the Gentiles, when we walked in lasciviousness, lusts, excess of wine, revellings, banquetings, and abominable idolatries: 4 wherein they think it strange that you run not with *them* to the same excess of riot, speaking evil of *you*: 5 who shall give account to him that is ready to judge the quick and the dead. 6 For this cause was the gospel preached also to them that are dead, that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, but live according to God in the spirit.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ps. 34:12.

#### d. The Approaching End of All Things

7 But the end of all things is at hand: be ye therefore sober, and watch unto prayer. 8 And above all things have fervent charity among yourselves: for charity shall cover the multitude of sins. 9 Use hospitality one to another without grudging. 10 As every man hath received the gift, *even* so minister the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God. 11 If any man speak, *let him speak* as the oracles of God; if any man minister, *let him do it* as of the ability which God giveth: that God in all things may be glorified through Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

### III. THE MARTYRDOM FOR THE FAITH

#### The Trust in God in the Midst of Death

12 Beloved, think it not strange concerning the fiery trial which is to try you, as though some strange thing happened unto you: 13 but rejoice, inasmuch as you are partakers of Christ's sufferings; that, when his glory shall be revealed, you may be glad also with exceeding joy. 14 If you be reproached for the name of Christ, happy *are you*; for the spirit of glory and of God resteth upon you: on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified. 15 But let none of you suffer as a murderer, or as a thief, or as an evildoer, or as a busybody in other men's matters. 16 Yet if *any man suffer* as a Christian let him not be ashamed; but let him glorify God on this behalf. 17 For the time *is come* that judgment must begin at the house of God: and if *it* first *begin* at us, what shall the end *be* of them that obey not the gospel of God? 18 And if the righteous scarcely be saved, where shall the ungodly and the sinner appear? 19 Wherefore let them that suffer according to the will of God, commit the keeping of their souls *to him* in well doing, as unto a faithful Creator.

### IV. THE DUTIES OF THE CHURCH

#### a. The Responsibility of Pastors.

5:1 The elders that are among you I exhort, who am also an elder, and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed: 2 feed the flock of God that is among you, taking the oversight *thereof*, not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind; 3 neither as being lords over *God's* heritage, but being examples to the flock. 4 And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, you shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away.

Chapter 4:7-5:4



**b. The Responsibility of the Believers**

5 Likewise, you younger, submit yourselves unto the elder. Yea, all *of you* be subject one to another, and be clothed with humility: for God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble. 6 Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in due time: 7 casting all your care upon him, for he careth for you. 8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: 9 whom resist stedfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world. 10 But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that you have suffered a while, make you perfect, establish, strengthen, settle *you*.

---

**c. The Doxology**

11 To him *be* glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.



## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE APOSTLE'S CLOSING WORD

##### THE COMMENDATION, SALUTATIONS AND BENEDICTION

###### a. The Commendation of Silvanus

By Silvanus, a faithful brother unto you, as I suppose, I have written briefly, exhorting and testifying that this is the true grace of God wherein you stand.

---

###### b. The Salutations

13 The *church that is* at Babylon, elected together with *you*, saluteth you; and *so doth* Mark my son. 14 Greet ye one another with a holy kiss of charity.

---

###### c. The Benediction

Peace *be* with you all that are in Christ Jesus. Amen.

\* \* \*  
\* \*  
\*





## The Second Epistle of Peter



## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE FELLOW-BELIEVERS IN CHRIST

#### THE ENTRANCE INTO THE KINGDOM OF CHRIST

##### The Salutation

Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ, to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ: 2 Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord, 3 according as his divine power hath given unto us all things that *pertain* unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue: 4 whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these you might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust. 5 And beside this, giving all diligence,

\* \* \*

Add to your faith virtue;

\*

And to virtue knowledge;

\*

6 And to knowledge temperance;

\*

And to temperance patience;

\*

And to patience godliness;

\*

7 And to godliness brotherly-kindness;

\*

And to brotherly-kindness charity.

\*

8 For if these be in you, and abound, they make *you that you shall* neither *be* barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our

---

<sup>1</sup> Second Peter is believed to have been written during the reign of Emperor Domitian, A. D. 81-96.

Lord Jesus Christ. 9 But he that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and hath forgotten that he was purged from his old sins. 10 Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if you do these things you shall never fall; 11 for so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

*Chapter 1:9-11*



## Part Two

### THE INSTRUCTION OF PETER

---

#### THE EYEWITNESSES OF HIS MAJESTY

##### THE MINISTRY TO THE CHURCH

###### a. The Approaching End and Care of the Church

Wherefore I will not be negligent to put you always in remembrance of these things, though you know *them*, and are established in the present truth. 13 Yea, I think it meet, as long as I am in this tabernacle, to stir you up by putting *you* in remembrance; 14 knowing that shortly I must put off *this* my tabernacle, even as our Lord Jesus Christ hath showed me.<sup>1</sup> 15 Moreover I will endeavor that you may be able after my decease to have these things always in remembrance.

---

###### b. The Knowledge and Authority of Peter

16 For we did not follow cunningly devised fables, when we made known unto you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but were eyewitnesses of his majesty. 17 For he received from God the Father honour and glory, when there came such a voice to him from the Excellent Glory, "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased."<sup>2</sup> 18 And this voice which came from heaven we heard, when we were with him in the holy mount. 19 We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto you do well that you take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts: 20 knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. 21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spoke *as they were* moved by the Holy Spirit.<sup>3</sup>

---

###### c. The False Teachers and their Ruin

2:1 But there were false prophets also among the people,<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Peter is probably under arrest and sentence of death for the faith. John 21:18f.

<sup>2</sup> The transfiguration.

<sup>3</sup> II. Sam. 23:2.

<sup>4</sup> Deut. 13:1.

even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privately shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. 2 And many shall follow their pernicious<sup>1</sup> ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of. 3 And through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of you: whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their damnation slumbereth not. 4 And if God spared not the angels<sup>2</sup> that sinned, but cast *them* down to hell, and delivered *them* into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment; 5 and spared not the old world,<sup>3</sup> but saved Noah the eighth *person*, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly; 6 and turning the cities<sup>4</sup> of Sodom and Gomorrah into ashes condemned *them* with an overthrow, making *them* an example unto those that after should live ungodly; 7 and delivered just Lot, vexed with the filthy conversation of the wicked; 8 [For that righteous man dwelling among them, in seeing and hearing, vexed *his* righteous soul from day to day with *their* unlawful deeds]: 9 the Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptations, and to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be punished: 10 but chiefly them that walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government. Presumptuous *are they*, selfwilled, they are not afraid to speak evil of dignities. 11 Whereas angels, who are greater in power and might, bring not railing accusations against them before the Lord.

#### d. The Marks of False Teachers

12 But these, as natural brute, made to be taken and destroyed, speak evil of the things that they understand not; and shall utterly perish in their own corruption; 13 and shall receive the reward of unrighteousness, *as* they that count it pleasure to riot in the daytime. Spots *they are* and blemishes, sporting themselves with their own deceivings while they feast with you; 14 having eyes full of adultery, and that cannot cease from sin; beguiling unstable souls: a heart they have exercised with covetous practices; cursed children: 15 who have forsaken the right way, and are gone astray, following the way of Balaam<sup>5</sup> *the son* of Bosor, who loved the wages of righteousness; 16 but was rebuked for his iniquity: the dumb ass speaking with man's voice forbad the madness of the prophet. 17 These are wells without water, clouds that are carried with a tempest; to whom the mist of darkness is reserved for ever. 18 For when they speak great

<sup>1</sup> Or, lascivious.

<sup>2</sup> Job. 4:18.

<sup>3</sup> Gen. 7:1.

<sup>4</sup> Gen. 19:24.

<sup>5</sup> Num. 22.

swelling *words* of vanity, they allure through the lusts of the flesh, *through much* wantonness, those that were clean escaped from them who live in error. 19 While they promise them liberty, they themselves are the servants of corruption: for of whom a man is overcome, of the same is he brought in bondage. 20 For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the latter end is worse with them than the beginning. 21 For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known *it*, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them. 22 But it is happened unto them according to the true proverb:

\* \* \*

“The dog *is* turned to his own vomit again;  
And the sow that was washed to her wallowing in  
the mire.”<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Prov. 26:11.





## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION OF PETER

---

#### THE TRUE TIME OF LAST THINGS

##### THE SECOND COMING OF JESUS

###### a. The Creation and End of the World

This second epistle, beloved, I now write unto you; in *both* of which I stir up your pure minds by way of remembrance: 2 that you may be mindful of the words that were spoken before by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour; 3 knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts, 4 and saying, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep all things continue as *they were* from the beginning of the creation. 5 For this they willingly are ignorant of, that by the word of God <sup>1</sup> the heavens were of old, and the earth standing out of the water and in the water: 6 whereby the world that then was, being overflowed with water, perished:<sup>2</sup> 7 but the heavens and the earth, that are now, by the same word are kept in store, reserved unto fire against the day of judgment<sup>3</sup> and perdition of ungodly men. —————

###### b. The New Heavens and New Earth

8 But beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day *is* with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day. 9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering toward us, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance. 10 But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up. 11 *Seeing then that* these things shall be dissolved, what manner of *persons* ought you to be in *all* holy conversation and godliness, 12 looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat? 13 Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.

---

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 1:6.

<sup>1</sup> Gen. 7:11.

<sup>1</sup> Matt. 25:41.



## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE PREPARATION FOR THE SECOND COMING

##### THE APOSTLE'S CLOSING EXHORTATION

###### c. The Preparation of the Church

¶ Wherefore, beloved, seeing that you look for such things, be diligent that you may be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless. 15 And account *that* the longsuffering of our Lord *is* salvation; even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him hath written unto you; 16 as also in all *his* epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as *they do* also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction. 17 You therefore, beloved, seeing you know *these things* before, beware lest you also, being led away with the error of the wicked, fall from your own steadfastness. 18 But grow in grace, and *in* the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

---

###### d. The Apostle's Benediction

To him *be* glory both now and for ever. Amen.





## The First Epistle of John



## Prologue

# THE MANIFESTATION OF THE SPIRITUAL LIFE

---

### THE LIFE OF CHRIST THE TESTIMONY OF EYEWITNESSES

The Apostolic Witness of John

That which was from the beginning,

\*

Which we have heard,

\*

Which we have seen with our eyes,

\*

Which we have looked upon,

\*

And our hands have handled, of the Word of life <sup>2</sup> [For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and show unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and manifested unto us]:

\*

<sup>3</sup> That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that you also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.

\*

<sup>4</sup> And these things write we unto you that your joy may be full.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written probably at Ephesus toward the close of the first century. For the literary plan of the Epistle see the Int. Crit. Com.

*Chapter 1:1-4*





## Part One

# THE ETHICAL AND THE SPIRITUAL

---

### THE REALITY OF THE CHRISTIAN LIFE

#### THE SALVATION FROM SIN UNTO RIGHTEOUSNESS

##### Seven-Fold Message

###### i.

This then is the message which we have heard of him, and declare unto you, that God is light, and in him is no darkness at all. 6 If we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth: 7 but if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin. 8 If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. 9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness. 10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us.

###### ii.

2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that you sin not. And if any man sin, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous: 2 and he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for *the sins of* the whole world. 3 And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments. 4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him. 5 But who so keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him. 6 He that saith he abideth in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked.

###### iii.

7 Brethren, I write no new commandment unto you, but an old commandment which you had from the beginning. The old commandment is the word which you have heard from the beginning. 8 Again, a new commandment I write unto you, which thing is true in him and in you: because the darkness is past, and the true light now shineth. 9 He that saith he is in the light, and hateth his brother, is in darkness even until now. 10 He that

loveth his brother abideth in the light, and there is no occasion of stumbling in him. 11 But he that hateth his brother is in darkness, and walketh in darkness, and knoweth not whither he goeth, because that darkness hath blinded his eyes.

## iv.

12 I write unto you, little children, because your sins are forgiven you for his name's sake. 13 I write unto you, fathers, because you have known him *that is* from the beginning. I write unto you, young men, because you have overcome the wicked one. I write unto you, little children, because you have known the Father. 14 I have written unto you, fathers, because you have known him *that is* from the beginning. I have written unto you, young men, because you are strong, and the word of God abideth in you, and you have overcome the wicked one. 15 Love not the world, neither the things *that are* in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him. 16 For all that *is* in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. 17 And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever.

## v.

18 Little children, it is the last time: and as you have heard that antichrist shall come, even now are there many antichrists; whereby we know that it is the last time. 19 They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would *no doubt* have continued with us: but *they went out*, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us. 20 But you have an unction from the Holy One, and you know all things. 21 I have not written unto you because you know not the truth, but because you know it, and that no lie is of the truth.

## vi.

22 Who is a liar but he that denieth that Jesus is the Christ? He is antichrist that denieth the Father and the Son. 23 Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father: *but he that acknowledgeth the Son hath the Father also*. 24 Let that therefore abide in you, which you have heard from the beginning. If that which you have heard from the beginning shall remain in you, you also shall continue in the Son, and in the Father. 25 And this is the promise that he hath promised us, *even* eternal life.

## vii.

26 These *things* have I written unto you concerning them that seduce you. 27 But the anointing which you have received of him abideth in you, and you need not that any man teach you:

Chapter 2:11-27

but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, you shall abide in him. 28 And now, little children, abide in him; that, when he shall appear, we may have confidence, and not be ashamed before him at his coming. 29 If you know that he is righteous, you know that every one that doeth righteousness is born of him.

*Chapter 2:28-29*





## Part Two

# THE RELATION OF THE ETHICAL AND THE SPIRITUAL

---

### THE SIGN OF THE CHRISTIAN LIFE

#### THE WONDERFUL LOVE OF GOD

##### The Seven-Fold Message

###### i.

Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not. 2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is. 3 And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.

###### ii.

4 Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law. 5 And you know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin. 6 Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth hath not seen him, neither known him.

###### iii.

7 Little children, let no man deceive you: he that doeth righteousness is righteous, even as he is righteous. 8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil. 9 Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God. 10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.

###### iv.

11 For this is the message that you heard from the beginning, that we should love one another. 12 Not as Cain, *who* was of that wicked one, and slew his brother. And wherefore slew he

him? Because his own works were evil, and his brother's righteous. 13 Marvel not, my brethren, if the world hate you. 14 We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not *his* brother abideth in death. 15 Whoso hateth his brother is a murderer: and you know that no murderer hath eternal life abiding in him. 16 Hereby perceive we the love of *God*, because he laid down his life for us: and we ought to lay down *our* lives for the brethren. 17 But whoso hath this world's good, and seeth his brother have need, and shutteth up his heart of *compassion* from him, how dwelleth the love of God in him?

## v.

18 My little children, let us not love in word, neither in tongue; but in deed and in truth. 19 And hereby we know that we are of the truth, and shall assure our hearts before him. 20 For if our heart condemn us, God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things. 21 Beloved, if our heart condemn us not, *then* have we confidence toward God. 22 And whatsoever we ask, we receive of him, because we keep his commandments, and do those things that are pleasing in his sight.

## vi.

23 And this is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, as he gave us commandment. 24 And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.

## vii.

4:1 Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets have gone out into the world. 2 Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God: 3 and every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God: and this is that *spirit* of antichrist, whereof you have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world. 4 You are of God, little children, and have overcome them; because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world. 5 They are of the world: therefore speak they of the world, and the world heareth them. 6 We are of God: he that knoweth God heareth us; he that is not of God heareth not us. Hereby know we the spirit of truth, and the spirit of error.

Chapter 3:13-4:6

## Part Three

# THE ONENESS OF THE ETHICAL AND THE SPIRITUAL

---

### THE SUPREMACY OF THE CHRISTIAN LIFE

#### THE COMPLETE ASSURANCE OF LOVE

##### The Seven-Fold Message

###### i.

Beloved, let us love one another: for love is of God; and every one that loveth is born of God, and knoweth God. 8 He that loveth not knoweth not God; for God is love. 9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him. 10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son *to be* the propitiation for our sins.

###### ii.

11 Beloved, if God so loved us, we ought also to love one another. 12 No man hath seen God at any time. If we love one another, God dwelleth in us, and his love is perfected in us.

###### iii.

13 Hereby we know that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he hath given us of his Spirit. 14 And we have seen and do testify that the Father sent the Son *to be* the Saviour of the world. 15 Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God. 16 And we have known and believed the love that God hath to us. God is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him.

###### iv.

17 Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world. 18 There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love. 19 We love him, because he first loved us. 20 If a man say, I love God, and hateth his brother, he is a liar: for he that loveth not his brother whom he hath seen, how can he love God whom he hath not seen? 21 And this commandment have we from him, "That he who loveth God love his brother also."

## v.

5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him. 2 By this we know that we love the children of God, when we love God, and keep his commandments. 3 For this is the love of God, that we keep his commandments: and his commandments are not grievous. 4 For whosoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, *even* our faith.

## vi.

5 Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God? 6 This is he that came by water and blood, *even* Jesus Christ; not by water only, but by water and blood. And it is the Spirit that beareth witness, because the Spirit is truth. 7 For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Spirit: and these three are one. 8 And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one. 9 If we receive the witness of men, and witness of God is greater: for this is the witness of God which he hath testified of his Son. 10 He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because, he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son. 11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. 12 He that hath the Son hath life; *and* he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.

## vii.

13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that you may know that you have eternal life, and that you may believe on the name of the Son of God. 14 And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask anything according to his will, he heareth us: 15 and if we know that he hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of him. 16 If any man see his brother sin a sin *which is* not unto death, he shall ask, and he shall give him life for them that sin not unto death. There is a sin unto death: I do not say that he shall pray for it. 17 All unrighteousness is sin: and there is a sin not unto death.

*Chapter 5:1-17*



## Epilogue

### THE SUPREMACY OF THE SPIRITUAL

---

#### THE CHRISTIAN TRIUMPH

##### THE LIFE IN JESUS CHRIST

##### The Seven-Fold Knowledge of the Believer

We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not;

But he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.

19 *And* we know that we are of God, and the whole world lieth in wickedness.

20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding that we may know him that is true,

And we are in him that is true, *even* in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

21 Little children, keep yourselves from idols. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*



## The Second Epistle of John





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION

---

#### THE ELECT LADY IN CHRIST

##### THE TRUTH IN CHRIST

###### The Salutation

The elder unto the elect lady and her children, whom I love in the truth; and not I only, but also all they that have known the truth; 2 for the truth's sake, that dwelleth in us, and shall be with us for ever: 3 Grace be with you, Mercy, *and* Peace, from God the Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of the Father, in truth and love.

*Chapter 1:1-3*



## Part Two

### THE APOSTLE'S MESSAGE

---

#### THE DOCTRINE OF CHRIST

##### THE TRUE AND THE FALSE IN CHRIST

##### The Importance of Faithfulness and Circumspection

I greatly rejoice that I have found *certain* of thy children walking in the truth, as we have received a commandment from the Father. 5 And now I beseech thee, Lady, not as though I wrote a new commandment unto thee, but that which we had from the beginning, That we love one another.<sup>1</sup> 6 And this is love, that we walk after his commandments. This is the commandment, that, as you have heard from the beginning, you should walk in it. 7 For many deceivers have entered into the world, who confess not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh. This is a deceiver, and an antichrist. 8 Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things that we have wrought, but that we receive a full reward. 9 Whosoever transgresseth, and abideth not in the doctrine of Christ, hath not God. He that abideth in the doctrine of Christ, he hath both the Father and the Son. 10 If there come any unto you, and bring not this doctrine, receive him not into *your* house, neither bid him Godspeed: 11 for he that biddeth him Godspeed is partaker of his evil deeds.

---

<sup>1</sup> John 15:12.

*Chapter 1:4-11*





## Part Three

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE MESSAGES OF JOHN

##### THE APOSTLE'S PLANS

##### a. The Proposed Visit to the Disciples

Having many things to write unto you, I would not *write* with paper and ink: but I trust to come unto you, and speak with you face to face, that our joy may be full.

---

##### b. The Closing Salutation

13 The children of thy elect sister greet thee. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*



## The Third Epistle of John





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION

---

#### THE WALK IN THE TRUTH

#### THE SALUTATION AND THANKSGIVING

##### The Salutation

The elder, unto the wellbeloved Gaius, whom I love in the truth.

---

##### b. The Thanksgiving

2 Beloved, I wish<sup>1</sup> above all things that thou mayest prosper and be in health, even as thy soul prospereth. 3 For I rejoiced greatly, when the brethren came and testified of the truth that is in thee, even as thou walkest in the truth. 4 I have no greater joy than to hear that my children walk in truth.

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, pray.

*Chapter 1:1-4*



## Part Two

### THE APOSTLE'S MESSAGE

---

#### THE COMMENDATIONS AND WARNINGS

##### I. THE COMMENDATION OF GAIUS

###### The Care of Persecuted Believers

Beloved, thou doest faithfully whatsoever thou doest to the brethren, and to strangers; 6 who have borne witness to thy charity before the church: whom if thou bring forward on their journey after a godly sort,<sup>1</sup> thou shalt do well: 7 because that for his name's sake they went forth, taking nothing of the Gentiles. 8 We therefore ought to receive such, that we might be fellow-helpers to the truth.

---

##### II. THE WARNING AGAINST DIOTREPHES

###### The Desire for Pre-eminence

9 I wrote unto the church: but Diotrephes, who loveth to have the pre-eminence among them, receiveth us not. 10 Wherefore if I come, I will remember his deeds which he doeth, prating against us with malicious words: and not content therewith, neither doth he himself receive the brethren, and forbiddeth them that would, and casteth them out of the church. 11 Beloved, follow not that which is evil, but that which is good. He that doeth good is of God: but he that doeth evil hath not seen God. 12 Demetrius hath a good report of all men, and of the truth itself: yea, and we also bear record; and you know that our record is true.

---

<sup>1</sup> Worthy of God.





## Part Three

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE MESSAGES OF JOHN

##### THE PLANS, BENEDICTION AND SALUTATIONS

###### a. The Apostle's Plans

I had many things to write, but I will not with ink and pen write unto thee; 14 but I trust I shall shortly see thee, and we shall speak face to face.

---

###### b. The Benediction

Peace *be* to thee.

---

###### c. The Salutations

*Our* friends salute thee. Greet the friends by name.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*



# The Epistle of Jude





## Part One

### THE INTRODUCTION<sup>1</sup>

---

#### THE GREETING OF JUDE

#### THE CALLED, BELOVED AND KEPT

##### The Salutation

Jude,<sup>2</sup> the servant of Jesus Christ, and brother of James, to them that are sanctified<sup>3</sup> by God the Father, and preserved in Jesus Christ, *and* called: 2 Mercy unto you, and Peace, and Love, be multiplied.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Epistle of Jude is usually dated between First and Second Peter, and was probably written in Judæa. Jude was one of the brethren of the Lord.

<sup>2</sup> Greek, Judas.

<sup>3</sup> Or, beloved.

*Chapter 1:1-2*



## Part Two

### THE INSTRUCTION OF JUDE

---

#### THE ENEMIES OF THE FAITH OF CHRIST

##### THE DEFENSE OF THE TRUE FAITH

###### a. The Presence of Corrupt Men

Beloved, when I gave all diligence to write unto you of the common salvation, it was needful for me to write unto you, and exhort *you* that you should earnestly contend for the faith that was once for all delivered unto the saints. 4 For there are certain men who have crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained to this condemnation, ungodly men, turning the grace of our God into lasciviousness, and denying<sup>1</sup> the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ.

---

###### b. The Ancient Examples of Israel

5 I will therefore put you in remembrance, though you once knew this, how that the Lord, having saved the people out of the land of Egypt, afterward destroyed them that believed not. 6 And the angels that kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day. 7 Even as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire.

---

###### c. The Enemies of the Present Day

8 Likewise also these *filthy* dreamers defile the flesh, despise dominion, and speak evil of dignities. 9 Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, dared not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, "The Lord rebuke thee."<sup>2</sup> 10 But these speak evil of those things that they know not: but what they know naturally, as brute beasts, in those things they corrupt themselves. 11 Woe

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, "denying our only Master and Lord, Jesus Christ."

<sup>2</sup> Zech. 3:2.

unto them! for they have gone in the way of Cain, and ran greedily after the error of Balaam for reward, and perished in the gainsaying of Korah. 12 These are spots in your feasts of charity, when they feast with you, feeding themselves without fear: clouds *they are* without water, carried about of winds; trees whose fruit withereth, without fruit, twice dead, plucked up by the roots; 13 raging waves of the sea, foaming out their own shame; wandering stars, to whom is reserved the blackness of darkness for ever.

---

d. The Prophecy of Enoch

14 And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying:

\* \* \*

“Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints, 15 to execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard *speeches* which ungodly sinners have spoken against him.”<sup>1</sup>

\*

16 These are murmurers, complainers, walking after their own lusts; and their mouths speaketh great swelling *words*, having men's persons in admiration because of advantage.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Deut. 33:2.



## Part Three

### THE EXHORTATION OF JUDE

---

#### THE WORDS OF THE APOSTLES

#### THE IMPORTANCE OF CIRCUMSPECTION

#### The Care of the Spiritual Life

But ye, beloved, remember ye the words that were spoken before by the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ; 18 how they told you there should be mockers in the last time, who should walk after their own ungodly lusts. 19 These are they that separate themselves, sensual, having not the Spirit. 20 But, beloved, building up yourselves in your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Spirit, 21 keep ye yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life. 22 And on some have compassion, making a difference; 23 and others save with fear, pulling *them* out of the fire; hating even the garment spotted by the flesh.

*Chapter 1:17-23*



## Part Four

### THE CONCLUSION OF THE EPISTLE

---

#### THE ONLY WISE GOD OUR SAVIOUR

#### THE GREAT INTERCESSOR

#### The Benediction

Now unto him that is able to guard you from falling, and to present *you* faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy, 25 to the only wise God our Saviour, *be* glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and forever. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*





# The Revelation of John



## Prologue

# THE MESSAGES FOR THE SEVEN CHURCHES<sup>1</sup>

### §1. THE INTRODUCTION

#### THE SUPSCRIPTION AND SALUTATION

##### a. The Superscription

The revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to show unto his servant things that must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified *it* by his angel unto his servant John: 2 who bare record of the word of God, and of the testimony of Jesus Christ, and of all things that he saw. 3 Blessed *is* he that readeth, and they that hear the words of this prophecy, and keep those things that are written therein, for the time is at hand.

##### b. The Salutation

4 John to the seven churches that are in Asia:<sup>2</sup> Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from him who is, and who was, and who is to come; and from the seven spirits that are before his throne; 5 and from Jesus Christ, *who is* the faithful witness, *and* the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth.

\*

Unto him that loved us,  
And washed us from our sins in his own blood,  
6 And hath made us kings and priests unto God  
and his Father;  
To him *be* glory and dominion for ever and  
ever. Amen.

\*

7 Behold, he cometh with the clouds;  
And every eye shall see him,  
And they *also* that pierced him:  
And all kindreds of the earth shall wail because  
of him.  
Even so. Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Written at Ephesus in Asia, A. D. 96, upon the death of Emperor Domitian and release of John from Patmos.

<sup>2</sup> Roman province in Asia Minor.

\*

- 8 "I am Alpha and Omega,  
The beginning and the ending," saith the Lord,  
"Who is, and who was, and who is to come,  
The Almighty." —————

## §2. THE GREAT REVELATION TO JOHN

### THE VISION OF THE SON OF MAN

#### The Commission of John to Write

9 I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ, was in the isle called Patmos for the word of God, and the testimony of Jesus Christ. 10 I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet, 11 saying:

\* \* \*

"I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last:  
and what thou seest write in a book, and send *it* unto  
the seven churches that are in Asia:

\*

Unto Ephesus,  
And unto Smyrna,  
And unto Pergamos,  
And unto Thyatira,  
And unto Sardis,  
And unto Philadelphia,  
And unto Laodiceæ."

\*

12 And I turned to see the voice that spoke with me, and having turned I saw seven golden candlesticks; 13 and in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks *one* like unto the Son of man,<sup>1</sup> clothed with a garment down to his foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle.

\* \* \*

- 14 His head and *his* hair *were* white like wool, as  
white as snow;  
And his eyes *were* as a flame of fire;  
15 And his feet like unto fine brass, as if they  
burned in a furnace;  
And his voice as the sound of many waters.  
16 And in his right hand seven stars:  
And out of his mouth went a sharp two-edged  
sword:  
And his countenance *was* as the sun shineth in his  
strength.

---

<sup>1</sup> The seven-fold description of the Son of Man.



17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, "Fear not; I am the first and the last: 18 *I am* he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death. 19 Write the things that thou hast seen, and the things that are, and the things that shall be hereafter; 20 the mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches."

---

### §3. THE MESSAGES FOR THE CHURCHES

#### I. THE MESSAGE FOR THE CHURCH AT EPHESUS

##### The Fruit from the Tree of Life

2:1 "Unto the angel of the church in Ephesus write: These things saith he that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks; 2 I know thy works, and thy labour, and thy patience, and how thou canst not bear them that are evil: and thou hast tried them that say they are apostles, and are not, and hast found them liars: 3 and hast borne, and hast patience, and for my name's sake hast laboured, and hast not fainted. 4 Nevertheless I have *somewhat* against thee, because thou hast left thy first love. 5 Remember therefore from whence thou art fallen, and repent, and do the first works; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy candlestick out of his place, except thou repent. 6 But this thou hast, that thou hatest the deeds of the Nicolaitanes, which I also hate. 7 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches: To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the tree of life, that is in the midst of the paradise of God."

---

#### II. THE CHURCH IN SMYRNA

##### The Crown for the Faithful

8 "And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write: These things saith the First and the Last, who was dead, and is alive; 9 I know thy works, and tribulation, and poverty [but thou art rich], and *I know* the blasphemy of them that say they are Jews, and are not, but *are* the synagogue of Satan. 10 Fear none of those things that thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast *some* of you into prison, that you may be tried; and you shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will

*Chapter 1:17-2:10*

give thee a crown of life. 11 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; 'He that overcometh shall not be hurt of the second death.'"

### III. THE CHURCH IN PERGAMOS

#### The Hidden Manna, the White Stone and the New Name

12 "And to the angel of the church in Pergamos write: These things saith he that hath the sharp sword with two edges: 13 I know thy works, and where thou dwellest, *even* where Satan's seat is: and thou holdest fast my name, and hast not denied my faith, even in those days wherein Antipas *was* my faithful martyr, who was slain among you, where Satan dwelleth. 14 But I have a few things against thee, because thou hast there them that hold the doctrine of Balaam, who taught Balac to cast a stumblingblock before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed unto idols, and to commit fornication. 15 So hast thou also them that hold the doctrine of the Nicolaitanes, which thing I hate. 16 Repent; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will fight against them with the sword of my mouth. 17 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth *it*."

### IV. THE CHURCH IN THYATIRA

#### The Nations of the World

18 "And unto the angel of the church in Thyatira write: These things saith the Son of God, who hath his eyes like unto a flame of fire, and his feet *are* like fine brass; 19 I know thy works, and charity, and service, and faith, and thy patience, and thy works; and the last *to be* more than the first. 20 Notwithstanding I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest that woman Jezebel, who calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols. 21 And I gave her space to repent of her fornication; and she repented not. 22 Behold, I will cast her into a bed, and them that commit adultery with her into great tribulation, except they repent of their deeds. 23 And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that I am he that searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works. 24 But unto you I say, and unto the rest in Thyatira, as many as have not this doctrine, and that have not known the depths of Satan, as they speak; I will put upon you no

Chapter 2:10-24

other burden. 25 But that which ye have *already* hold fast till I come. 26 And he that overcometh, and keepeth my works unto the end, to him will I give power over the nations: 27 and he shall rule them with a rod of iron; as the vessels of a potter shall they be broken to shivers: even as I received of my Father. 28 And I will give him the morning star. 29 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches."

## V. THE CHURCH IN SARDIS

### The White Raiment for the Worthy

3:1 "And unto the angel of the church in Sardis write: These things saith he that hath the seven spirits of God, and the seven stars; I know thy works, that thou hast a name that thou livest, and art dead. 2 Be watchful, and strengthen the things that remain, that are ready to die: for I have not found thy works perfect before God. 3 Remember therefore how thou hast received and heard, and hold fast, and repent. If therefore thou shalt not watch, I will come on thee as a thief, and thou shalt not know what hour I will come upon thee. 4 Thou hast a few names even in Sardis that have not defiled their garments; and they shall walk with me in white: for they are worthy. 5 He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels. 6 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches."

## VI. THE CHURCH IN PHILADELPHIA

### The Pillar in the Temple of God

7 "And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write: These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, he that hath the key of David, he that openeth and no man shutteth; and shutteth, and no man openeth; 8 I know thy works: behold, I have set before thee an open door, and no man can shut it: for thou hast a little strength, and hast kept my word, and hast not denied my name. 9 Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, who say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet, and to know that I have loved thee. 10 Because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I also will keep thee from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them that dwell upon the earth. 11 Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown. 12 Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the temple of my God, and he shall go no more out: and I will write

*Chapter 2:25-3:12*



upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God, *which is* New Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my God: and *I will write upon him* my new name. 13 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches."

---

## VII. THE CHURCH IN LAODICEA

### The Seat on the Throne

14 "And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write: These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God; 15 I know thy works, that thou art neither cold nor hot: I would thou wert cold or hot. 16 So then because thou art lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I would spue thee out of my mouth. 17 Because thou sayest, 'I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing;' and knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked: 18 I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and *that* the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see. 19 As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent. 20 Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me. 21 To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my Father in his throne. 22 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches."

*Chapter 3:13-22*



## Part One

# THE HEAVENLY VISION OF JOHN

### THE LAMB OF GOD AND THE BOOK

#### I. THE VISION OF THE THRONE

##### The Praise unto God

After this I looked, and, behold, a door *was* opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard *was* as it were a trumpet talking with me; which said, "Come up hither, and I will show thee things which must be hereafter." 2 And immediately I was in the spirit: and, behold, a throne was set in heaven, and *one* sat on the throne. 3 And he that sat was to look upon like a jasper and a sardine stone: and *there was* a rainbow round about the throne, in sight like unto an emerald. 4 And round about the throne *were* four and twenty seats: and upon the seats I saw four and twenty elders sitting, clothed in white raiment; and they had on their heads crowns of gold. 5 And out of the throne proceeded lightnings and thunders and voices: and *there were* seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of God. 6 And before the throne *there was* a sea of glass like unto crystal: and in the midst of the throne, and round about the throne, *were* four beasts full of eyes before and behind. 7 And the first beast *was* like a lion, and the second beast like a calf, and the third beast had a face as a man, and the fourth beast *was* like a flying eagle. 8 And the four beasts had each of them six wings about *him*; and *they were* full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying:

\* \* \*

"Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty,  
Who was, and is, and is to come."

\*

9 And when those beasts give glory and honour and thanks to him that sat on the throne, who liveth forever and ever, 10 the four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying:

\* \* \*

11 "Thou art worthy, O Lord,  
To receive glory and honour and power:

For thou hast created all things,  
And for thy pleasure they are and were created."

## II. THE VISION OF THE SEALED BOOK

### *The Lion of the Tribe of Judah*

5:1 And I saw in the right hand of him that sat on the throne a book written within and on the backside, sealed with seven seals. 2 And I saw a strong angel proclaiming with a loud voice, "Who is worthy to open the book, and to loose the seals thereof?" 3 And no man in heaven, nor in earth, neither under the earth, was able to open the book, neither to look thereon. 4 And I wept much, because no man was found worthy to open and to read the book, neither to look thereon. 5 And one of the elders saith unto me:

\* \* \*

"Weep not!  
Behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah,  
The Root of David,  
Hath prevailed to open the book,  
And to loose the seven seals thereof."

## III. THE VISION OF THE LAMB OF GOD

### *The New Song unto the Lamb*

6 And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent forth into all the earth. 7 And he came and took the book out of the right hand of him that sat upon the throne. 8 And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four *and* twenty elders fell down before the lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odors,<sup>1</sup> which are the prayers of the saints. 9 And they sang a new song, saying:

\* \* \*

"Thou art worthy to take the book,  
And to open the seals thereof:  
For thou wast slain,  
And hast redeemed us to God by thy blood,  
Out of every kindred, and tongue, and people,  
and nation;  
10 And hast made us unto our God kings and  
priests:  
And we shall reign on the earth."

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, incense.

## IV. THE VISION OF THE MULTITUDE

## The Seven-Fold Praise of Thousands of Thousands

11 And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands; 12 saying, with a loud voice;

\* \* \*

“Worthy is the Lamb that was slain  
To receive power, and riches, and wisdom,  
And strength, and honour, and glory, and  
blessing.”

\*

13 And every creature that is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I, saying:

\* \* \*

“Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power,  
Be unto him that sitteth upon the throne,  
And unto the Lamb for ever and ever.”

\*

14 And the four beasts said, “Amen.” And the four *and* twenty elders fell down and worshipped him that liveth for ever and ever.

*Chapter 5:11-14*





## Part Two

# THE VISION OF THE POWERS OF JUDGMENT

---

### THE OPENING OF THE SEALED BOOK

#### I. THE SEAL OF CONQUEST

##### The Vision of the White Horse and Rider

And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seals, and I heard, as it were the noise of thunder, one of the four beasts, saying, "Come and see." 2 And I saw, and behold a white horse: and he that sat on him had a bow; and a crown was given unto him: and he went forth conquering and to conquer.

---

#### II. THE SEAL OF WAR

##### The Vision of a Red Horse and Rider

3 And when he had opened the second seal, I heard the second beast say, "Come and see." 4 And there went out another horse *that was* red: and *power* was given to him that sat thereon to take peace from the earth, and that they should kill one another: and there was given unto him a great sword.

---

#### III. THE SEAL OF FAMINE

##### The Vision of a Black Horse and Rider

5 And when he had opened the third seal, I heard the third beast say, "Come and see." And I beheld, and lo, a black horse; and he that sat on him had a pair of balances in his hand. 6 And I heard a voice in the midst of the four beasts say, "A measure of wheat for a penny, and three measures of barley for a penny; and *see* thou hurt not the oil and the wine."

---

#### IV. THE SEAL OF DEATH

##### The Vision of a Pale Horse and Rider

7 And when he had opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth beast say, "Come and see." 8 And I looked, and

beheld a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and Hell followed with him. And power was given unto them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth.

---

## V. THE SEAL OF JUDGMENT

### The Vision of Martyrdom for the Word and Testimony

9 And when he had opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held: 10 and they cried with a loud voice, saying:

\* \* \*

“How long, O Lord, holy and true,  
Dost thou not judge and avenge our blood  
On them that dwell on the earth?”

\*

11 And white robes were given unto every one of them; and it was said unto them, that they should rest yet for a little season, until their fellowservants also and their brethren, that should be killed as they *were*, should be fulfilled.

---

## VI. THE SEAL OF WRATH

### a. The Vision of the Judgment to Come

12 And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and, lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood; 13 and the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken by a mighty wind. 14 And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places. 15 And the kings of the earth, and the great men, and the rich men, and the chief captains, and the mighty men, and every bondman, and every free man, hid themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains; 16 and said to the mountains and rocks:

\* \* \*

“Fall on us, and hide us from the face of him  
That sitteth on the throne,  
And from the wrath of the Lamb:  
17 For the great day of his wrath is come;  
And who shall be able to stand?”

*Chapter 6:9-17*

## b. The Great Number of the Redeemed

7:1 And after these things I saw four angels standing on the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth, that the wind should not blow on the earth, nor on the sea, nor on any tree. 2 And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea, 3 saying: "Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads." 4 And I heard the number of them that were sealed: *and there were sealed a hundred and forty and four thousand of all the tribes of the children of Israel:*

\* \* \*

- 5 Of the tribe of Judah *were sealed twelve thousand.*  
Of the tribe of Reuben *were sealed twelve thousand.*  
Of the tribe of Gad *were sealed twelve thousand.*
  - 6 Of the tribe of Asher *were sealed twelve thousand.*  
Of the tribe of Naphtali *were sealed twelve thousand.*  
Of the tribe of Menasseh *were sealed twelve thousand.*
  - 7 Of the tribe of Simeon *were sealed twelve thousand.*  
Of the tribe of Levi *were sealed twelve thousand.*  
Of the tribe of Issachar *were sealed twelve thousand.*
  - 8 Of the tribe of Zebulon *were sealed twelve thousand.*  
Of the tribe of Joseph *were sealed twelve thousand.*  
Of the tribe of Benjamin *were sealed twelve thousand.*
- 

## c. The Vision of the Redeemed

9 And after this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; 10 and cried with a loud voice, saying:

\* \* \*

"Salvation to our God who sitteth upon  
the throne,  
And unto the Lamb."

\*

11 And all the angels stood round about the throne, and *about* the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God, 12 saying:

*Chapter 7:1-12*

\* \* \*

"Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom,  
And thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and  
might,  
Be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen."

\*

13 And one of the elders answered, saying unto me, "Who are these that are arrayed in white robes? and whence came they?"  
14 And I said unto him, "Sir, thou knowest." And he said unto me:

\* \* \*

"These are they that came out of great  
tribulation,  
And have washed their robes,  
And made them white in the blood of the Lamb.  
15 Therefore are they before the throne of God,  
And serve him day and night in his temple:  
And he that sitteth on the throne shall  
dwell among them.  
16 They shall hunger no more,  
Neither thirst any more;  
Neither shall the sun light on them,  
Nor any heat.  
17 For the Lamb who is in the midst of the throne  
Shall feed them,  
And shall lead them unto living fountains  
of waters:  
And God shall wipe away all tears from  
their eyes."

## VII. THE SEAL OF SILENCE

### The Vision of the Golden Censer

8:1 And when he had opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven about the space of half an hour. 2 And I saw the seven angels that stood before God; and to them were given seven trumpets. 3 And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto him much incense, that he should offer *it* with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne. 4 And the smoke of the incense, *which came* with the prayers of the saints, ascended up before God out of the angel's hand. 5 And the angel took the censer, and filled it with fire of the altar, and cast *it* into the earth: and there were voices, and thunderings, and lightnings, and an earthquake.

Chapter 7:13-8:5



## Part Three

# THE VISION OF THE JUDGMENT OF GOD

---

### THE VISION OF THE SEVEN TRUMPETS

#### I. THE JUDGMENT ON THE EARTH

##### The Vision of Hail and Fire

And the seven angels who had the seven trumpets prepared themselves to sound. 7 The first angel sounded, and there followed hail and fire mingled with blood, and they were cast upon the earth: and the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up.

---

#### II. THE JUDGMENT ON THE SEA

##### The Vision of the Burning Mountain in the Sea

8 And the second angel sounded, and as it were a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea: and the third part of the sea became blood; 9 and the third part of the creatures that were in the sea, and had life, died; and the third part of the ships were destroyed.

---

#### III. THE JUDGMENT ON THE RIVERS AND FOUNTAINS

##### The Vision of the Falling Star Wormwood

10 And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters; 11 and the name of the star is called Wormwood: and the third part of the waters became wormwood; and many men died of the waters, because they were made bitter.

---

#### IV. THE JUDGMENT ON THE SUN AND STARS

##### The Vision of the Flying Angel

12 And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so that the third part of them was darkened, and the



day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise. 13 And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, "Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpets of the three angels, that are yet to sound!"

---

## V. THE JUDGMENT FROM BENEATH

### The Vision of the Bottomless Pit

9:1 And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. 2 And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. 3 And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power. 4 And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men who have not the seal of God in their foreheads. 5 And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their torment *was* as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man. 6 And in those days men shall seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them. 7 And the shapes of the locusts *were* like unto horses prepared unto battle; and on their heads *were* as it were crowns like gold, and their faces *were* as the faces of men. 8 And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as *the teeth* of lions. 9 And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings *was* as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle. 10 And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power *was* to hurt men five months. 11 And they had a king over them, *who is* the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath *his* name Apollyon.<sup>1</sup> 12 One woe is past; *and*, behold, there come two woes more hereafter.

---

## VI. THE JUDGMENT FROM BABYLON

### a. The Vision of the Four Angels

13 And the sixth angel sounded, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before God, 14 saying to the sixth angel that had the trumpet, "Loose the four angels that

---

<sup>1</sup> That is to say, a destroyer.

are bound in the great river Euphrates.” 15 And the four angels were loosed, which were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to slay the third part of men. 16 And the number of the army of the horsemen *was* two hundred thousand thousand: and I heard the number of them. 17 And thus I saw the horses in the vision, and them that sat on them, having breastplates of fire, and of jacinth, and brimstone: and the heads of the horses *were* as the heads of lions; and out of their mouths issued fire and smoke and brimstone. 18 By these three was the third part of men killed, by the fire, and by the smoke, and by the brimstone, which issued out of their mouths. 19 For their power is in their mouth, and in their tails: for their tails *were* like unto serpents, and had heads, and with them they do hurt. 20 And the rest of the men that were not killed by these plagues yet repented not of the works of their hands, that they should not worship devils, and idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood: which neither can see, nor hear, nor walk: 21 neither repented they of their murders, nor of their sorceries, nor of their thefts.

---

#### b. The Vision of the Little Book

10:1 And I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud: and a rainbow *was* upon his head, and his face *was* as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire: 2 and he had in his hand a little book open: and he set his right foot upon the sea, and *his* left *foot* on the earth, 3 and cried with a loud voice, as *when* a lion roareth; and when he had cried, seven thunders uttered their voices. 4 And when the seven thunders had uttered their voices, I was about to write: and I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, “Seal up those things that the seven thunders uttered, and write them not.” 5 And the angel which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth lifted up his hand to heaven, 6 and swore by him that liveth for ever and ever, who created heaven, and the things that therein are, and the earth, and the things that therein are, and the sea, and the things that are therein, that there should be time no longer: 7 but in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he shall begin to sound, the mystery of God should be finished, as he hath declared to his servants the prophets.

---

#### c. The Vision of the Prophet

8 And the voice which I heard from heaven spake unto me again, and said, “Go *and* take the little book which is open in the hand of the angel which standeth upon the sea and upon the earth.” 9 And I went unto the angel, and said unto him, “Give me the

little book.” And he said unto me, “Take *it*, and eat it up; and it shall make thy belly bitter, but it shall be in thy mouth sweet as honey.” 10 And I took the little book out of the angel’s hand and ate it up; and it was in my mouth sweet as honey: and as soon as I had eaten it, my belly was bitter. 11 And he said unto me, “Thou must prophesy again before many peoples, and nations, and tongues, and kings.”

#### d. The Vision of Judgment

11:1 And there was given me a reed like unto a rod; and the angel stood, saying:

\* \* \*

“Rise, and measure the temple of God, and the altar, and them that worship therein. 2 But the court that is without the temple leave out, and measure it not; for it is given unto the Gentiles: and the holy city shall they tread under foot forty *and* two months. 3 And I will give *power* unto my two witnesses, and they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred *and* threescore days, clothed in sackcloth. 4 These are the two olive trees, and the two candlesticks standing before the God of the earth. 5 And if any man will hurt them, fire proceedeth out of their mouth, and devoureth their enemies: and if any man will hurt them, he must in this manner be killed. 6 These have power to shut heaven, that it rain not in the days of their prophecy: and have power over waters to turn them to blood, and to smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they will. 7 And when they shall have finished their testimony, the beast that proceedeth out of the bottomless pit shall make war against them and shall overcome them, and kill them. 8 And their dead bodies *shall lie* in the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified. 9 And they of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three days and a half, and shall not suffer their dead bodies to be put in graves. 10 And they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over them, and make merry, and shall send gifts one to another; because these two prophets tormented them that dwelt on the earth.”

\*

11 And after three days and a half the Spirit of life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet; and great fear

*Chapter 10:10-11:11*



fell upon them that saw them. 12 And they heard a great voice from heaven saying unto them, "Come up hither." And they ascended up to heaven in a cloud; and their enemies beheld them. 13 And the same hour was there a great earthquake, and the tenth part of the city fell, and in the earthquake were slain of men seven thousand: and the remnant were affrighted, and gave glory to the God of heaven. 14 The second woe is past, *and* behold the third woe cometh quickly.

## VII. THE KINGDOM OF OUR LORD

### The Vision of the Kingdom

15 And the seventh angel sounded: and there were great voices in heaven, saying:

\* \* \*

"The kingdoms of this world are become  
*The kingdoms* of our Lord, and of his Christ;  
 And he shall reign for ever and ever."

\*

16 And the four and twenty elders who sat before God on their seats, fell upon their faces, and worshipped God, 17 saying:

\* \* \*

"We give thee thanks, O Lord God Almighty,  
 Who art, and wast, and art to come;  
 Because thou hast taken to thee thy great  
 power,  
 And hast reigned.

18 And the nations were angry,  
 And thy wrath is come,  
 And the time of the dead,  
 That they should be judged,  
 And thou shouldest give reward unto  
 thy servants the prophets,  
 And to the saints,  
 And them that fear thy name, small and great;  
 And shouldest destroy them that destroy  
 the earth."

\*

19 And the temple of God was opened in heaven, and there was seen in his temple the ark of his testament: and there were lightnings, and voices, and thunderings, and an earthquake, and great hail.

Chapter 11:12-19





## Part Four

# THE VISION OF THE KINGDOM OF OUR LORD

---

### THE TRIUMPH OVER THE DRAGON

#### I. THE VISION OF THE WOMAN AND THE DRAGON

##### The Birth of the Ruler of All Nations

And there appeared a great sign in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars; 2 and she being with child, travailing in birth, and pained to be delivered. 3 And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads. 4 And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth; and the dragon stood before the woman who was ready to be delivered, to devour her child as soon as it was born. 5 And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne. 6 And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she hath a place prepared of God, that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred *and* threescore days.

---

#### II. THE VICTORY OVER THE DRAGON

##### The Great Power of the Lamb

7 And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, 8 and prevailed not, neither was there place found any more in heaven. 9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, who deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. 10 And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven:

\* \* \*

“Now is come salvation, and strength,  
And the kingdom of our God,  
And the power of his Christ:  
For the accuser of our brethren is cast down,

- Who accused them before our God day  
and night.
- 11 And they overcame him by the power of  
the Lamb,  
And by the word of their testimony;  
And they loved not their lives unto the death.
- 12 Therefore, rejoice, ye heavens,  
And ye that dwell in them.  
Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and  
of the sea!  
For the devil is come down unto you,  
having great wrath,  
Because he knoweth that he hath but  
a short time."
- 

### III. THE PERSECUTION OF THE DRAGON

#### The Wrath Against the Woman

13 And when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth,  
he persecuted the woman who brought forth the man *child*.  
14 And to the woman were given two wings of a great eagle,  
that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place where she  
is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the  
face of the serpent. 15 And the serpent cast out of his mouth  
water as a flood after the woman, that he might cause her to be  
carried away of the flood. 16 And the earth helped the woman,  
and the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed up the flood which  
the dragon cast out of his mouth. 17 And the dragon was wroth  
with the woman, and went to make war with the remnant of her  
seed, who keep the commandments of God, and have the testi-  
mony of Jesus Christ.

---

### IV. THE DRAGON AND THE BEAST

#### The Authority and Power of the Beast over the World

13:1 And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise  
up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon  
his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy.  
2 And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his  
feet were as *the feet* of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion:  
and the dragon gave him power, and his seat, and great authority.  
3 And I saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his  
deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the  
beast. 4 And they worshipped the dragon that gave power  
unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, "Who *is*  
like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him?" 5 And

*Chapter 12:11-13:5*

there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty *and* two months. 6 And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven. 7 And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations. 8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world. 9 If any man hath an ear, let him hear. 10 He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints.

---

## V. THE PROPHET OF THE BEAST

### The Curse upon Men

11 And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spoke as a dragon. 12 And he exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth the earth and them that dwell therein to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed. 13 And he doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men, 14 and deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by *the means* of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, who had the wound by a sword, and did live. 15 And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed. 16 And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads. 17 And that no man might buy or sell, save he that hath the mark, or the name of the beast or the number of his name. 18 Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is six hundred three score *and* six.

---

## VI. THE TRIUMPH OF THE LAMB

### The Many Thousands

14:1 And I looked, and lo, a Lamb stood on mount Zion, and with him a hundred forty *and* four thousand, having his Father's name written in their foreheads. 2 And I heard a voice from heaven, as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of a great

*Chapter 13:6-14:2*

thunder; and I heard the voice of harpers harping with their harps: 3 and they sang as it were a new song before the throne, and before the four beasts, and the elders: and no man could learn that song but the hundred *and* forty *and* four thousand, that were redeemed from the earth. 4 These are they that were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. These were redeemed<sup>1</sup> from among men, *being* the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb. 5 And in their mouth was found no guile: for they are without fault before the throne of God. 6 And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, 7 saying with a loud voice:

\* \* \*

“Fear God, and give glory to him;  
For the hour of his judgment is come:  
And worship him that made heaven, and earth  
and the sea,  
And the fountains of waters.”

\*

8 And there followed another angel, saying:

\* \* \*

“Babylon is fallen, is fallen,  
That great city,  
Because she made all nations drink  
Of the wine of the wrath of her fornication.”

\*

9 And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice:

\* \* \*

“If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive *his* mark in his forehead, or in his hand, 10 the same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: 11 and the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name. 12 Here is the patience of the saints: here *are* they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus.”

---

<sup>1</sup> Were bought.



13 And I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me: "Write,

\* \* \*

Blessed are the dead that die in the Lord  
from henceforth:

Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest  
from their labors;

And their works do follow them."

## VII. THE JUDGMENT OF THE LAMB

### The Song of Moses and the Lamb

14 And I looked, and behold a white cloud, and upon the cloud one sat like unto the Son of man, having on his head a golden crown, and in his hand a sharp sickle. 15 And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud, "Thrust in thy sickle, and reap: for the harvest of the earth is ripe." 16 And he that sat on the cloud thrust in his sickle on the earth; and the earth was reaped. 17 And another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle. 18 And another angel came out from the altar, who had power over fire; and cried with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying, "Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe." 19 And the angel thrust in his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vine of the earth, and cast *it* into the great winepress of the wrath of God. 20 And the winepress was trodden without the city, and blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horses' bridles, by the space of a thousand *and* six hundred furlongs. 15:1 And I saw another sign in heaven, great and marvellous, seven angels having the seven last plagues; for in them is filled up the wrath of God. 2 And I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire: and them that had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, *and* over the number of his name, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of God. 3 And they sing the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying:

\* \* \*

"Great and marvellous *are* thy works, Lord God  
Almighty;

Just and true *are* thy ways, thou King of saints.<sup>1</sup>

4 Who shall fear thee, O Lord,

And glorify thy name?

For *thou* only *art* holy:

For all nations shall come and worship  
before thee;

For thy judgments are made manifest."

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, nations; or, ages.





## Part Five

# THE VISION OF THE WRATH OF GOD

---

### PROLOGUE

#### THE VISION OF THE VIALS

##### The Seven Angels with the Vials of Wrath

And after that I looked, and, behold, the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven was opened: 6 and the seven angels came out of the temple, having the seven plagues, clothed in pure and white linen, and having their breasts girded with golden girdles. 7 And one of the four beasts gave unto the seven angels seven golden vials full of the wrath of God, who liveth for ever and ever. 8 And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God, and from his power; and no man was able to enter into the temple, till the seven plagues of the seven angels were fulfilled. 16:1 And I heard a great voice out of the temple saying to the seven angels:

\* \* \*

“Go your ways, and pour out the vials of the wrath of God upon the earth.”

---

#### I. THE VISION OF THE FIRST VIAL

##### The Curse upon Men

2 And the first went, and poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men who had the mark of the beast, and upon them that worship his image.

---

#### II. THE VISION OF THE SECOND VIAL

##### The Curse Upon the Sea

3 And the second angel poured out his vial upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead *man*: and every living soul died in the sea.

---

#### III. THE VISION OF THE THIRD VIAL

##### The Curse upon the Waters

4 And the third angel poured out his vial upon the rivers and fountains of waters; and they became blood. 5 And I heard the angel of the waters say:

"Thou art righteous, O Lord,  
Who art, and wast, and shall be,  
Because thou hast judged thus.

- 6 For they have shed the blood of the saints and  
prophets,  
And thou hast given them blood to drink;  
For they are worthy."

\*

- 7 And I heard another out of the altar say:

\* \* \*

"Even so, Lord God Almighty,  
True and righteous *are* thy judgments."

\* \* \*

#### IV. THE VISION OF THE FOURTH VIAL

##### The Curse upon the Sun

8 And the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given unto him to scorch men with fire. 9 And men were scorched with great heat, and blasphemed the name of God, who hath power over these plagues: and they repented not to give him glory.

#### V. THE POURING OF THE FIFTH VIAL

##### The Curse upon the Throne

10 And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain, 11 and blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds.

#### VI. THE POURING OF THE SIXTH VIAL

##### The Curse upon the Euphrates

12 And the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared. 13 And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs *come* out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet. 14 For they are the spirits of devils, working miracles, *that* go forth unto the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty.

\* \* \*

- 15 "Behold, I come as a thief.

*Chapter 16:6-15*

Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth  
his garments,  
Lest he walk naked, and they see his shame."

\*

16 And he gathered them together into a place called in the Hebrew tongue, Armageddon.

## VII. THE POURING OF THE SEVENTH VIAL

### The Curse upon the Air

17 And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, "It is done." 18 And there were voices, and thunders, and lightnings; and there was a great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, *and* so great. 19 And the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell: and great Babylon came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath. 20 And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found. 21 And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, *every stone* about the weight of a talent: and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceeding great.

## EPILOGUE

### THE FALL OF BABYLON THE GREAT

#### The Vision of the Judgment

i.

17:1 And there came one of the seven angels that had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me: "Come hither: I will show unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters:

\* \* \*

2 The kings of the earth  
Have committed fornication with her,  
And the inhabitants of the earth  
Have been made drunk with the wine of her  
fornication."

\*

3 And he carried me away in the Spirit into the wilderness: and I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet coloured beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns. 4 And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet colour, and decked with gold

*Chapter 16:16-17:4*

and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication: 5 and upon her forehead *was* a name written:

\* \* \*

# MYSTERY

\*

## BABYLON THE GREAT

\*

## THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS

\*

## AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH

\*

6 And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus: and when I saw her I wondered with great admiration.

ii.

7 And the angel said unto me, "Wherefore didst thou marvel? I will tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carrieth her, that hath the seven heads and ten horns.

\* \* \*

8 "The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition:

\*

"And they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is.

\*

9 "And here *is* the mind that hath wisdom: The seven heads are seven mountains, on which the woman sitteth.

\*

10 "And there are seven kings: five are fallen, and one is, *and* the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space.

\*

11 "And the beast that was, and is not, even he is the eighth, and is of the seven, and goeth into perdition.

\*

12 "And the ten horns that thou sawest are ten kings, that have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast.

*Chapter 17:5-12*



13 These have one mind, and shall give their power and strength unto the beast.

\*

14 "These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him *are* called, and chosen, and faithful."

\*

15 And he saith unto me: "The waters that thou sawest, where the whore sitteth, are peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues. 16 And the ten horns that thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire. 17 For God hath put in their hearts to fulfill his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of God shall be fulfilled. 18 And the woman that thou sawest is that great city, that reigneth over the kings of the earth."

iii.

18:1 And after these things I saw another angel come down from heaven, having great power; and the earth was lighted with his glory. 2 And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying:

\* \* \*

"Babylon the Great is fallen, is fallen,  
And is become the habitation of devils,  
And the hold of every foul spirit,  
And a cage of every unclean and hateful bird.  
3 For all nations have drunk of the wine of the  
wrath of her fornication,  
And the kings of the earth,  
Have committed fornication with her,  
And the merchants of the earth are waxed rich  
Through the abundance of her delicacies."

iv.

4 And I heard another voice from heaven, saying: "Come out of her, my people, that you be not partakers of her sins, and that you receive not of her plagues. 5 For her sins have reached unto heaven, and God hath remembered her iniquities. 6 Reward her even as she rewarded you, and double unto her double according to her works: in the cup which she hath filled fill to her double. 7 How much she hath glorified herself, and lived deliciously, so much torment and sorrow give her: for she saith in her heart, 'I sit a queen, and am no widow, and shall see no sorrow.' 8 Therefore shall her plagues come in one day, death, and mourning, and famine: for strong *is* the Lord God who judgeth her."

*Chapter 17:13-18:8*

v

9 And the kings of the earth, who have committed fornication and lived deliciously with her, shall bewail her, and lament for her, when they shall see the smoke of her burning, 10 standing afar off for the fear of her torment, saying:

\* \* \*

“Alas! Alas! That great city Babylon,  
That mighty city,  
For in one hour is thy judgment come.”

\*

11 And the merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn over her; for no man buyeth their merchandise any more:

\* \* \*

- 12 The merchandise of gold, and silver, and precious stones, and of pearls,  
And fine linen, and purple, and silk, and scarlet,  
And all thyne wood, and all manner of vessels of ivory,  
And all manner of vessels of most precious wood,  
And of brass, and iron, and marble,  
13 And cinnamon, and odors, and ointments, and frankincense,  
And wine, and oil, and fine flour, and wheat,  
And beasts, and sheep, and horses, and chariots,  
And slaves and souls of men.

\*

14 And the fruits that thy soul lusted after are departed from thee, and all things that were dainty and goodly are departed from thee, and thou shalt find them no more at all. 15 And the merchants of these things, who were made rich by her, shall stand afar off for the fear of her torment, weeping and wailing, 16 and saying:

\* \* \*

- “Alas! Alas! That great city.  
That was clothed in fine linen, and purple  
and scarlet,  
And decked with gold, and precious stones,  
and pearls!  
17 For in one hour so great riches have come  
to naught!

\*

And every shipmaster, and all the company in ships, and sailors, and as many as trade by sea, stood afar off, 18 and cried when they saw the smoke of her burning, saying, “What *city* is like

*Chapter 18:9-18*

unto this great city!" 19 And they cast dust on their heads,  
and cried, weeping and wailing, saying:

\* \* \*

- "Alas! Alas! That great city,  
Wherein were made rich all that had ships  
in the sea  
By reason of her costliness!  
For in one hour is she made desolate!  
20 Rejoice over her, *thou* heaven,  
And *ye* holy apostles and prophets,  
For God hath avenged you on her!"

vi.

21 And a mighty angel took up a stone, like a great millstone,  
and cast *it* into the sea, saying:

\* \* \*

- "Thus with violence shall that great city Baby-  
lon be thrown down,  
And shall be found no more at all.  
22 And the voice of harpers, and musicians, and  
pipers, and trumpeters,  
Shall be heard no more at all in thee;  
And no craftsman, of whatsoever craft *he* be,  
Shall be found any more in thee;  
And the sound of a millstone,  
Shall be heard no more at all in thee;  
23 And the light of a candle,  
Shall shine no more at all in thee;  
And the voice of the bridegroom and of the bride  
Shall be heard no more at all in thee:  
For thy merchants were the great men of the  
earth;  
For by thy sorceries were all nations deceived.  
24 And in her was found the blood of prophets,  
and of saints,  
And of all that were slain upon the earth."

vii.

19:1 And after these things I heard a great voice of many people  
in heaven, saying:

\* \* \*

- "Hallelujah!  
Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power,  
Unto the Lord our God.  
2 For true and righteous *are* his judgments:  
For he hath judged the great whore,

Chapter 18:19-19:2

That did corrupt the earth with her fornication,  
And hath avenged the blood of his servants at  
her hand."

\*

3 And again they said: "Hallelujah!"

\*

And her smoke rose up for ever and ever. 4 And the four and  
twenty elders and the four beasts fell down and worshipped God  
that sat on the throne, saying:

\* \* \*

"Amen! Hallelujah!"

*Chapter 19:3-4*

## Part Six

### THE VISION OF THE WORD OF GOD

---

#### THE LORD OUR GOD, THE ALMIGHTY, REIGNETH

##### THE VISION OF THE VICTORY OF THE LAMB

###### The Marriage of the Lamb

And a voice came out of the throne, saying:

\* \* \*

"Praise our God, all ye his servants,  
And ye that fear him, both small and great."

\*

6 And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunders, saying:

\* \* \*

"Hallelujah!

For the Lord God omnipotent reigneth.

7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him:

For the marriage of the Lamb is come,  
And his wife hath made herself ready.

8 And to her was granted to be arrayed in fine linen,  
clean and white:

For the fine linen is the righteousness of saints."

\*

9 And he saith unto me, "Write, Blessed *are* they that are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb." And he saith unto me, "These are the true sayings of God." 10 And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he saith unto me, "See *thou do it* not: I am thy fellow-servant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: Worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."

---

#### I. THE RAIMENT OF THE WORD OF GOD

##### The Vesture Dipped in Blood

11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him *was* called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war. 12 And his eyes *were* as a



flame of fire, and on his head *were* many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself. 13 And he *was* clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name was called 'The Word of God.' 14 And the armies *that were* in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean. 15 And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations, and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God. 16 And he hath on *his* vesture and on his thigh a name written:

\* \* \*

"KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS."

## II. THE CALL OF THE ANGEL TO THE BIRDS

### The Supper of the Great God

17 And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, "Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God: 18 that ye may eat the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all *men*, both free and bond, both small and great."

## III. THE CAPTURE OF THE BEAST

### The Lake Burning Brimstone

19 And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army. 20 And the beast *was* taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone. 21 And the remnant were slain with the sword of him that sat upon the horse, which *sword* proceeded out of his mouth: and all the fowls were filled with their flesh.

## IV. THE BINDING OF SATAN

### The Thousand Years in the Bottomless Pit

20:1 And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. 2 And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil,

Chapter 19:13-20:2

and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, 3 and cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.

---

## V. THE FIRST RESURRECTION

### The Reign with Christ

4 And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them; and I *saw* the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and that had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received *his* mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands: and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years. 5 But the rest of the dead lived not until the thousand years were finished. This *is* the first resurrection. 6 Blessed and holy *is* he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years.

---

## VI. THE WAR OF THE NATIONS

### The Lake of Fire and Brimstone

7 And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, 8 and shall go out to deceive the nations that are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom *is* as the sand of the sea. 9 And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them. 10 And the Devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet *are*, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

---

## VII. THE LAST JUDGMENT

### The Second Death

11 And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. 12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is *the book* of life: and the dead were judged out of those things that were written in the books, according

*Chapter 20:3-12*

to their works. 13 And the sea gave up the dead that were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead that were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. 14 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. 15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

*Chapter 20:13-15*

## Part Seven

# THE VISION OF THE HOLY CITY

---

## THE NEW HEAVEN AND EARTH

### I. THE NEW CREATION

#### The Dwelling of God with His People

And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.  
2 And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. 3 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying:

\* \* \*

- "Behold, the tabernacle of God *is* with men,  
And he shall dwell with them,  
And they shall be his people,  
And God himself shall be with them,  
*And be* their God.  
4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their  
eyes;  
And there shall be no more death,  
Neither sorrow nor crying,  
Neither shall there be any more pain,  
For the former things are passed away."

\*

5 And he that sat upon the throne said, "Behold, I make all things new," And he said unto me, "Write, for these words are true and faithful." 6 And he said unto me:

\* \* \*

- "It is done.  
I am Alpha and Omega,  
The Beginning and the End.  
I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain  
of the water of life freely.  
7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things;  
And I will be his God,  
And he shall be my son.

8 But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake that burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death."

---

## II. THE VISION OF THE NEW JERUSALEM

### a. The Bride, the Lamb's Wife

9 And there came one of the seven angels that had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, "Come hither, I will shew thee the bride, the Lamb's wife." 10 And he carried me away in the spirit to a great and high mountain, and showed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from God, 11 having the glory of God: and her light *was* like a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal; 12 and had a wall great and high, *and* had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are *the names* of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel: 13 on the east three gates; on the north three gates; on the south three gates; and on the west three gates. 14 And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

---

### b. The Measure of the City

15 And he that talked with me had a golden reed to measure the city, and the gates thereof, and the wall thereof. 16 And the city lieth foursquare, and the length is as large as the breadth: and he measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand furlongs. The length and the breadth and the height of it are equal. 17 And he measured the wall thereof, a hundred *and* forty *and* four cubits, *according to* the measure of a man, that is, of the angel.

---

### c. The Walls of the City

18 And the building of the wall of it was of jasper: and the city was pure gold, like unto clear glass. 19 And the foundations of the wall of the city were garnished with all manner of precious stones:

\* \* \*

The first foundation was jasper;  
The second, sapphire;  
The third, a chalcedony;  
The fourth, an emerald;

*Chapter 21:8-19*



- 20 The fifth, sardonyx;  
The sixth, sardius;  
The seventh, chrysolyte;  
The eighth, beryl;  
The ninth, a topaz;  
The tenth, a chrysoprasus;  
The eleventh, a jacinth;  
The twelfth, an amethyst.

\*

21 And the twelve gates were twelve pearls: and the street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass.

---

**d. The Temple in the City**

22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.

\*

23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it; for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof.

\*

24 And the nations of them that are saved shall walk in the light of it.

\*

And the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it.

\*

25 And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day: for there shall be no night there.

\*

26 And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it.

\*

27 And there shall in no wise enter it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they that are written in the Lamb's book of life.

---

**e. The River of the Water of Life**

22:1 And he showed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb.

\*

2 In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and

*Chapter 21:20-22:2*

yieldeth her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations.

\*

3 And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him;

\*

4 And they shall see his face;

\*

And his name shall be in their foreheads.

\*

5 And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light.

\*

And they shall reign for ever and ever.

*Chapter 22:3-5*

## Epilogue

### THE COMING OF THE LORD JESUS

---

#### THE CONCLUSION OF THE REVELATION

##### THE LAST WORDS OF THE VISION

###### a. The Seven-Fold Summary

\*

And he said unto me, "These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to show unto his servants the things which must shortly be done."

\* \*

7 "Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book." 8 And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel who showed me these things. 9 Then saith he unto me, "See thou do it not: for I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them that keep the sayings of this book: worship God."

\* \* \*

10 And he saith unto me, "Seal not the sayings of the prophecy of this book: for the time is at hand.

\*

11 He that is unjust, let him be unjust still:  
And he that is filthy, let him be filthy still:  
And he that is righteous, let him be righteous  
still:  
And he that is holy, let him be holy still.

\*

12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be."

\*\* \*\*

13 "I am Alpha and Omega,  
The beginning and the end,  
The first and the last."

\*\* \* \*\*

14 "Blessed are they that do his commandments,  
That they may have right to the tree of life,

And may enter in through the gates into the city.

\*

15 For without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie."

\* \* \* \* \*

16 "I Jesus have sent my angel  
To testify unto you these things in the churches.  
I am the root and the offspring of David,  
And the bright and morning star."

\* \* \* \* \*

17 And the Spirit and the Bride say, "Come."  
And let him that heareth say, "Come."  
And let him that is athirst, Come.  
And whosoever will, let him take of the water  
of life freely.

#### b. Postscript

18 For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book. If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the things that are written in this book:  
19 and if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things that are written in this book.

\*

20 He that testifieth these things saith:

\* \* \*

"Surely, I come quickly."

\*

"Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus."

#### c. Benediction

21 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*





Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.  
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide  
Treatment Date: June 2005

**PreservationTechnologies**  
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive  
Cranberry Township, PA 16066  
(724) 779-2111





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 014 396 077 8